



Community Experience Distilled

C# 6 and .NET Core 1.0

Modern Cross-Platform Development

Create powerful cross-platform applications using C# 6, .NET Core 1.0, ASP.NET Core 1.0, and Visual Studio 2015

Mark J. Price

[PACKT]
PUBLISHING

C# 6 and .NET Core 1.0 Modern Cross-Platform Development

Table of Contents

[C# 6 and .NET Core 1.0](#)

[Credits](#)

[About the Author](#)

[About the Reviewers](#)

[www.PacktPub.com](#)

[eBooks, discount offers, and more](#)

[Why subscribe?](#)

[Preface](#)

[What this book covers](#)

[What you need for this book](#)

[Who this book is for](#)

[Conventions](#)

[Reader feedback](#)

[Customer support](#)

[Downloading the example code](#)

[Errata](#)

[Piracy](#)

[Questions](#)

[1. Hello, C#! Welcome, .NET Core!](#)

[Setting up your development environment](#)

[Using alternative C# IDEs](#)

[Using Visual Studio 2015 on Windows 10](#)

[Installing Microsoft Visual Studio 2015](#)

[Choosing the default installation](#)

[Choosing the custom installation](#)

[Completing the installation](#)

[Signing in to Visual Studio](#)

[Choosing development settings](#)

[Updating extensions and products](#)

[Using older versions of Visual Studio](#)

[Understanding .NET Framework, .NET Core, and .NET Native](#)

[Understanding .NET Framework platform](#)

[Understanding the Mono project](#)

[Understanding the .NET Core platform](#)

[Streamlining .NET](#)

[The future of .NET](#)

[Understanding the .NET Native platform](#)

[Comparing .NET technologies](#)

[Writing and compiling code using the Developer Command Prompt](#)

[Writing code using Notepad](#)

[Compiling code using the Developer Command Prompt](#)

[Fixing compiler errors](#)

[Decompiling code using ILDASM](#)

[Disassembling compiled assemblies](#)

[Writing and compiling code using Microsoft Visual Studio 2015](#)

[Writing code using Visual Studio 2015](#)

[Compiling code using Visual Studio](#)

[Fixing mistakes with the error list](#)

[Experimenting with C# Interactive](#)

[Other useful windows](#)

[Targeting the .NET Core](#)

[Understanding the .NET Portability Analyzer](#)

[Installing the .NET Portability Analyzer](#)

[Configuring the .NET Portability Analyzer](#)

[Analyzing a solution](#)

[.NET Portability and this book](#)

[Creating new projects for the .NET Core](#)

[Managing .NET Core development with Command Line Tools](#)

[Installing the .NET Command Line Tools](#)

[Creating a .NET Core application using Command Line Tools](#)

[Creating a .NET Core application using Visual Studio 2015](#)

[Managing source code with GitHub](#)

[Using the Team Explorer window](#)

[Cloning a GitHub repository](#)

[Managing a GitHub repository](#)

[Practicing and exploring](#)

[Exercise 1.1 – test your knowledge](#)

[Exercise 1.2 – practice managing Visual Studio Windows](#)

[Exercise 1.3 – practice coding anywhere](#)

[Exercise 1.4 – explore topics](#)

[Summary](#)

[2. Speaking C#](#)

[Understanding C# basics](#)

[The C# grammar](#)

[Statements](#)

[Blocks](#)

[The C# vocabulary](#)

[Writing the code](#)

[Verbs are methods](#)

[Nouns are types, fields, and variables](#)

[Counting types and methods](#)

[Declaring variables](#)

[Naming variables](#)

[Storing text](#)

[Storing numbers](#)

[Storing whole numbers](#)

[Storing real numbers](#)

[Sizes of numbers in memory](#)

[Comparing double and decimal](#)

[Storing Booleans](#)

[The object type](#)

[The dynamic type](#)

[Local variables](#)

[Inferring the type of a local variable](#)

[Making a value type nullable](#)

[Storing multiple values in an array](#)

[Building console applications](#)

[Displaying output to the user](#)

[Getting input from the user](#)

[Importing a namespace](#)

[Simplifying the usage of the console in C# 6](#)

[Reading arguments and working with arrays](#)

[Operating on variables](#)

[Experimenting with unary operators](#)

[Experimenting with arithmetic operators](#)

[Comparison and Boolean operators](#)

[Practicing and exploring](#)

[Exercise 2.1 – test your knowledge](#)

[Exercise 2.2 – practice number sizes and ranges](#)

[Exercise 2.3 – explore topics](#)

[Summary](#)

[3. Controlling the Flow, Converting Types, and Handling Exceptions](#)

[Selection statements](#)

[The if-else statement](#)

[The switch-case statement](#)

[Autoformatting code](#)

[Iteration statements](#)

[The while statement](#)

[The do-while statement](#)

[The for statement](#)

[The foreach statement](#)

[How does the foreach statement actually work?](#)

[Casting and converting between types](#)

[Casting from numbers to numbers](#)

[Using the Convert type](#)

[Rounding numbers](#)

[Converting from any type to a string](#)

[Parsing from strings to numbers or dates and times](#)

[Handling exceptions](#)

[The try-catch statement](#)

[Catching all exceptions](#)

[Catching specific exceptions](#)

[The finally statement](#)

[Simplifying disposal with the using statement](#)

[Checking for overflow](#)

[The checked statement](#)

[The unchecked statement](#)

[Looking for help](#)

[MSDN](#)

[Getting the definition of code](#)

[StackOverflow](#)

[Google](#)

[Design patterns](#)

[Practice and explore](#)

[Exercise 3.1 – test your knowledge](#)

[Exercise 3.2 – explore loops and overflow](#)

[Exercise 3.3 – practice loops and operators](#)

[Exercise 3.4 – practice exception handling](#)

[Exercise 3.5 – explore topics](#)

[Summary](#)

[4. Using Common .NET Types](#)

[Using assemblies and namespaces](#)

[Comparing .NET Framework with .NET Core](#)

[Base Class Libraries and CoreFX](#)

[Assemblies](#)

[Namespaces](#)

[Referencing an assembly](#)

[Referencing Microsoft Core Library](#)

[An example of assembly references](#)

[Relating assemblies and namespaces](#)

[Importing a namespace](#)

[Browsing assemblies and namespaces](#)

[Relating C# keywords to .NET types](#)

[Storing and manipulating text](#)

[Getting the length of a string](#)

[Getting the characters of a string](#)

[Splitting a string](#)

[Extracting part of a string](#)

[Checking a string for content](#)

[Other string members](#)

[Building strings efficiently](#)

[Validating input with regular expressions](#)

[The syntax of a regular expression](#)

[Examples of regular expressions](#)

[Storing data with collections](#)

[Understanding collections](#)

[Lists](#)

[Dictionaries](#)

[Stacks](#)

[Queues](#)

[Sets](#)

[Working with lists](#)

[Working with dictionaries](#)

[Sorting collections](#)

[Avoiding old collections](#)

[Using specialized collections](#)

[Practicing and exploring](#)

[Exercise 4.1 – test your knowledge](#)

[Exercise 4.2 – practice regular expressions](#)

[Exercise 4.3 – explore topics](#)

[Summary](#)

[5. Using Specialized .NET Types](#)

[Debugging and diagnostics](#)

[Debugging an application](#)

[Setting a breakpoint](#)

[The debugging toolbar](#)

[Debugging windows](#)

[Stepping through code](#)

[Customizing breakpoints](#)

[Monitoring performance and resource usage](#)

[Evaluating the efficiency of types](#)

[Monitoring performance and memory use](#)

[Measuring the efficiency of processing strings](#)

[Monitoring with Debug and Trace](#)

[Writing to the default trace listener](#)

[Configuring trace listeners](#)

[Configuring compiler symbols for .NET Framework](#)

[Defining compiler symbols for .NET Core](#)

[Checking compiler symbols](#)

[Switching trace levels](#)

[Unit testing an application](#)

[Creating a unit of code that needs testing](#)

[Creating a unit test project](#)

[Running unit tests](#)

[Internationalizing an application](#)

[Globalizing an application](#)

[Localizing an application](#)

[Interoperating with unmanaged code](#)

[Automating Microsoft Excel using COM Interop](#)

[Accessing the Win32 API with P/Invoke](#)

[Practicing and exploring](#)

[Exercise 5.1 – test your knowledge](#)

[Exercise 5.2 – practice using Debug and Trace](#)

[Exercise 5.3 – explore topics](#)

[Summary](#)

[6. Building Your Own Types with Object-Oriented Programming](#)

[Talking about OOP](#)

[Building class libraries](#)

[Creating a class library to share code](#)

[Defining a class](#)

[Instantiating a class](#)

[Storing data with fields](#)

[Defining fields](#)

[Storing a value using the enum keyword](#)

[Storing multiple values using collections](#)

[Making a field static](#)

[Making a field constant](#)

[Making a field read only](#)

[Initializing fields with constructors](#)

[Writing and calling methods](#)

[Overloading methods](#)

[Optional parameters and named arguments](#)

[Splitting classes using partial](#)

[Controlling access with properties and indexers](#)

[Defining read-only properties](#)

[Defining settable properties](#)

[Defining indexers](#)

[Simplifying methods with operators](#)

[Raising and handling events](#)

[Calling methods using delegates](#)

[Defining events](#)

[Practicing and exploring](#)

[Exercise 6.1 – test your knowledge](#)

[Exercise 6.2 – practice writing mathematical methods](#)

[Exercise 6.3 – explore topics](#)

[Summary](#)

[7. Implementing Interfaces and Inheriting Classes](#)

[Implementing interfaces](#)

[Common interfaces](#)

[Comparing objects when sorting](#)

[Defining a separate comparer](#)

[Managing memory with reference and value types](#)

[Defining a type using the struct keyword](#)

[Releasing unmanaged resources](#)

[Ensuring that dispose is called](#)

[Inheriting from classes](#)

[Extending classes](#)

[Hiding members](#)

[Overriding members](#)

[Preventing inheritance and overriding](#)

[Polymorphism](#)

[Casting within inheritance hierarchies](#)

[Implicit casting](#)

[Explicit casting](#)

[Handling casting exceptions](#)

[Documenting your types](#)

[Inheriting and extending .NET types](#)

[Inheriting from the Exception class](#)

[Extending types when you can't inherit](#)

[Using static methods to reuse functionality](#)

[Using extension methods to reuse functionality](#)

[Practice and explore](#)

[Exercise 7.1 – test your knowledge](#)

[Exercise 7.2 – practice creating an inheritance hierarchy](#)

[Exercise 7.3 – explore topics](#)

[Summary](#)

[8. Working with Relational Data Using the Entity Framework](#)

[Relational Database Management Systems](#)

[Connecting to Microsoft SQL Server LocalDb](#)

[The Northwind sample database](#)

[Choosing a .NET data provider](#)

[Using ADO.NET](#)

[Connecting to the database](#)

[Executing commands and reading result sets](#)

[Loading a connection string from configuration](#)

[Using Entity Framework 6](#)

[Building an Entity Framework 6 model](#)

[Entity Framework Code First models](#)

[EF Code First conventions](#)

[EF annotation attributes](#)

[EF Fluent API](#)

[Querying an Entity Data Model](#)

[Logging SQL statements](#)

[Manipulating data with Entity Data Models](#)

[Inserting entities](#)

[Updating entities](#)

[Transactions](#)

[Defining an explicit transaction](#)

[Loading patterns with EF](#)

[Lazy loading entities](#)

[Eager loading entities](#)

[Explicit loading entities](#)

[Using Entity Framework Core](#)

[Practicing and exploring](#)

[Exercise 8.1 – test your knowledge](#)

[Exercise 8.2 – explore the EF Core documentation](#)

[Exercise 8.3 – explore topics](#)

[Summary](#)

[9. Querying and Manipulating Data with LINQ](#)

[Writing LINQ queries](#)

[Extending sequences with the Enumerable class](#)

[Filtering entities with Where](#)

[Targeting a named method](#)

[Simplifying the code by removing the explicit delegate instantiation](#)

[Targeting a lambda expression](#)

[Sorting sequences with OrderBy](#)

[Sorting by multiple properties with the ThenBy method](#)

[Working with sets](#)

[Projecting entities with Select statement](#)

[Joining and grouping](#)

[Sweetening the syntax with syntactic sugar](#)

[Using multiple threads with Parallel LINQ](#)

[Creating your own LINQ extension methods](#)

[Working with LINQ to XML](#)

[Generating XML using LINQ to XML](#)

[Reading XML by using LINQ to XML](#)

[Practicing and exploring](#)

[Exercise 9.1 – test your knowledge](#)

[Exercise 9.2 – practice querying with LINQ](#)

[Exercise 9.3 – explore topics](#)

[Summary](#)

[10. Working with Files, Streams, and Serialization](#)

[Managing the filesystem](#)

[Managing directories](#)

[Managing files](#)

[Managing paths](#)

[Getting file information](#)

[Reading and writing with streams](#)

[Writing to text and XML streams](#)

[Compressing streams](#)

[Encoding text](#)

[Encoding strings as byte arrays](#)

[Encoding and decoding text in files](#)

[Serializing object graphs](#)

[Serializing with XML](#)

[Deserializing with XML](#)

[Customizing the XML](#)

[Serializing with JSON](#)

[Serializing with other formats](#)

[Serializing with runtime serializers](#)

[Practice and explore](#)

[Exercise 10.1 – test your knowledge](#)

[Exercise 10.2 – practice serializing as XML](#)

[Exercise 10.3 – explore serialization formats](#)

[Exercise 10.4 – explore Microsoft’s System.IO types](#)

[Exercise 10.5 – explore topics](#)

[Summary](#)

[11. Protecting Your Data and Applications](#)

[Understanding the vocabulary of protection](#)

[Keys and key sizes](#)

[IVs and block sizes](#)

[Salts](#)

[Generating keys and IVs](#)

[Encrypting and decrypting data](#)

[Encrypting symmetrically with AES](#)

[Hashing data](#)

[Hashing with SHA256](#)

[Signing data](#)

[Signing with SHA256 and RSA](#)

[Authenticating and authorizing users](#)

[Managing local accounts](#)

[Authenticating with Windows](#)

[Authorizing with Windows](#)

[Practicing and exploring](#)

[Exercise 11.1 – test your knowledge](#)

[Exercise 11.2 – practice protecting data with encryption and hashing](#)

[Exercise 11.3 – practice protecting data with decryption](#)

[Exercise 11.4 – explore topics](#)

[Summary](#)

[12. Improving Performance and Scalability with Multitasking](#)

[Understanding processes and threads](#)

[Running tasks asynchronously](#)

[Running multiple actions synchronously](#)

[Running multiple actions asynchronously using tasks](#)

[Waiting for tasks](#)

[Continuing with another task](#)

[Nested and child tasks](#)

[The async and await keywords](#)

[Creating a GUI that blocks](#)

[Creating a GUI that doesn't block](#)

[Other types with Async methods](#)

[await in catch blocks](#)

[Improving scalability for client-server applications](#)

[Synchronizing access to shared resources](#)

[Accessing a resource from multiple threads](#)

[Applying a mutually exclusive lock to a resource](#)

[Understanding the lock statement](#)

[Making operations atomic](#)

[Applying other types of synchronization](#)

[Practicing and exploring](#)

[Exercise 12.1 – test your knowledge](#)

[Exercise 12.2 – explore topics](#)

[Summary](#)

[13. Building Universal Windows Platform Apps Using XAML](#)

[Understanding the UWP](#)

[Adapting your app's layout](#)

[Taking advantage of unique device capabilities](#)

[Understanding XAML](#)

[Simplifying code using XAML](#)

[Creating a Windows desktop application using WPF](#)

[Choosing common controls](#)

[Creating an app for the Universal Windows Platform](#)

[Analyzing UWP portability](#)

[Using resources and templates](#)

[Sharing resources](#)

[Replacing a control template](#)

[Data binding](#)

[Binding to elements](#)

[Binding to data](#)

[Animating with storyboards](#)

[Testing in emulators](#)

[Practicing and exploring](#)

[Exercise 13.1 – test your knowledge](#)

[Exercise 13.2 – practice building a universal tip calculator](#)

[Exercise 13.3 – explore topics](#)

[Summary](#)

[14. Building Web Applications and Services Using ASP.NET Core](#)

[Understanding ASP.NET Core](#)

[Classic ASP.NET versus modern ASP.NET Core](#)

[Client-side web development](#)

[Install Web Essentials 2015](#)

[The HyperText Transfer Protocol \(HTTP\)](#)

[Create a web application project](#)

[Exploring the parts of an ASP.NET Core web application](#)

[ASP.NET Core startup](#)

[Understanding the default route](#)

[ASP.NET Core controllers](#)

[Defining the Home controller's actions](#)

[ASP.NET Core models](#)

[Create Entity models for Northwind](#)

[Configure Entity Framework Core as a service](#)

[Create view models for requests](#)

[Fetch the model in the controller](#)

[ASP.NET Core views](#)

[Rendering the Home controller's views](#)

[Sharing layouts between views](#)

[Defining custom styles](#)

[Defining a typed view](#)

[Taking ASP.NET Core further](#)

[Passing parameters using a route value](#)

[Passing parameters using a query string](#)

[Annotating models](#)

[ASP.NET Core Web API](#)

[Scaffolding an API controller](#)

[Calling a Web API service from a UWP app](#)

[Practicing and exploring](#)

[Exercise 14.1 – test your knowledge](#)

[Exercise 14.2 – practice building a data-driven web application](#)

[Exercise 14.3 – explore topics](#)

[Summary](#)

[15. Taking C# Cross-Platform](#)

[Understanding cross-platform development](#)

[Visual Studio Code](#)

[.NET Core 1.0](#)

[ASP.NET Core 1.0](#)

[Entity Framework Core 1.0](#)

[.NET Native](#)

[Xamarin](#)

[Cross-device Universal Windows Platform \(UWP\)](#)

[Installing Visual Studio Code and ASP.NET Core](#)

[Installing Visual Studio Code](#)

[Managing development from the terminal](#)

[Installing Homebrew](#)

[Installing ASP.NET Core and the .NET Version Manager](#)

[Listing the installed versions of .NET](#)

[Switching from Mono to .NET Core](#)

[Building a console application](#)

[Creating the source files](#)

[Editing the code](#)

[Downloading dependency packages and compiling](#)

[Building cross-platform web applications using ASP.NET Core](#)

[Creating the simplest ASP.NET Core web application](#)

[Installing Yeoman and related tools](#)

[Scaffolding projects using Yeoman](#)

[Editing projects using Visual Studio Code](#)

[Understanding the .NET Core command-line tools](#)

[Understanding the DNX tools](#)

[Understanding the CLI tools](#)

[Common DNX commands](#)

[Common CLI commands](#)

[Practicing and exploring](#)

[Exercise 15.1 – test your knowledge](#)

[Exercise 15.2 – practice transferring an existing ASP.NET application](#)

[Exercise 15.3 – explore topics](#)

[Summary](#)

[16. Building a Quiz](#)

[Designing the quiz application](#)

[Choosing the platform](#)

[Deciding the functional requirements](#)

[Separating concerns](#)

[Building the quiz solution](#)

[Defining the entity models](#)

[Creating the data repository](#)

[Creating the web application](#)

[Defining view models](#)

[Adding sample quiz questions](#)

[Configuring session state](#)

[Adding custom controller actions](#)

[Adding custom views](#)

[Running the quiz](#)

[Configuring the project to use Kestrel and .NET Core](#)

[Hosting ASP.NET Core web apps in Microsoft Azure](#)

[Register an Azure account](#)

[Create an Azure web app](#)

[Publishing an ASP.NET web application to the Web App](#)

Practicing and exploring

[Exercise 16.1 – test your knowledge](#)

[Exercise 16.2 – practice by extending the quiz web app](#)

[Exercise 16.3 – explore topics](#)

Summary

A. Answers to the Test Your Knowledge Questions

[Chapter 1 – Hello, C#! Welcome, .NET Core!](#)

[Chapter 2 – Speaking C#](#)

[Chapter 3 – Controlling the Flow, Converting Types, and Handling Exceptions](#)

[Exercise 3.2](#)

[Chapter 4 – Using Common .NET Types](#)

[Chapter 5 – Using Specialized .NET Types](#)

[Chapter 6 – Building Your Own Types with Object-Oriented Programming](#)

[Chapter 7 – Implementing Interfaces and Inheriting Classes](#)

[Chapter 8 – Working with Relational Data Using the Entity Framework](#)

[Chapter 9 – Querying and Manipulating Data with LINQ](#)

[Chapter 10 – Working with Files, Streams, and Serialization](#)

[Chapter 11 – Protecting Your Data and Applications](#)

[Chapter 12 – Improving Performance and Scalability with Multitasking](#)

[Chapter 13 – Building Universal Windows Platform Apps Using XAML](#)

[Chapter 14 – Building Web Applications and Services Using ASP.NET Core](#)

[Chapter 15 – Taking C# Cross-Platform](#)

[Chapter 16 – Building a Quiz](#)

B. Creating a Virtual Machine for Your Development Environment

[Signing up for a Microsoft account](#)

[Creating a Microsoft Azure subscription](#)

[Managing your Microsoft Azure account](#)

[Creating a virtual machine](#)

[Connecting to your virtual machine using remote desktop](#)

[Supporting other platforms](#)

[Summary](#)

[Index](#)

C# 6 and .NET Core 1.0 Modern Cross-Platform Development

C# 6 and .NET Core 1.0

Copyright © 2016 Packt Publishing

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, without the prior written permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embedded in critical articles or reviews.

Every effort has been made in the preparation of this book to ensure the accuracy of the information presented. However, the information contained in this book is sold without warranty, either express or implied. Neither the author, nor Packt Publishing, and its dealers and distributors will be held liable for any damages caused or alleged to be caused directly or indirectly by this book.

Packt Publishing has endeavored to provide trademark information about all of the companies and products mentioned in this book by the appropriate use of capitals. However, Packt Publishing cannot guarantee the accuracy of this information.

First published: March 2016

Production reference: 1180316

Published by Packt Publishing Ltd.

Livery Place

35 Livery Street

Birmingham B3 2PB, UK.

ISBN 978-1-78528-569-1

www.packtpub.com

Credits

Author

Mark J. Price

Reviewers

Dustin Heffron

Liviu Ignat

Efraim Kyriakidis

Commissioning Editor

Edward Gordon

Acquisition Editor

Kirk D'Costa

Content Development Editor

Pooja Mhapsekar

Technical Editor

Vivek Pala

Copy Editor

Pranjali Chury

Project Coordinator

Francina Pinto

Proofreader

Safis Editing

Indexer

Tejal Soni

Production Coordinator

Aparna Bhagat

Cover Work

Aparna Bhagat

About the Author

Mark J. Price is a Microsoft Certified Trainer (MCT) and Microsoft Specialist, Programming in C# and Architecting Microsoft Azure Solutions, with more than 20 years of educational and programming experience.



Since 1993, Mark has passed more than 90 Microsoft programming exams and specializes in preparing others to pass them too. His students range from professionals with decades of experience to 16-year-old apprentices with no experience at all. He successfully guides all of them by combining educational skills with real-world experience, consulting on and developing systems for enterprises worldwide.

Between 2001 and 2003, Mark was employed full-time to write official courseware for Microsoft in Redmond, USA. His team wrote the first training courses for C# and .NET while they were still an early alpha version. While with Microsoft, he delivered “train-the-trainer” classes to get other MCTs up to speed in C# and .NET.

In 2010, Mark took a postgraduate certificate in education (PGCE). He taught GCSE and A-level mathematics in two secondary schools in London. Mark holds a Computer Science BSc (Hons) degree from the University of Bristol, UK.

I’d like to thank my parents, Pamela and Ian, for raising me to be polite, hardworking, and curious about the world. I’m grateful to my sisters, Emily and Juliet, for loving me despite being their awkward older brother. I’d also like to express my gratitude to my friends and colleagues who inspire me technically and creatively. Lastly, thanks to all the students I have taught over the years for making me strive to be a better teacher, especially Jared.

About the Reviewers

Dustin Heffron is a software engineer by day and an independent game developer by night. He has over 10 years of experience programming in various languages and 7 years of experience working with C# and .NET.

Currently, Dustin works as a software engineer for Johnson Controls Inc. He is also the cofounder and CEO of SunFlake Studios, which was founded in late 2015. He released his first commercial game, *Squash Master*, in early 2016 and is planning to develop additional games in the coming months and years.

Dustin has a long history of reviewing for Packt Publishing, including the book *XNA 4.0 Game Development by Example: Beginner's Guide* and the video tutorial series *XNA 3D Programming by Example*. He also coauthored the video tutorial series *XNA 3D Toolkit* with Larry Louisiana.

Liviu Ignat is a full-stack developer and architect, technology geek, and entrepreneur, who has been writing commercial software since 2004. He started with VB6, soon moved to .NET Java, and then continued by moving to front-end web development. He has fun with everything that is a functional language, such as F#, Scala, Swift, JavaScript, and so on.

Currently, he is a senior software engineer at AppDirect (<http://appdirect.com>), Munich, and he is also the CTO of his own startup (<http://gift doodle.com>). He has been involved in building distributed backend services, mostly with .NET and complex single-page web apps. He is a big fan of microservices with C#, NodeJS, Scala, and Docker, single-page apps, and native apps with Android and IOS.

When he is not coding, Liviu loves snowboarding during the winter, sailing to exotic places during the summer, or just traveling the world. You can find and contact him at <http://ignat.email/>.

Efraim Kyriakidis is a skilled software engineer with over 10 years of experience in developing and delivering software solutions for diverse customers and projects. He's well-versed in all stages of the software development lifecycle. His first acquaintance with computers and programming was a state of the art Commodore 64, back in the '80s as a kid. Since then, he has grown up and received his diploma as Electro technic engineer from Aristotle University Thessaloniki in Greece. Through out his career he has mainly worked with Microsoft technologies, using C# and .NET since .NET 1.0. He currently works for Siemens AG in Germany as a software developer.

www.PacktPub.com

eBooks, discount offers, and more

Did you know that Packt offers eBook versions of every book published, with PDF and ePub files available? You can upgrade to the eBook version at www.PacktPub.com and as a print book customer, you are entitled to a discount on the eBook copy. Get in touch with us at [<customercare@packtpub.com>](mailto:customercare@packtpub.com) for more details.

At www.PacktPub.com, you can also read a collection of free technical articles, sign up for a range of free newsletters and receive exclusive discounts and offers on Packt books and eBooks.



<https://www2.packtpub.com/books/subscription/packtlib>

Do you need instant solutions to your IT questions? PacktLib is Packt's online digital book library. Here, you can search, access, and read Packt's entire library of books.

Why subscribe?

- Fully searchable across every book published by Packt
- Copy and paste, print, and bookmark content
- On demand and accessible via a web browser

Preface

There are many C# books, some, more than a thousand pages long, that aim to be comprehensive references to the C# programming language and the .NET Framework.

This book is different—it is concise and aims to be a fast-paced read that is packed with hands-on walkthroughs. I wrote this book to be the best step-by-step guide to modern cross-platform C# and .NET proven practices.

I will point out the cool corners and gotchas of C# so you can impress colleagues and employers and quickly get productive. Rather than slowing down and boring some of you by explaining every little thing, I assume that if a term I use is new to you, then you know how to Google it with a search engine such as DuckDuckGo.

At the end of each chapter, there is a section entitled *Practicing and Exploring*, which contains questions to test your knowledge, and usually a hands-on practical exercise, and you will explore topics in depth on your own with a little nudge in the right direction from me.

You can download solutions for the exercises from the GitHub repository at <https://github.com/markjprice/cs6dotnetcore>. I will provide instructions on how to do this using Visual Studio 2015 at the end of [Chapter 1](#), *Hello C#!, Welcome .NET Core!*.

What this book covers

[Chapter 1](#), *Hello C#!, Welcome .NET Core!*, is about setting up your development environment and using various tools to create the simplest application possible with C#. You will learn how to compile C# code at the Command Prompt and how to write and compile code using Visual Studio. You will also learn about the different .NET platforms: .NET Framework, .NET Core, and .NET Native.

[Chapter 2](#), *Speaking C#*, is about the C# language, the grammar and vocabulary that you will use every day to write the source code for your applications. In particular, you will learn how to declare and work with variables of different types.

[Chapter 3](#), *Controlling the Flow, Converting Types, and Handling Exceptions*, is about writing code that makes decisions, repeats blocks of statements, converts between types, and handles errors. You will also learn the best places to look for help.

[Chapter 4](#), *Using Common .NET Types*, is about how .NET types are related to C#. You will learn about .NET Framework, .NET Core, and their class library assemblies of types that allow your applications to connect together existing components to perform common practical tasks.

[Chapter 5](#), *Using Specialized .NET Types*, is about .NET types used to diagnose problems, support multiple languages and cultures, and access features and applications outside of .NET.

[Chapter 6](#), *Building Your Own Types with Object-Oriented Programming*, is about all the different categories of members that a type can have, including fields for storing data and methods for performing actions. You will use OOP concepts such as aggregation and encapsulation.

[Chapter 7](#), *Implementing Interfaces and Inheriting Classes*, is about deriving new types from existing ones using OOP. You will learn how to implement interfaces, about base and derived classes, how to override a type member, how to use polymorphism, and how to cast between classes in an inheritance hierarchy.

[Chapter 8](#), *Working with Relational Data Using the Entity Framework*, is about reading and writing to Microsoft SQL Server (and other databases) using classic ADO.NET and the object-relational mapping technology known as Entity Framework.

[Chapter 9](#), *Querying and Manipulating Data with LINQ*, is about Language Integrated Queries (LINQ)—language extensions that add the ability to work with sequences of items, and filter, sort, and project them into different outputs.

[Chapter 10](#), *Working with Files, Streams, and Serialization*, is about reading and writing to files and streams, text encoding, and serialization.

[Chapter 11](#), *Protecting Your Data and Applications*, is about protecting your data using encryption and hashing, and checking who is running your application and what they are allowed to do.

[Chapter 12](#), *Improving Performance and Scalability with Multitasking*, is about allowing multiple actions to be executed at the same time to improve performance, scalability, and user productivity.

[Chapter 13](#), *Building Universal Windows Platform Apps Using XAML*, is about learning the basics of XAML, which can be used to define the user interface for a graphical app for the Universal Windows Platform (UWP). This app can then run on Windows 10, Windows 10 Mobile, Xbox One, and even HoloLens.

[Chapter 14](#), *Building Web Applications and Services Using ASP.NET Core*, is about building web applications and services using a modern HTTP architecture on the server side using Microsoft ASP.NET Core 1.0. You will learn about the models, views, and controllers that make up MVC and the Web API.

[Chapter 15](#), *Taking C# Cross-Platform*, is about introducing you to how you can take C# cross-platform using .NET Core, ASP.NET Core 1.0, Entity Framework Core 1.0, and Visual Studio Code.

[Chapter 16](#), *Building a Quiz*, is about designing and building a quiz application that helps students learn C#, .NET Core, and related topics.

[Appendix A](#), *Answers to the Test Your Knowledge Questions*, has the answers to the test questions at the end of each chapter.

[Appendix B](#), *Creating a Virtual Machine for Your Development Environment*, shows how to set up a virtual machine in Microsoft Azure for use as a development environment.

What you need for this book

Although you can develop and deploy C# on many platforms, including Mac OS X and Linux, for the best learning experience, you need two pieces of software:

- Microsoft Windows 10
- Microsoft Visual Studio Community 2015 with Update 1 (or later)

The best version of Windows to use is Microsoft Windows 10 because you need this version to create Universal Windows Platform apps in [Chapter 13](#), *Building Universal Windows Platform Apps Using XAML*. Earlier versions of Windows, such as 7 or 8.1, will work for all other chapters. If you don't have a Windows computer, then you can use a virtual machine running Windows in the cloud. Refer to [Appendix B](#), *Creating a Virtual Machine for Your Development Environment* for instructions.

The best version of Visual Studio to use is Microsoft Visual Studio Community 2015 with Update 1 (or later), which is the version I used while writing this book. In [Chapter 15](#), *Taking C# Cross-Platform*, I will introduce you to Visual Studio Code, which runs on Windows, Linux, and Mac OS X, and can create cross-platform applications for all these OSes.

Who this book is for

If you have heard that C# is a popular general-purpose, cross-platform programming language used to create everything from business applications, websites, and services to games for mobile devices, Xbox One, and the Windows 10 desktop-to-tablet-to-phone platform, then this book is for you.

Conventions

In this book, you will find a number of text styles that distinguish between different kinds of information. Here are some examples of these styles and an explanation of their meaning.

Code words in text, database table names, folder names, filenames, file extensions, pathnames, dummy URLs, user input, and Twitter handles are shown as follows: "The code you will write will be stored in the file named Program.cs."

A block of code is set as follows:

```
// the best nieces and nephews in the world
names[0] = "Kate";
names[1] = "Jack";
names[2] = "Rebecca";
names[3] = "Tom";
```

When we wish to draw your attention to a particular part of a code block, the relevant lines or items are set in bold:

```
// the best nieces and nephews in the world
names[0] = "Kate";
names[1] = "Jack";
names[2] = "Rebecca";
names[3] = "Tom";
```

Any command-line input or output is written as follows:

```
csc my.cs /target:library
```

New terms and **important words** are shown in bold. Words that you see on the screen, for example, in menus or dialog boxes, appear in the text like this: "In Visual Studio, from the **View** menu, choose **Other Windows**, and then **C# Interactive**."

Note

Warnings or important notes appear in a box like this.

Tip

Tips and tricks appear like this.

Reader feedback

Feedback from our readers is always welcome. Let us know what you think about this book—what you liked or disliked. Reader feedback is important for us as it helps us develop titles that you will really get the most out of.

To send us general feedback, simply e-mail <feedback@packtpub.com>, and mention the book's title in the subject of your message.

If there is a topic that you have expertise in and you are interested in either writing or contributing to a book, see our author guide at www.packtpub.com/authors.

Customer support

Now that you are the proud owner of a Packt book, we have a number of things to help you to get the most from your purchase.

Downloading the example code

You can download the example code files for this book from your account at <http://www.packtpub.com>. If you purchased this book elsewhere, you can visit <http://www.packtpub.com/support> and register to have the files e-mailed directly to you.

You can download the code files by following these steps:

1. Log in or register to our website using your e-mail address and password.
2. Hover the mouse pointer on the **SUPPORT** tab at the top.
3. Click on **Code Downloads & Errata**.
4. Enter the name of the book in the **Search** box.
5. Select the book for which you're looking to download the code files.
6. Choose from the drop-down menu where you purchased this book from.
7. Click on **Code Download**.

Once the file is downloaded, please make sure that you unzip or extract the folder using the latest version of:

- WinRAR / 7-Zip for Windows
- Zipeg / iZip / UnRarX for Mac
- 7-Zip / PeaZip for Linux

Errata

Although we have taken every care to ensure the accuracy of our content, mistakes do happen. If you find a mistake in one of our books—maybe a mistake in the text or the code—we would be grateful if you could report this to us. By doing so, you can save other readers from frustration and help us improve subsequent versions of this book. If you find any errata, please report them by visiting <http://www.packtpub.com/submit-errata>, selecting your book, clicking on the **Errata Submission Form** link, and entering the details of your errata. Once your errata are verified, your submission will be accepted and the errata will be uploaded to our website or added to any list of existing errata under the Errata section of that title.

To view the previously submitted errata, go to <https://www.packtpub.com/books/content/support> and enter the name of the book in the search field. The required information will appear under the **Errata** section.

Piracy

Piracy of copyrighted material on the Internet is an ongoing problem across all media. At Packt, we take the protection of our copyright and licenses very seriously. If you come across any illegal copies of our works in any form on the Internet, please provide us with the location address or website name immediately so that we can pursue a remedy.

Please contact us at <copyright@packtpub.com> with a link to the suspected pirated material.

We appreciate your help in protecting our authors and our ability to bring you valuable content.

Questions

If you have a problem with any aspect of this book, you can contact us at questions@packtpub.com, and we will do our best to address the problem.

Chapter 1. Hello, C#! Welcome, .NET Core!

This chapter is about setting up your development environment, understanding the similarities and differences between .NET Core, .NET Framework, and .NET Native, and using various tools to create the simplest application possible with C#.

Most people learn complex topics by imitation and repetition rather than reading a detailed explanation of theory. So, I will not explain every keyword and step. The idea is to get you to write some code, build an application, and see it run. You don't need to know the details of how it all works yet.

In the words of Samuel Johnson, author of the English dictionary of 1755, I have likely committed “a few wild blunders, and risible absurdities, from which no work of such multiplicity is free.” I take sole responsibility for these and hope you appreciate the challenge of my attempt to “lash the wind” by writing this book about .NET Core 1.0 during its rocky birth in the early months of 2016.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Setting up your development environment
- Understanding the .NET Framework, .NET Core, and .NET Native
- Writing and compiling code by using the Developer Command Prompt
- Writing and compiling code by using Microsoft Visual Studio 2015
- Targeting the .NET Core
- Managing source code with GitHub

Setting up your development environment

Before you start programming, you will need to set up your **Interactive Development Environment (IDE)** that includes a code editor for C#. The best IDE to choose is Microsoft Visual Studio 2015, but it only runs on the Windows operating system.

Using alternative C# IDEs

There are alternative IDEs for C#, for example, **MonoDevelop**, **JetBrains Project Rider**, and **Microsoft Visual Studio Code**. They each have versions available for Windows, Linux, and Mac OS X, allowing you to write code on one operating system and deploy to the same, or a different, one:

- For MonoDevelop IDE, visit <http://www.monodevelop.com/>
- For JetBrains Project Rider, visit <http://blog.jetbrains.com/dotnet/2016/01/13/project-rider-a-csharp-ide/>
- For Microsoft Visual Studio Code, visit <https://code.visualstudio.com/>

Cloud9 is a web browser-based IDE, so it's even more cross-platform than the others. here is the link:

<https://c9.io/web/sign-up/free>

In [Chapter 15](#), *Taking C# Cross-Platform*, I will show you how to use Visual Studio Code running on Mac OS X to create an ASP.NET Core 1.0 web application that can be deployed to Windows, Mac OS X, or Linux operating systems, or to Docker containers.

Tip

Linux and Docker are popular server host platforms because they are relatively lightweight and more cost-effectively scalable when compared to operating system platforms that are designed for end users, such as Windows and Mac OS X.

Using Visual Studio 2015 on Windows 10

You can use Windows 7 or later to complete most of the chapters in this book, but you will have a better experience if you use Windows 10.

Tip

If you don't have Windows, I recommend that you create a virtual machine (VM) to use for development. You can choose any cloud provider, but Microsoft Azure has preconfigured VMs that include properly licensed Windows and Visual Studio 2015. You only pay for the minutes your VM is running, so it is a way for users of Linux, Mac OS X, and older Windows versions to have all the benefits of using Visual Studio 2015. Refer to [Appendix B](#), *Creating a Virtual Machine for Your Development Environment* for more information.

Since October 2014, Microsoft has made a professional-quality edition of Visual Studio available to everyone for free. It is called the **Community Edition**.

Tip

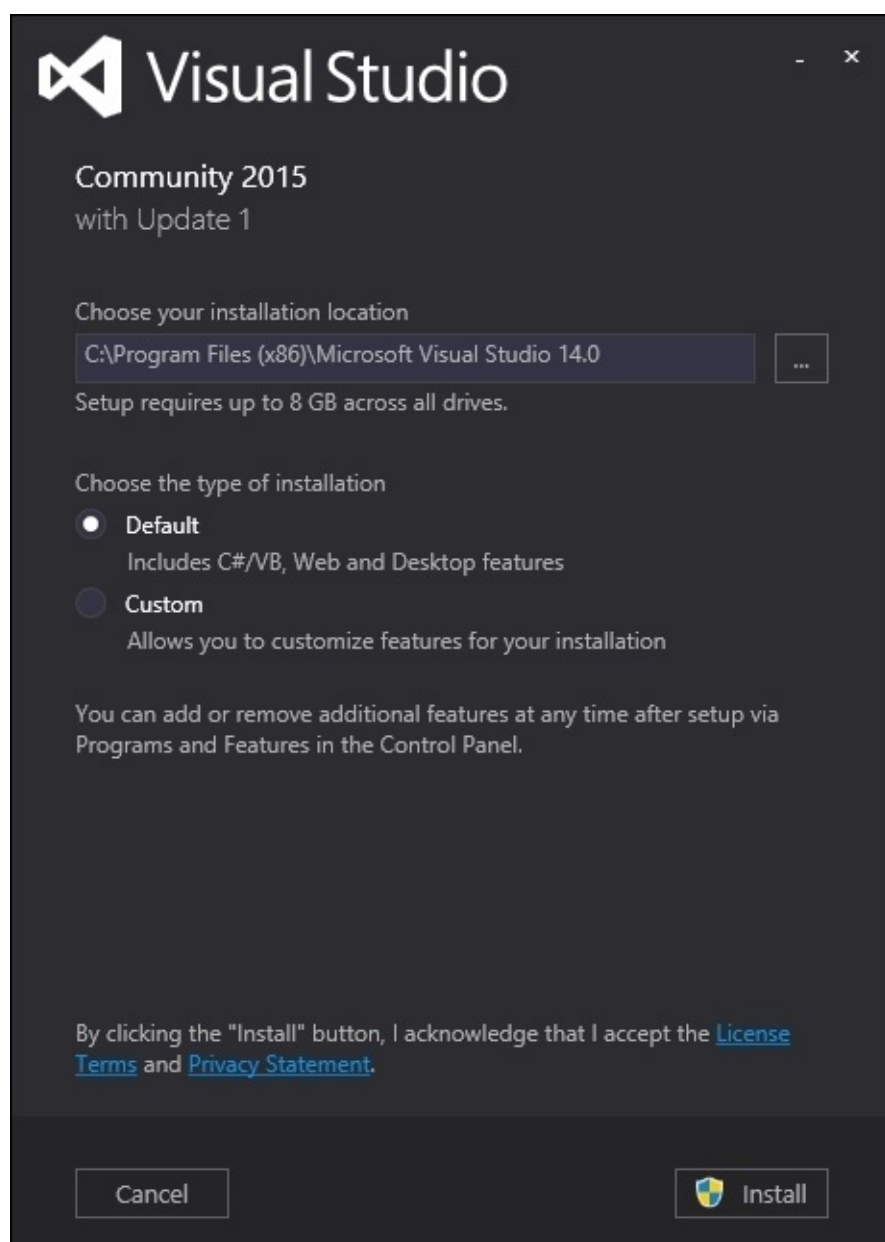
Microsoft has combined all its free developer offerings in a program called **Visual Studio Dev Essentials**. This includes the Community Edition, the free level of Visual Studio Team Services, Azure credits for test and development, and free training from Pluralsight, Wintellect, and Xamarin.

Installing Microsoft Visual Studio 2015

Download and install **Microsoft Visual Studio Community 2015 with Update 1** or higher.

Choosing the default installation

If you prefer a smaller, faster installation then choose **Default** because it only requires 8 GB and should complete the installation in about an hour. With this choice, as shown in the following screenshot, you will be able to complete the first two-thirds of this book. To complete the rest of the book, you can later add additional features, such as support for building Universal Windows Platform (UWP) apps, via **Programs and Features** in the **Control Panel**:



If you chose **Default**, then skip to the **Completing the Installation** section.

Choosing the custom installation

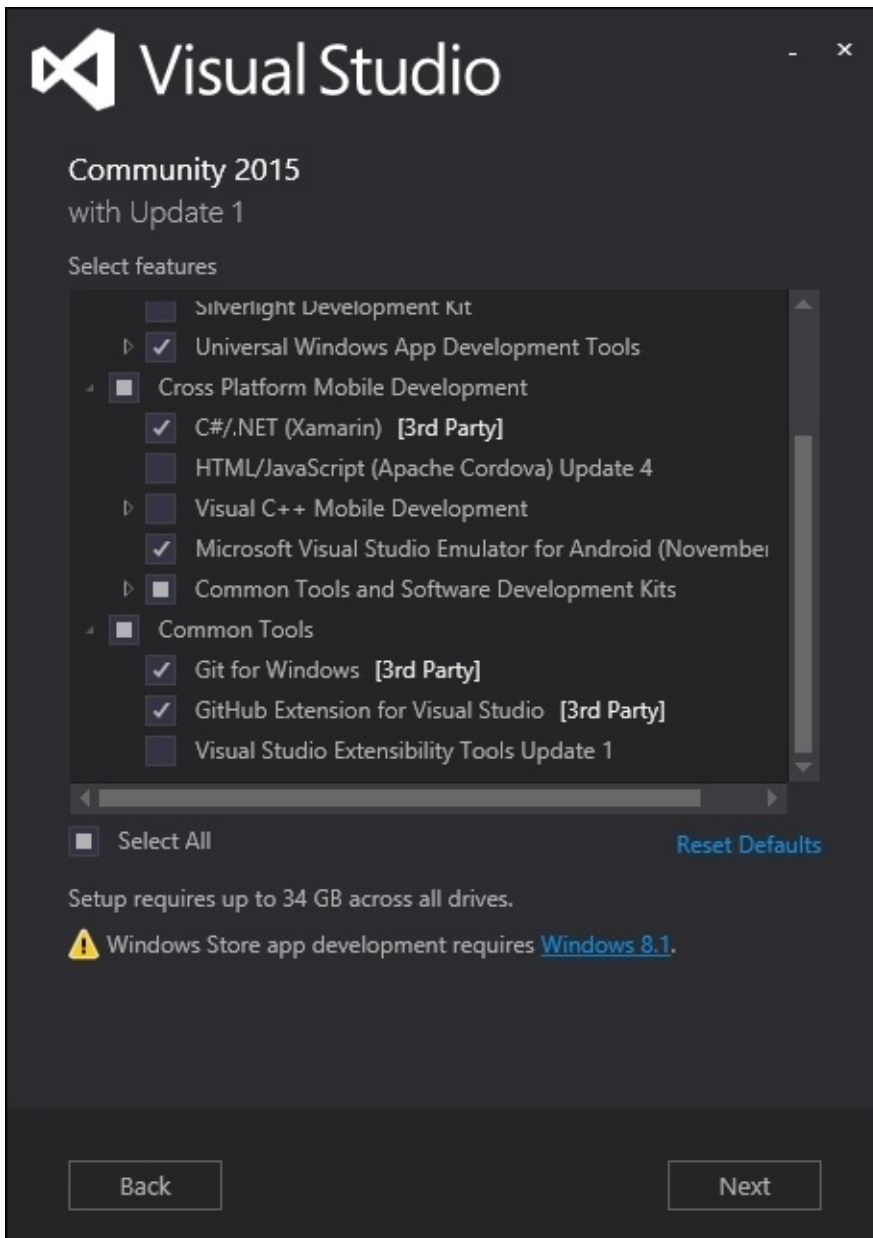
If you have 34 GB of free disk space and can wait for several hours, then in the installation dialog, choose **Custom**, and then click on **Next**. Select the following features:

- Under **Windows and Web Development**, tick the following checkboxes:
 - **Microsoft SQL Server Data Tools**
 - **Microsoft Web Developer Tools**
 - **Universal Windows App Development Tools**
- Under **Cross Platform Mobile Development**, tick the following checkbox:
 - **C#/.NET (Xamarin)**
- Under **Common Tools**, tick the following checkboxes:
 - **Git for Windows**
 - **GitHub Extension for Visual Studio**

Click on **Next**:

Note

If you have the Home edition of Windows 10, then you will not be able to install emulators for Windows Phone because they require Hyper-V support.



Tip

You can choose to install everything if you want support for languages such as C++, Python, and F#, but these will not be covered in this book.

Completing the installation

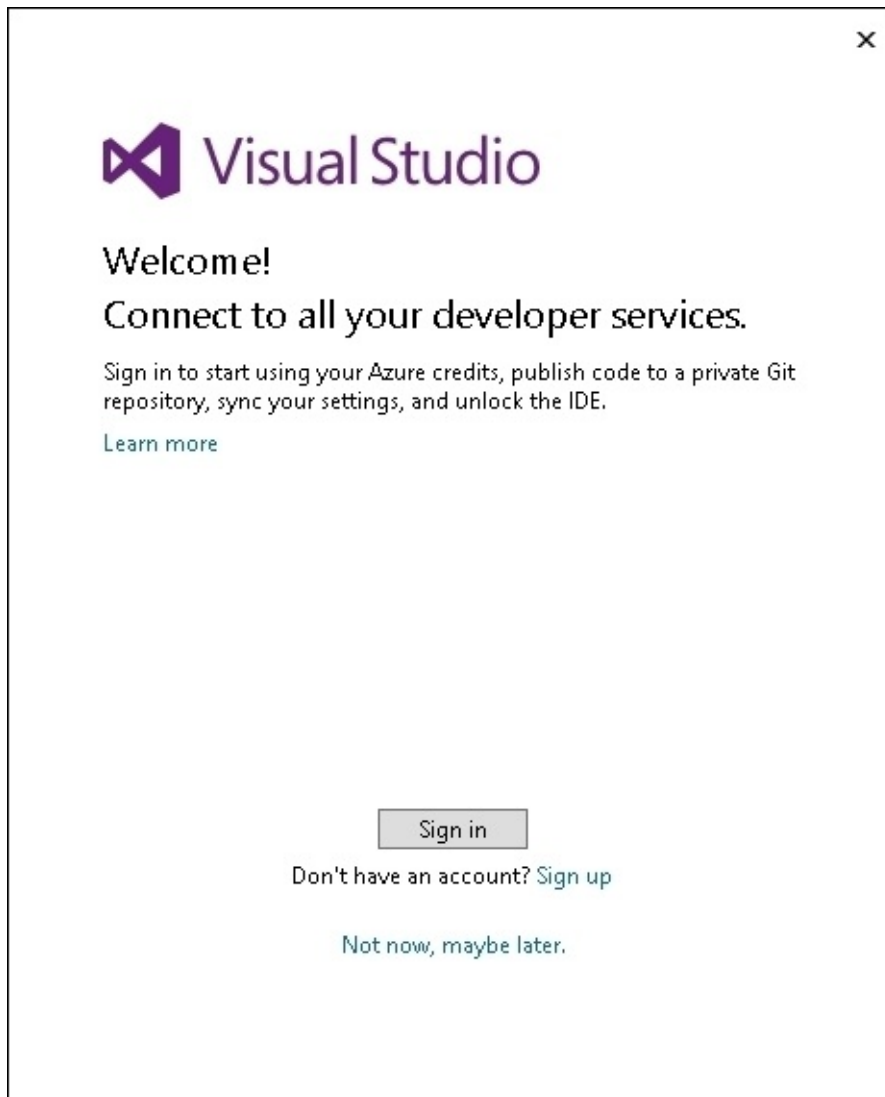
On the license terms dialog, click on **Install**. Wait for the files to download and install.

Tip

While you wait for Visual Studio to install, you can jump to the *Understanding .NET Framework, .NET Core, and .NET Native* section in this chapter.

Signing in to Visual Studio

The first time that you run Visual Studio, you will be prompted to sign in:

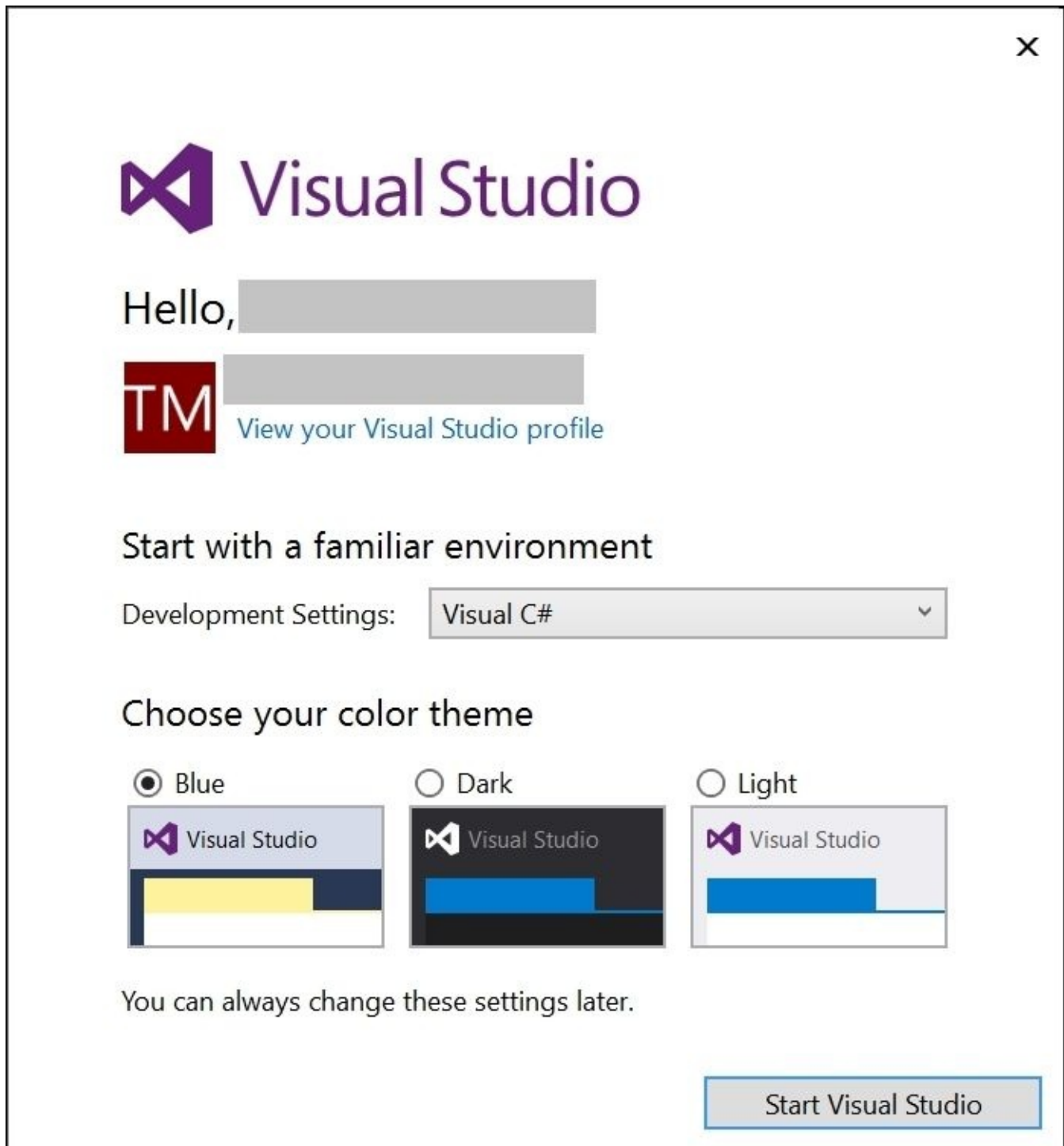


If you have a Microsoft account, for example, a Hotmail, MSN, Live, or Outlook e-mail address, you can use that account. If you don't, then register for a new one at the following link:

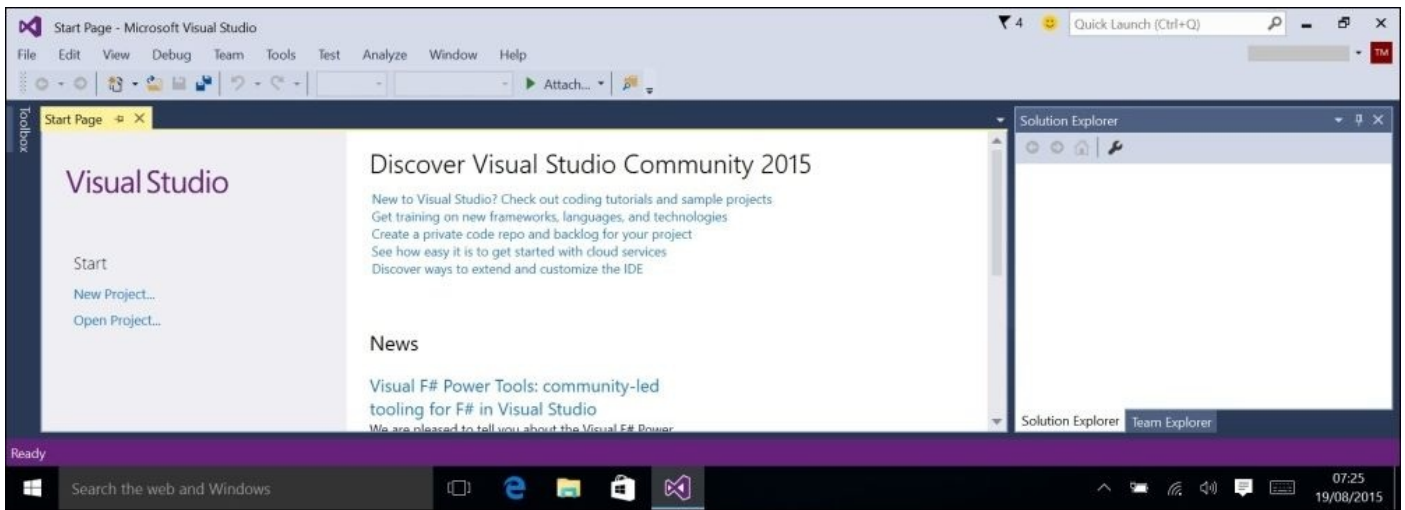
<https://signup.live.com/>

Choosing development settings

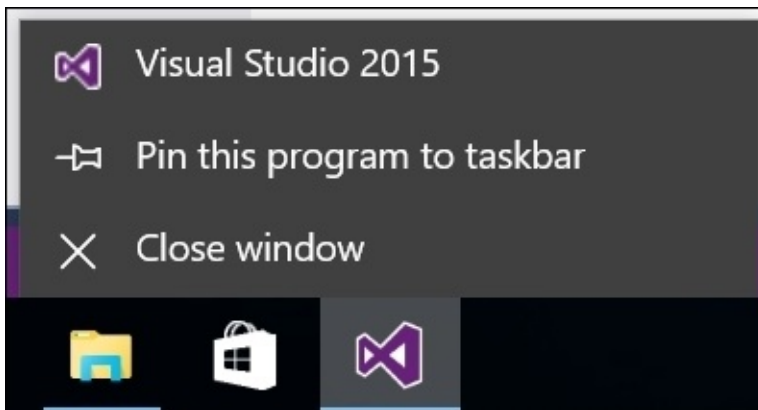
After signing in, you will be prompted to choose **Development Settings**. Choose **Visual C#** to configure keyboard shortcuts and a default window layout that works best for C# programmers, as shown in the following screenshot:



After you click on **Start Visual Studio**, you will see the Visual Studio user interface with the **Start Page** open in the central area. Like most Windows desktop applications, Visual Studio has a menu bar, a toolbar for common commands, and a status bar at the bottom. On the right is the **Solution Explorer** window that will list all of your open projects, as shown in the following screenshot:



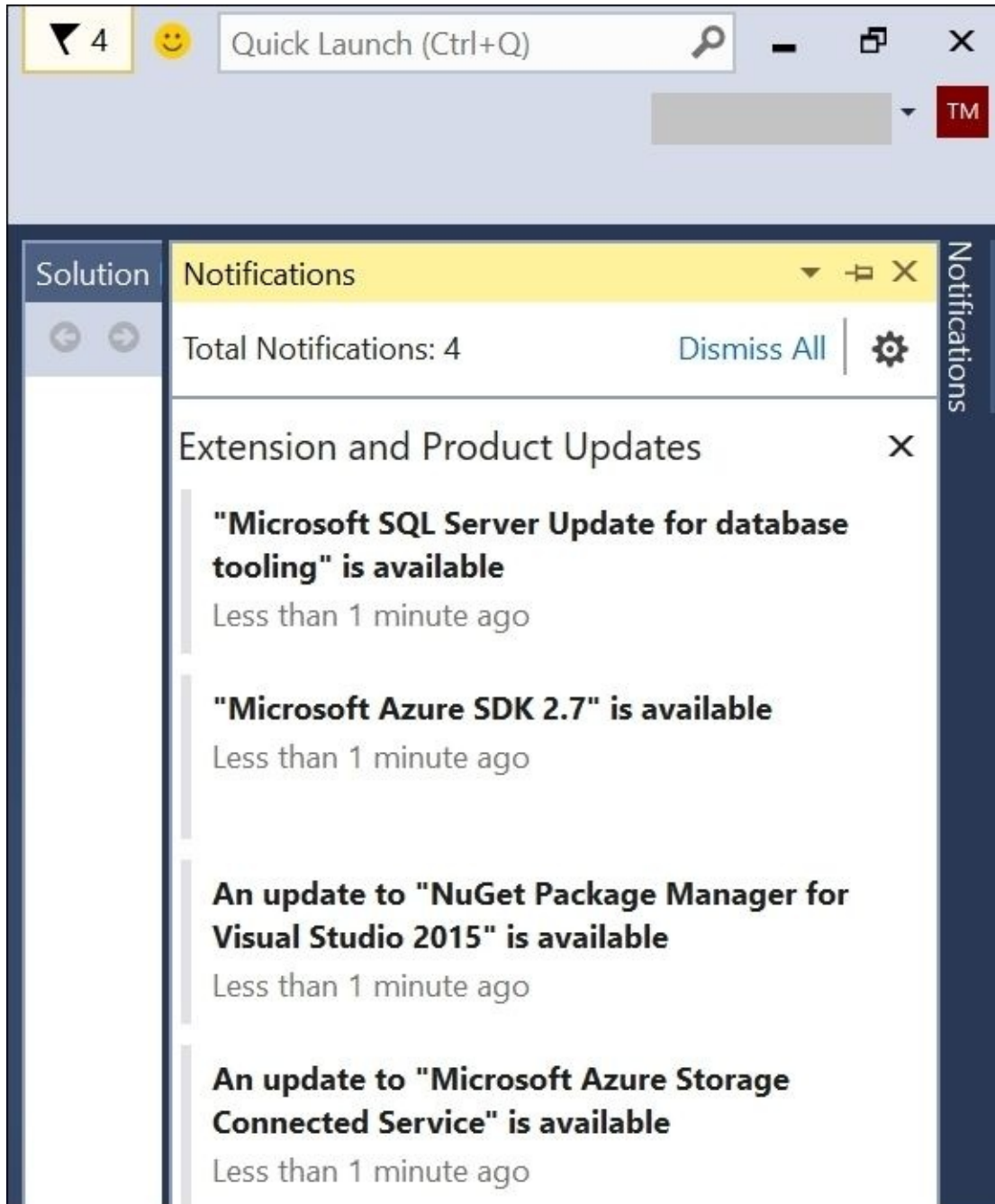
To have quick access to Visual Studio in the future, right-click on its entry in the Windows taskbar and select **Pin this program to taskbar**:



Updating extensions and products

In the top-right corner of Visual Studio, you will see a flag that has a number next to it. These are notifications of extensions and product updates.

Click on the flag to display the **Notifications** window, as shown in the following screenshot:



In the **Notifications** window, click on each entry to install the update. You can install these updates at a later time if you prefer, but it is best to keep your software up-to-date to avoid bugs and security holes. The following screenshot shows an extension downloading and installing:



Microsoft Azure Storage Connected Service

Allows developers to create and connect to Azure Storage accounts easily and with step-by-step guidance.

Update

Download and Install



Downloading...

7.49 MB of 13.1 MB



Cancel

Using older versions of Visual Studio

If you want to use a free version of Visual Studio older than 2015, then you can use one of the more limited Express editions. A lot of the code in this book will work with older versions if you bear in mind when the following features were introduced:

Year	C#	Features
2005	2	Generics with <T>
2008	3	Lambda expressions with => and manipulating sequences with LINQ (from, in, where, orderby, ascending, descending, select, group, into)
2010	4	Dynamic typing with dynamic and multithreading with Task
2012	5	Simplifying multithreading with async and await
2015	6	string interpolation with \$"", importing static types with using static, and other refinements.

Understanding .NET Framework, .NET Core, and .NET Native

.NET Framework, .NET Core, and .NET Native are related platforms for developers to build applications and services upon.

Understanding .NET Framework platform

Microsoft's .NET Framework is a development platform that includes a Common Language Runtime (CLR) that manages the execution of code and a rich library of classes for building applications.

Microsoft designed the .NET Framework to have the possibility of being cross-platform, but Microsoft put their implementation effort into making it work best with Windows.

Practically speaking, the .NET Framework is Windows-only.

Understanding the Mono project

The open source community developed a cross-platform .NET implementation named the Mono project (<http://www.mono-project.com/>).

Mono is cross-platform, but it fell well behind Microsoft's implementation of .NET Framework. It has found a niche as the foundation of the **Xamarin** mobile platform.

Understanding the .NET Core platform

Today, we live in a truly cross-platform world. Modern mobile and cloud development have made Windows a much less important operating system. So, Microsoft has been working on an effort to decouple the .NET Framework from its close ties with Windows.

While rewriting .NET to be truly cross-platform, Microsoft has taken the opportunity to refactor .NET, to remove major parts that are no longer considered “core”.

This new product is branded as the .NET Core 1.0, which includes a cross-platform implementation of the CLR, known as **CoreCLR**, and a streamlined library of classes known as **CoreFX**.

Streamlining .NET

.NET Core 1.0 is much smaller than the current version of the .NET Framework because a *lot* has been removed.

For example, Windows Forms and Windows Presentation Foundation (WPF) can be used to build graphical user interface (GUI) applications, but they are tightly-bound to Windows, so they have been removed from the .NET Core. The latest technology for building Windows apps is the Universal Windows Platform (UWP). You will learn about it in [Chapter 13](#), *Building Universal Windows Platform Apps Using XAML*.

ASP.NET Web Forms and Windows Communication Foundation (WCF) are old web applications and service technologies that fewer developers choose to use today, so they have also been removed from the .NET Core. Instead, developers prefer to use ASP.NET MVC and ASP.NET Web API. These two technologies have been refactored and combined into a new product that runs on the .NET Core, named ASP.NET Core 1.0. You will learn about it in [Chapter 14](#), *Building Web Applications and Services Using ASP.NET Core*.

The Entity Framework (EF) 6.x is an object-relational mapping technology for working with data stored in relational databases, such as Oracle and Microsoft SQL Server. It has gained baggage over the years, so the cross-platform version has been slimmed down and named Entity Framework Core 1.0. You will learn about it in [Chapter 8](#), *Working with Relational Data Using the Entity Framework*.

Some data types in .NET that are included with both the .NET Framework and the .NET Core have been simplified by removing some members. For example, in the .NET Framework, the `File` class has both a `Close` and `Dispose` method, and either can be used to release the file resources. In .NET Core, there is only the `Dispose` method. This reduces the memory footprint of the assembly and simplifies the API.

Tip

The .NET Framework 4.6 is about 200 MB. The .NET Core 1.0 is about 11 MB. Eventually, the .NET Core may grow to a similar larger size. Microsoft’s goal is not to make the .NET Core smaller than the .NET Framework. The goal is to componentize .NET Core to support modern technologies and to have fewer dependencies so that

deployment requires only those components that your application really needs.

The future of .NET

The .NET Core is the future of .NET, but in my opinion, we are not there yet. .NET Core 1.0 is a great start, but it will take another version or two to become as mature as the current version of the .NET Framework.

This book will focus features available in .NET Core, but will use the .NET Framework when features have not (yet) been implemented in the .NET Core.

Tip

One of the reasons we picked this cover image for this book is that you can think of .NET Core as a new dawn for .NET. The .NET Framework has become overgrown, like a dense forest, and the .NET Core is like finding a clearing or glade within it. It's a fresh start.

Understanding the .NET Native platform

Another .NET initiative is .NET Native which compiles C# code to native CPU instructions ahead-of-time (AoT) rather than using the CLR to compile IL just-in-time (JIT) to native code later.

The .NET Native compiler improves execution speed and reduces the memory footprint for applications. It supports the following:

- UWP apps for Windows 10, Windows 10 Mobile, Xbox One, HoloLens, and Internet of Things (IoT) devices such as Raspberry Pi
- Server-side web development with ASP.NET Core 1.0
- Console applications for use on the command line

Comparing .NET technologies

The following table summarizes and compares Microsoft's three .NET technologies:

Platform	Feature set	C# compiles to	Host OSes
.NET Framework	Mature and extensive	Intermediate Language (IL) code	Windows only
.NET Core	Brand-new and somewhat limited		Windows, Linux, Mac OS X, Docker
.NET Native	Brand-new and very limited	Native code	

Writing and compiling code using the Developer Command Prompt

When you install Visual Studio, other tools are installed too. One of those tools is the **Developer Command Prompt for VS2015** that has its path set to find developer tools such as the C# compiler.

Writing code using Notepad

Start Notepad (or your favorite text editor) and enter the following code:

```
class Program { static void Main() { System.Console.  
WriteLine("Hello C#!"); } }
```

You can type the code all on one line or spread it out over multiple lines and indent your lines to make it easier to read.

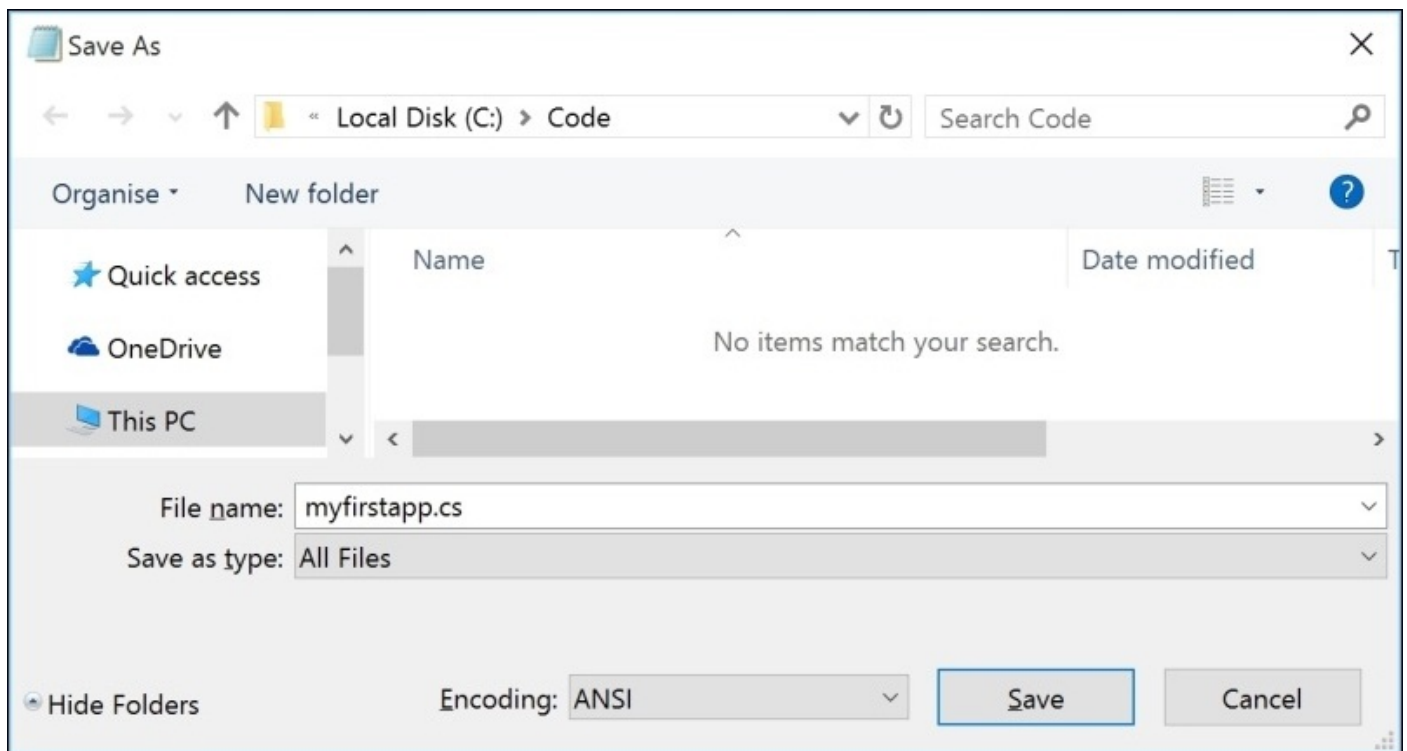
Note

C# is case sensitive, meaning that you must type uppercase and lowercase characters exactly as shown in the preceding code. C# is not whitespace sensitive, meaning that it does not care if you use tabs and spaces and carriage-returns to lay out your code however you like.

From the **File** menu, choose **Save As**.

In the dialog box, change to drive C: (or any drive that you want to use to save your projects), click on the **New Folder** button, and name the folder Code.

In the **Save as type** field, select **All Files** from the drop-down list to avoid appending the .txt file extension, and enter the file name as `myfirstapp.cs`, as shown in the following screenshot:



Your code in Notepad should look something like the following screenshot:

myfirstapp.cs - Notepad

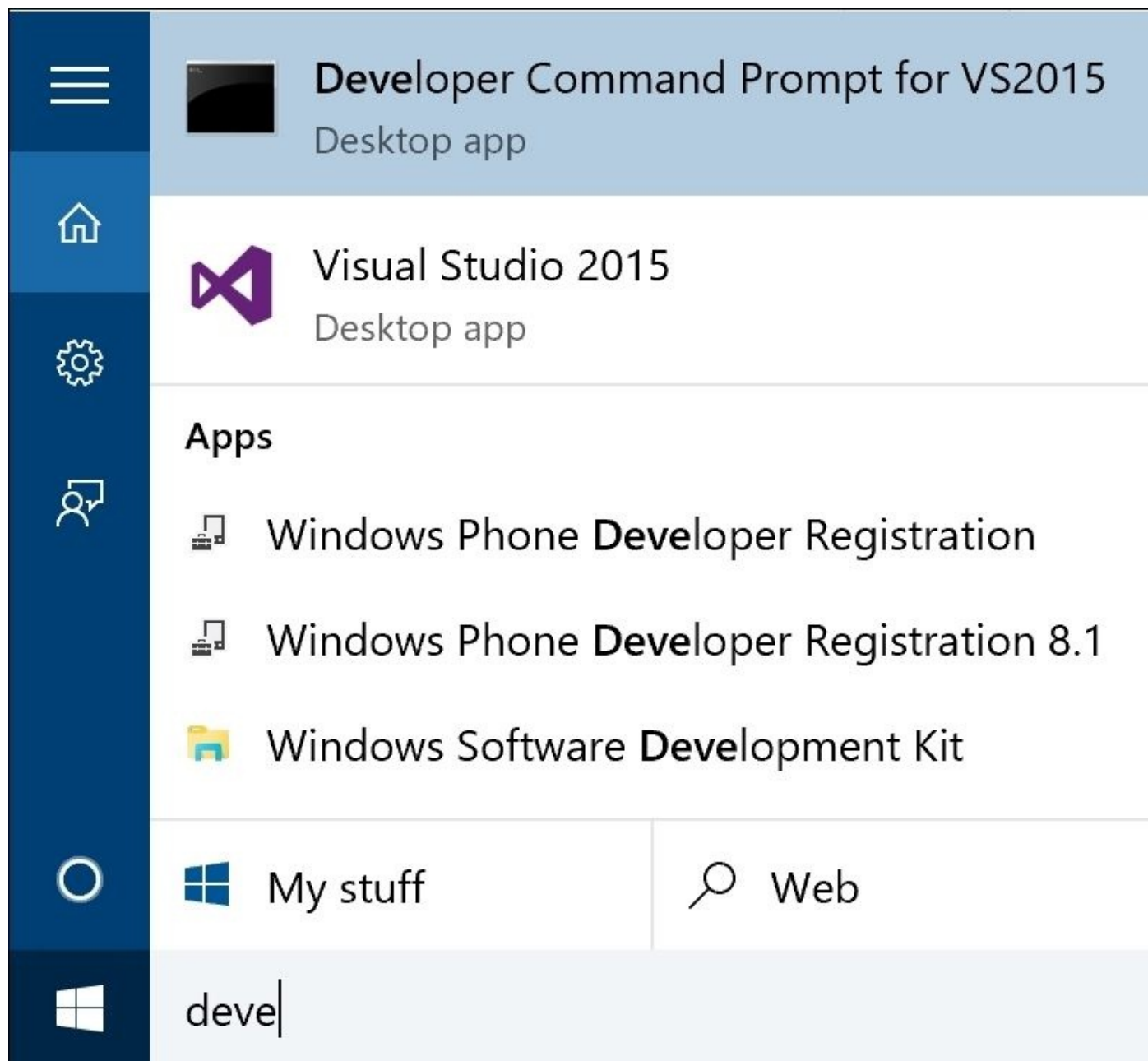


File Edit Format View Help

```
class Program { static void Main() { System.Console.WriteLine("Hello C#!"); } }
```

Compiling code using the Developer Command Prompt

Start the Developer Command Prompt for VS2015 by typing the letters **deve** in the Windows 10 **Search** box, as you can see in the following screenshot. You will also find it on the **Start Menu** or **Start Screen** listed in **All apps** in the **Visual Studio 2015** folder:



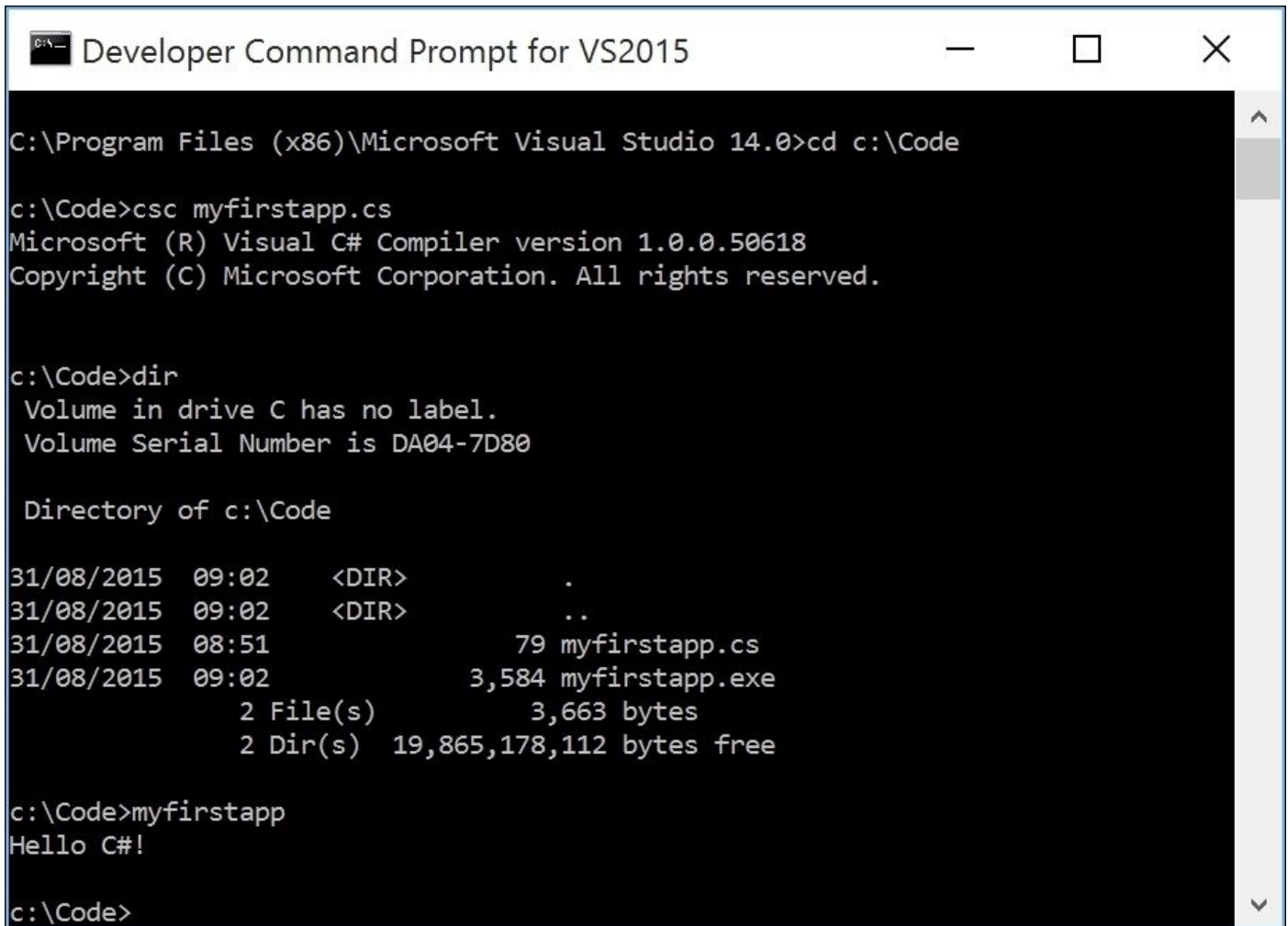
At the Command Prompt, enter the commands to do the following:

- Change to the `C:\Code` folder
- Compile the source code using the C# compiler
- Request a directory listing
- Run the application by entering the name of the EXE

Here are the commands:

```
cd C:\Code
csc myfirstapp.cs
dir
myfirstapp
```

The output in the Command Prompt window should look like this:



```
Developer Command Prompt for VS2015

C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft Visual Studio 14.0>cd c:\Code

c:\Code>csc myfirstapp.cs
Microsoft (R) Visual C# Compiler version 1.0.0.50618
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

c:\Code>dir
Volume in drive C has no label.
Volume Serial Number is DA04-7D80

Directory of c:\Code

31/08/2015  09:02    <DIR>          .
31/08/2015  09:02    <DIR>          ..
31/08/2015  08:51                79 myfirstapp.cs
31/08/2015  09:02               3,584 myfirstapp.exe
                2 File(s)        3,663 bytes
                2 Dir(s)  19,865,178,112 bytes free

c:\Code>myfirstapp
Hello C#!

c:\Code>
```

Note that your source code, the file named `myfirstapp.cs`, has been compiled into an assembly named `myfirstapp.exe`. When you enter the name of the assembly, it is loaded and executed by .NET Framework 4.6 and its CLR.

You can copy the `myfirstapp.exe` file onto any computer with Windows 10 and it will run correctly because all copies of Windows 10 have .NET Framework 4.6 installed. Actually, you can copy the file onto a computer with an older version of Windows as long as it has .NET Framework 4.0 or later installed.

Fixing compiler errors

If the compiler displays errors, read them carefully, and fix them in Notepad. Save your changes and recompile.

Tip

At the Command Prompt, you can press the up and down arrows on your keyboard to cycle through previous commands you have entered.

A typical error might be using the wrong case, a missing semi-colon at the end of a line, or a mismatched pair of curly braces. For example, if you had mistyped a lowercase `m` for the `Main` method you would see this error message:

```
error CS5001: Program does not contain a static 'Main' method suitable for an entry point
```

Decompiling code using ILDASM

The C# compiler converts your source code into Intermediate Language (IL) code and stores the IL in an assembly (a DLL or EXE file).

IL code statements are like assembly language instructions, but they are executed by the .NET virtual machine known as the Common Language Runtime (CLR).

At runtime, the CLR loads the IL code from the assembly, JIT compiles it into native CPU instructions, and then it is executed by the CPU on your machine.

The benefit of this two-step compilation process is that Microsoft can create CLR for Linux and Mac OS X as well as for Windows. The same IL code runs everywhere because of the second compilation process that generates code for the native operating system and CPU instruction set.

Regardless of which language the source is written in, all .NET applications use IL code for their instructions, stored in an assembly. Microsoft provides a tool that can open an assembly and reveal this IL code.

Tip

Actually, not all .NET applications use IL code! Some use the new .NET Native compiler to generate native code instead of IL code, improving performance and reducing memory footprint, but at the cost of portability.

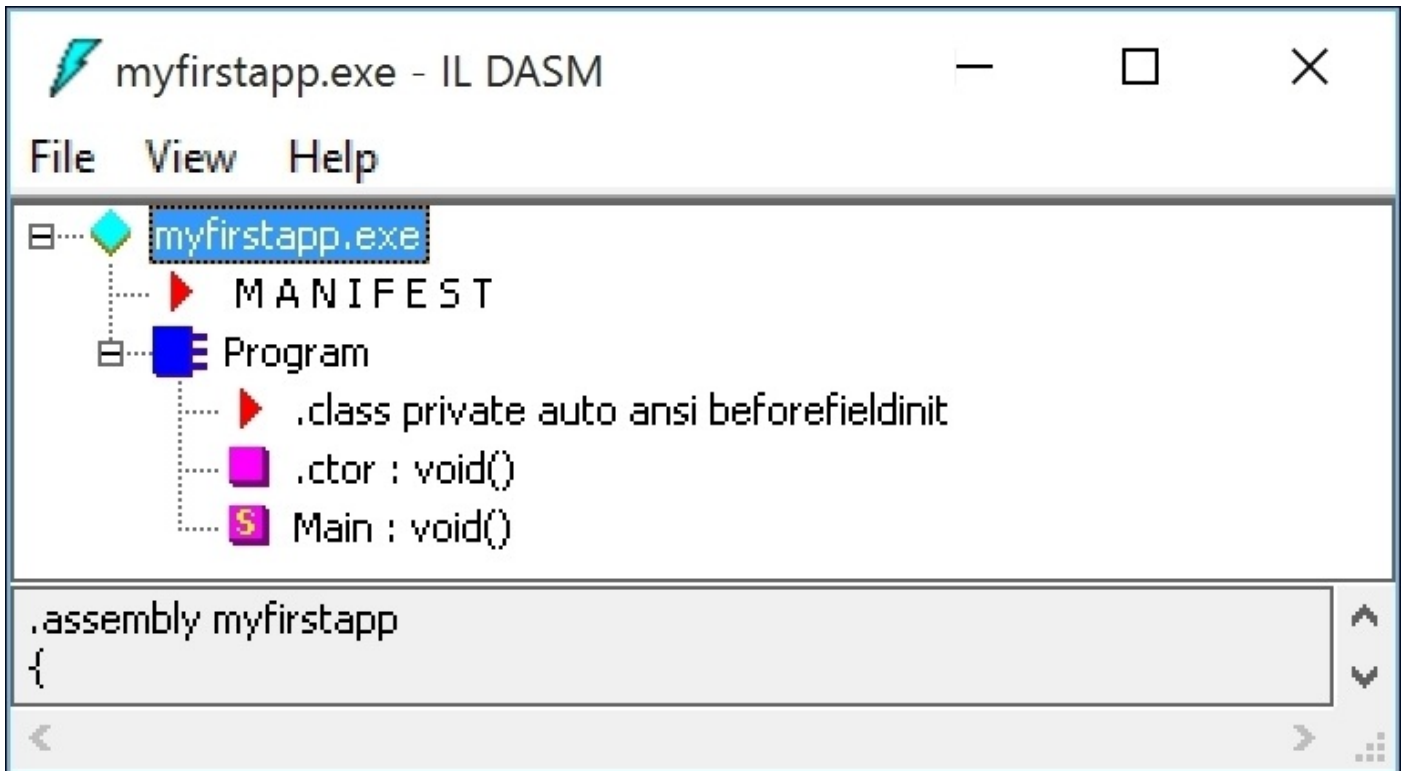
Disassembling compiled assemblies

Disassembling a compiled assembly is an advanced technique. I will walk you through the process, but do not worry about fully understanding what you are seeing yet!

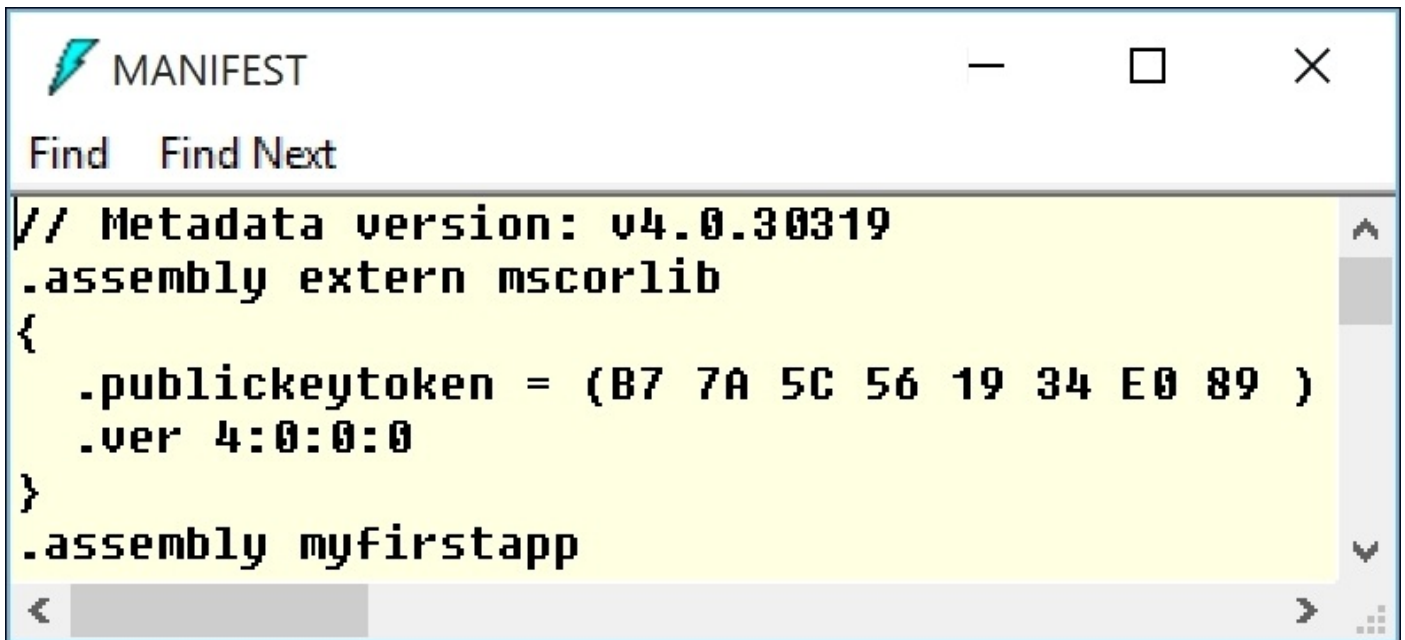
Start the IL Disassembler by entering the following at the Developer Command Prompt:

```
ildasm myfirstapp.exe
```

You will see the **IL DASM** tool with the compiled EXE assembly loaded:



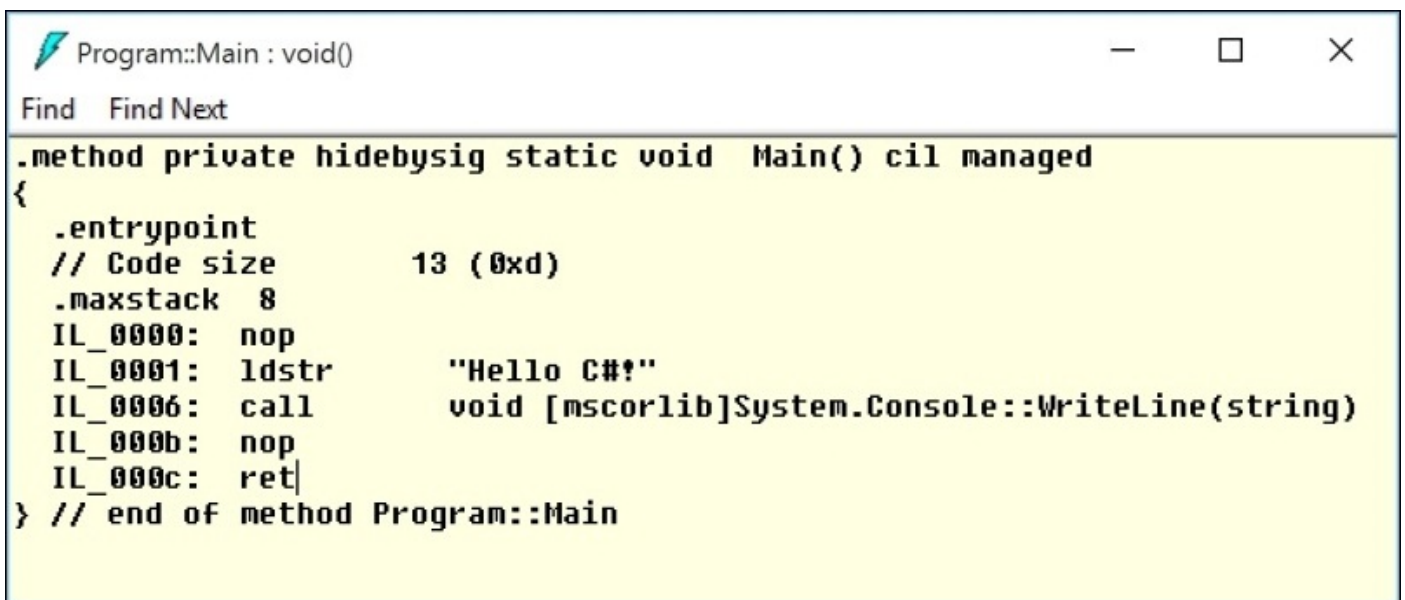
Double-click on **MANIFEST** in the tree view to show the metadata version (4.0.30319) of .NET and the **Microsoft Core Library** (mscorlib) assembly version (4.0.0.0) that this assembly needs to run. The following screenshot tells us that to run this assembly, we would need .NET Framework 4.0 or later installed:



The screenshot shows a window titled "MANIFEST" with a search bar containing "Find" and "Find Next". The main content area displays the following assembly metadata:

```
// Metadata version: v4.0.30319
.assembly extern mscorlib
{
    .publickeytoken = (B7 7A 5C 56 19 34 E0 89 )
    .ver 4:0:0:0
}
.assembly myfirstapp
```

Close the MANIFEST window, expand **Program**, and then double-click on the **Main** method. Note the IL instructions: `ldstr` (load string), `nop` (no operation), and `ret` (return). Remember that IL is an assembly language that is executed by the .NET CLR:



The screenshot shows a window titled "Program::Main : void()" with a search bar containing "Find" and "Find Next". The main content area displays the following IL instructions:

```
.method private hidebysig static void Main() cil managed
{
    .entrypoint
    // Code size          13 (0xd)
    .maxstack 8
    IL_0000: nop
    IL_0001: ldstr          "Hello C#!"
    IL_0006: call           void [mscorlib]System.Console::WriteLine(string)
    IL_000b: nop
    IL_000c: ret
} // end of method Program::Main
```

Anyone can use this tool to see any .NET assembly's IL code. Don't panic! This is not a reason to avoid C#.

All applications are lists of instructions that must be visible to the machine that runs it. If the machine can read these instructions, so can anything else. Therefore, all software can be reverse-engineered. It's just a matter of the effort required. .NET just happens to make it *very* easy!

Tip

ILSpy is a popular open source tool that does everything IL DASM does and can also

reverse-engineer the IL code into C# or Visual Basic .NET source code. I used this tool for a client who had lost the source code for an assembly and needed to recover it!

Writing and compiling code using Microsoft Visual Studio 2015

We will now recreate the same application using Microsoft Visual Studio 2015.

I have been training students to use Visual Studio for over a decade, and I am always surprised at how many programmers fail to use the tool to their advantage.

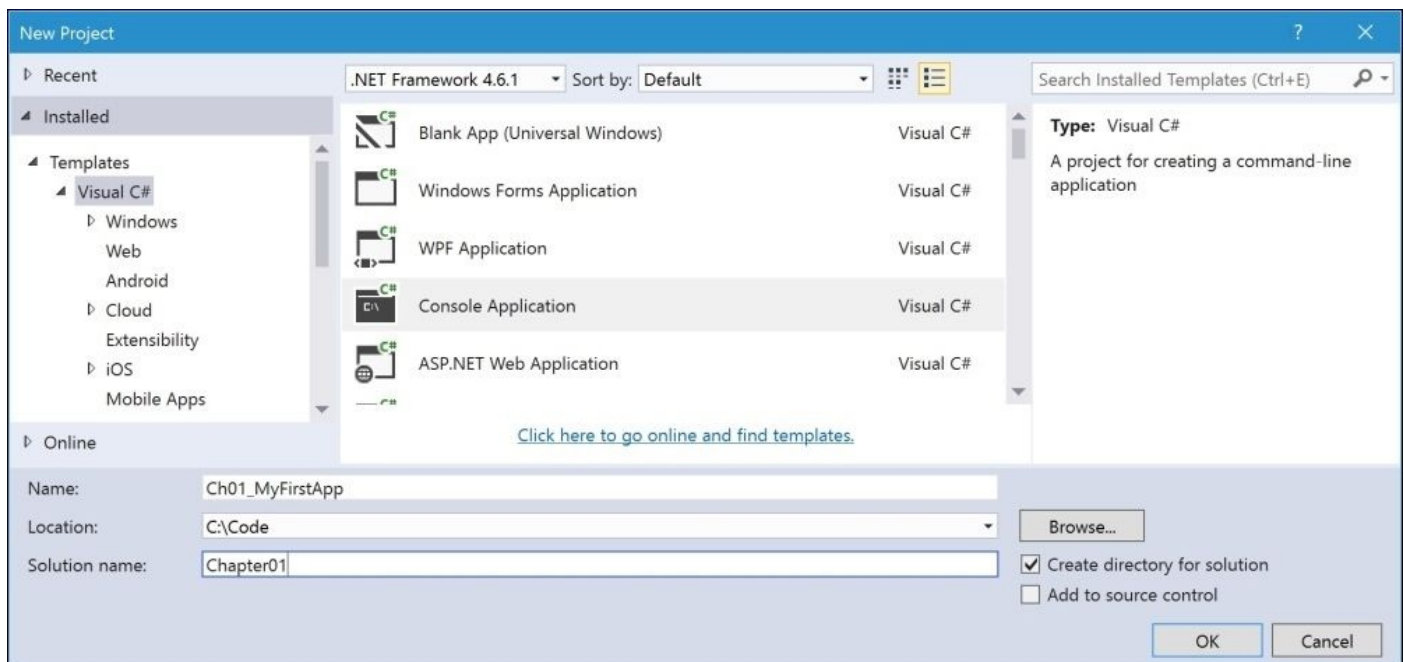
Over the next few pages, I will slowly walk you through typing a line of code. It may seem redundant, but you will benefit from seeing what help and information Visual Studio provides as you enter your code. If you want to become a fast, accurate coder, letting Visual Studio write most of your code for you is a huge benefit!

Writing code using Visual Studio 2015

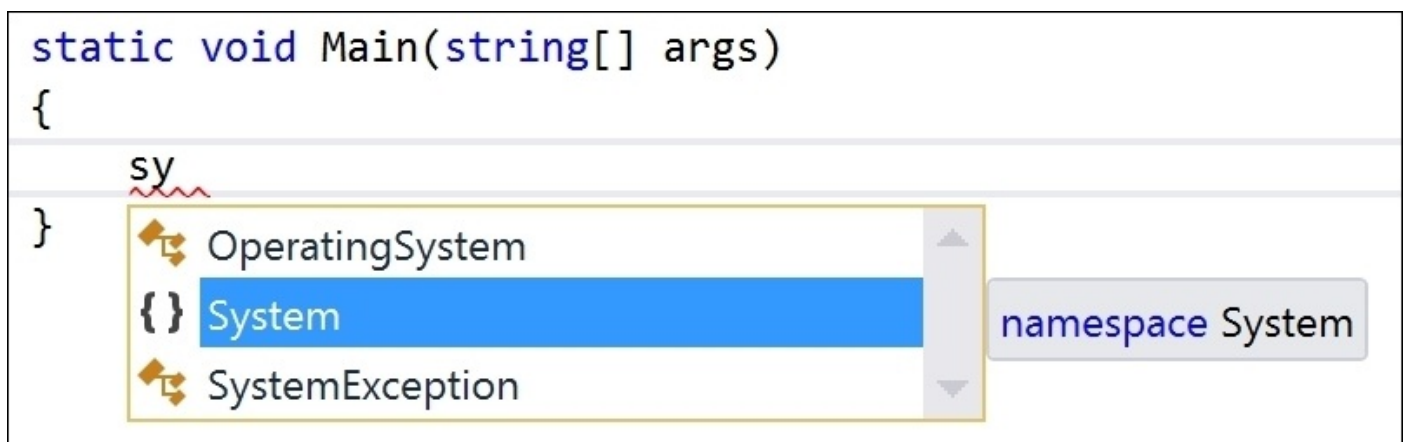
Start Microsoft Visual Studio 2015.

Navigate to **File | New | Project** menu or press *Ctrl + Shift + N*.

At the top of the **New Project** dialog box, choose **.NET Framework 4.6.1** (or later). From the **Installed Templates** list on the left, choose **Visual C#**. In the list at the center, choose **Console Application**. Enter the name **Ch01_MyFirstApp**, set the location to **C:\Code**, enter **Chapter01** as the solution name, and click on **OK** or press *Enter*:



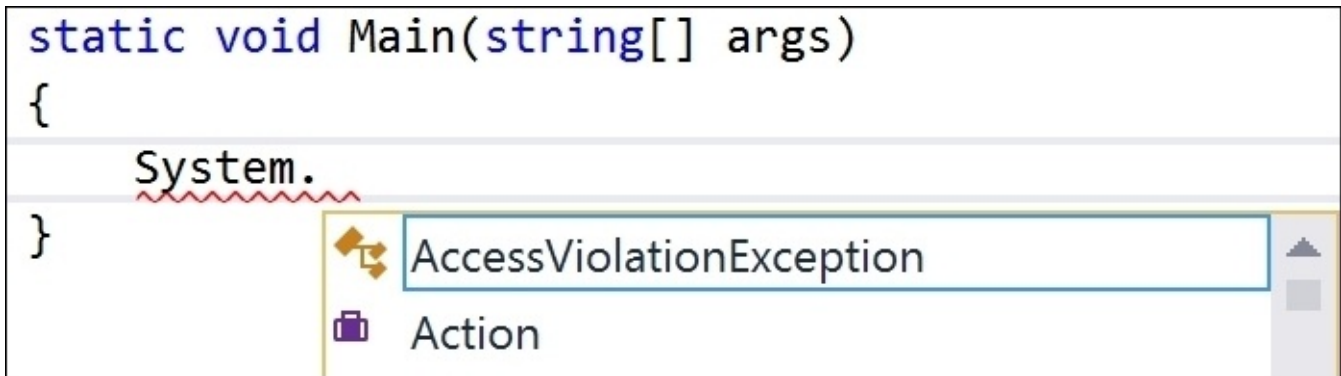
In the code editor, inside the `Main` method, press *Enter* to insert a new line between the innermost braces `{ }`, and then type the letters `sy`, as you can see in the following screenshot:



Note that IntelliSense shows a list of **keywords**, **namespaces**, and **types** that contain the letters `sy`, and highlights the first one that starts with `sy`, which happens to be the namespace that we want—`System`.

Type a dot (also known as decimal point or full stop). IntelliSense automatically completes the word **System** for you, enters the dot, and displays a list of types and namespaces, such as `AccessViolationException` and `Action`, in the `System` namespace, as shown in the following screenshot:

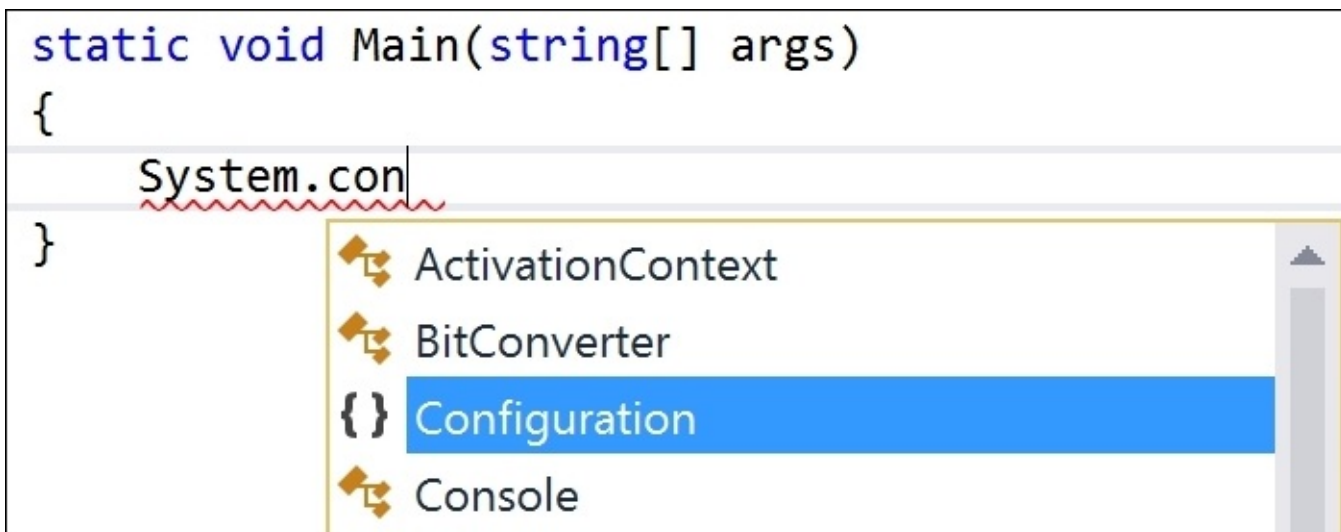
```
static void Main(string[] args)
{
    System.
}
```



The screenshot shows a code editor with a `static void Main(string[] args)` method. The cursor is at the end of the opening curly brace. The text `System.` is entered, and a red squiggly line is under the dot. A dropdown menu is open, showing two items: `AccessViolationException` (with a wrench icon) and `Action` (with a folder icon).

Type the letters `con` and IntelliSense shows a list of matching types and namespaces:

```
static void Main(string[] args)
{
    System.con
}
```

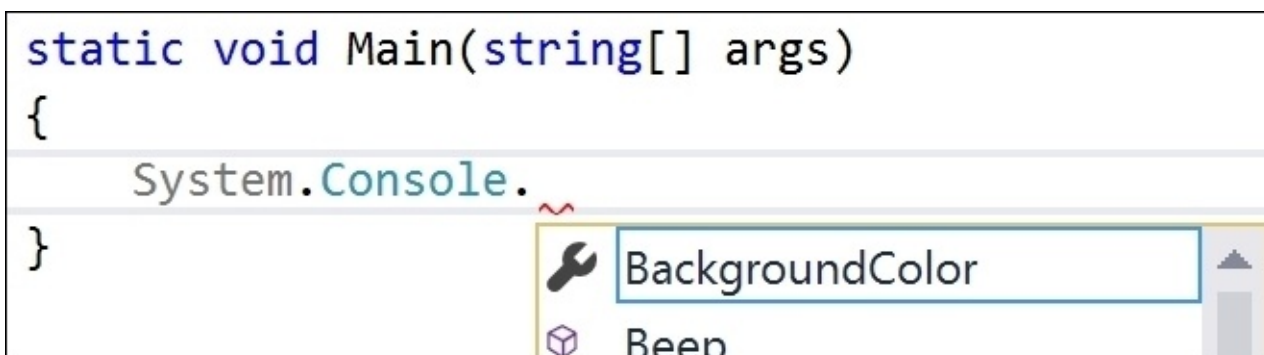


The screenshot shows the same code editor. The text `System.con` is entered, and a red squiggly line is under the `con`. A dropdown menu is open, showing four items: `ActivationContext` (wrench icon), `BitConverter` (wrench icon), `Configuration` (bracket icon), and `Console` (wrench icon). The `Configuration` item is currently highlighted with a blue background.

Press the down arrow on your keyboard to highlight **Console**, and then type a dot.

IntelliSense shows a list of the members of the `Console` class:

```
static void Main(string[] args)
{
    System.Console.
}
```



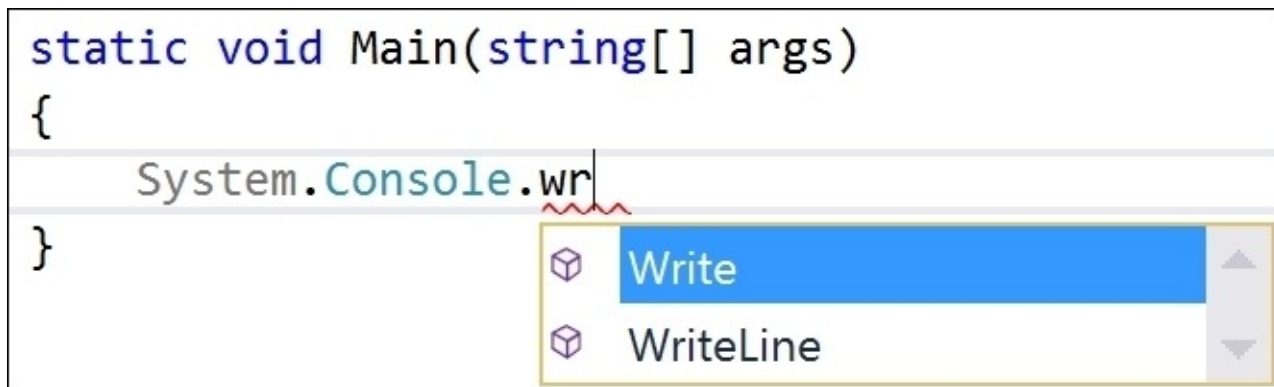
The screenshot shows the code editor with `System.Console.` entered. A red squiggly line is under the dot. A dropdown menu is open, showing two items: `BackgroundColor` (wrench icon) and `Beep` (cube icon).

Tip

Members include properties (attributes of an object, such as `BackgroundColor`), methods (actions the object can perform, such as `Beep`), and other related things.

Type the letters `wr`. IntelliSense shows two matching members containing these letters:

```
static void Main(string[] args)
{
    System.Console.wr
}
```

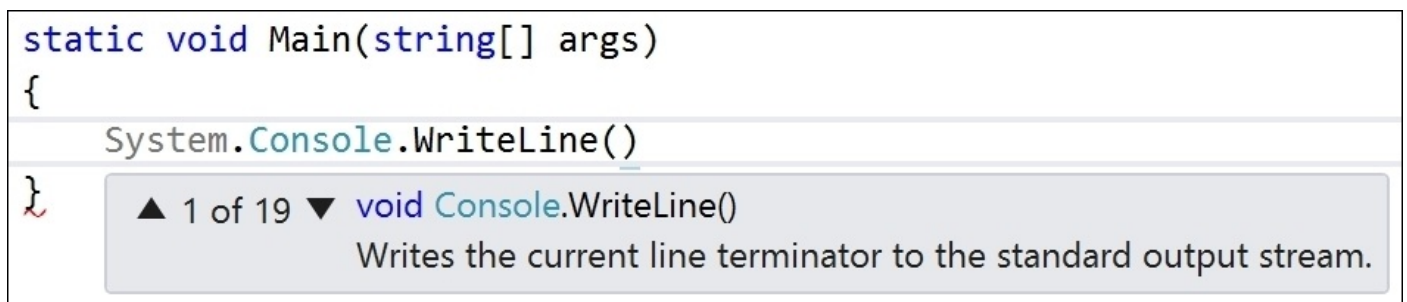


Use the down arrow to highlight **WriteLine** and then type an open parenthesis (`.`).

IntelliSense autocompletes `writeLine` and enters a pair of parentheses.

You will also see a tooltip telling you that the `writeLine` method has 19 variations:

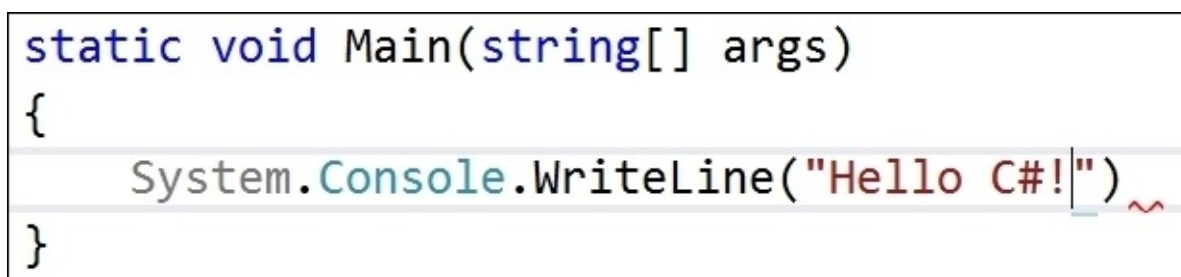
```
static void Main(string[] args)
{
    System.Console.WriteLine()
}
```



Type a double quote (`"`). IntelliSense enters a pair of double quotes for you and leaves the keyboard cursor in between them.

Type the text `Hello C#!`, as shown in the following screenshot:

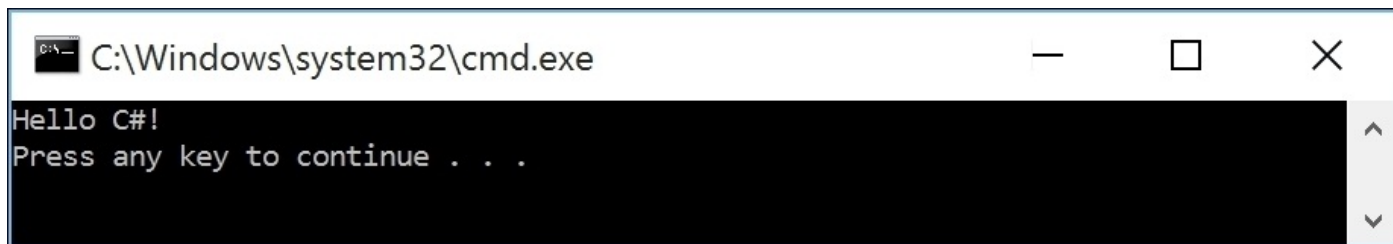
```
static void Main(string[] args)
{
    System.Console.WriteLine("Hello C#!")
}
```



The red squiggle at the end of the line indicates an error, because every C# statement must end in a semicolon. Move the cursor to the end of the line by pressing `End`, and type a semicolon to fix the error.

Compiling code using Visual Studio

From the **Debug** menu, choose **Start Without Debugging** or press *Ctrl + F5*. Your completed application runs in a console window and closes when you press any key:

A screenshot of a Windows command prompt window. The title bar shows the path 'C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe'. The window content displays the text 'Hello C#!' followed by 'Press any key to continue . . .' on the next line. The text is white on a black background. There are standard window control buttons (minimize, maximize, close) in the top right corner.

```
C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe
Hello C#!
Press any key to continue . . .
```

To save space and to make the output clearer, I will usually not include screenshots of output from console applications as I did previously. Instead, I will show the output like this:

Hello C#!

Fixing mistakes with the error list

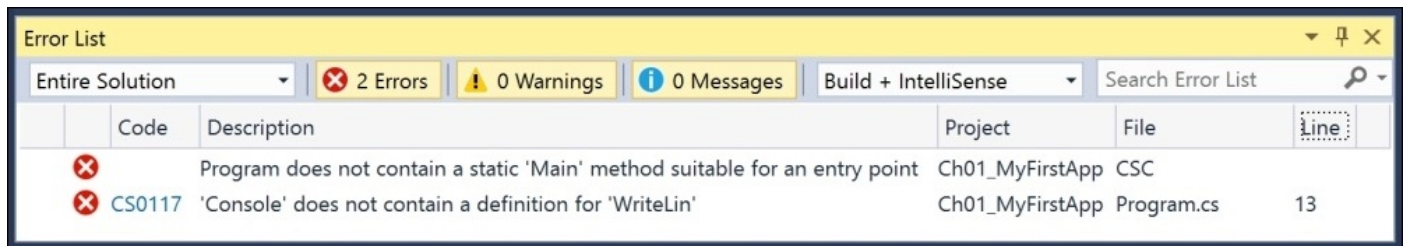
Let's make two deliberate errors.

Change the `M` of the `Main` method to the lowercase letter `m`.

Delete the `e` at the end of the method name `writeLine`.

On the **Build** menu, choose **Build Ch01_MyFirstApp** or press *Shift + F6*.

After a few seconds, the status bar tells us that the build failed and the error list is activated. You can also view the error list by pressing *Ctrl + W, E*:



The **Error List** can be filtered to show **Errors**, **Warnings**, and informational **Messages** by clicking on the toggle buttons at the top of the window.

If an error shows the line number, for example Line 13 in the preceding screenshot, then you can double-click on the error to jump to the line causing the problem.

If it's a more general error, such as the missing `Main` method, the compiler can't tell you the line number. You might want a method named `main` as well as a method named `Main` (remember that C# is case sensitive so you're allowed to do that).

Fix the two (as shown in the preceding screenshot) errors before you continue. Note that the error list updates to show no errors.

Experimenting with C# Interactive

Although Visual Studio has always had an **Immediate** window with limited **REPL (read-eval-print loop)** support, Visual Studio 2015 with Update 1 includes an enhanced window with full IntelliSense and color syntax code, named C# Interactive.

On the **View** menu, choose **Other Windows**, and then **C# Interactive**.

We will write some interactive code to download the About page from Microsoft's public website.

Tip

This is just an example. You don't need to understand the code yet!

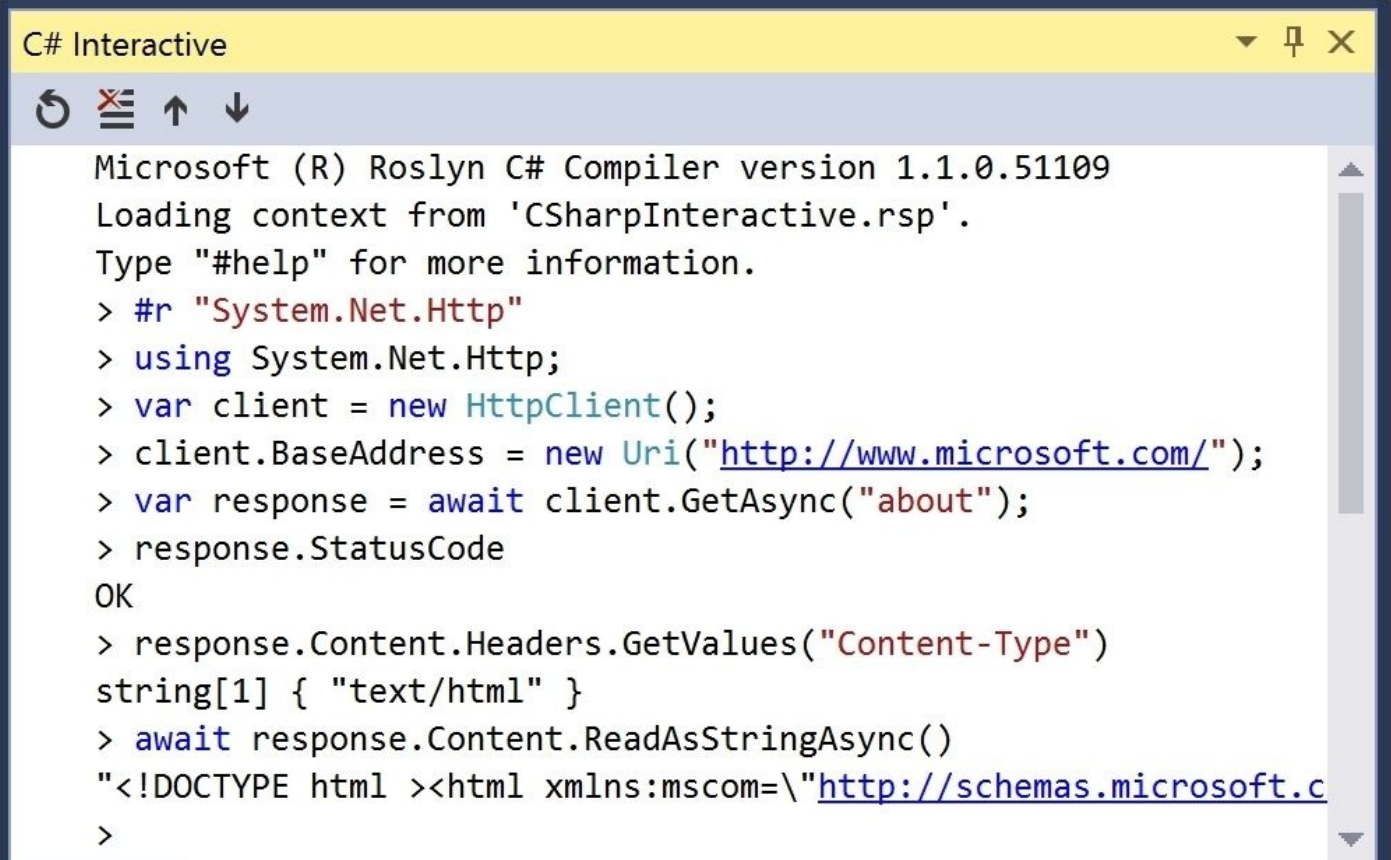
At the **C# Interactive** prompt, we will enter commands to do the following:

- Reference the `System.Net.Http` assembly
- Import the `System.Net.Http` namespace
- Declare and instantiate an HTTP client variable
- Set the client's base address to Microsoft's website
- Wait asynchronously for a response to a GET request for the About page
- Read the status code returned by the web server
- Read the content type header
- Read the contents of the HTML page as a string

Type each of the following commands after the `>` prompt and then press *Enter*:

```
> #r "System.Net.Http"
> using System.Net.Http;
> var client = new HttpClient();
> client.BaseAddress = new Uri("http://www.microsoft.com/");
> var response = await client.GetAsync("about");
> response.StatusCode
OK
> response.Content.Headers.GetValues("Content-Type")
string[1] { "text/html" }
> await response.Content.ReadAsStringAsync()
"<!DOCTYPE html ><html
xmlns:mscom="http://schemas.microsoft.com/CMSvNext\"
xmlns:md="http://schemas.microsoft.com/mscom-data\" lang="en\"
xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1999/xhtml\"><head><meta http-equiv="X-UA-
Compatible\" content="IE=edge\" /><meta charset="utf-8\" /><meta
name="viewport\" content="width=device-width, initial-scale=1.0\" /><link
rel="shortcut icon\" href="//www.microsoft.com/favicon.ico?v2\" /><script
type="text/javascript\"
src="http://ajax.aspnetcdn.com/ajax/jquery/jquery-1.7.2.min.js\">\r\n
// Third party scripts and code linked to or referenced from this website
are licensed to you by the parties that own such code, not by Microsoft.
See ASP.NET Ajax CDN Terms of Use -
http://www.asp.net/ajaxlibrary/CDN.ashx.\r\n    </script><script
type="text/javascript\" language="javascript\">/*!
[CDATA[*if($(document).bind("mobileinit",function()
{$.mobile.autoInitializePage=!1}),navigator.userAgent.match(/IEMobile\\/10\
```

```
\.0/))){var msViewportStyle=document.createElement(\"style...
```



```
C# Interactive
```

```
Microsoft (R) Roslyn C# Compiler version 1.1.0.51109  
Loading context from 'CSharpInteractive.rsp'.  
Type "#help" for more information.  
> #r "System.Net.Http"  
> using System.Net.Http;  
> var client = new HttpClient();  
> client.BaseAddress = new Uri("http://www.microsoft.com/");  
> var response = await client.GetAsync("about");  
> response.StatusCode  
OK  
> response.Content.Headers.GetValues("Content-Type")  
string[1] { "text/html" }  
> await response.Content.ReadAsStringAsync()  
"<!DOCTYPE html ><html xmlns:mscom=\"http://schemas.microsoft.c  
>
```

100 %











C# Interactive Package Manage... Error List Output Find Results 1 Task Runner Expl...

Other useful windows

Visual Studio has lots of other useful windows, including the following:

- The **Solution Explorer** window for managing all the projects and files you work on
- The **Team Explorer** window for source code management tools, such as GitHub
- The **Server Explorer** window for managing database connections

If you ever can't see a window you need, go to the **View** menu to make it reappear or learn its keyboard shortcut, as shown here:

View	Project	Build	Debug	Team	Tools
<>	Code			F7	
	Solution Explorer			Ctrl+W, S	
	Team Explorer			Ctrl+`, Ctrl+M	
	Server Explorer			Ctrl+W, L	
	SQL Server Object Explorer			Ctrl+`, Ctrl+S	
	Call Hierarchy			Ctrl+W, K	
	Class View			Ctrl+W, C	
	Code Definition Window			Ctrl+W, D	
	Object Browser			Ctrl+W, J	
	Error List			Ctrl+W, E	
	Output			Ctrl+W, O	

Tip

If your keyboard shortcuts are different from the ones in the preceding screenshot, it is because you picked a different set when you installed Visual Studio. You can reset your keyboard shortcuts to match the ones used in this book by clicking on the **Tools** menu, then clicking on **Import and Export Settings...**, choosing **Reset all settings**, and then choosing to reset to the **Visual C#** settings collection.

Targeting the .NET Core

For 15 years, .NET programmers have been targeting the .NET Framework, so there are many projects that may need to move from Windows-only to cross-platform by retargeting to the .NET Core.

Understanding the .NET Portability Analyzer

To ensure that a project will work cross-platform, we can install and run the Visual Studio 2015 extension named .NET Portability Analyzer.

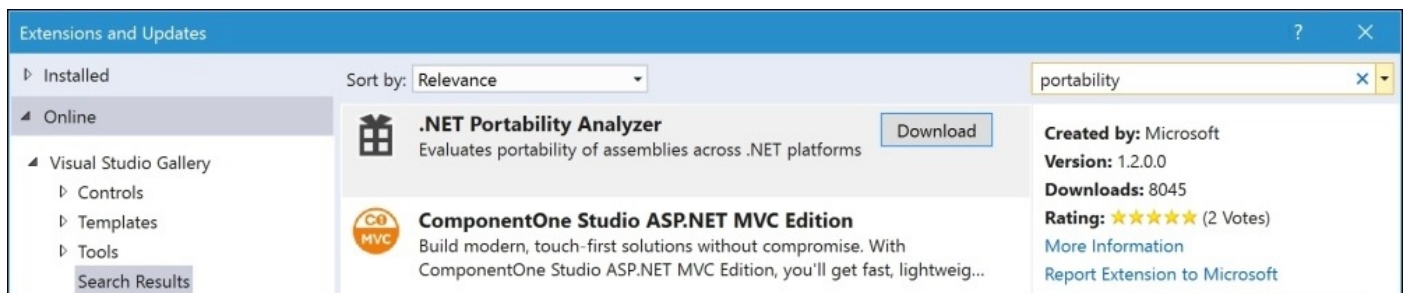
It allows you to choose multiple platforms that you would like to target and then scans your compiled assemblies, passes a list of the types and methods that you use to a web service, and produces a report that lists which ones are not supported on each platform along with recommendations for fixes.

Installing the .NET Portability Analyzer

In Visual Studio, go to the **Tools** menu and choose **Extensions and Updates....**

On the left-hand side of the dialog, click on **Online**. In the **Search Visual Studio Gallery** box, type **portability** and press *Enter*.

Click on the **.NET Portability Analyzer** entry and then click on the **Download** button. Once the extension is installed, restart Visual Studio:



Configuring the .NET Portability Analyzer

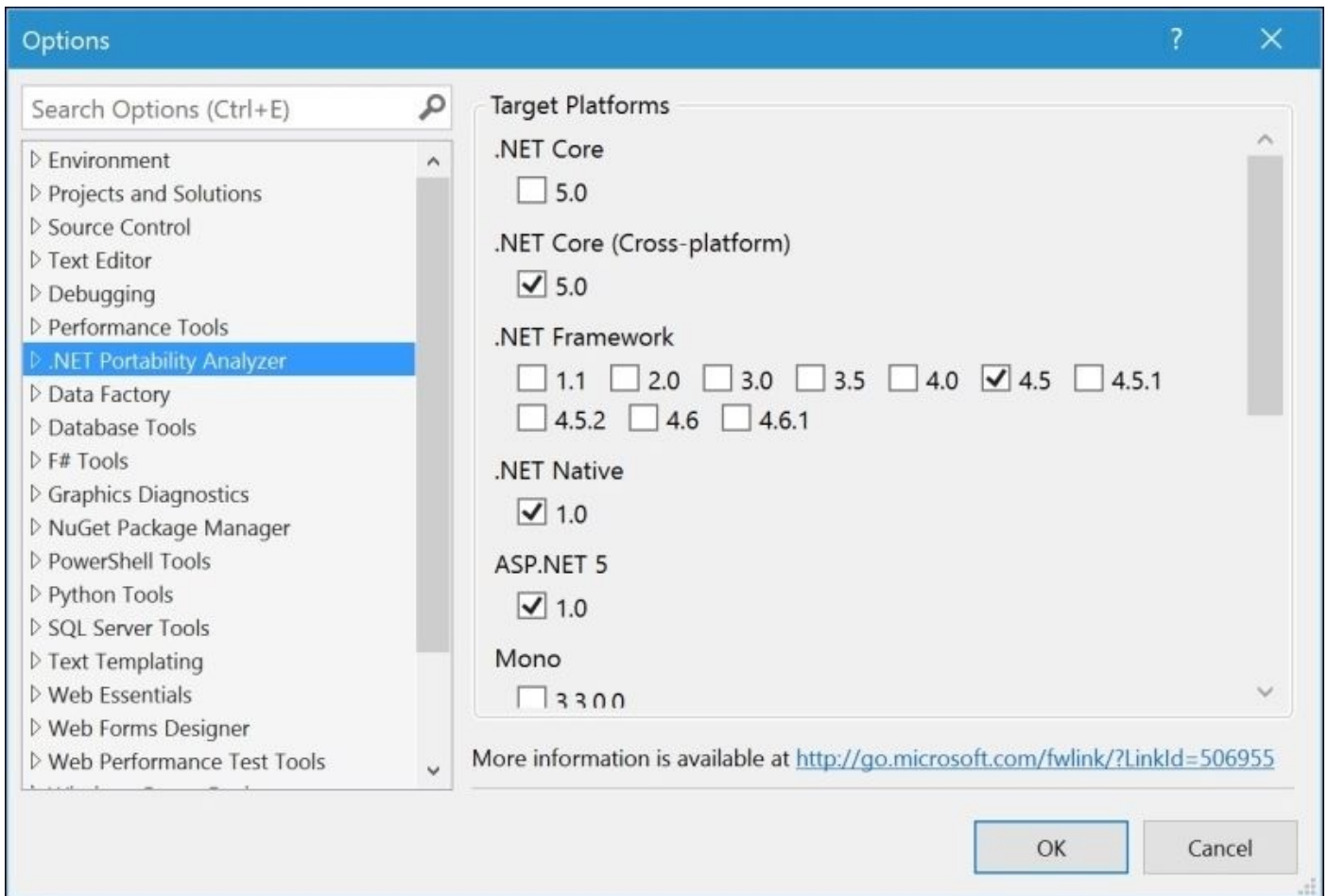
In Visual Studio, go to the **Tools** menu and choose **Options**.

In the **Options** dialog box, scroll down through the left-hand side list and choose **.NET Portability Analyzer**. In the **Target Platforms** section, deselect everything except for the following:

- .NET Core (Cross-platform) 1.0 (shown as 5.0 in the following screenshot)
- .NET Framework 4.5
- .NET Native 1.0
- ASP.NET Core 1.0 (shown as ASP.NET 5 in the screenshot below):

Tip

Microsoft Azure has a Platform-as-a-Service (PaaS) feature named Cloud Services, which is limited to the .NET Framework 4.5; this is why it is a common target platform to check with the analyzer.



Analyzing a solution

In Visual Studio, open the previous solution, named **Chapter01**. In the **Solution Explorer** window, right-click on the project named **Ch01_MyFirstApp** (not the solution), choose **Analyze**, and then choose **Analyze Assembly Portability**.

After a few seconds, a report will display in the main area.

Tip

Be patient with the .NET Portability Analyzer because it has to send data to a web service and wait for a response.

Note that the `Console` class in the `System` namespace and its `writeLine` method are supported by the following:

- .NET Core (Cross-Platform) 1.0 (shown as 5.0 in the following screenshot)
- .NET Framework 4.5
- ASP.NET Core 1.0 (shown as ASP.NET 5 in the following screenshot)

However, it is not supported by .NET Native 1.0:

.NET Portability Report

Submission Id c5a18f49-a75c-49bc-b3ef-fb17ed93ca81

Contents

- [Portability Summary](#)

Portability Summary

Assembly	.NET Core (Cross-platform),Version=v5.0	.NET Framework,Version=v4.5	.NET Native,Version=v1.0	ASP.NET 5,Version=v1.0
Ch01_MyFirstApp, Version=1.0.0.0, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=null (.NETFramework,Version=v4.6)	100.00 %	100.00 %	93.94 %	100.00 %

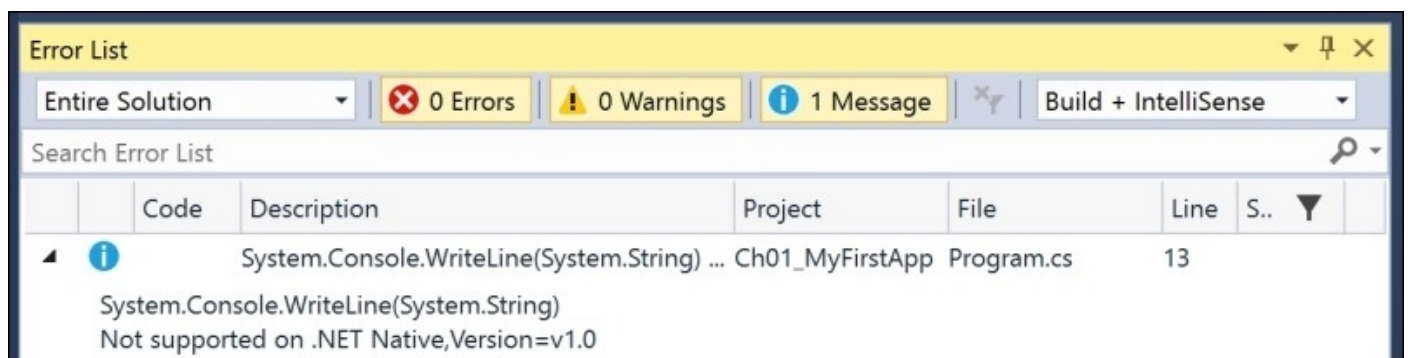
Ch01_MyFirstApp, Version=1.0.0.0, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=null (.NETFramework,Version=v4.6)

Target type	.NET Core (Cross-platform),Version=v5.0	.NET Framework,Version=v4.5	.NET Native,Version=v1.0	ASP.NET 5,Version=v1.0	Recommended changes
System.Console	✓	✓	✗	✓	
WriteLine (System.String)	✓	✓	✗	✓	

Note

At the time of writing this, the .NET Portability Analyzer has not been updated to show the new version branding for .NET Core and related products, which can be found at <http://www.hanselman.com/blog/ASPNET5IsDeadIntroducingASPNETCore10AndNETCore>

Press *Ctrl + W, E* to view the error list, which has also been populated. As we saw earlier, double-clicking on an error will jump the code editor to the line that could cause an issue:



.NET Portability and this book

I used the .NET Portability Analyzer while writing all the code in this book to ensure that, whenever possible, I can show you code that will work cross-platform using the .NET Core 1.0. If there are useful features that aren't cross-platform yet, then I will point that out in the text. Hopefully, they will be implemented in .NET Core in future versions.

Creating new projects for the .NET Core

Let's recreate the console application, but this time, target the .NET Core from the start.

Managing .NET Core development with Command Line Tools

There are two sets of command-line tools that you can use to manage the .NET Core:

- **.NET Version Manager, .NET Execution Environment, .NET Development Utilities** (dnvm, dnx, dnu): These were used by Microsoft during the initial development of the .NET Core between 2013 and 2015. They are installed as part of Visual Studio 2015. These tools will be deprecated with the final release of the .NET Core.
- **.NET CLI** (dotnet): This is a driver, which will be used by the final release of the .NET Core. It provides a simplified layer on top of other underlying tools. The .NET CLI must be installed separately.

Tip

At the time of writing, the DNX tools are more advanced than the .NET CLI, so in [Chapter 15, Taking C# Cross-Platform](#), I will need to show you how to use both sets of tools. For this chapter, we can use the newer CLI tool because we are only using basic features. I recommend that you browse <http://cs6dotnetcore.azurewebsites.net/> for information about changes between the time of writing this book and the release of the final versions of .NET Core 1.0 and its related technologies and tools.

Installing the .NET Command Line Tools

First, we must install the .NET Command Line Tools (CLI).

Start Microsoft Edge and go to the <https://github.com/dotnet/cli>.

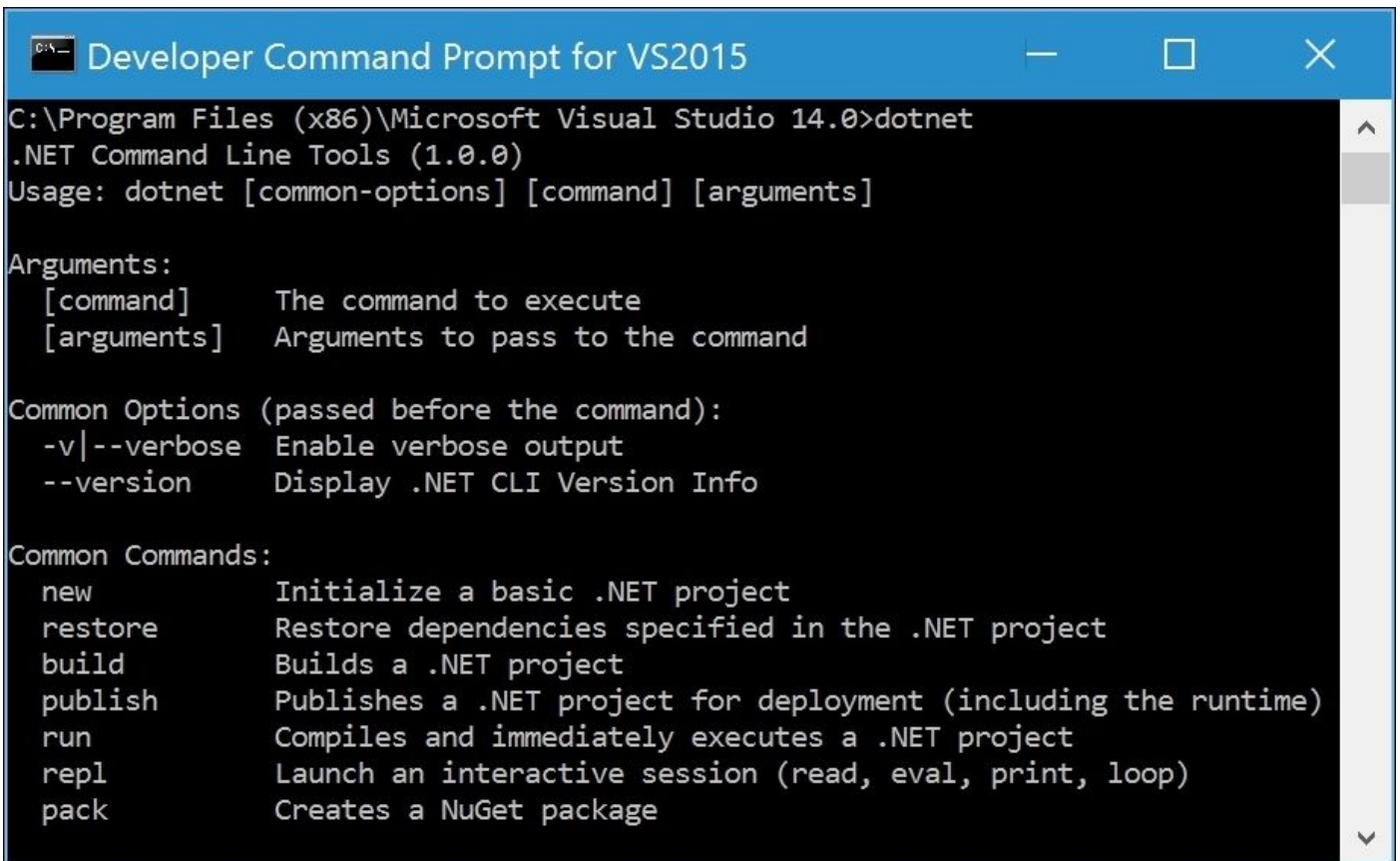
Scroll down the page to find the **Installers** section and click on the link to download the **MSI** file for Windows. Open the file and install.

Creating a .NET Core application using Command Line Tools

Start the Developer Command Prompt for VS2015. At the prompt, enter the following command:

```
dotnet
```

You should see the following output:



```
C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft Visual Studio 14.0>dotnet
.NET Command Line Tools (1.0.0)
Usage: dotnet [common-options] [command] [arguments]

Arguments:
  [command]      The command to execute
  [arguments]    Arguments to pass to the command

Common Options (passed before the command):
  -v|--verbose  Enable verbose output
  --version     Display .NET CLI Version Info

Common Commands:
  new           Initialize a basic .NET project
  restore       Restore dependencies specified in the .NET project
  build         Builds a .NET project
  publish       Publishes a .NET project for deployment (including the runtime)
  run           Compiles and immediately executes a .NET project
  repl          Launch an interactive session (read, eval, print, loop)
  pack          Creates a NuGet package
```

Enter the following at the prompt to create a new directory, change to it, create a new console application in the directory, and then list the files it created:

```
cd C:\Code\Chapter01
mkdir Ch01_MySecondApp
cd Ch01_MySecondApp
dotnet new
dir
```

You should see that the dotnet tool has created three new files for you: NuGet.Config, Program.cs, and project.json.

At the prompt, enter the following to start Notepad for editing the Program class:

```
notepad Program.cs
```

In Notepad, modify the writeLine statement as follows:

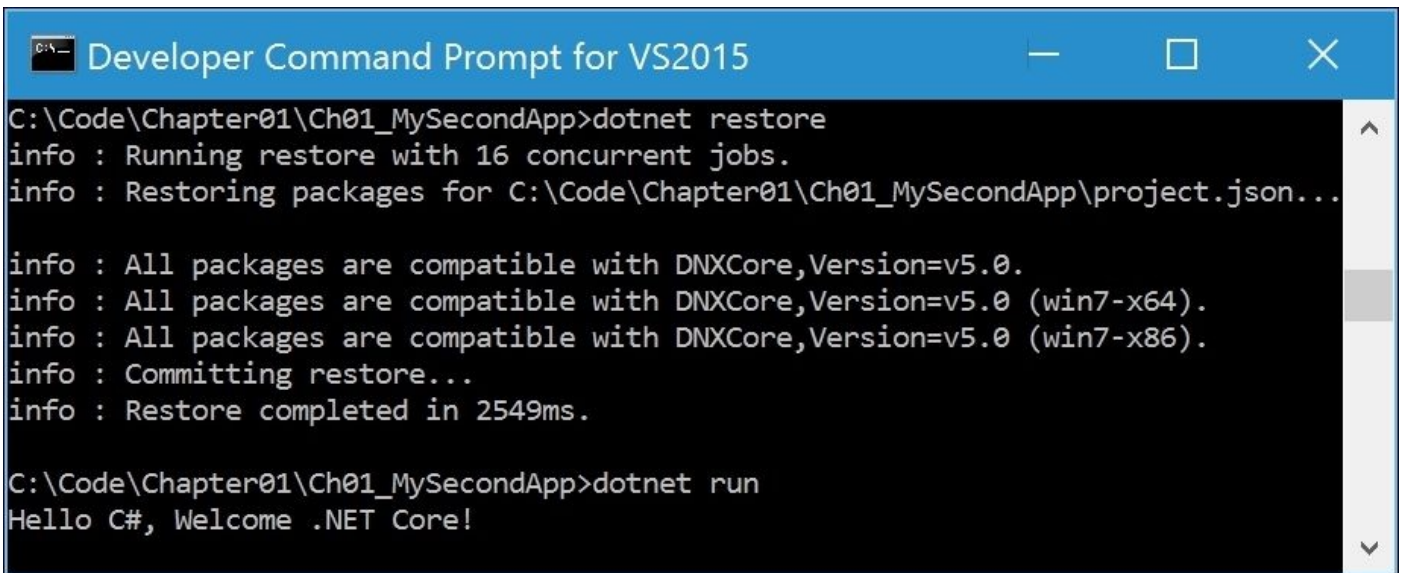
```
Console.WriteLine("Hello C#, Welcome .NET Core!");
```

Save changes and exit Notepad.

At the prompt, enter the following commands:

```
dotnet restore
dotnet run
```

After a few seconds, all the dependency packages will be downloaded and your application will run, showing the following output:



```
C:\Code\Chapter01\Ch01_MySecondApp>dotnet restore
info : Running restore with 16 concurrent jobs.
info : Restoring packages for C:\Code\Chapter01\Ch01_MySecondApp\project.json...

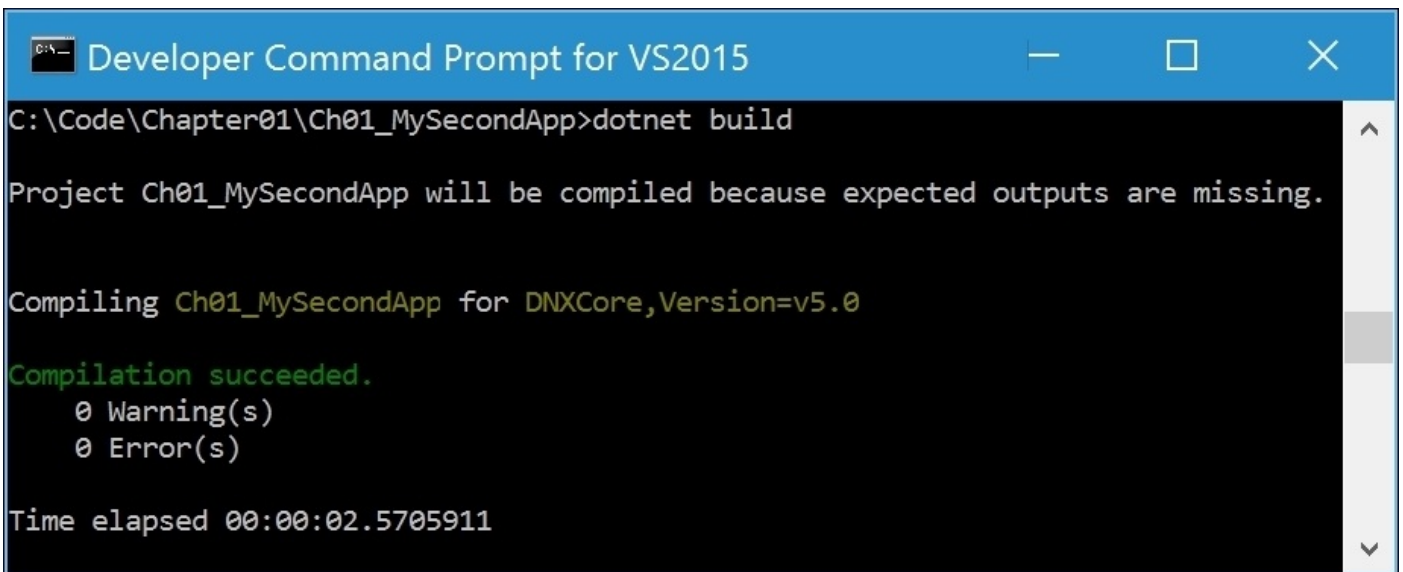
info : All packages are compatible with DNXCore,Version=v5.0.
info : All packages are compatible with DNXCore,Version=v5.0 (win7-x64).
info : All packages are compatible with DNXCore,Version=v5.0 (win7-x86).
info : Committing restore...
info : Restore completed in 2549ms.

C:\Code\Chapter01\Ch01_MySecondApp>dotnet run
Hello C#, Welcome .NET Core!
```

To compile the source code into an assembly containing IL code, enter the following command:

dotnet build

The output in the Command Prompt window should look like this:



```
C:\Code\Chapter01\Ch01_MySecondApp>dotnet build

Project Ch01_MySecondApp will be compiled because expected outputs are missing.

Compiling Ch01_MySecondApp for DNXCore,Version=v5.0

Compilation succeeded.
    0 Warning(s)
    0 Error(s)

Time elapsed 00:00:02.5705911
```

Enter the following commands to change to a subdirectory, list the files in it, and execute the compiled console application:

```
cd bin\Debug\dnxcore50
dir
Ch01_MySecondApp
```

Tip

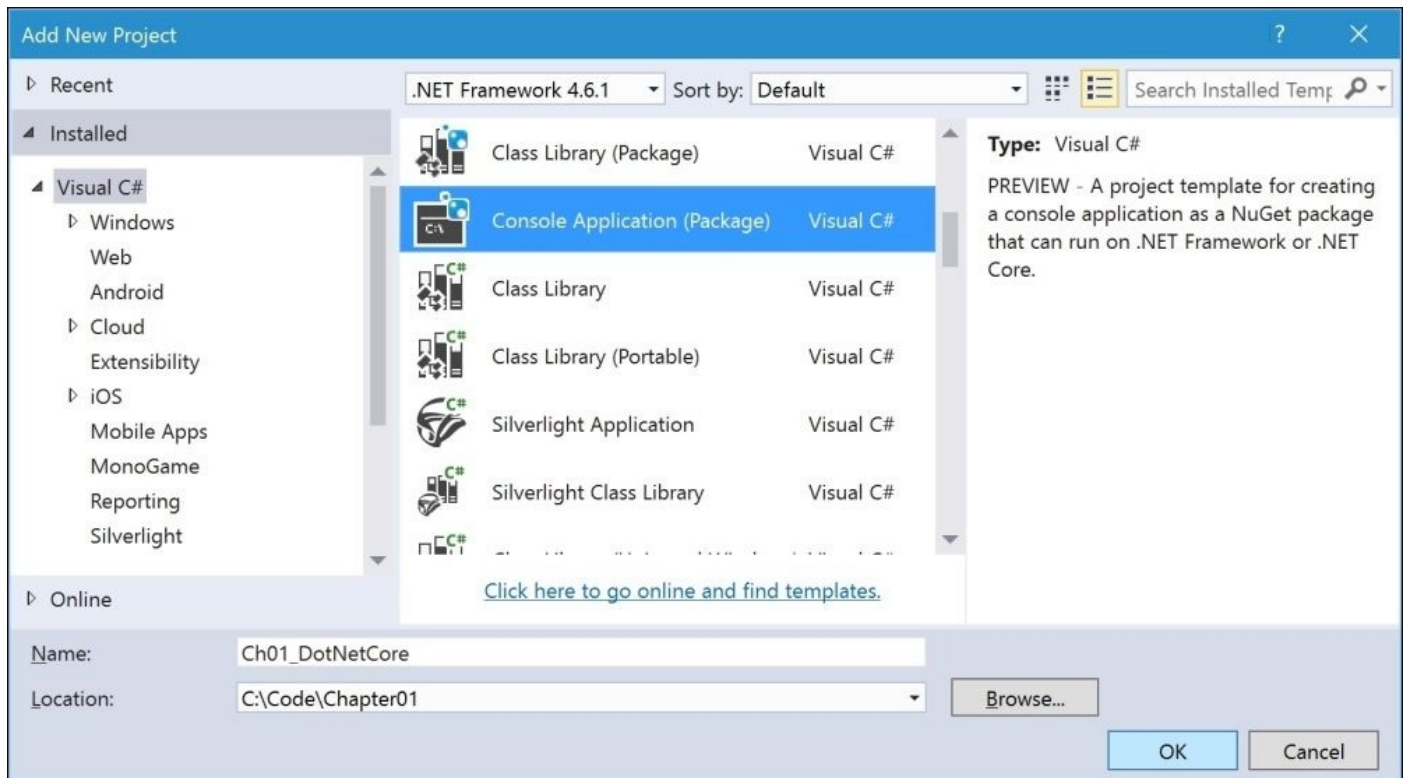
The `Debug` is the name of the configuration and `dnxcore50` is the name of the framework. This will change in the release version of the .NET Core.

Creating a .NET Core application using Visual Studio 2015

Start Visual Studio 2015 and open the **Chapter01** solution.

In Visual Studio, navigate to **File | Add | New Project**.

In the **Add New Project** dialog box, in the **Installed Templates** list on the left-hand side, choose **Visual C#**. In the list at the center, choose **Console Application (Package)**. Enter the name **Ch01_DotNetCore**, and click on **OK** or press *Enter*:



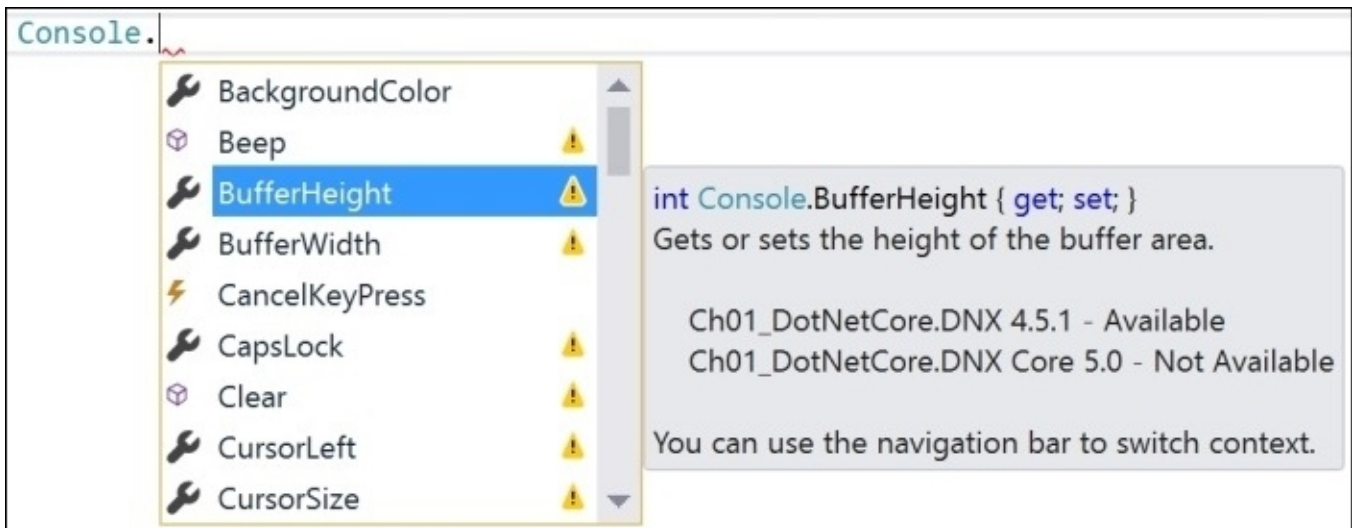
In the **Solution Explorer** window, right-click on the solution named **Chapter01** and choose **Properties**.

Set the **Startup Project** to **Current selection** and click on **OK**.

Inside the **Main** method of the **Program** class, enter the following statements:

```
Console.WriteLine("Welcome, .NET Core!");  
Console.ReadLine();
```

As you type code, you will notice that Visual Studio shows you which types and methods might not be available when targeting .NET Core. For example, the **BufferHeight** property is available when targeting the .NET Framework but not the .NET Core, as shown in the following screenshot as DNX 4.5.1 and DNX Core 5.0 respectively:



You can tell the compiler to include statements available only when .NET Framework is available by using conditional compilation symbols, as follows:

```
#if DNX451
    Console.BufferHeight = 300;
#elseif DNXCORE50
    // some alternative for .NET Core
#endif
```

Tip

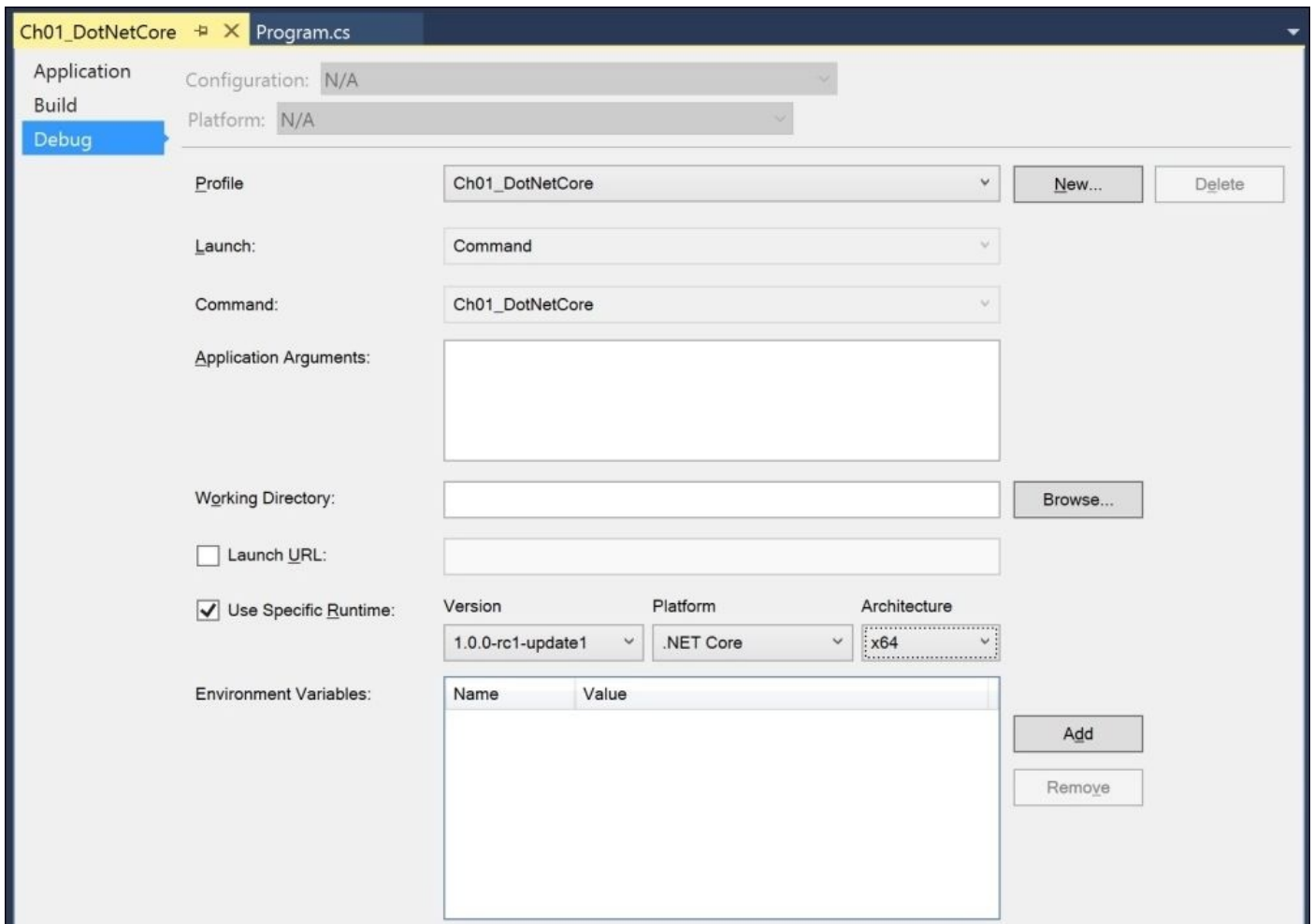
In [Chapter 5](#), Using Specialized .NET Types, you will learn more about conditional compilation symbols so that you can create projects that target both the .NET Framework and the .NET Core with a single code base.

Note

The names of the conditional compilation symbols will change in the future. Visit <https://github.com/dotnet/corefx/blob/master/Documentation/architecture/net-platform-standard.md> for more information.

In the **Solution Explorer** window, double-click on **Properties** for the **Ch01_DotNetCore** project.

In the **Properties** window, click on the **Debug** tab, select the **Use Specific Runtime** checkbox, and select the latest version of the **.NET Core** platform for the **x64** CPU architecture, as shown in the following screenshot:



In the Visual Studio **Debug** menu, choose **Start** or press *F5*.

Note that the Command Prompt window shows that the console application is running the **dnx-coreclr-win-x64.1.0.0-rc1-update1** runtime:



Tip

Throughout the first half of this book, I will show example code by creating console applications, so you can decide if you want to target the .NET Framework by choosing **Console Application**, or target the .NET Core by choosing **Console Application (Package)**.

Managing source code with GitHub

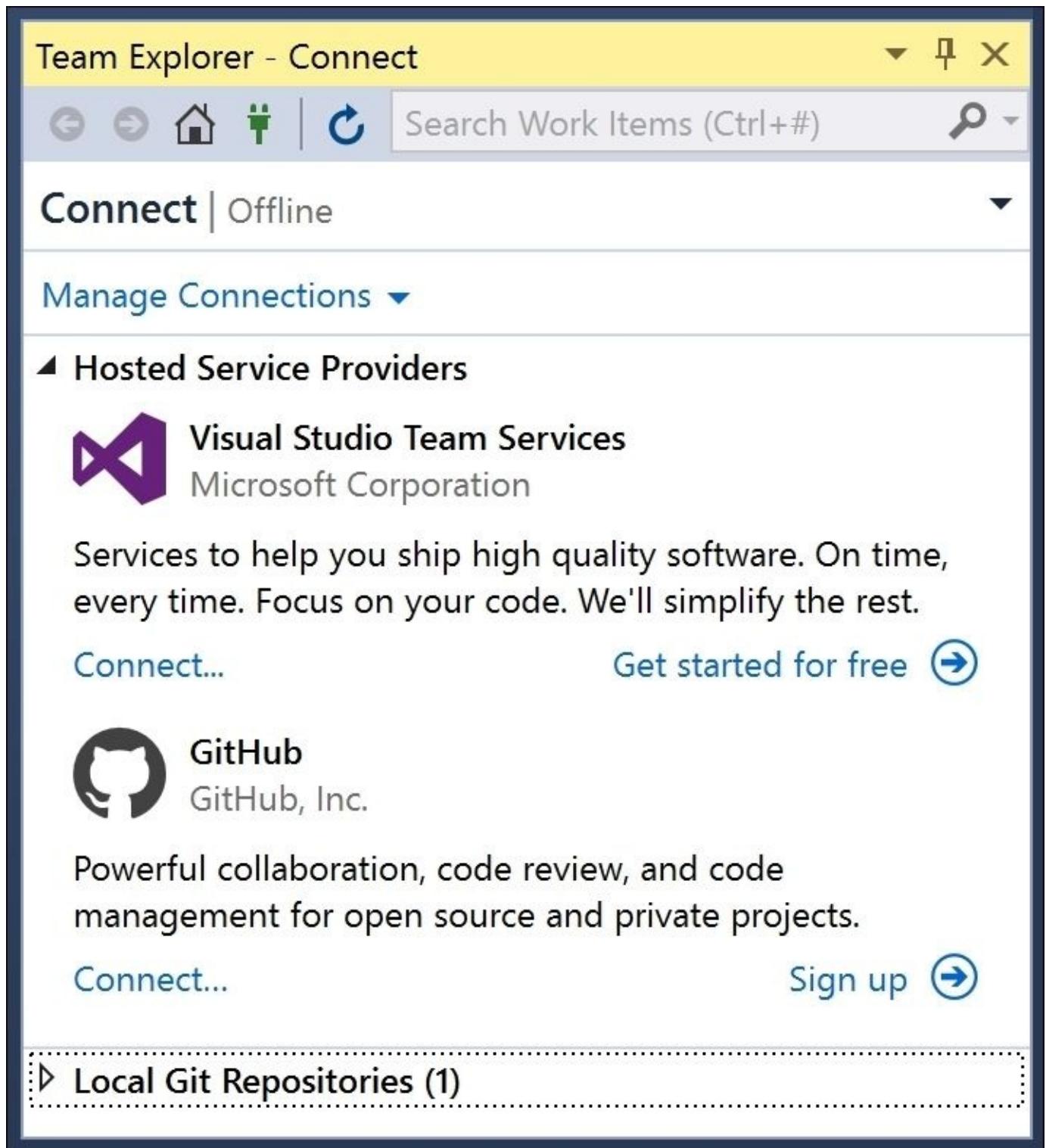
Git is a commonly used source code management system. GitHub is a company, website, and desktop application that makes it easier to manage Git.

Visual Studio 2015 has built-in support for using Git with GitHub as well as Microsoft's own source code management system, named **Visual Studio Team Services**.

I used GitHub to store solutions to all the practical exercises at the end of each chapter.

Using the Team Explorer window

In Visual Studio, navigate to **View | Team Explorer** menu to see the **Team Explorer** window:



Although it is a good idea to sign up with an online source code management system provider, you can clone a GitHub repository without signing up for an account.

Cloning a GitHub repository

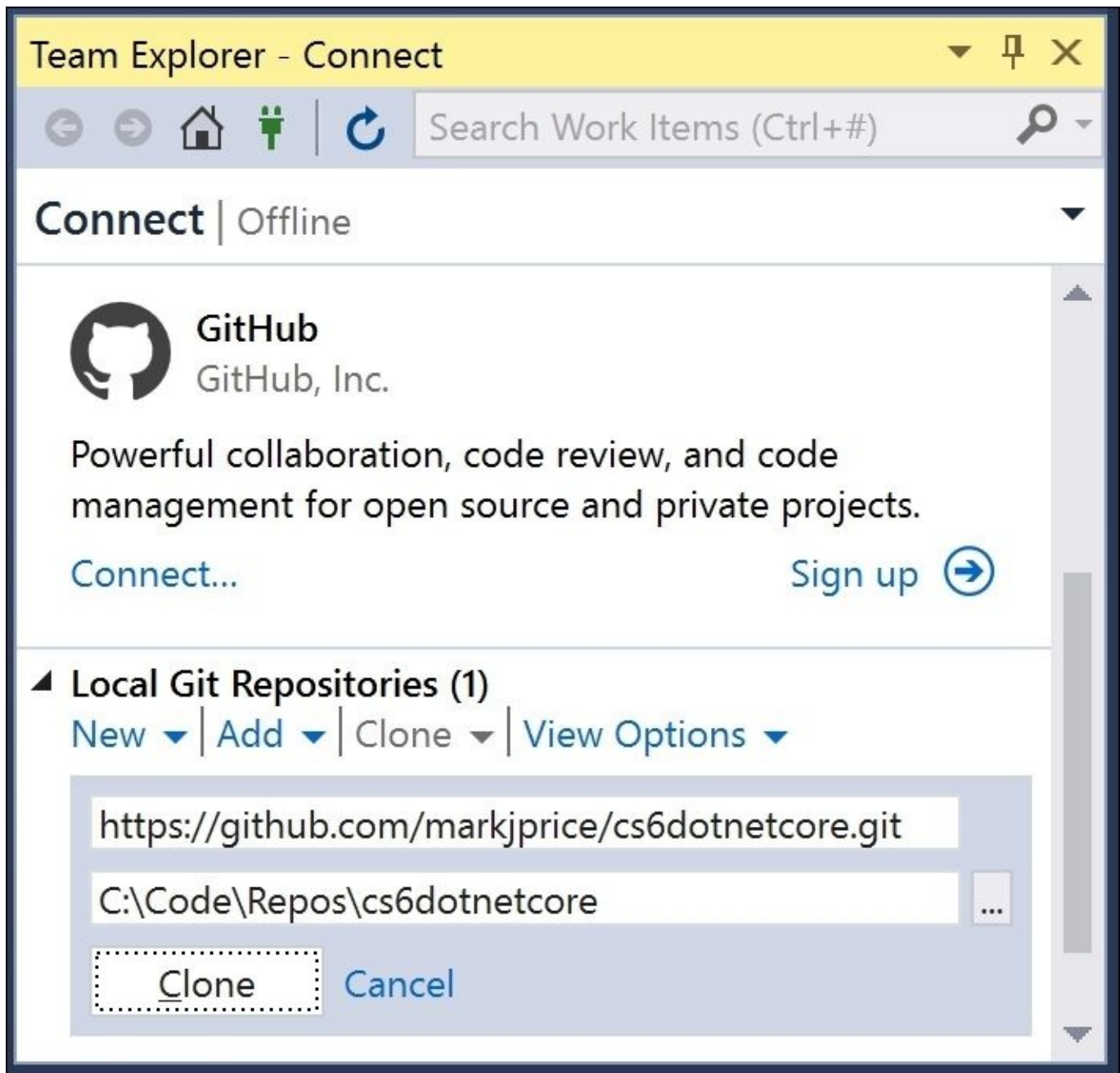
In the **Team Explorer** window, expand **Local Git Repositories**, click on the **Clone** menu, and then enter the following URL of a Git repository to clone it:

<https://github.com/markjprice/cs6dotnetcore.git>

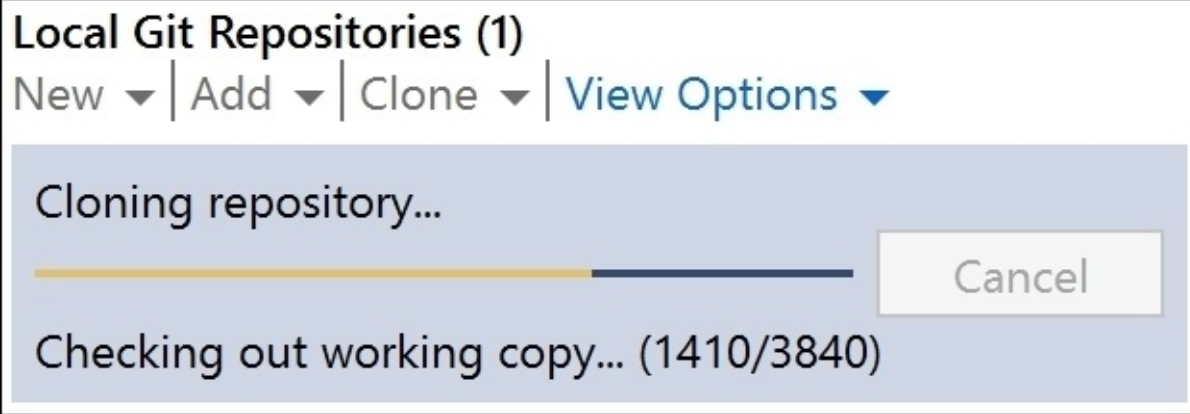
Enter a path for the cloned Git repository:

C:\Code\Repos\cs6dotnetcore

Click on the **Clone** button:



Wait for the Git repository to clone locally:



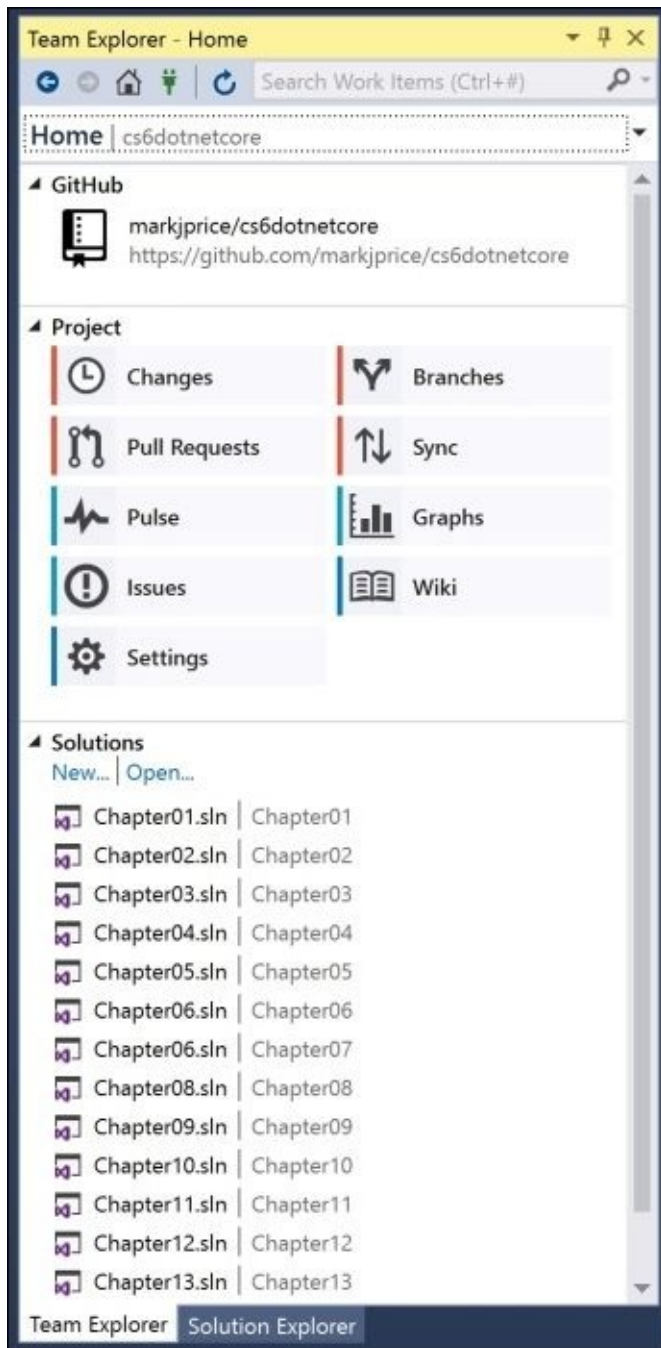
You will now have a local copy of the complete solutions to all the hands-on practice exercises for this book.

Managing a GitHub repository

Double-click on the **cs6dotnetcore** repo to open a detail view.

You can click on the options in the **Project** section to view **Pull Requests** and **Issues**, and other aspects of a repository.

You can double-click on an entry in the **Solutions** section to open it in the **Solution Explorer**:



Practicing and exploring

Test your knowledge and understanding by answering some questions, get some hands-on practice, and explore, with deeper research into the topics covered in this chapter.

Exercise 1.1 – test your knowledge

Answer the following questions:

1. Why can a programmer use different languages to write applications that run on .NET?
2. What do you type at the Command Prompt to compile the C# source code?
3. What is the Visual Studio 2015 keyboard shortcut to save, compile, and run an application, without attaching the debugger?
4. What is the Visual Studio 2015 keyboard shortcut to view the error list?
5. What does `ildasm.exe` do?
6. Is the .NET Core better than the .NET Framework?
7. How is .NET Native different from the .NET Core?
8. What does the .NET Portability Analyzer do?
9. What is the difference between Git and GitHub?
10. What is the name of the entry-point method of a .NET application and how should it be declared?

Exercise 1.2 – practice managing Visual Studio Windows

Practice closing and viewing windows, such as **Error List** and **Toolbox**.

You can pin, unpin, float, and rearrange windows by dragging their title bars. As you do so, Visual Studio will show blue tinted boxes and overlays to help you to understand where the window will be moved when you release the mouse button.

Tip

You can always reset Visual Studio back to one of the default layouts by clicking on the **Tools** menu and **Import and Export Settings....**

Exercise 1.3 – practice coding anywhere

You do not need Visual Studio to practice writing C#. Simply go to the .NET Fiddle website (<https://dotnetfiddle.net/>) and start coding. It's also a great way to share snippets of C# code with other developers:



Exercise 1.4 – explore topics

Use the following links to read more details about the topics covered in this chapter:

- **Visual Studio IDE User’s Guide:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dn762121.aspx>
- **Solutions and Projects:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/b142f8e7.aspx>
- **Using IntelliSense:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/hcw1s69b.aspx>
- **Identifying and Customizing Keyboard Shortcuts in Visual Studio:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/5zwses53.aspx>
- **Making your libraries compatible with .NET Core and other .NET Platforms:** <https://github.com/dotnet/corefx/blob/master/Documentation/project-docs/support-dotnet-core-instructions.md>
- **.NET Core: A general purpose managed framework:** <http://dotnet.github.io>
- **Leveraging existing code across .NET platforms:** <http://blogs.msdn.com/b/dotnet/archive/2014/08/06/leveraging-existing-code-across-net-platforms.aspx>
- **.NET Command Line Interface (CLI):** <https://github.com/dotnet/cli>
- **Use Visual Studio and Team Foundation Server with Git:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/Library/vs/alm/Code/git/overview>
- **The easiest way to connect to your GitHub repositories in Visual Studio:** <https://visualstudio.github.com/>

Summary

In this chapter, we set up the development environment, we used the Developer Command Prompt to compile and decompile an application, we used Visual Studio to create the same application and explore the features that make it so easy to use for development, and we discussed the differences between the .NET Framework, the .NET Core, and .NET Native.

In the next chapter, you will learn to speak C#.

Chapter 2. Speaking C#

This chapter is about the C# language—the grammar and vocabulary that you will use every day to write the source code for your applications.

Programming languages have many similarities to human languages, except that in programming languages, you can make up our own words, just like Dr. Seuss!

“And then, just to show them, I’ll sail to Ka-Troo

And bring back an It-Kutch a Preep and a Proo

A Nerkle a Nerd and a Seersucker, too!”

If I Ran the Zoo

To learn to speak C#, you need to create some simple applications. To avoid overloading you with too much information too soon, the first few chapters of this book will use the simplest type of application: a console application.

This chapter covers the following topics:

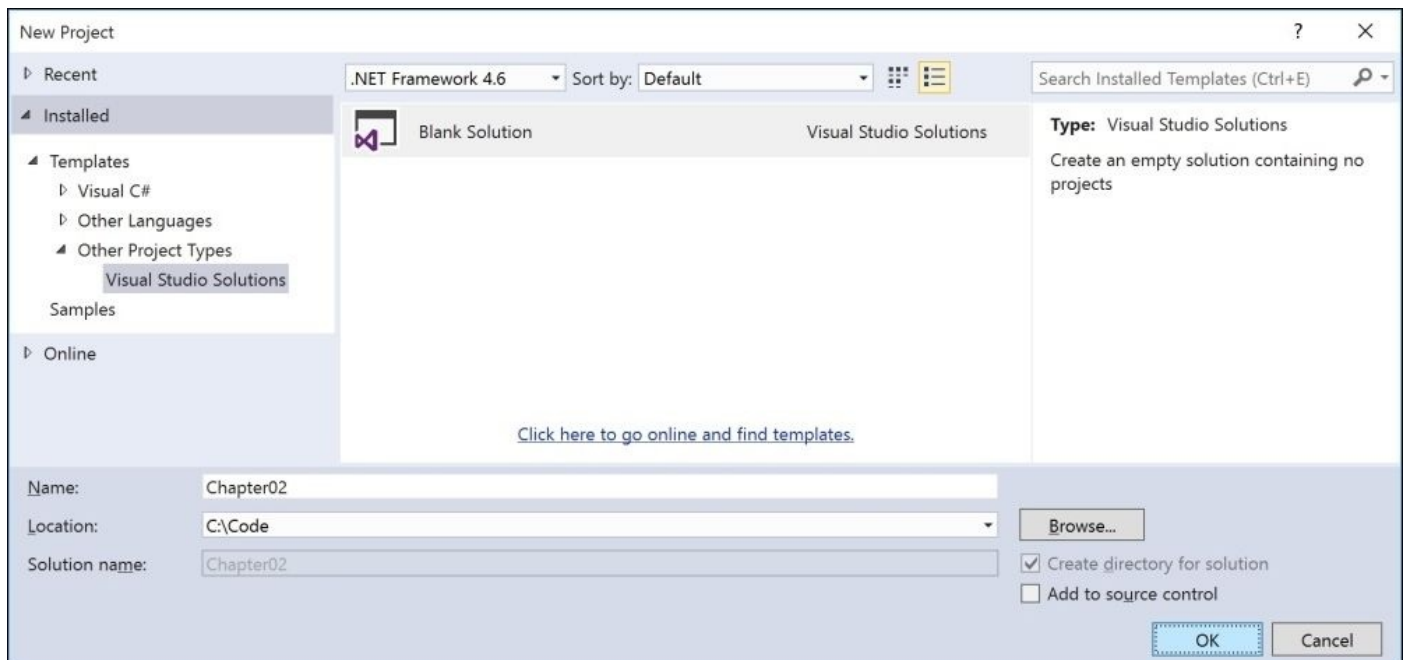
- Understanding C# basics
- Declaring variables
- Building console applications
- Operating on variables

Understanding C# basics

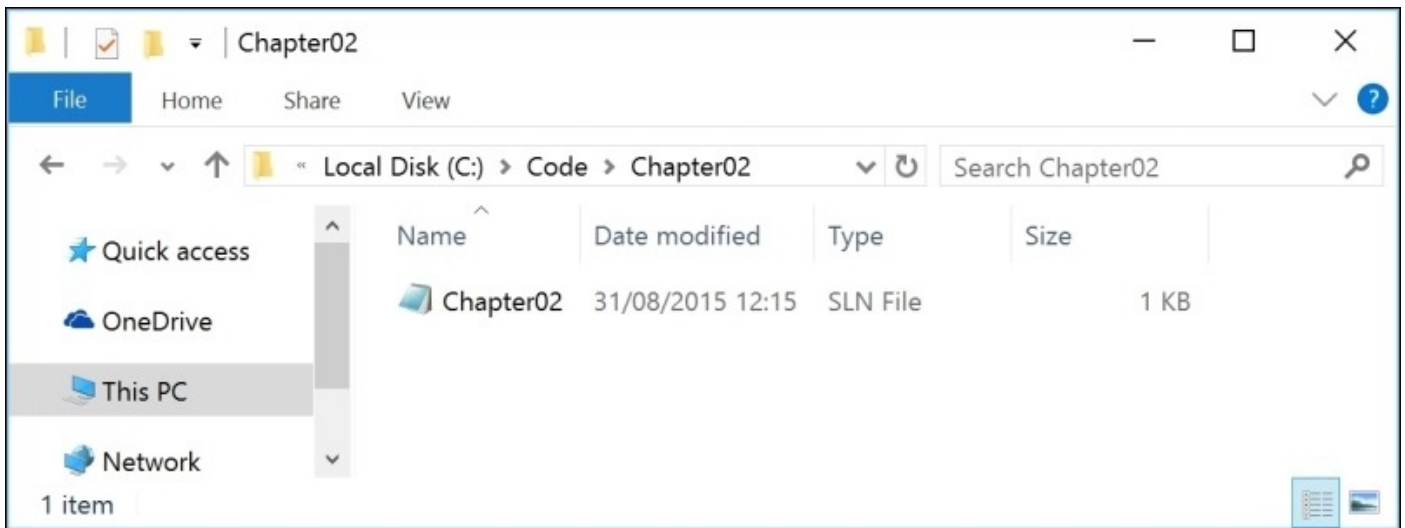
Let's start with looking at the basics of the grammar and vocabulary of C#. In this chapter, you will create multiple console applications, each showing a feature of the C# language. To manage these projects, we will put them all in a single solution. Visual Studio 2015 can only have one solution open at any one time, but each solution can group together multiple projects. A project can build a console application, a Windows desktop application, a web application, and dozens of others.

Start Microsoft Visual Studio 2015. In Visual Studio, press *Ctrl + Shift + N* or choose the **File | New | Project...** menu.

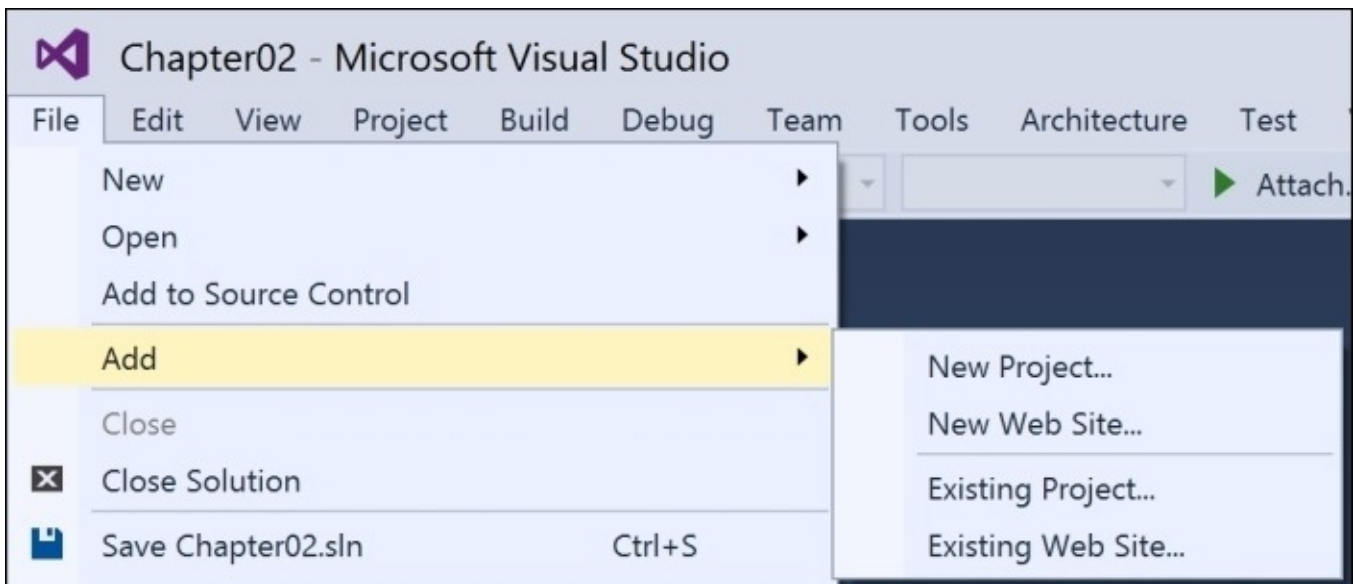
In the **New Project** dialog, in the **Installed Templates** list, expand **Other Project Types**, and select **Visual Studio Solutions**. In the list at the center, select **Blank Solution**, type the name **Chapter02**, change the location to `C:\Code`, and then click on **OK**, as shown in the following screenshot:



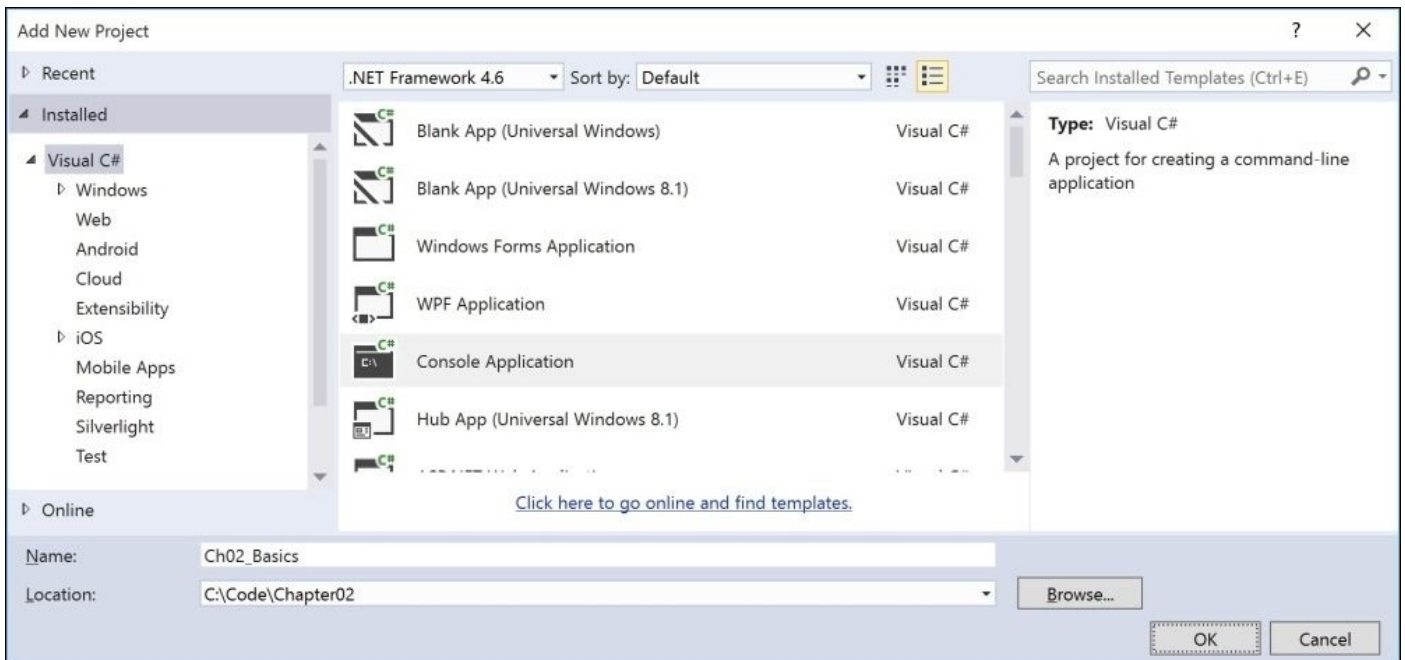
If you were to run **File Explorer**, you would see that Visual Studio has created a folder named **Chapter02** with a Visual Studio solution named **Chapter02** inside it, as follows:



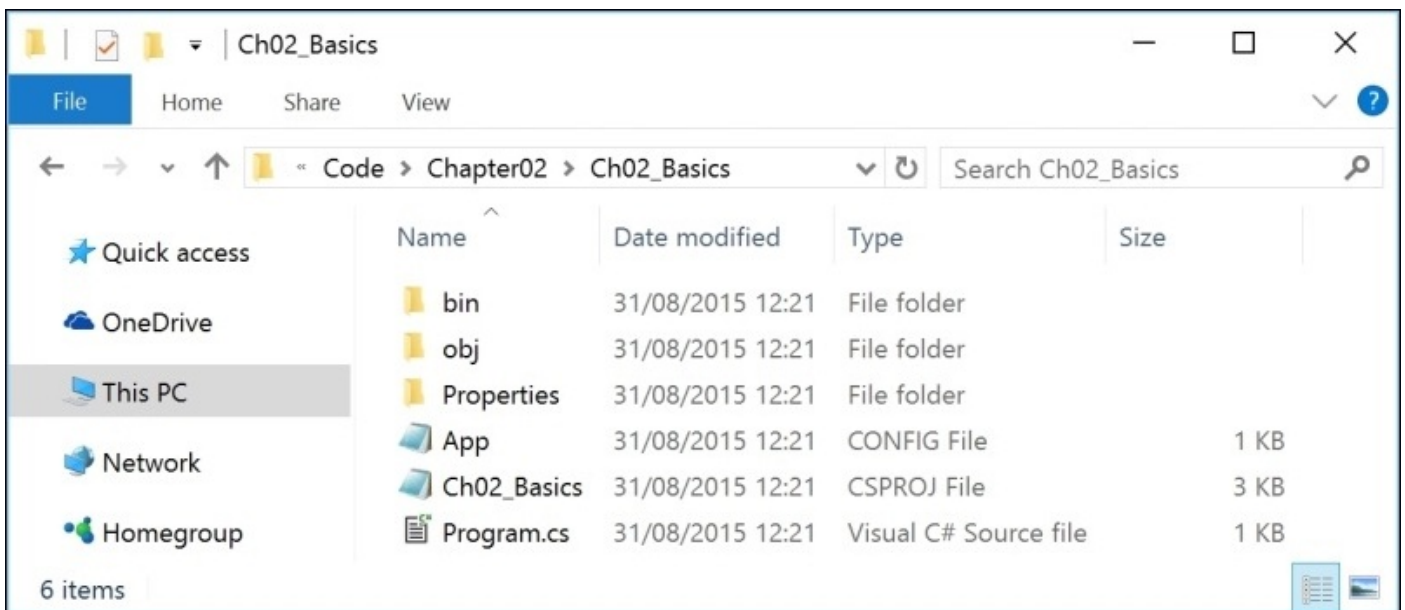
In Visual Studio, navigate to **File | Add | New Project...**, as shown in the following screenshot. This will add a new project to the blank solution:



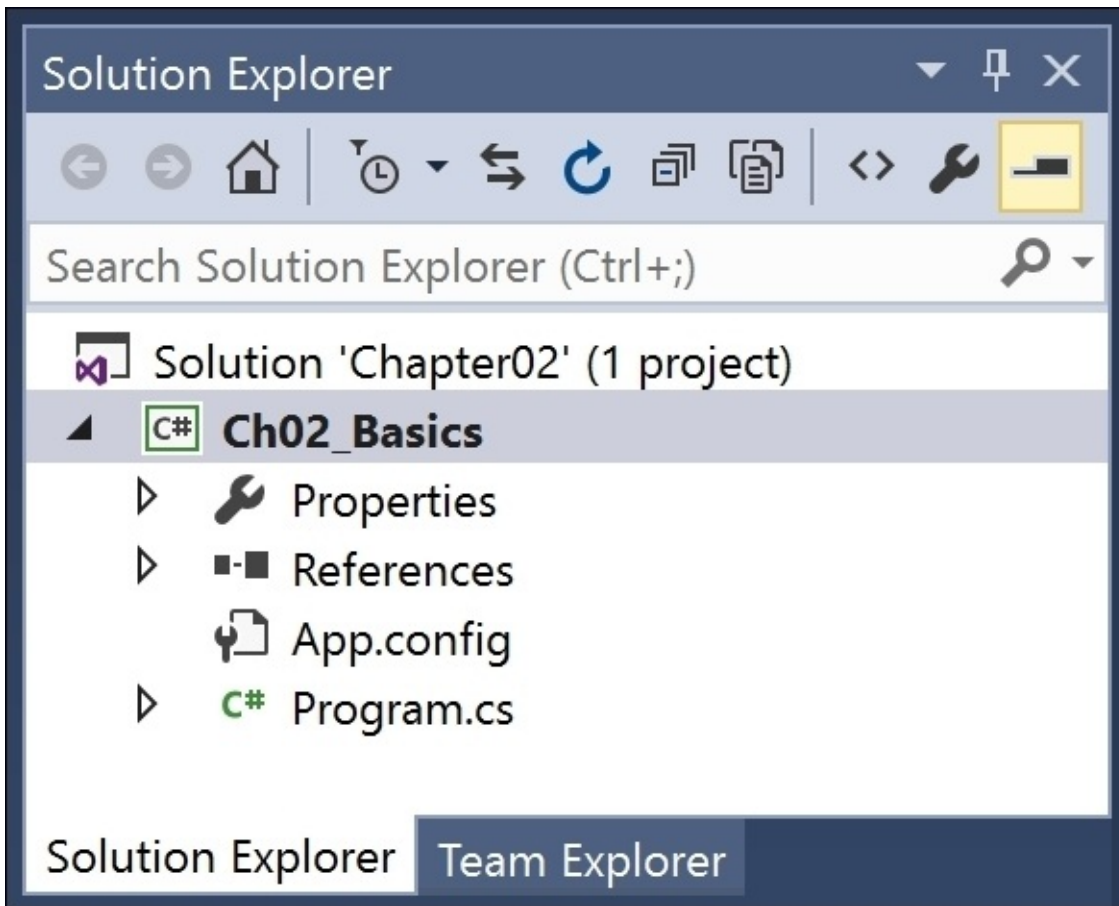
In the **Add New Project** dialog, in the **Installed Templates** list, select **Visual C#**. In the list at the center, select **Console Application**, type the name **Ch02_Basics**, ensure that **.NET Framework 4.6** (or later) is selected at the top, and then click on **OK**.



If you were to run **File Explorer**, you would see that Visual Studio has created a new folder with some files and subfolders inside it. You don't need to know what all these do yet. The code you will write will be stored in the file named `Program.cs`, as shown in the following screenshot:



In Visual Studio, the **Solution Explorer** window on the right-hand side shows the same files as the ones in the preceding screenshot of the file system:



Tip

Some folders and files, for example, the bin folder, are hidden by default in **Solution Explorer**. At the top of the window is a toolbar button named **Show All Files**. Toggle this button to show and hide folders and files.

The C# grammar

The grammar of C# includes statements and blocks.

Statements

In English, we indicate the end of a sentence with a full stop. A sentence can be composed of multiple words and phrases. The order of words is part of the grammar. For example, in English, we say: the black cat. The adjective, black, comes before the noun, cat. French grammar has a different order; the adjective comes after the noun, “le chat noir”.

C# indicates the end of a statement with a semicolon. A statement can be composed of multiple variables and expressions. In the following statement, `FullName` is a variable and `FirstName + LastName` is an expression:

```
var FullName = FirstName + LastName;
```

You can add comments to explain your code using a double slash `//`.

The compiler ignores everything after the `//` until the end of the line; for example:

```
var TotalPrice = Cost + Tax; // Tax is 20% of the Cost
```

Tip

Visual Studio will add or remove the comment (double slashes) at the start of the currently selected line(s) if you press `Ctrl + K + C` or `Ctrl + K + U`.

To write a multi-line comment, use `/*` at the beginning and `*/` at the end of comment, as shown in the following code:

```
/*  
This is a multi-line  
comment.  
*/
```

Blocks

In English, we indicate a paragraph with blank lines. C# indicates a **block** of code with curly brackets `{ }`. Blocks often start with a declaration to indicate what the block is defining. For example, a block can define a namespace, a class, a method, or a statement. You will learn what these are later.

In your current project, note the grammar of C# written for you by the Visual Studio template. If you are using Visual Studio 2015, the first five lines will be slightly faded out in your editor window to indicate that they aren't necessary (but leave them in for now).

In the following code block, I have added some comments and a single statement inside the `Main` method:

```
using System;  
using System.Collections.Generic;  
using System.Linq;  
using System.Text;
```

```
using System.Threading.Tasks; // ; is the end of a statement
```

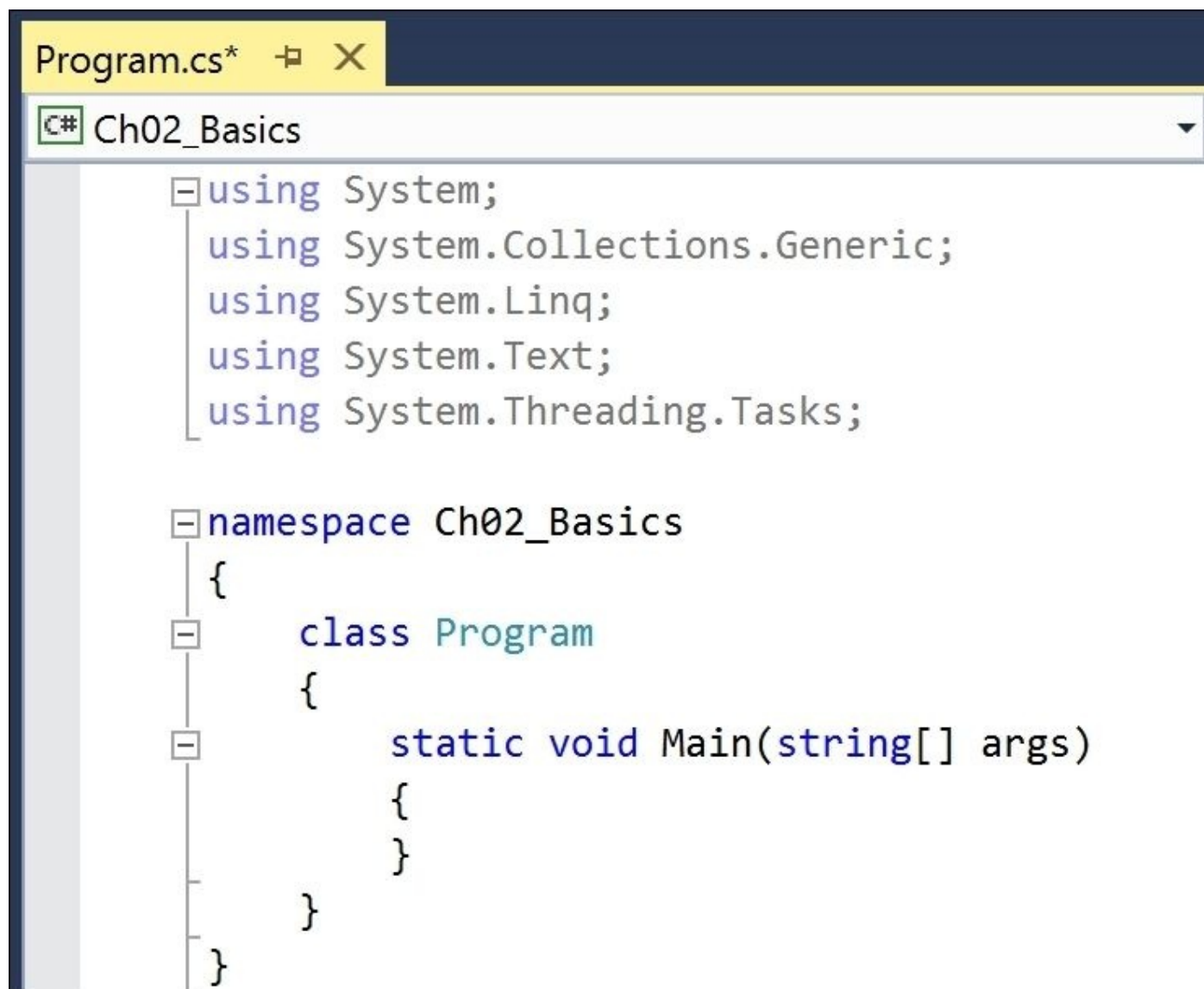
```
namespace Ch02_Basics
```

```
{  
    class Program  
    {  
        static void Main(string[] args)  
        { // the start of a block  
            Console.WriteLine("Hello C#"); // a statement  
        } // the end of a block  
    }  
}
```

The C# vocabulary

Some of the 79 predefined, reserved keywords that you will see in this chapter include `using`, `namespace`, `class`, `static`, `int`, `string`, `double`, `bool`, `var`, `if`, `switch`, `break`, `while`, `do`, `for`, and `foreach`.

Visual Studio shows C# keywords in blue to make them easier to spot. In the following screenshot, `namespace`, `class`, `static`, `void`, and `string` are part of the vocabulary of C#:



```
Program.cs*  [Maximize] [Close]
C# Ch02_Basics
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using System.Text;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

namespace Ch02_Basics
{
    class Program
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
        }
    }
}
```

There are another 25 contextual keywords that only have a special meaning in a specific context. But that still means there are only 104 actual C# keywords in the language.

English has more than 250,000 distinct words. How does C# get away with only having 104 keywords? Why is C# so difficult to learn if it has so few words?

One of the key differences between a human language and a programming language is that developers need to be able to define new “words” with new meanings.

Apart from the 104 keywords in the C# language, this book will teach you about some of the hundreds of thousands of “words” that other developers have defined. You will also

learn how to define your own “words”.

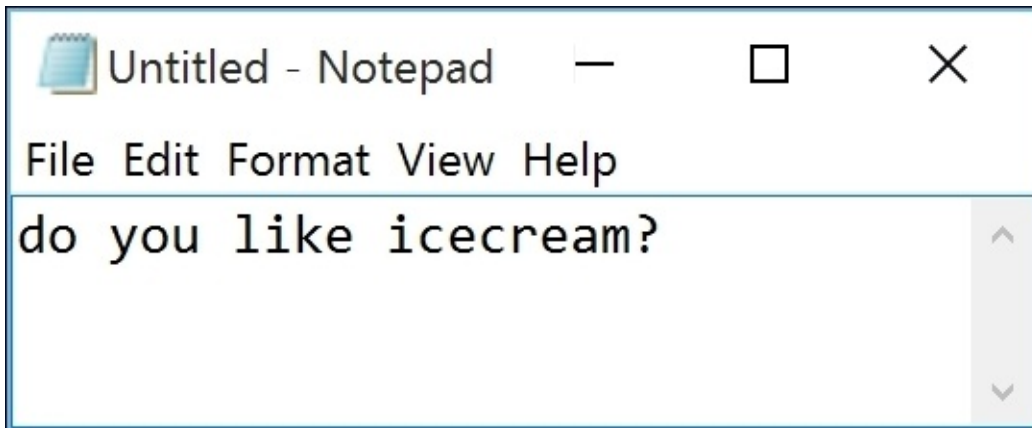
Tip

Programmers all over the world have to learn English because most programming languages use English words like `namespace` and `class`. There are programming languages that use other human languages, such as Arabic, but they are rare. This YouTube video shows a demonstration of an Arabic programming language:

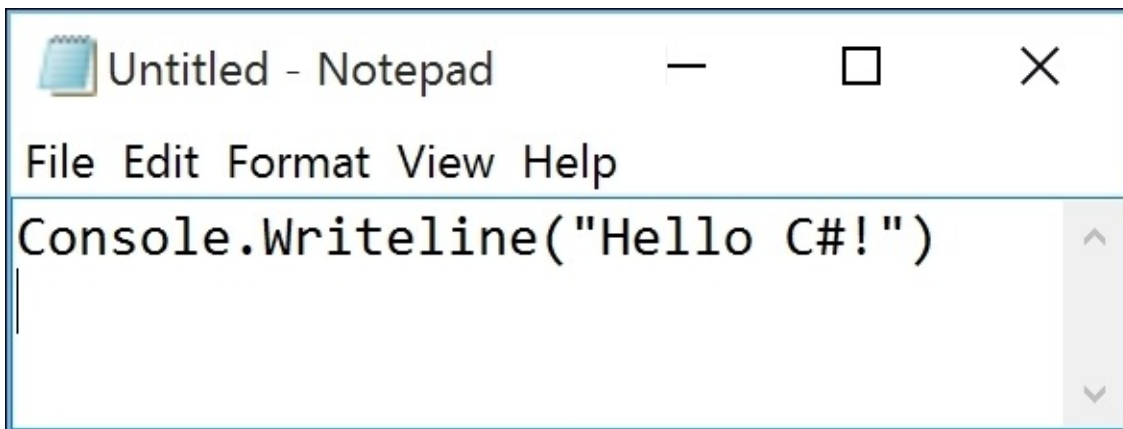
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=77KAHPZUR8g>.

Writing the code

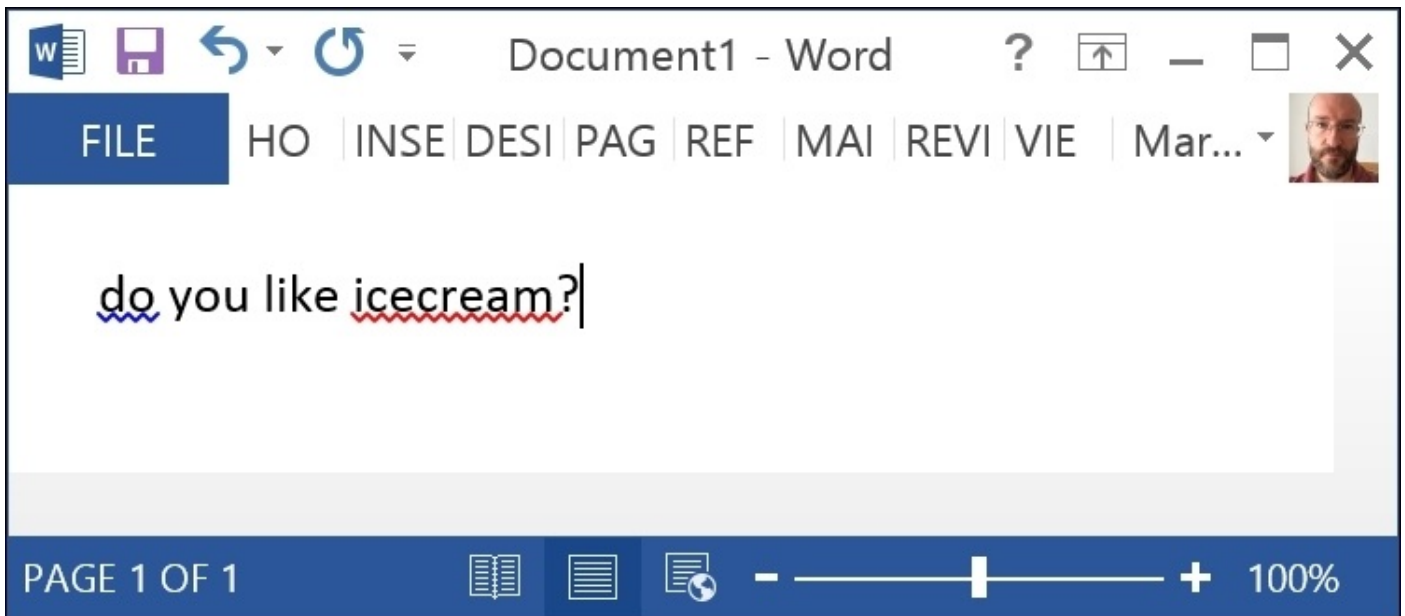
Simple editors such as Notepad don't help you write correct English, as shown in the following screenshot:



Notepad won't help you write correct C# either.



Microsoft Word helps you write English by highlighting spelling mistakes with red squiggles (it should be *ice cream*) and grammatical errors with blue squiggles (sentences should have an upper-case first letter).



Similarly, Visual Studio helps you write C# code by highlighting spelling mistakes (the method name should be `writeLine` with an uppercase L) and grammatical errors (statements must end with a semicolon).

Visual Studio constantly watches what you type and gives you feedback by highlighting problems with colored squiggly lines under your code and showing the **Error List** window as you can see in the following screenshot. You can ask Visual Studio to do a complete check of your code by choosing **Build-Solution** or pressing *F6*.



Toolbox Server Explorer

```
Program.cs* [X]
C# CS6Console CS6Console.P
Console.WriteLine("Hello C#!")
```

Error List

2 Errors 0 Warnings 0 of 4 Messages

Code	Description
CS1002	; expected
CS0117	'Console' does not contain a definition for 'Writeline'

Error List Output

Verbs are methods

In English, verbs are doing or action words. In C#, doing or action words are called **methods**. There are literally hundreds of thousands of methods available to C#.

In English, verbs change how they are written according to when in time the action happens. For example, Amir *was jumping* in the past, Beth *jumps* in the present, they *jumped* in the past, and Daz *will jump* in the future.

In C#, methods such as `writeLine` change how they are called or executed according to the specifics of the action. This is called **overloading**, which we will cover in more detail in [Chapter 6](#), *Building Your Own Types with Object-Oriented Programming*. Consider the following example:

```
// outputs a carriage-return
Console.WriteLine();
// outputs the greeting and a carriage-return
Console.WriteLine("Hello Ahmed");
// outputs a formatted number and date
Console.WriteLine("Temperature on {0:D} is {1}°C.",
    DateTime.Today, 23.4);
```

A different analogy is that some words are spelled the same but have different meanings depending on the context.

Nouns are types, fields, and variables

In English, nouns are names that refer to things. In C#, their equivalents are types, fields, and variables. There are tens of thousands of types available in C#.

Counting types and methods

Let's write some code to find out how many types and methods are available to C# in our simple console application.

Don't worry about how this code works. It uses a technique called **reflection**, which is beyond the scope of this book.

Start by adding the following statement at the top of the Program.cs file:

```
using System.Reflection;
```

Inside the Main method, type the following code:

```
// loop through the assemblies that this application references
foreach (var r in Assembly.GetExecutingAssembly()
    .GetReferencedAssemblies())
{
    // load the assembly so we can read its details
    var a = Assembly.Load(r.FullName);
    // declare and set a variable to count the total number of methods
    int methodCount = 0;
    // loop through all the types in the assembly
    foreach (var t in a.DefinedTypes)
    {
        // add up the counts of methods
        methodCount += t.GetMethods().Count();
    }
    // output the count of types and their methods
    Console.WriteLine($"{a.DefinedTypes.Count():N0} types with
{methodCount:N0} methods in {r.Name} assembly.");
}
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* to save, compile, and run your application without the debugger attached, or click on the **Debug** menu and then **Start Without Debugging**.

You will see the following output that shows the actual number of types and methods that are available to you in the simplest application:

```
3,233 types with 38,529 methods in mscorlib assembly.
974 types with 9,301 methods in System.Core assembly.
```

Tip

The actual numbers displayed may be different depending on the version of the .NET Framework that you are using. The numbers we see here are for version 4.6.1.

Add the following four lines of code at the top of the Main method. By declaring variables that use types in other assemblies, those assemblies are loaded with our application. This allows our code to see all the types and methods in them:

```
static void Main(string[] args)
{
    System.Data.SqlClient.SqlConnection connection;
    System.Xml.XmlReader reader;
```

```
System.Xml.Linq.XElement element;  
System.Net.Http.HttpClient client;
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* and view the output in the console:

```
3,233 types with 38,529 methods in mscorlib assembly.  
1,105 types with 14,621 methods in System.Data assembly.  
1,247 types with 19,139 methods in System.Xml assembly.  
91 types with 1,632 methods in System.Xml.Linq assembly.  
102 types with 1,201 methods in System.Net.Http assembly.  
974 types with 9,301 methods in System.Core assembly.
```

Now you have a better sense of why learning C# is a challenge. There are many types with many methods to learn about, and other programmers are constantly defining new ones!

Declaring variables

All applications process data. Data comes in, data is processed, and data goes out.

Data usually comes into our program from files, databases, or user input. Data can be put temporarily in variables that will be stored in the memory of the running program. When the program ends, the data in memory is lost. Data is usually output to files and databases or to the screen or a printer.

When using variables, you should think about, first, how much space it takes in memory, and, next, how fast it can be processed.

We control this by picking an appropriate type. You can think of simple common types such as `int` and `double` as being differently sized storage boxes. A smaller box would take less memory but may not be processed as quickly.

Naming variables

There are naming conventions for variables and it is best practice to follow them, as shown in the following table:

Naming convention	Examples	Usage
Camel case	cost, orderDetail, dateOfBirth	Local variables and private members
Pascal/title case	Cost, OrderDetail, DateOfBirth	Type names and nonprivate members

The following code block shows an example of declaring and initializing a local variable. Note that you can output the name of a variable using a keyword introduced in C# 6, that is, `nameof`:

```
double heightInMetres = 1.88;  
Console.WriteLine($"The variable {nameof(heightInMetres)} has the value  
{heightInMetres}.");
```

Storing text

For text, a single letter such as `A` is stored as a `char` type and is assigned using single-quotes around the literal value.

```
char letter = 'A';
```

Multiple characters like `Bob` are stored as a `string` type and are assigned using double quotes around the literal value:

```
string name = "Bob";
```

Storing numbers

Numbers are data that we want to perform an arithmetic calculation on (for example, multiplying).

Tip

A telephone number is not really a number. To decide whether a variable needs to be stored as a number or not, ask yourself whether you need to multiply two telephone numbers together or whether the number includes special characters such as (414)-555-1234. In these cases, the number is really a sequence of characters so should be stored as a string.

Numbers can be natural numbers, such as 42, used for counting (also called whole numbers), they can also be negative numbers, such as -42 (called **integers**), or they can be **real** numbers, such as 3.9 (with a fractional part), which are called **single** or **double-precision floating point** numbers in computing.

You might know that computers store everything as bits. A **bit** is either 0 or 1. This is called a **binary** number system. Humans use a **decimal** number system.

Storing whole numbers

The following table shows how computers store the number 10. Note the 1 bits in the 8 and the 2 columns; $8 + 2 = 10$.

128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1
0	0	0	0	1	0	1	0

So, 10 in decimal is 00001010 in binary.

Computers can always exactly represent integers (positive and negative whole numbers) using the `int` type or one of its sibling types such as `short`.

Storing real numbers

Computers cannot always exactly represent floating point numbers. The `float` and `double` types store real numbers using single and double precision floating points.

The following table shows how a computer stores the number 12.75. Note the 1 bits in the 8, 4, $\frac{1}{2}$, and $\frac{1}{4}$ columns.

$$8 + 4 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} = 12\frac{3}{4} = 12.75.$$

128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1	.	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{16}$
0	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	.	1	1	0	0

So, 12.75 in decimal is 00001100.1100 in binary.

As you can see, the number 12.75 can be exactly represented using bits. But some

`decimal` uses 16 bytes and can store numbers in the range `-79,228,162,514,264,337,593,543,950,335` to `79,228,162,514,264,337,593,543,950,335`.

Note that an `int` variable uses four bytes of memory and can store positive or negative numbers up to about 2 billion.

A `double` variable uses eight bytes of memory and can store much bigger values! A `decimal` variable uses 16 bytes of memory and can store big numbers, but not as big as a `double`.

Why might a `double` variable be able to store bigger numbers than a `decimal` variable yet use half the space in memory? Let's find out!

Comparing double and decimal

In Visual Studio, click on **File | Add | New Project...** In the **Add New Project** dialog, in the **Installed Templates** list, select **Visual C#**. In the list at the center, select **Console Application**, type the name **Ch02_NumberAccuracy**, and then click on **OK**.

Enter the following code. Do not worry about understanding the syntax right now, although it isn't too hard to follow:

```
double a = 0.1;
double b = 0.2;
if (a + b == 0.3)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"{a} + {b} equals 0.3");
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine($"{a} + {b} does NOT equal 0.3");
}
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* and view the output in the console:

0.1 + 0.2 does NOT equal 0.3

The `double` type is NOT guaranteed to be accurate. Only use `double` when accuracy, especially when comparing two numbers, is not important, for example, when measuring a person's height.

The problem with the preceding code is how the computer stores the number 0.1 or multiples of 0.1. To represent 0.1 in binary, the computer stores 1 in the 1/16 column, 1 in the 1/128 column, 1 in the 1/1024 column, and so on. The number 0.1 in decimal is 0.0001001001001 repeating forever:

4	2	1	.	1/2	1/4	1/8	1/16	1/32	1/64	1/128	1/256	1/512	1/1024	1/2048
0	0	0	.	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	

Tip

Never compare `double` values using `==`. During the First Gulf War, an American patriot

missile battery used `double` values in its calculations. The inaccuracy caused it to fail to track and intercept an incoming Iraqi Scud missile, and 28 soldiers were killed, as you can read about at this link: <https://www.ima.umn.edu/~arnold/disasters/patriot.html>.

Copy and paste the code you wrote before that used `doubles` and then modify it to look like the following code:

```
decimal c = 0.1M; // M indicates a decimal literal value
decimal d = 0.2M;
if (c + d == 0.3M)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"{c} + {d} equals 0.3");
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine($"{c} + {d} does NOT equal 0.3");
}
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* and view the output in the console:

0.1 + 0.2 equals 0.3

The `decimal` type is accurate because it actually stores the number as a large integer and shifts the decimal point. For example, 0.1 is stored as 1 with a note to shift the decimal point one place to the left. 12.75 is stored as 1275 with a note to shift the decimal point two places to the left.

Tip

Best Practice

Use `int` for whole numbers and `double` for real numbers. Use `decimal` for money, CAD drawings, general engineering, and wherever accuracy of a real number is important.

The `double` type has some useful special values: `double.NaN` means not-a-number and `double.Infinity` means an infinitely large value. You can use these special values when comparing the value of `double` variables.

Storing Booleans

Booleans (bool) can only contain one of the two values: true or false, as shown in the following code. They are most commonly used to branch and loop, as you will see in [Chapter 3](#), *Controlling the Flow, Converting Types, and Handling Exceptions*:

```
bool happy = true;  
bool sad = false;
```

The object type

There is a special type named `object` that can store any type of data, but its flexibility comes at the cost of messier code and poor performance due to boxing and unboxing operations when storing a value type. You should avoid it whenever possible.

Add a new **Console Application** project named **Ch02_SpecialTypes** and add the following code to the `Main` method:

```
object height = 1.88; // storing a double in an object
object name = "Amir"; // storing a string in an object
int length1 = name.Length; // gives compile error!
int length2 = ((string)name).Length; // cast to access members
```

The `object` type has been available since the first version of C# but C# 2 and higher versions have better alternatives, which we will cover later, that provide the flexibility we want without the performance overhead.

The dynamic type

There is another special type named `dynamic` that can also store any type of data, and, like `object`, its flexibility comes at the cost of performance. Unlike `object`, the value stored in the variable can have its members invoked without an explicit cast, as shown in the following code:

```
dynamic anotherName = "Ahmed"; // storing a string in a dynamic object
int length = anotherName.Length; // this compiles but might throw an
exception at run-time!
```

The limitation of `dynamic` is that Visual Studio cannot show IntelliSense to help you write the code because the compiler doesn't check at build time. Instead, the CLR checks for the member at runtime. The `dynamic` keyword was introduced in C# 4.

Local variables

Local variables are declared inside methods and they only exist during the call to that method. Once the method returns, the memory allocated to any local variables is released.

Add a new **Console Application** project named **Ch02_Variables**. Enter the following code to declare and assign values to some local variables inside the `Main` method. Note that we specify the type before the name of each variable:

```
int population = 66000000;  
double weight = 1.88; // in kilograms  
decimal price = 4.99M; // in pounds sterling  
string fruit = "Apples"; // strings use double-quotes  
char letter = 'Z'; // chars use single-quotes
```

Tip

Visual Studio 2015 will show green squiggles under each of the variable names to warn you that the variable is assigned but its value is never used.

Inferring the type of a local variable

You can use the `var` keyword to declare local variables. The compiler will infer the type from the literal value you assign after the assignment `=` operator.

A literal number without a decimal point is inferred as an `int` variable unless you add the `L` suffix, in which case it infers a `long` variable. A literal number with a decimal point is inferred as a `double` unless you add the `M` suffix, in which case it infers a `decimal` variable, or the `F` suffix, in which case it infers a `float` variable. Double quotes indicate a `string` variable, single quotes indicate a `char`, and the `true` and `false` values indicates a `bool`.

Modify your code to use `var`:

```
var population = 66000000;  
var weight = 1.88; // in kilograms  
var price = 4.99M; // in pounds sterling  
var fruit = "Apples"; // strings use double-quotes  
var letter = 'Z'; // chars use single-quotes  
var happy = true;
```

Tip

Although using `var` is convenient, some developers avoid using it to make it easier for a code reader to understand the types in use in the code. Personally, I use it whenever the type is obvious. For example, the first statement is just as clear as the second in stating what the type of the `xml` variable is but is shorter than the second statement:

```
var xml = new XmlDocument();  
XmlDocument xml = new XmlDocument();
```

Making a value type nullable

Most of the primitive types except `string` are value types. This means they must have a value. You can determine the default value of a type using the `default()` operator. The default value of an `int` variable is `0` (zero):

```
int defaultValueOfInt = default(int); // 0
```

Strings are reference types. This means that they can have a `null` value. The `null` value is a special value that indicates that the variable does not reference anything (yet).

Sometimes it is convenient to allow a value type to be `null`. You can do this by adding a question mark as a suffix to the type when declaring a variable, as shown in the following code:

```
int ICannotBeNull = 4;
ICannotBeNull = default(int); // 0
int? ICouldBeNull = null;
int result1 = ICouldBeNull.GetValueOrDefault(); // 0
ICouldBeNull = 4;
int result2 = ICouldBeNull.GetValueOrDefault(); // 4
```

Storing multiple values in an array

When you need to store multiple values of the same type, you can declare an array. For example, you might need to store four names in a string array.

Add the following lines of code to the end of the `Main` method. It declares an array for storing four strings. Then, it stores strings at index positions 0 to 3 (note that arrays count from zero, so the last item is one less than the length of the array). Finally, it loops through each item in the array using a `for` statement that we cover in more detail in [Chapter 3, Controlling the Flow, Converting Types, and Handling Exceptions](#):

```
// declaring the size of the array
string[] names = new string[4];
// storing items at index positions
names[0] = "Kate";
names[1] = "Jack";
names[2] = "Rebecca";
names[3] = "Tom";
for (int i = 0; i < names.Length; i++)
{
    Console.WriteLine(names[i]); // read the item at this index
}
```

Tip

Arrays are always of a fixed size, so you need to decide how many items you want to store before instantiating them. Arrays are useful for temporarily storing multiple items, but collections are more flexible when adding and removing items dynamically. We cover collections in [Chapter 4, Using Common .NET Types](#).

Building console applications

Console applications are text based and are run at the Command Prompt. They typically perform simple tasks that need to be scripted such as compiling a file or encrypting a section of a configuration file. They can have arguments passed to them to control their behavior, for example, to compile a source file into a shared library:

```
csc my.cs /target:library
```

To encrypt the database connection strings section in a `Web.config` file, use the following command:

```
aspnet_regiis -pdf "connectionStrings" "c:\mywebsite\"
```


Displaying output to the user

The two most common tasks that a console application performs are writing and reading lines. We have already been using the `writeLine` method to output. If we didn't want a carriage return at the end of lines, we could have used the `write` method.

C# 6 has a handy new feature named string interpolation. This allows us to easily output one or more variables in a nicely formatted manner. A string prefixed with `$` can use curly braces around the name of a variable to output the current value of that variable at that position in the string.

In the **Ch02_Variables** project, enter the following code in the `Main` method:

```
Console.Write($"The population of the UK is {population}. ");  
Console.WriteLine($"The population of the UK is {population:N0}. ");  
Console.WriteLine($"{{weight}}kg of {{fruit}} costs {{price:C}}.");
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* and view the output in the console:

```
The population of the UK is 66000000. The population of the UK is  
66,000,000.  
1.88kg of Apples costs £4.99.
```

The variable can be formatted using special format codes. `N0` means a number with commas for thousands and no decimal places. `C` means currency. The currency format will be determined by the current thread. If you run this code on a PC in the UK, you get pounds sterling. If you run this code on a PC in Germany, you get Euros.

Getting input from the user

We can get input from the user using the `ReadLine` method. This method waits for the user to type some text. As soon as the user presses *Enter*, whatever the user has typed is returned as a string.

Let's ask the user for their name and age. Later, we will convert the age into a number, but we will leave it as a string for now:

```
Console.Write("Type your name and press ENTER: ");
string name = Console.ReadLine();
Console.Write("Type your age and press ENTER: ");
string age = Console.ReadLine();
Console.WriteLine($"Hello {name}, you look good for {age}.");
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* and view the output in the console. Enter a name and an age:

```
Type your name and press ENTER: Gary
Type your age and press ENTER: 34
Hello Gary, you look good for 34.
```

Importing a namespace

You might have noticed that unlike our very first application we have not been typing `System` before `Console`.

`System` is a namespace. Namespaces are like an address for a type. To refer to someone exactly, you might use `Oxford.HighStreet.BobSmith`, which tells us to look for a person named Bob Smith on the High Street in the city of Oxford.

The line `System.Console.WriteLine` tells the compiler to look for a method named `writeLine` in a type named `Console` in a namespace named `System`.

To simplify our code, Visual Studio added a line at the top of the code file to tell the compiler to always look in the `System` namespace for types that haven't been prefixed with their namespace. We call this importing the namespace.

```
using System;
```

Simplifying the usage of the console in C# 6

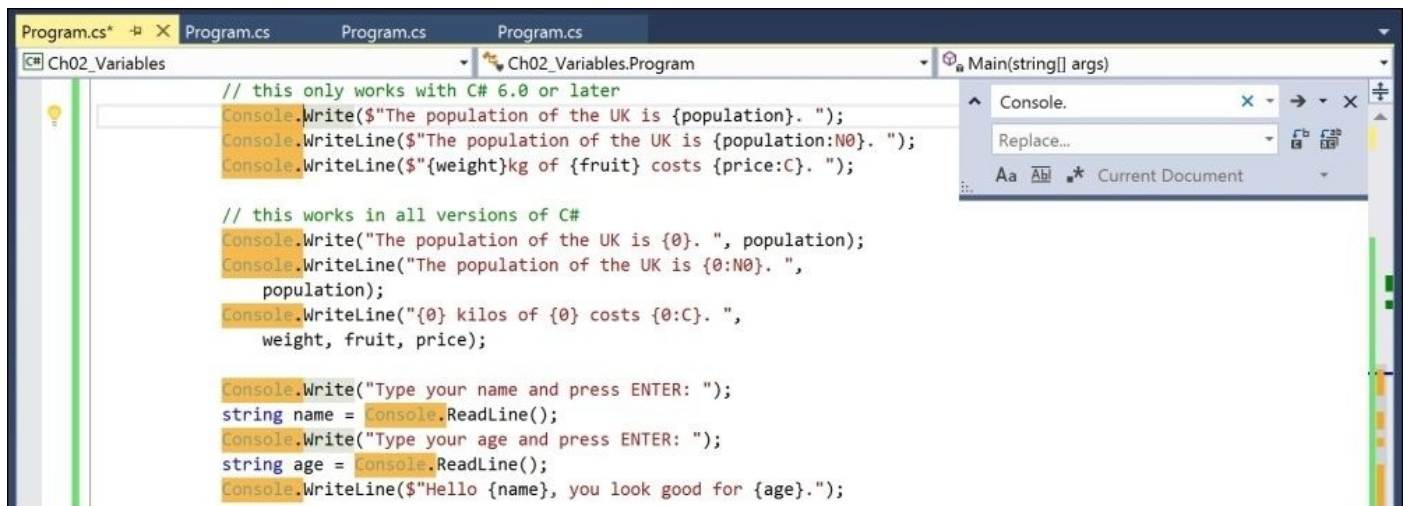
In C# 6, the `using` statement can be used to further simplify our code.

Add the following line to the top of the file:

```
using static System.Console;
```

Now, we don't need to enter the `Console` type throughout our code. We can use Find and Replace to remove it. Select the first `Console.` line in your code (ensure that you select the dot after the word `Console`).

Press `Ctrl + H` to do a Quick Replace (ensure that the **Replace...** box is empty).



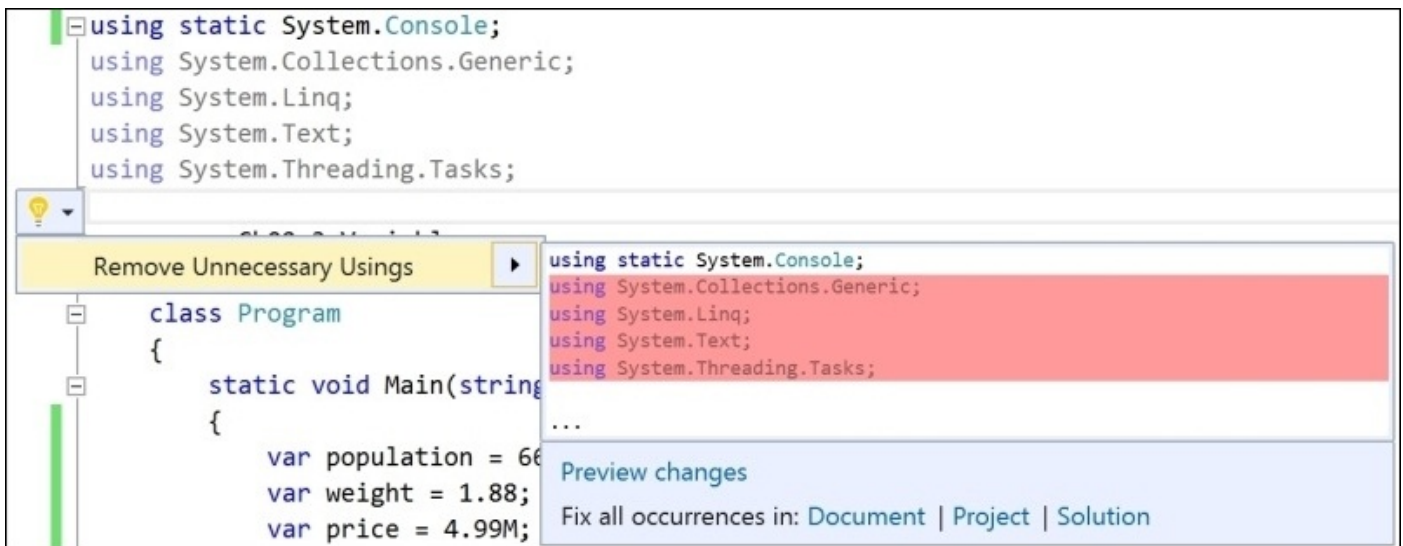
Press `Alt + A` to replace all and then click on **OK**.

Close the replace box by clicking on the cross in its top-right corner.



We can use a Visual Studio feature to clean up the extra using statements that we don't need.

Click on the using statements, click on the light bulb icon that appears (or press *Ctrl + .*), and then select **Remove Unnecessary Usings**:



Our complete application now looks like the following code:

```
using static System.Console;

namespace Ch02_Variables
{
    class Program
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            var population = 66000000;
            var weight = 1.88; // in kilograms
            var price = 4.99M; // in pounds sterling
            var fruit = "Apples"; // strings use double-quotes
            var letter = 'Z'; // chars use single-quotes
            var happy = true;

            int ICannotBeNull = 4;
            ICannotBeNull = default(int); // 0
            int? ICouldBeNull = null;
            var result1 = ICouldBeNull.GetValueOrDefault(); // 0
            ICouldBeNull = 4;
            var result2 = ICouldBeNull.GetValueOrDefault(); // 4

            // declaring the size of the array
            string[] names = new string[4];
            // storing items at index positions
            names[0] = "George";
            names[1] = "Jerry";
            names[2] = "Elaine";
            names[3] = "Cosmo";
        }
    }
}
```

```
for (int i = 0; i < names.Length; i++)
{
    WriteLine(names[i]); // read the item at this index
}

Write($"The population of the UK is {population}. ");
WriteLine($"The population of the UK is {population:N0}. ");
WriteLine($"{weight}kg of {fruit} costs {price:C}. ");

Write("Type your name and press ENTER: ");
string name = ReadLine();
Write("Type your age and press ENTER: ");
string age = ReadLine();
WriteLine($"Hello {name}, you look good for {age}.");
}
}
}
```

Reading arguments and working with arrays

You have probably been wondering what the `string[] args` argument is in the `Main` method. It is an array used to pass arguments into a console application.

Add a new **Console Application** project named **Ch02_Arguments**.

Remember how we could pass the name of the file we wanted to compile to the compiler when we used the `C#` compiler at the Command Prompt? We can do the same thing with our own applications. For example, we can enter the following at the Command Prompt:

```
Ch02_Arguments apples bananas cherries
```

We would be able to read the fruit names by reading them from the `args` array.

Remember that arrays use the square bracket syntax to indicate multiple values. Arrays have a property named `Length` that tells us how many items are currently in the array. If there is at least one item, then we can access it by knowing its index. Indexes start counting from zero so the first item in an array is item 0.

Add a statement to statically import the `System.Console` type. Write a statement to output the number of arguments passed to the application. Remove the unnecessary `using` statements. Your code should now look like this:

```
using static System.Console;
namespace Ch02_Arguments
{
    class Program
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            WriteLine($"There are {args.Length} arguments.");
        }
    }
}
```

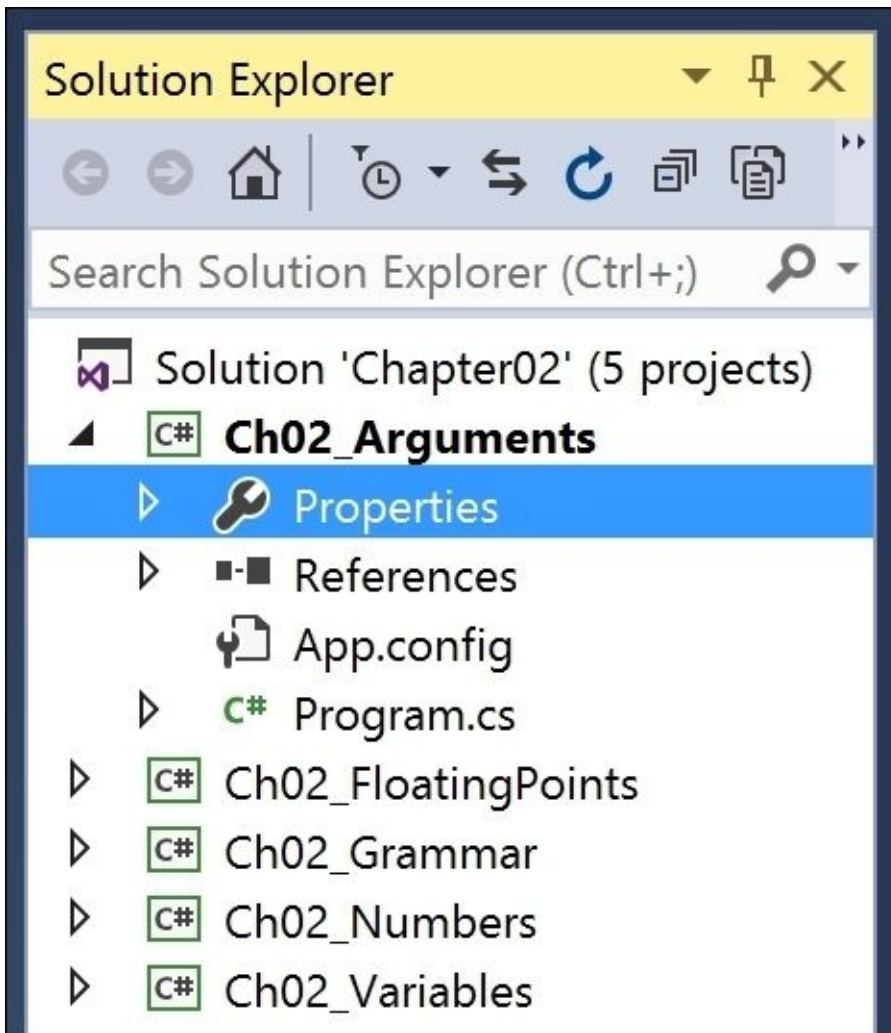
Tip

Remember to statically import the `System.Console` type to simplify your code, as these instructions will not be repeated.

Press `Ctrl + F5` and view the output in the console:

```
There are 0 arguments.
```

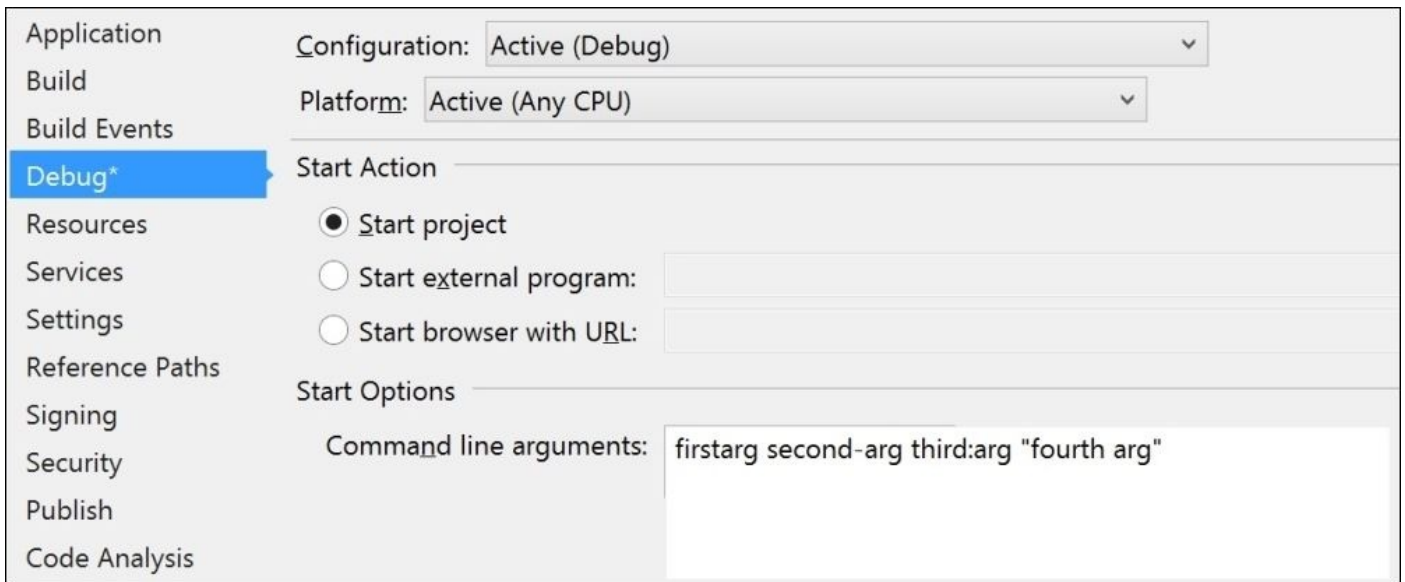
To pass in some arguments, view the **Solution Explorer** window, and inside the **Ch02_Arguments** project, double-click on **Properties**:



In the **Properties** window, select the **Debug** tab, and in the **Command line arguments** box, enter a space-separated list of four arguments as shown in the code and screenshot that follows:

```
firstarg second-arg third:arg "fourth arg"
```

Note that you can use almost any character in an argument including hyphens and colons. If you need to use a space inside an argument, you must wrap it in double quotes.



Press *Ctrl + F5* and view the output in the console:

There are 4 arguments.

To enumerate or iterate (that is, loop through) the values of those four arguments, add these three lines of highlighted code after outputting the length of the array:

```
WriteLine($"There are {args.Length} arguments.");  
foreach (string arg in args)  
{  
    WriteLine(arg);  
}
```

We will now use these arguments to allow the user to pick a color for the background, foreground, width and height of the console window.

Change the arguments in the **Properties** window to look like this:



Import the `System` namespace by adding the following line to the top of the code file if it is not already there:

```
using System;
```

Add the highlighted code on top of the existing code like this:

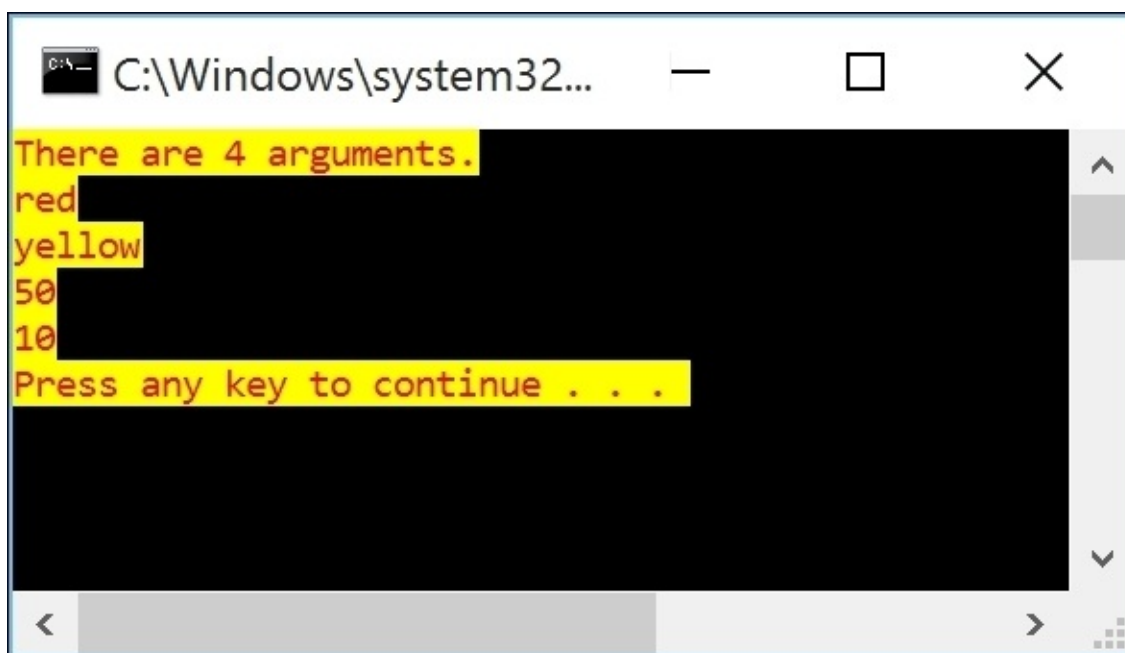
```
ForegroundColor = (ConsoleColor)Enum.Parse(typeof(ConsoleColor), args[0], true);
```

```
BackgroundColor = (ConsoleColor)Enum.Parse(typeof(ConsoleColor), args[1],
true);
WindowWidth = int.Parse(args[2]);
WindowHeight = int.Parse(args[3]);

WriteLine($"There are {args.Length} arguments.");
foreach (var arg in args)
{
    WriteLine(arg);
}
```

We needed to import the System namespace so that the compiler knows about the ConsoleColor and Enum types. If you cannot see either of these types in the IntelliSense list, it is because you are missing the using System; statement.

Press *Ctrl + F5*. The console window is now a different size and uses different colors for the foreground and background text.



```
C:\Windows\system32...
There are 4 arguments.
red
yellow
50
10
Press any key to continue . . .
```


Operating on variables

Operators apply simple operations, such as addition and multiplication, to operands, such as numbers. They usually return a new value that is the result of the operation.

Most operators are binary, meaning that they work on two operands:

```
var result = FirstOperand operator SecondOperand;
```

Some operators are **unary** meaning they work on a single operand. A **ternary** operator works on three operands.

Experimenting with unary operators

Two common unary operators are used to increment ++ and decrement -- a number.

In Visual Studio, from the **View** menu, choose **Other Windows**, and then **C# Interactive**. Enter the following code:

```
> int i = 3;  
> i  
3
```

Note that when you enter a full statement ending in a semicolon, it is executed when you press *Enter*.

The first statement uses the assignment operator = to assign the value 3 to the variable i. When you enter a variable name at the prompt, it returns the variable's current value.

Enter the following statements and before pressing *Enter*, try to guess what the value of x and y will be:

```
> int x = 3;  
> int y = x++;
```

Now check the values of x and y. You might be surprised to see that y has the value 3:

```
> x  
4  
> y  
3
```

The variable y has the value 3 because the ++ operator executes after the assignment. This is known as postfix. If you need to increment before assignment, use prefix, as follows:

```
> int x = 3;  
> int y = ++x;  
> x  
4  
> y  
4
```

You can decrement a variable using the -- operator.

Tip

Best Practice

Due to the confusion between prefix and postfix for the increment and decrement operators when combined with assignment, the Swift programming language designers plan to drop support for this operator in version 3. My recommendation for usage in C# is to never combine the use of ++ and -- operators with an assignment =. Perform the operations as separate statements.

Experimenting with arithmetic operators

Arithmetic operators allow you to perform arithmetics on numbers. Enter the following in the **C# Interactive** window:

```
> 11 + 3
14
> 11 - 3
8
> 11 * 3
33
> 11 / 3
3
> 11 % 3
2
> 11.0 / 3
3.6666666666666665
```

To understand the divide (/) and modulus (%) operators when applied to integers (whole numbers), you need to think back to primary school.

Imagine you have eleven sweets and three friends. How can you divide the sweets between your friends? You can give three sweets to each of your friends and there will be two left over. Those two are the modulus, also known as remainder. If you have twelve sweets, then each friend gets four of them and there are none left over. So the remainder is 0.

If you start with a real number (such as 11.0), then the divide operator returns a floating point value, such as 3.6666666666666665, rather than a whole number.

Comparison and Boolean operators

Comparison and Boolean operators either return `true` or `false`. In the next chapter, we will use comparison operators in the `if` and `while` statements to check for conditions.

Practicing and exploring

Test your knowledge and understanding by answering some questions, get some hands-on practice, and explore the topics covered in this chapter with deeper research.

Exercise 2.1 – test your knowledge

What type would you choose for the following “numbers”?

1. A person’s telephone number
2. A person’s height
3. A person’s age
4. A person’s salary
5. A book’s ISBN
6. A book’s price
7. A book’s shipping weight
8. A country’s population
9. The number of stars in the Universe
10. The number of employees in each of the small or medium businesses in the UK (up to about 50,000 employees per business)

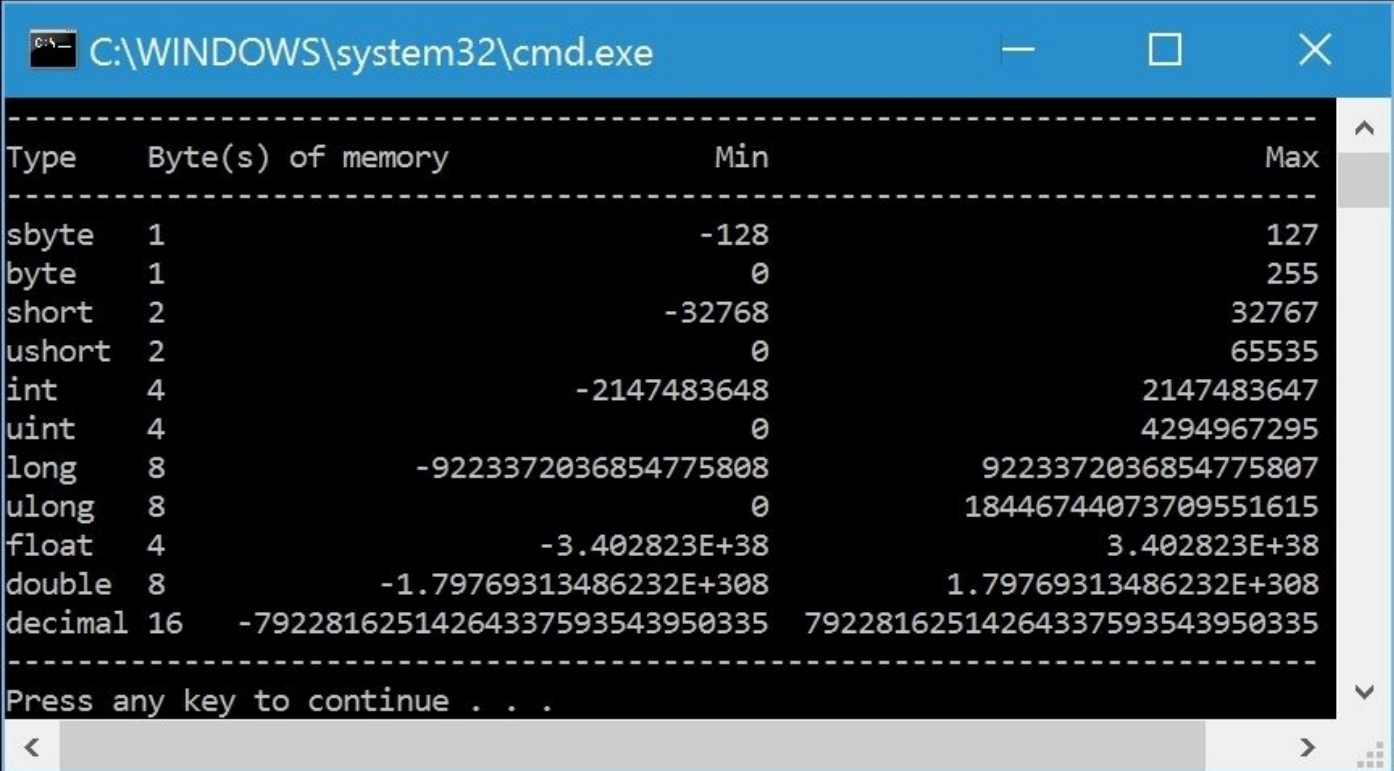
Exercise 2.2 – practice number sizes and ranges

Create a **Console Application** project named **Ch02_Exercise02** that outputs the number of bytes in memory that each of the following number types use and the minimum and maximum possible values they can have: sbyte, byte, short, ushort, int, uint, long, ulong, float, double, and decimal.

Tip

Read the online MSDN documentation for Composite Formatting, available at [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/txafckwd\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/txafckwd(v=vs.110).aspx), to learn how to align text in a console application.

The output of your application should look something like the following screenshot:



```
-----  
Type      Byte(s) of memory      Min      Max  
-----  
sbyte     1                      -128     127  
byte      1                      0        255  
short     2                      -32768   32767  
ushort    2                      0        65535  
int       4                      -2147483648 2147483647  
uint      4                      0        4294967295  
long      8                      -9223372036854775808 9223372036854775807  
ulong     8                      0        18446744073709551615  
float     4                      -3.402823E+38 3.402823E+38  
double    8                      -1.79769313486232E+308 1.79769313486232E+308  
decimal   16                     -79228162514264337593543950335 79228162514264337593543950335  
-----  
Press any key to continue . . .
```

Exercise 2.3 – explore topics

Use the following links to read more about the topics covered in this chapter:

- **C# Keywords:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/x53a06bb.aspx>
- **Integral Types Table (C# Reference):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/exx3b86w.aspx>
- **Floating-Point Types Table (C# Reference):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/9ahet949.aspx>
- **decimal (C# Reference):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/364x0z75.aspx>
- **bool (C# Reference):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/c8f5xwh7.aspx>
- **char (C# Reference):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/x9h8tsay.aspx>
- **string (C# Reference):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/362314fe.aspx>
- **var (C# Reference):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/bb383973.aspx>
- **Nullable Types (C# Programming Guide):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/1t3y8s4s.aspx>
- **Standard Numeric Format Strings:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dwhawy9k\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dwhawy9k(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Custom Numeric Format Strings:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/0c899ak8\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/0c899ak8(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Custom Date and Time Format Strings:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/8kb3ddd4\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/8kb3ddd4(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Composite Formatting:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/txafckwd\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/txafckwd(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Console Class:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.console\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.console(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **C# Operators:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/6a71f45d.aspx>
- **Languages features in C# 6 and VB 14:**
<https://github.com/dotnet/roslyn/wiki/Languages-features-in-C%23-6-and-VB-14>

Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to declare variables with an explicit type or inferred with the `var` keyword, we discussed some of the built-in types for numbers, text, and Booleans, we covered how to choose between number types, and we experimented with some operators.

In the next chapter, you will learn about branching, looping, converting between types, and handling exceptions.

Chapter 3. Controlling the Flow, Converting Types, and Handling Exceptions

This chapter is about writing code that makes decisions, repeats blocks of statements, converts between types, and handles errors (known as exceptions). You will also learn about the best places to look for help.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Selection statements
- Iteration statements
- Casting and converting between types
- Handling exceptions
- Checking for overflow
- Looking for help

Selection statements

Every application needs to be able to select from choices and branch along different code paths. The two selection statements in C# are `if` and `switch`, also known as `if-else` and `switch-case`. You can use `if` for all your code but `switch` can simplify your code in some common scenarios.

Start Microsoft Visual Studio 2015. In Visual Studio, press *Ctrl + Shift + N* or choose **File | New | Project....**

In the **New Project** dialog, in the **Installed Templates** list, select **Visual C#**. In the list at the center, select Console Application, type the name **Ch03_SelectionStatements**, change the location to **C:\Code**, type the solution name **Chapter03**, and then click on **OK**.

At the top of the `Program.cs` file, statically import the `System.Console` type, as follows:

```
using static System.Console;
```

The if-else statement

The `if-else` statement determines which branch to follow by evaluating a Boolean expression. The `else` block is optional. `if-else` statements can be nested and combined. Each Boolean expression can be independent of the others.

Add the following statements to the `Main` method to check whether this console application has any arguments passed to it:

```
if (args.Length == 0)
{
    WriteLine("There are no arguments.");
}
else
{
    WriteLine("There is at least one argument.");
}
```

Since there is only a single statement inside each block, this code *can* be written without the curly braces, as follows:

```
if (args.Length == 0)
    WriteLine("There are no arguments.");
else
    WriteLine("There is at least one argument.");
```

This style of the `if-else` statement is *not* recommended because it can introduce serious bugs, for example, the infamous `#gotofail` bug in Apple's iPhone operating system. For 18 months after Apple's iOS 6 was released, it had a bug in its **Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)** encryption code, which meant that any user running Safari to connect to secure websites, such as their bank, for the purpose of payment transactions and other online banking activities, were not properly secure because an important check was being accidentally skipped.

<https://gotofail.com/>

Just because you can leave out the curly braces, doesn't mean you should. Your code is not "more efficient" without them, instead, it is less maintainable and potentially more dangerous, as this tweet points out:



The switch-case statement

The switch-case statement is different from the if-else statement because it compares a single expression against a list of possible cases. Every case is related to the single expression. Every case must end with the break keyword (such as case 1 in the following code) or the goto case keywords, (such as case 2 in the following code) or they should have no statements (such as case 3 in the following code).

Enter the following code after the if-else statement you wrote previously. Note that the first line is a label that can be jumped to and the second line generates a random number. The switch statement branches based on the value of this random number:

```
A_label:
    var number = (new Random()).Next(1, 7);
    WriteLine($"My random number is {number}");
    switch (number)
    {
        case 1: // must be a literal value
            WriteLine("One");
            break; // jumps to end of switch statement
        case 2:
            WriteLine("Two");
            goto case 1;
        case 3:
        case 4:
            WriteLine("Three or four");
            goto case 1;
        case 5:
            // go to sleep for half a second
            System.Threading.Thread.Sleep(500);
            goto A_label;
        default:
            WriteLine("Default");
            break;
    } // end of switch statement
```

You can use the goto keyword to jump to another case or a label. The goto keyword is frowned upon by most programmers but can be the best solution in some scenarios. Use it sparingly.

Run the program by pressing *Ctrl + F5*. Run it multiple times to see what happens in various cases of random numbers, as shown in the following output:

```
There are no arguments.
My random number is 5
My random number is 3
Three or four
One
```

Autoformatting code

Let's take a diversion for a minute to talk about formatting. Code is easier to read and understand if it is consistently indented and spaced out.

If your code can compile, then Visual Studio can automatically format it so it's nicely spaced and indented.

Type the following code (Visual Studio will autoformat even at the end of each line so when it does so, force the code to be improperly spaced out as shown):

```
var x    =3;
if(x==3)
{ WriteLine("three");
}
```

Press *Shift + F6* and wait for your code to build, and then press *Ctrl + K, D*. Your code will now look like this:

```
var x = 3;
if (x == 3)
{
    WriteLine("three");
}
```


Iteration statements

Iteration statements repeat a block either while a condition is true or for each item in a sequence. The choice of which statement to use is based on a combination of ease of understanding to solve the logic problem and personal preference.

Add a new Console Application project named **Ch03_IterationStatements**.

Set the solution's startup project to be the current selection.

The while statement

The `while` statement evaluates a Boolean expression and continues to loop while it is true.

Type the following code inside the `Main` method (remember to statically import the `System.Console` type!):

```
int x = 0;
while (x < 10)
{
    WriteLine(x);
    x++;
}
```

Press `Ctrl + F5` and view the output in the console:

```
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
```

The do-while statement

The do-while statement is like `while` except the Boolean expression is checked at the bottom of the block instead of the top, which means that it always executes at least once.

If you want to try the code for the do-while statement, then select all the previous statements and press `Ctrl + K, C` to comment them out and then enter the following code and run it:

```
int x = 0;
do
{
    WriteLine(x);
    x++;
} while (x < 10);
```

When you then press `Ctrl + F5`, you will see that the results are the same as those we got earlier.

The for statement

The `for` statement is like `while` except that it is more succinct. It combines an initializer statement that executes once at the start of the loop, a Boolean expression to check whether the loop should continue, and an incrementer that executes at the bottom of the loop.

The `for` statement is commonly used with an integer counter, although it doesn't have to be as shown in the following code:

```
for (int y = 0; y < 10; y++)  
{  
    WriteLine(y);  
}
```

The foreach statement

The foreach statement is a bit different from the other three. It is used to perform a block of statements on each item in a sequence (for example, an array or collection). Each item is read-only and if the sequence is modified during iteration, for example, by adding or removing an item, then an exception will be thrown.

Type the following code inside the Main method, which creates an array of string variables and then uses a foreach statement to enumerate and output the length of each of them:

```
string[] names = { "Adam", "Barry", "Charlie" };
foreach (string name in names)
{
    WriteLine($"{name} has {name.Length} characters.");
}
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* and view the output in the console:

```
Adam has 4 characters.
Barry has 5 characters.
Charlie has 7 characters.
```

How does the foreach statement actually work?

Technically, the foreach statement will work on any type that implements an interface called `IEnumerable`, but you don't need to worry about what an interface is for now. You will learn about interfaces in [Chapter 7, Implementing Interfaces and Inheriting Classes](#).

If you use a tool like `ildasm`, then you will see that the compiler turns the foreach statement in the preceding code into something like this:

```
IEnumerator e = names.GetEnumerator();
while(e.MoveNext())
{
    string name = (string)e.Current; // Current is read-only!
    WriteLine($"{name} has {name.Length} characters.");
}
```

Tip

Due to the use of an iterator, the variable declared in a foreach statement cannot be used to modify the value of the current item.

Casting and converting between types

You will often need to convert between different types.

Add a new Console Application project named **Ch03_CastingConverting**.

Casting from numbers to numbers

It is safe to implicitly cast an `int` variable into a `double` variable.

In the `Main` method, enter the following statements:

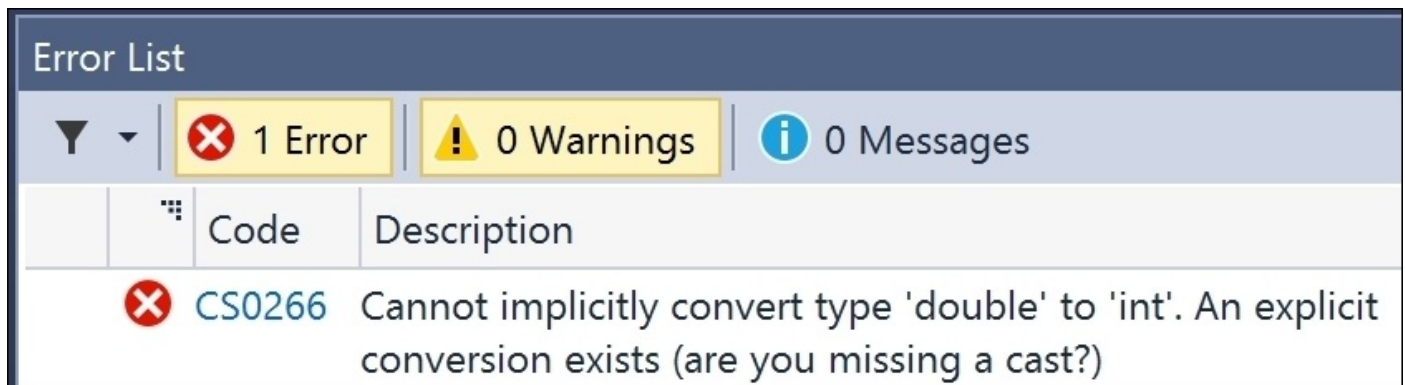
```
int a = 10;
double b = a;
WriteLine(b);
```

You cannot implicitly cast a `double` variable into an `int` variable because it is potentially unsafe and would lose data.

In the `Main` method, enter the following statements:

```
double c = 9.8;
int d = c; // compiler gives an error for this line
WriteLine(d);
```

Press `Ctrl + W, E` to view the **Error List**, as shown in the following screenshot:



You must explicitly cast a `double` into an `int` variable using a pair of round brackets around the type you want to cast the `double` into. The pair of round brackets is the cast operator. Even then you must beware that the part after the decimal point will be trimmed off without warning.

Modify the assignment statement for the variable `d`, as shown in the following code:

```
double c = 9.8;
int d = (int)c;
WriteLine(d); // d is 9 losing the .8 part
```

We must do a similar operation when moving values between larger integers and smaller integers. Again, beware that you might lose information because any value too big will get set to `-1`!

Enter the following code:

```
long e = 10;
int f = (int)e;
WriteLine($"e is {e} and f is {f}");
e = long.MaxValue;
```

```
f = (int)e;  
WriteLine($"e is {e} and f is {f}");
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* and view the output in the console:

e is 10 and f is 10

e is 9223372036854775807 and f is -1

Using the Convert type

An alternative to using the casting operator is to use the `System.Convert` type.

At the top of the `Program.cs` file, type the following code:

```
using static System.Convert;
```

We can now use a lot of `ToSomeType` methods.

```
double g = 9.8;
int h =.ToInt32(g);
WriteLine($"g is {g} and h is {h}");
```

Note that one difference between casting and converting is that converting rounds the double value up to 10 instead of trimming the part after the decimal point.

Press *Ctrl + F5* and view the output in the console:

```
g is 9.8 and h is 10
```

The `System.Convert` type can convert to and from all the C# number types as well as Booleans, strings, and dates and times.

Rounding numbers

You have now seen that the cast operator trims the decimal part of a real number and that the convert methods round up or down. But what is the rule for rounding?

In British primary schools, children are taught to round *up* if the decimal part is .5 or higher and round *down* if the decimal part is less.

Enter the following code beneath the code that you have already written to see the effect of converting four double variables to int variables:

```
double i = 9.49;
double j = 9.5;
double k = 10.49;
double l = 10.5;
WriteLine($"i is {i}, ToInt(i) is {ToInt32(i)}");
WriteLine($"j is {j}, ToInt(j) is {ToInt32(j)}");
WriteLine($"k is {k}, ToInt(k) is {ToInt32(k)}");
WriteLine($"l is {l}, ToInt(l) is {ToInt32(l)}");
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* and view the output in the console:

```
i is 9.49, ToInt(i) is 9
j is 9.5, ToInt(j) is 10
k is 10.49, ToInt(k) is 10
l is 10.5, ToInt(l) is 10
```

Note that the rule for rounding in C# is subtly different. It will round *up* if the decimal part is .5 or higher *and* the non-decimal part is odd, but it will round *down* if the non-decimal part is even. It always rounds *down* if the decimal part is less than .5.

This rule is known as **Banker's Rounding** and it is preferred because it reduces bias. Sadly, other languages such as JavaScript use the primary school rule.

Tip

Best Practice

For every programming language that you use, check its rounding rules. They may not work the way you expect!

Converting from any type to a string

The most common conversion is from any type into a string variable, so all types have a method named `ToString` that they inherit from the `System.Object` class (which can be simplified using the `object` keyword).

The `ToString` method converts the current value of any variable into a textual representation. Some types can't be sensibly represented as text so they return their namespace and type name. Enter the following statements beneath the code that you have already written to declare four variables of types `int`, `bool`, `DateTime`, and `object`, and see what their implementations of `ToString` return:

```
int number = 12;
WriteLine(number.ToString());
bool boolean = true;
WriteLine(boolean.ToString());
DateTime now = DateTime.Now;
WriteLine(now.ToString());
object me = new object();
WriteLine(me.ToString());
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* and view the output in the console:

```
12
True
04/03/2016 13:48:54
System.Object
```

Parsing from strings to numbers or dates and times

The second most common conversion is from strings to numbers or dates and times. The opposite of `ToString` is `Parse`. Only a few types have a `Parse` method.

Add a new Console Application project named **Ch03_Parsing**.

Add the following statements to the bottom of the `Main` method:

```
int age = int.Parse("27");
DateTime birthday = DateTime.Parse("4 July 1980");
WriteLine($"I was born {age} years ago.");
WriteLine($"My birthday is {birthday}.");
WriteLine($"My birthday is {birthday:D}.");
```

Press `Ctrl + F5` and view the output in the console:

```
I was born 27 years ago.
My birthday is 04/07/1980 00:00:00.
My birthday is 04 July 1980.
```

One problem with the `Parse` method is that it gives errors if the string cannot be converted.

Add the following statements to the bottom of the `Main` method:

```
int count = int.Parse("abc");
```

Press `Ctrl + F5` and view the output in the console:

```
Unhandled Exception: System.FormatException: Input string was not in a correct format.
```

To avoid errors, you can use the `TryParse` method instead. `TryParse` attempts to convert the input string and returns `true` if it can convert it and `false` if it cannot. The `out` keyword is required to allow the `TryParse` method to set the count variable when the conversion works.

Replace the `int count` declaration with the following statements:

```
Write("How many eggs are there? ");
int count;
string input = Console.ReadLine();
if (int.TryParse(input, out count))
{
    WriteLine($"There are {count} eggs.");
}
else
{
    WriteLine("I could not parse the input.");
}
```

Run the application twice. The first time, enter 12. You will see the following output:

```
How many eggs are there? 12
There are 12 eggs.
```

The second time, enter `twelve`. You will see the following output:

```
How many eggs are there? twelve  
I could not parse the count.
```

Tip

You can also use the `Convert` type, but like the `Parse` method, it gives an error if it cannot convert.

Handling exceptions

You've seen several scenarios when errors have occurred. C# calls that an exception being thrown. A best practice is to avoid writing code that will throw an exception whenever possible, but sometimes you can't. In those scenarios, you must catch the exception and handle it.

As you have seen, the default behavior of a console application is to display details about the exception in the console window and then stop running the application.

The default behavior of a Windows desktop application is to display details about the exception in a dialog box and allow the user to choose to either continue or stop running the application.

You can have more control over how you want to handle exceptions using the try-catch statement.

Add a new Console Application project named **Ch03_HandlingExceptions**.

The try-catch statement

When you know that a statement can cause an error, you should wrap that statement in a try block. For example, parsing from a string to a number can cause an error. We do not have to do anything inside the catch block. When the following code executes, the error will get caught and not displayed and the Console Application will continue running.

In the Main method, add the following statements:

```
WriteLine("Before parsing");
Write("What is your age? ");
string input = Console.ReadLine();
try
{
    int age = int.Parse(input);
    WriteLine($"You are {age} years old.");
}
catch
{
}
WriteLine("After parsing");
```

Run the program by pressing *Ctrl + F5* and enter a valid age, for example, 43:

```
Before parsing
What is your age? 43
You are 43 years old.
After parsing
```

Run the program and enter an invalid age, for example, kermit;

```
Before parsing
What is your age? kermit
After parsing
```

It can be useful to see the type of error that occurred.

Catching all exceptions

Modify the catch statement to look like this:

```
catch(Exception ex)
{
    WriteLine($"{ex.GetType()} says {ex.Message}");
}
```

Run the program and again enter an invalid age, for example, kermit:

```
Before parsing
What is your age? kermit
System.FormatException says Input string was not in a correct format.
After parsing
```

Catching specific exceptions

Now that we know which specific type of exception occurred, we can improve our code

by catching just that type of exception and customizing the message that we display to the user.

Leave the existing catch block but add the following code above it:

```
catch (FormatException)
{
    WriteLine("The age you entered is not a valid number format.");
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    WriteLine($"{ex.GetType()} says {ex.Message}");
}
```

Run the program and again enter an invalid age, for example, kermit:

Before parsing

What is your age? kermit

The age you entered is not a valid number format.

After parsing

The reason we want to leave the more general catch below is because there might be other types of exception that can occur. Run the program and enter a number that is too big for an integer, for example, 9876543210:

Before parsing

What is your age? 9876543210

System.OverflowException says Value was either too large or too small for an Int32.

After parsing

Let's add another catch for this new type of exception:

```
catch(OverflowException)
{
    WriteLine("Your age is a valid number format but it is either too big
or small.");
}
catch (FormatException)
{
    WriteLine("The age you entered is not a valid number format.");
}
```

Rerun the program one more time and enter a number that is too big:

Before parsing

What is your age? 9876543210

Your age is a valid number format but it is either too big or small.

After parsing

Tip

The order in which you catch exceptions is important. The correct order is related to the inheritance hierarchy of the exception types. You will learn about inheritance in [Chapter 6, Building Your Own Types with Object-Oriented Programming](#). But don't worry too much about this—the compiler will give you build errors if you catch exceptions in the wrong

order anyway.

The finally statement

Sometimes we would want to ensure that some code executes regardless of whether an exception occurs or not. To do this, we use a `finally` statement.

Add a new Console Application project named **Ch03_Finally**.

A common scenario in which you would want to use `finally` is when working with files and databases. When you open a file or a database, you are using resources outside of .NET. These are called **unmanaged resources** and must be disposed of when you are done working with them. To guarantee that they are disposed of, we can call the `Dispose` method inside of a `finally` block.

Tip

You will learn about files and databases in more detail in later chapters. For now, focus on the code that we write in the `finally` block.

Import the `System.IO` namespace at the top of the code file:

```
using System.IO;
```

Type the following code in the `Main` method:

```
FileStream file = null;
StreamWriter writer = null;
try
{
    file = File.OpenWrite(@"c:\Code\file.txt");
    writer = new StreamWriter(file);
    writer.WriteLine("Hello C#!");
}
catch (Exception ex)
{
    // if the folder doesn't exist the exception will be caught
    WriteLine($"{ex.GetType()} says {ex.Message}");
}
finally
{
    if(writer != null)
    {
        writer.Dispose();
        WriteLine("The writer's unmanaged resources have been disposed.");
    }
    if (file != null)
    {
        file.Dispose();
        WriteLine("The file's unmanaged resources have been disposed.");
    }
}
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* and view the output in the console:

```
The writer's unmanaged resources have been disposed.
The file's unmanaged resources have been disposed.
```

Simplifying disposal with the using statement

If you don't need to catch any exceptions, then you can simplify the code that needs to check for a non-null object and then call its `Dispose` method, as follows:

```
using (FileStream file2 = File.OpenWrite(@"c:\Code\file2.txt"))
{
    using (StreamWriter writer2 = new StreamWriter(file2))
    {
        writer.WriteLine("Hello C#!");
    } // automatically calls Dispose if the object is not null
} // automatically calls Dispose if the object is not null
```

The compiler changes your code into the longer version but without a catch block. You are allowed to use nested try-catch statements, so if you do want to catch any exceptions you can do this.

Add this code after the existing code. It will create a file named `file2.txt`:

```
using (FileStream file2 = File.OpenWrite(@"c:\Code\file2.txt"))
{
    using (StreamWriter writer2 = new StreamWriter(file2))
    {
        try
        {
            writer2.WriteLine("Hello C#!");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            WriteLine($"{ex.GetType()} says {ex.Message}");
        }
    }
}
```

Tip

Many types, including `FileStream` and `StreamWriter` mentioned earlier, provide a `Close` method as well as a `Dispose` method. In the .NET Framework, you can use either because they do the same thing. In the .NET Core, Microsoft has simplified the API so you must use `Dispose`.

Checking for overflow

Earlier, we saw that when casting between number types it was possible to lose information, for example, when casting from a long variable to an int variable. If the value stored in a type is too big, it will overflow.

Add a new Console Application project named **Ch03_CheckingForOverflow**.

The checked statement

The checked statement tells .NET to throw an exception when an overflow happens instead of allowing it to happen silently.

We set the initial value of an `int` variable to its maximum value minus one. Then, we increment it several times, outputting its value each time. Note that once `x` gets above its maximum value, it overflows to its minimum value and continues incrementing from there.

Type the following code in the `Main` method and run the program:

```
int x = int.MaxValue - 1;
WriteLine(x);
x++;
WriteLine(x);
x++;
WriteLine(x);
x++;
WriteLine(x);
```

Press `Ctrl + F5` and view the output in the console:

```
2147483646
2147483647
-2147483648
-2147483647
```

Now let's get the compiler to warn us about the overflow using the checked statement:

```
checked
{
    int x = int.MaxValue - 1;
    WriteLine(x);
    x++;
    WriteLine(x);
    x++;
    WriteLine(x);
    x++;
    WriteLine(x);
}
```

Press `Ctrl+F5` and view the output in the console:

```
2147483646
2147483647
Unhandled Exception: System.OverflowException: Arithmetic operation
resulted in an overflow.
```

Just like any other exception, we could wrap these statements in a `try-catch` block and display a nicer error message for the user:

```
try
{
    // previous code goes here
}
```

```
catch(OverflowException)
{
    WriteLine("The code overflowed but I caught the exception.");
}
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* and view the output in the console:

2147483646

2147483647

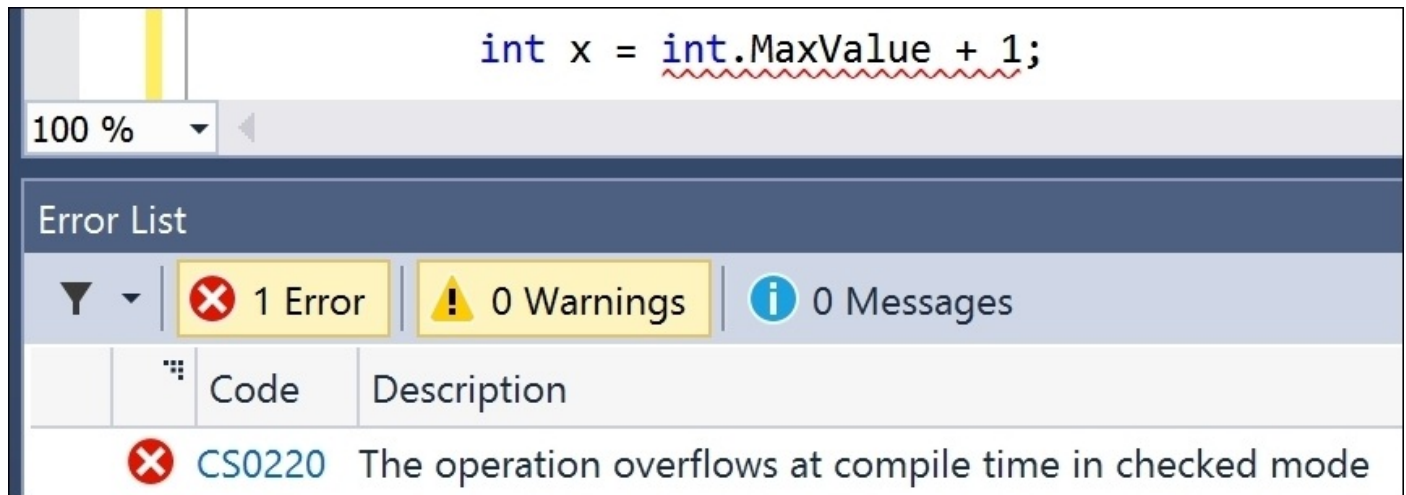
The code overflowed but I caught the exception.

The unchecked statement

A related keyword is unchecked. Type the following statement at the end of the previous statements. The compiler will not compile this statement because it knows it would overflow:

```
int x = int.MaxValue + 1;
```

Press *F6* to build and notice the error, as shown in the following screenshot:



Note that this is a **compile-time** check. To disable compile-time checks, we can wrap the statement in an unchecked block, as shown in the following code:

```
unchecked
{
    int x = int.MaxValue + 1;
    WriteLine(x);
    x--;
    WriteLine(x);
    x--;
}
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* and view the output in the console:

```
2147483646
2147483647
The code overflowed but I caught the exception.
-2147483648
2147483647
2147483646
```

Of course it would be pretty rare that you would want to explicitly switch off a check like this because it allows an overflow to occur. But, perhaps, you can think of a scenario where you might want that behavior.

Looking for help

This section is about how to find quality information about programming on the Web.

MSDN

The definitive resource for getting help about C# and .NET is the **Microsoft Developer Network (MSDN)**.

Visual Studio is integrated with MSDN, so if you press *F1* inside a C# keyword or type, then it will open your browser and take you to the official documentation.

Almost all the reference URLs at the end of chapters in this book will take you to MSDN.

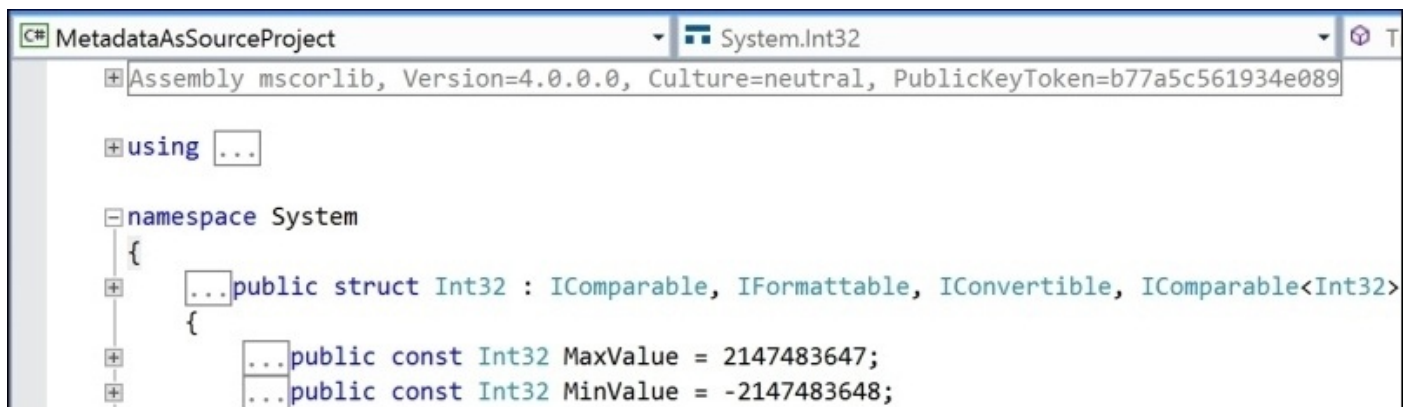
Getting the definition of code

Another useful keystroke is *F12*. This will show what the original source code looks like. It uses a similar technique as IL DASM to reverse engineer the source code from Microsoft assemblies.

Enter the following code, click inside `int`, and then press *F12* (or right-click and choose **Go To Definition**):

```
int x;
```

In the new code window that appears, you can see that `int` is in the `microsoft.dll` assembly, it is named `Int32`, it is in the `System` namespace, and `int` is therefore an alias for `System.Int32`.



```
MetadataAsSourceProject System.Int32
Assembly microsoft, Version=4.0.0.0, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=b77a5c561934e089
using ...
namespace System
{
    public struct Int32 : IComparable, IFormattable, IConvertible, IComparable<Int32>
    {
        public const Int32 MaxValue = 2147483647;
        public const Int32 MinValue = -2147483648;
    }
}
```

Microsoft defined `Int32` using a `struct` keyword, meaning that it is a value type stored on the stack. You can also see that `Int32` implements interfaces such as `IComparable` and has constants for its maximum and minimum possible values.

In the code editor window, find the `Parse` methods and click on the small box with a plus symbol in the `Parse` methods to expand the code like I have done in the following screenshot:

```
//  
// Summary:  
//     Converts the string representation of a number to its 32-bit signed integer equivalent.  
//  
// Parameters:  
//     s:  
//     A string containing a number to convert.  
//  
// Returns:  
//     A 32-bit signed integer equivalent to the number contained in s.  
//  
// Exceptions:  
//     T:System.ArgumentNullException:  
//     s is null.  
//  
//     T:System.FormatException:  
//     s is not in the correct format.  
//  
//     T:System.OverflowException:  
//     s represents a number less than System.Int32.MinValue or greater than System.Int32.MaxValue.  
public static Int32 Parse(string s);
```

In the comment, you will see that Microsoft has documented what exceptions might occur if you call this method (`ArgumentNullException`, `FormatException`, and `OverflowException`).

Now we know that we need to wrap a call to this method in a try-catch statement and which exceptions to catch.

StackOverflow

StackOverflow is the most popular third-party website for getting answers to difficult programming questions. It is so popular that search engines such as **DuckDuckGo** have a special way to write a query to search the site.

Go to [DuckDuckGo.com](https://duckduckgo.com) and enter the following query:

!so securestring

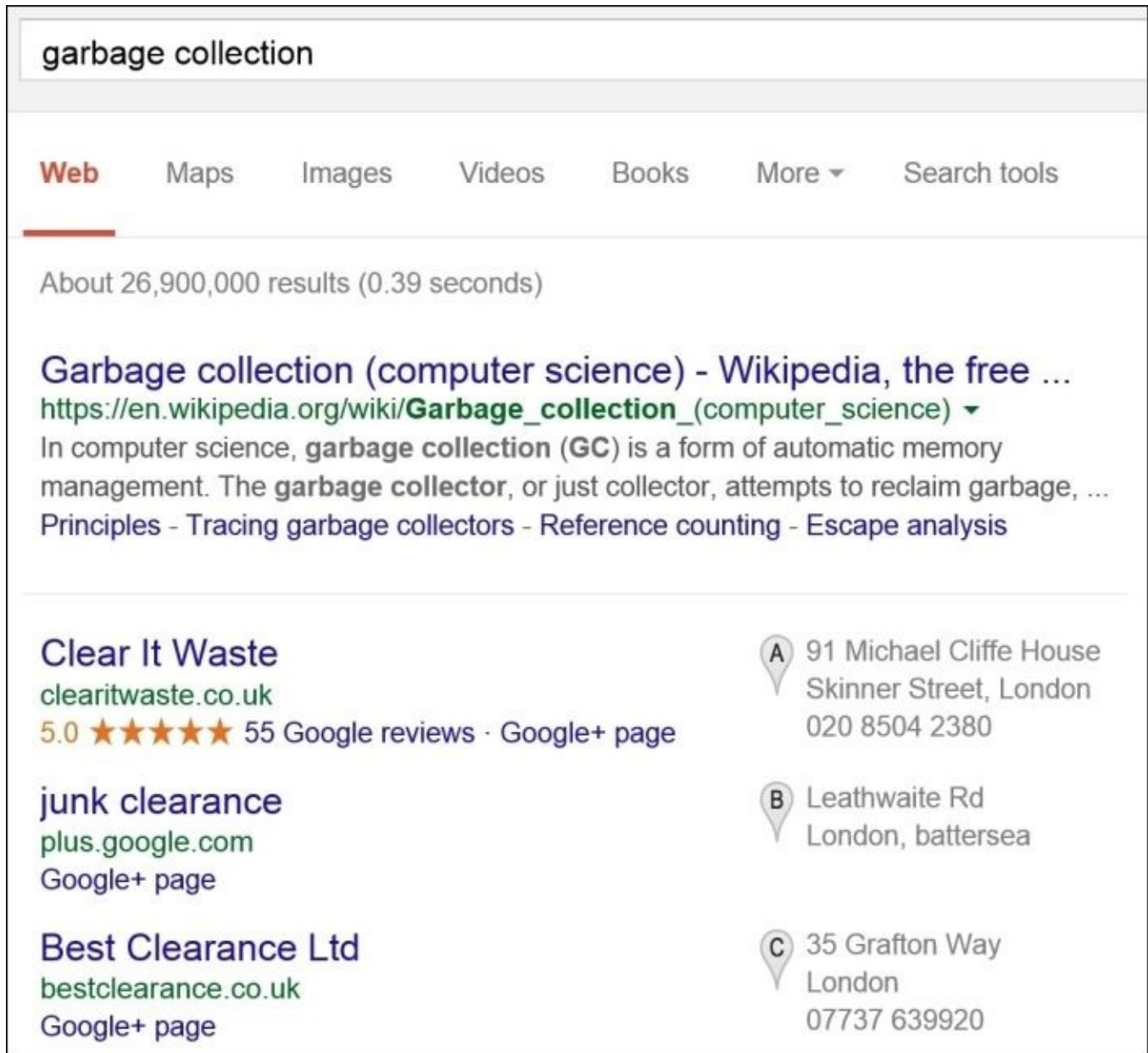
You will get the following results:

20 votes	Q: Using SecureString Can this be simplified to a one liner? Feel free to completely rewrite it as long as secureString gets initialized properly. SecureString secureString = new SecureString (); foreach (char c in "fizzbuzz".ToCharArray()) { secureString.AppendChar (c); } ...	asked Mar 10 '10 by Todd Smith
7 answers	<code>c#</code> <code>security</code> <code>securestring</code>	
16 votes	Q: Convert String to SecureString How to convert String to SecureString ? ...	asked Oct 15 '09 by Nila
7 answers	<code>c#</code> <code>securestring</code>	
145 votes	Q: When would I need a SecureString in .NET? I'm trying to grok the purpose of .NET's SecureString . From MSDN: An instance of the System.String class is both immutable and, when no longer needed, cannot be programmatically scheduled ... from computer memory. A SecureString object is similar to a String object in that it has a text value. However, the value of a SecureString object is automatically encrypted, can be modified ...	asked Sep 26 '08 by Richard Morgan
8 answers	<code>.net</code> <code>security</code> <code>encryption</code>	

Google

You can search **Google** with advanced search options to increase the likelihood of finding what you need.

For example, if you are searching for information about **garbage collection** using a simple Google query, you would see a Wikipedia definition of garbage collection in computer science and then a list of garbage collection services in your local area.



The screenshot shows a Google search interface with the query "garbage collection" in the search bar. Below the search bar are navigation tabs for "Web", "Maps", "Images", "Videos", "Books", "More", and "Search tools". The "Web" tab is selected. The search results indicate "About 26,900,000 results (0.39 seconds)". The top result is a Wikipedia entry titled "Garbage collection (computer science) - Wikipedia, the free ...". Below this are three local business listings, each with a location pin icon and a letter label (A, B, C).

garbage collection

Web Maps Images Videos Books More Search tools

About 26,900,000 results (0.39 seconds)

Garbage collection (computer science) - Wikipedia, the free ...
[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Garbage_collection_\(computer_science\)](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Garbage_collection_(computer_science))
In computer science, **garbage collection (GC)** is a form of automatic memory management. The **garbage collector**, or just collector, attempts to reclaim garbage, ...
Principles - Tracing garbage collectors - Reference counting - Escape analysis

Clear It Waste
clearitwaste.co.uk
5.0 ★★★★★ 55 Google reviews · Google+ page

junk clearance
plus.google.com
Google+ page

Best Clearance Ltd
bestclearance.co.uk
Google+ page

A 91 Michael Cliffe House
Skinner Street, London
020 8504 2380

B Leathwaite Rd
London, battersea

C 35 Grafton Way
London
07737 639920

We can improve the search by restricting it to a useful site like StackOverflow, as shown in the following screenshot:

garbage collection site:stackoverflow.com

Web

Maps

Images

Videos

Books

More ▾

Search tools

About 49,400 results (0.27 seconds)

Newest 'garbage-collection' Questions - Stack Overflow

stackoverflow.com/questions/tagged/garbage-collection ▾

Garbage collection (GC) is a form of automatic memory management. It attempts to reclaim garbage, or memory occupied by objects that are no longer in use by ...

Garbage Collection: Algorithms for Automatic Dynamic ...

rads.stackoverflow.com › ... › [Algorithms](#) › [Memory Management](#) ▾

Garbage Collection: Algorithms for Automatic Dynamic Memory Management [Richard Jones, Rafael D Lins] on Amazon.com. *FREE* shipping on qualifying ...

c++ - Why garbage collection when RAI is available ...

stackoverflow.com/.../why-garbage-collection-when-raii-is-available ▾

23 Jun 2013 - I hear talks of C++14 introducing a **garbage collector** in the C++ ...

Garbage collection and RAI are useful in different contexts. The presence of ...

We can improve the search even more by removing languages that we might not care about, such as C++, as shown in the following screenshot:

garbage collection site:stackoverflow.com -c++ -java

Web

Maps

Images

Videos

Books

More ▾

Search tools

About 19,100 results (0.30 seconds)

c# - Garbage Collection not happening even when needed ...

[stackoverflow.com/.../garbage-collection-not-happening-even-when-nee...](#) ▾

4 Apr 2012 - As a sanity check, I have a button to force GC. When I push that, I quickly get 6GB back. Doesn't that prove my 6 arrays were not being referenced and ...

How expensive is it to call the Garbage Collector manually?

[stackoverflow.com/.../how-expensive-is-it-to-call-the-garbage-collector-...](#) ▾

4 Feb 2014 - Yes, there are some other drawbacks. Even if you call `GC.Collect`, you can not ensure that objects that you believe are gone, are actually gone.

c# - Garbage collection of circular referenced object - Stack ...

[stackoverflow.com/.../garbage-collection-of-circular-referenced-object](#) ▾

16 May 2013 - The **garbage collector** looks through the active references, and anything that isn't found from there can be collected. That way it doesn't matter that the ...

Design patterns

A design pattern is a general solution to a common problem. Programmers have been solving the same problems over and over. When the community discovers a good reusable solution, we call it a design pattern. Many design patterns have been documented over the years.

Microsoft has a group called **patterns & practices** that specializes in documenting and promoting design patterns for Microsoft products.

Tip

Best Practice

Before writing new code, search to see if someone else has already solved the problem in a general way.

Practice and explore

Test your knowledge and understanding by answering some questions, get some hands-on practice, and explore with deeper research into this chapter's topics.

Exercise 3.1 – test your knowledge

Answer the following questions:

1. What happens when you divide an `int` variable by `0`?
2. What happens when you divide a `double` variable by `0`?
3. What happens when you overflow an `int` variable, that is, set it to a value beyond its range?
4. What is the difference between `x = y++;` and `x = ++y;`?
5. What is the difference between `break`, `continue`, and `return` when used inside a loop statement?
6. What are the three parts of a `for` statement and which of them are required?
7. What is the difference between the `=` and `==` operators?

Exercise 3.2 – explore loops and overflow

What will happen if this code executes?

```
int max = 500;
for (byte i = 0; i < max; i++)
{
    WriteLine(i);
}
```

Add a new Console Application named **Ch03_Exercise02** and enter the preceding code. Run the application by pressing *Ctrl + F5*. What happens?

What code could you *add* (don't change any of the preceding code) to warn us about the problem?

Exercise 3.3 – practice loops and operators

FizzBuzz is a group word game for children to teach them about division. Players take turns to count incrementally, replacing any number divisible by three with the word “fizz”, any number divisible by five with the word “buzz”, and any number divisible by both with “fizzbuzz”.

Some interviewers give applicants simple FizzBuzz-style problems to solve during interviews. Most good programmers should be able to write out on paper or whiteboard a program to output a simulated FizzBuzz game in under a couple of minutes.

Want to know something worrisome? Many computer science graduates can't. You can even find senior programmers who take more than 10-15 minutes to write a solution.

“199 out of 200 applicants for every programming job can't write code at all. I repeat: they can't write any code whatsoever.”

—Reginald Braithwaite

This quote is taken from <http://blog.codinghorror.com/why-cant-programmers-program/>.

Refer to the following link for more information:

<http://imranontech.com/2007/01/24/using-fizzbuzz-to-find-developers-who-grok-coding/>

Create a Console Application named **Ch03_Exercise03** that outputs a simulated FizzBuzz game counting up to 100. The output should look something like this:

```
1, 2, Fizz, 4, Buzz, Fizz, 7, 8, Fizz, Buzz, 11, Fizz, 13, 14, FizzBuzz,
16, 17, Fizz, 19, Buzz, Fizz, 22, 23, Fizz, Buzz, 26, Fizz, 28, 29,
FizzBuzz, 31, 32, Fizz, 34, Buzz, Fizz, 37, 38, Fizz, Buzz, 41, Fizz, 43,
44, FizzBuzz, 46, 47, Fizz, 49, Buzz, Fizz, 52, 53, Fizz, Buzz, 56, Fizz,
58, 59, FizzBuzz, 61, 62, Fizz, 64, Buzz, Fizz, 67, 68, Fizz, Buzz, 71,
Fizz, 73, 74, FizzBuzz, 76, 77, Fizz, 79, Buzz, Fizz, 82, 83, Fizz, Buzz,
86, Fizz, 88, 89, FizzBuzz, 91, 92, Fizz, 94, Buzz, Fizz, 97, 98, Fizz,
Buzz
```

Exercise 3.4 – practice exception handling

Create a Console Application named **Ch03_Exercise04** that asks the user for two numbers in the range 0-255 and then divides the first number by the second:

```
Enter a number between 1 and 255: 100
Enter another number between 1 and 255: 8
100 divided by 8 is 12
```

Write exception handlers to catch any thrown errors:

```
Enter a number between 1 and 255: apples
Enter another number between 1 and 255: bananas
FormatException: Input string was not in a correct format.
```

Exercise 3.5 – explore topics

Use the following links to read in more detail about the topics covered in this chapter:

- **Selection Statements (C# Reference):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/676s4xab.aspx>
- **Iteration Statements (C# Reference):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/32dbftby.aspx>
- **Jump Statements (C# Reference):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/d96yfwee.aspx>
- **Casting and Type Conversions (C# Programming Guide):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms173105.aspx>
- **Exception Handling Statements (C# Reference):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/s7fekhdy.aspx>
- **Checked and Unchecked (C# Reference):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/khy08726.aspx>
- **Namespace Keywords (C# Reference):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/cxtk6h5e.aspx>
- **StackOverflow:** <http://stackoverflow.com/>
- **Google Advanced Search:** http://www.google.com/advanced_search
- **Design Patterns:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff649977.aspx>
- **patterns & practices:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ff921345.aspx>

Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to branch and loop, how to convert between types, how to handle exceptions, and most importantly, how to find help!

You are now ready to learn more about what is underneath C#— .NET types.

Chapter 4. Using Common .NET Types

This chapter is about .NET types and how they are related to C#. You will learn about .NET Framework and .NET Core, and their class library assemblies of common types that allow your applications to connect existing components together to perform common practical tasks.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Using assemblies and namespaces
- Storing and manipulating text
- Storing data with collections

Using assemblies and namespaces

The .NET Framework and the .NET Core are made up of several pieces, which are as follows:

- **Language compilers:** These turn your source code (written with languages such as C#, F#, Visual Basic, and others) into **intermediate language (IL)** code stored in assemblies (applications and class libraries). C# 6 introduced a completely rewritten compiler known as Roslyn.
- **Common Language Runtimes (CLR and CoreCLR):** These runtimes load assemblies, compile the IL code stored in them into native code instructions for your computer's CPU, and execute the code within an environment that manages resources such as threads and memory.
- **Base Class Libraries (BCL and CoreFX):** These are prebuilt assemblies of types for performing common tasks when building applications. You can use them to quickly build anything you want, rather like combining LEGO pieces.

Comparing .NET Framework with .NET Core

The .NET Framework is a superset of .NET Core.

Although .NET Core has less functionality today, going forward, Microsoft has said that new features will be first added to .NET Core and then ported back to .NET Framework.

In this book, I will use the term **.NET** when introducing features that apply to both the .NET Framework and the .NET Core.

Base Class Libraries and CoreFX

The .NET Framework's BCL and the .NET Core's CoreFX are libraries of prebuilt code that are divided into assemblies and namespaces that make it easier to manage the tens of thousands of types available. It is important to understand the difference between an assembly and a namespace.

Assemblies

An **assembly** is where a type is stored in the filesystem. Assemblies are a mechanism for deploying code. For example, the `System.Data.dll` assembly contains types for managing databases.

When using the .NET Framework, the `System.Data.dll` assembly can be found in the **Global Assembly Cache (GAC)** centralized folder `C:\Program Files (x86)\Reference Assemblies\Microsoft\Framework\.NETFramework\v4.6\`.

When using .NET Core, the equivalent assembly would be found in a private subfolder alongside other dependency assemblies.

Namespaces

A **namespace** is the address of a type. Namespaces are a mechanism to uniquely identify a type by providing a full address rather than just a short name.

In the real world, *Bob of 34 Sycamore Street* is different from *Bob of 12 Willow Drive*.

In .NET, the `IActionFilter` interface of the `System.Web.Mvc` namespace is different from the `IActionFilter` interface of the `System.Web.Http.Filters` namespace.

Referencing an assembly

If an assembly is compiled as a class library (it provides types for other assemblies to use), then it has the file extension **DLL** (**dynamic link library**) and cannot be executed standalone.

If an assembly is compiled as an application, then it has the file extension **EXE** (**executable**) and can be executed standalone.

Any assembly (both applications and class libraries) can reference one or more class library assemblies, but you cannot have circular references, so assembly *B* cannot reference assembly *A* if assembly *A* already references assembly *B*. Visual Studio will warn you if you attempt to add a reference that would cause a circular reference.

Referencing Microsoft Core Library

Every application compiled for .NET has an automatic reference to **Microsoft Core Library** (`microsoft.corelib.dll`). This special assembly contains types that almost all applications would need, such as the `int` and `string` types.

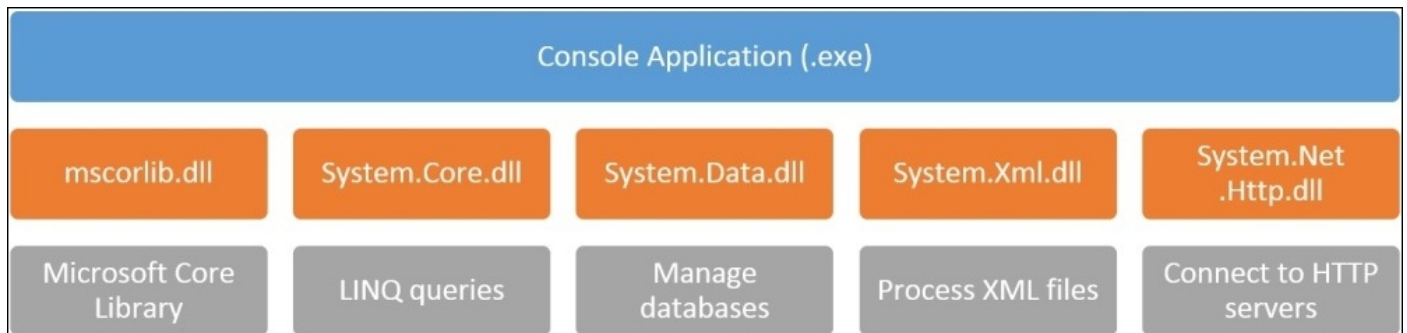
Tip

The name Microsoft Core Library has nothing to do with .NET Core.

To use types in other assemblies, they must be manually referenced. Most Visual Studio project templates add some common assembly references for you, for example, the `System.Xml.dll` assembly for working with XML.

An example of assembly references

The following diagram shows a console application that needs to connect to a database, process an XML file, connect to an HTTP server, and query data using LINQ so that it has references to the assemblies that contain types to perform those tasks:

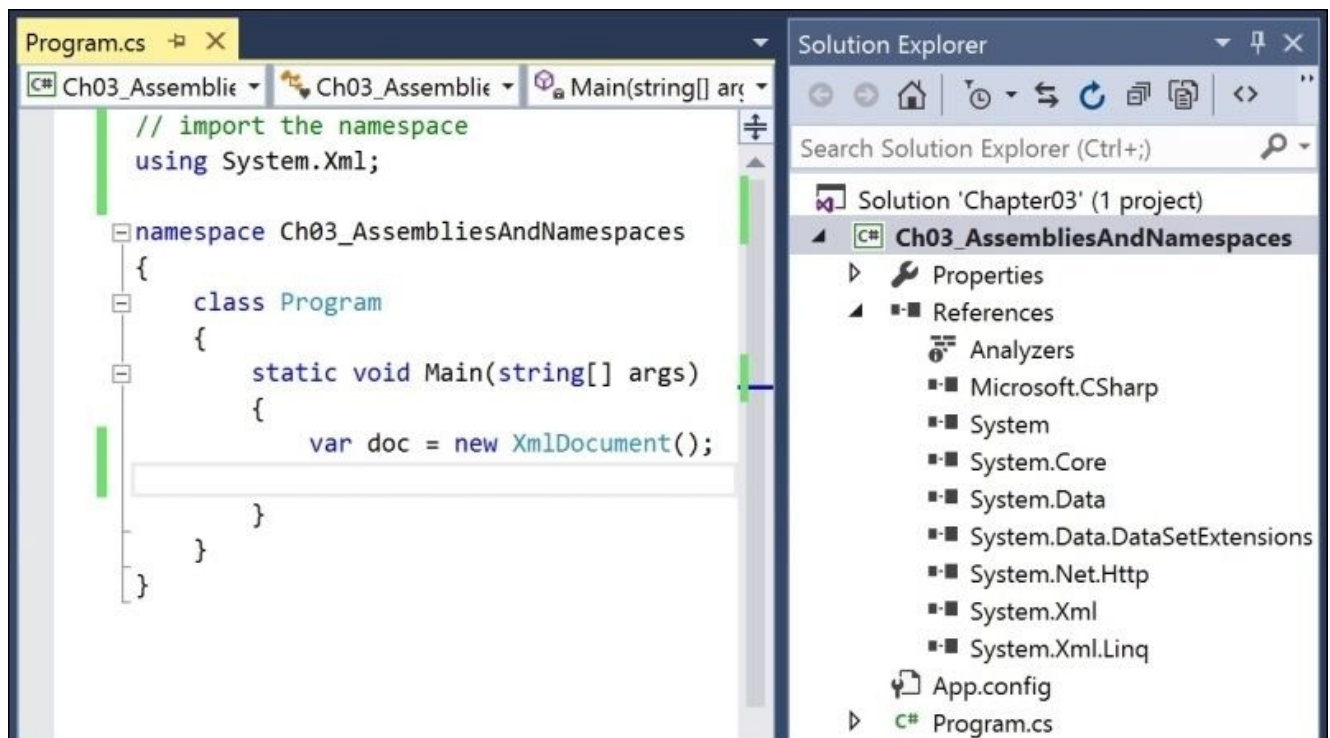


Relating assemblies and namespaces

The following steps will help you to relate assemblies and namespaces:

1. Start Microsoft Visual Studio 2015.
2. In Visual Studio, press *Ctrl + Shift + N* or navigate to **File | New | Project...**
3. In the **New Project** dialog, in the **Installed Templates** list, select **Visual C#**. In the list at the center, select **Console Application**, type the name **Ch04_AssembliesAndNamespaces**, change the location to `C:\Code`, type the solution name **Chapter04**, and then click on **OK**.
4. In the **Solution Explorer** window, expand **References**. Note that a console application project already has references to several assemblies, including **System.Xml**.

If you don't need any of these assemblies, then you can remove the reference by selecting it and pressing *Del*, or right-clicking and choosing **Remove**:



5. Inside the Main method, type the following code:

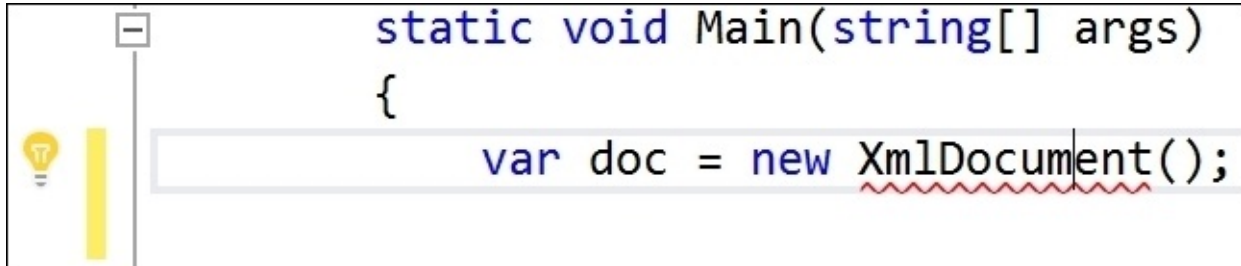
```
var doc = new XmlDocument();
```

The `XmlDocument` type is not recognized because we have not told the compiler what the namespace of the type is. Although this project already has a reference to the assembly that contains the type, we also need to either prefix the type name with its namespace, or import the namespace. We can get Visual Studio to fix this problem for us.

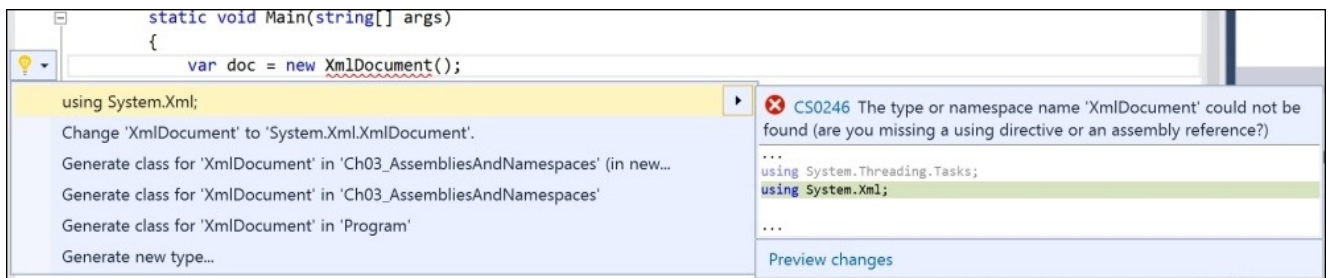
Importing a namespace

You need to perform the following steps to import a namespace:

1. Click inside the `XmlDocument` type. Visual Studio displays a light bulb showing that it recognizes the type and can automatically fix the problem for you, as shown in the following screenshot:



2. Click on the light bulb or press `Ctrl+`.
3. Choose `using System.Xml;` from the menu showing several other options as well. This will import the namespace by adding a using statement to the top of the file:



Once a namespace is imported for a code file, then all the types within the namespace are available for use in that code file just by typing their name.

Add another line of code to create an `XmlDataDocument` instance:

```
var data = new XmlDataDocument();
```

Note

You will see a green squiggle under the type name, which is a warning telling us that this type is obsolete and will be removed in a future release. Ignore that because it's not relevant to what you are learning now. As long as a type name is teal (bluish-green) it means the compiler understands it.

In the **Solution Explorer** window, inside **References**, right-click on **System.Xml**, and choose **Remove**.

After a few seconds, Visual Studio displays a red squiggle under `XmlDocument`, as shown in the following screenshot, and the text turns black instead of teal. This indicates that Visual Studio doesn't recognize the `XmlDocument` type:

```
var doc = new XmlDocument();  
var data = new XmlDocument();
```

This is because we no longer have a reference to the assembly that contains the `XmlDocument` type. Just having the import statement (`using System.Xml;`) is not enough to find the type.

Tip

The color syntax highlighting behavior may be different in older versions of Visual Studio.

However, the `XmlDataDocument` type is not affected (it is still teal). This is because `XmlDataDocument` is not in the `System.Xml` assembly. It is actually in the `System.Data` assembly and our project still has a reference to that assembly.

Tip

A type can be in any assembly and any namespace. They do not have to be related. It is up to the creator of a type to decide what makes most sense for the type. For example, the Microsoft employee who was responsible for the `XmlDataDocument` type decided that it should be stored in the `System.Data` assembly but logically grouped with types in the `System.Xml` namespace.

The following table summarizes the assembly and namespace locations of the two types that we have been looking at:

Type	Assembly	Namespace
<code>XmlDocument</code>	<code>System.Xml</code>	<code>System.Xml</code>
<code>XmlDataDocument</code>	<code>System.Data</code>	<code>System.Xml</code>

To fix the current compile error, we need to add back the reference to the `System.Xml` assembly.

In the **Solution Explorer** window, right-click on **References**, choose **Add Reference...**, and in the **Reference Manager** dialog box that appears, select **Assemblies** on the left-hand side, scroll down through the list, select the checkbox next to **System.Xml**, and then click on **OK**:

Reference Manager - Ch03_AssembliesAndNamespaces



Assemblies

Targeting: .NET Framework 4.6

Search Assemblies (Ctrl+E)

- Framework
- Extensions
- Recent
- Projects
- Shared Projects
- COM

	Name	Version
	System.Web.Extensions.Design	4.0.0.0
	System.Web.Mobile	4.0.0.0
	System.Web.RegularExpressions	4.0.0.0
	System.Web.Routing	4.0.0.0
	System.Web.Services	4.0.0.0
	System.Windows	4.0.0.0
	System.Windows.Controls.Ribbon	4.0.0.0
	System.Windows.Forms	4.0.0.0
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	System.Xml	4.0.0.0
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	System.Xml.Linq	4.0.0.0
	System.Xml.Serialization	4.0.0.0
	UIAutomationClient	4.0.0.0
	UIAutomationClientsideProviders	4.0.0.0
	UIAutomationProvider	4.0.0.0
	UIAutomationTypes	4.0.0.0
	WindowsBase	4.0.0.0
	WindowsFormsIntegration	4.0.0.0

Name:
System.Xml
Created by:
Microsoft Corporation
Version:
4.0.0.0
File Version:
4.6.57.0 built by: NETFXREL2

Browse... OK Cancel

Browsing assemblies and namespaces

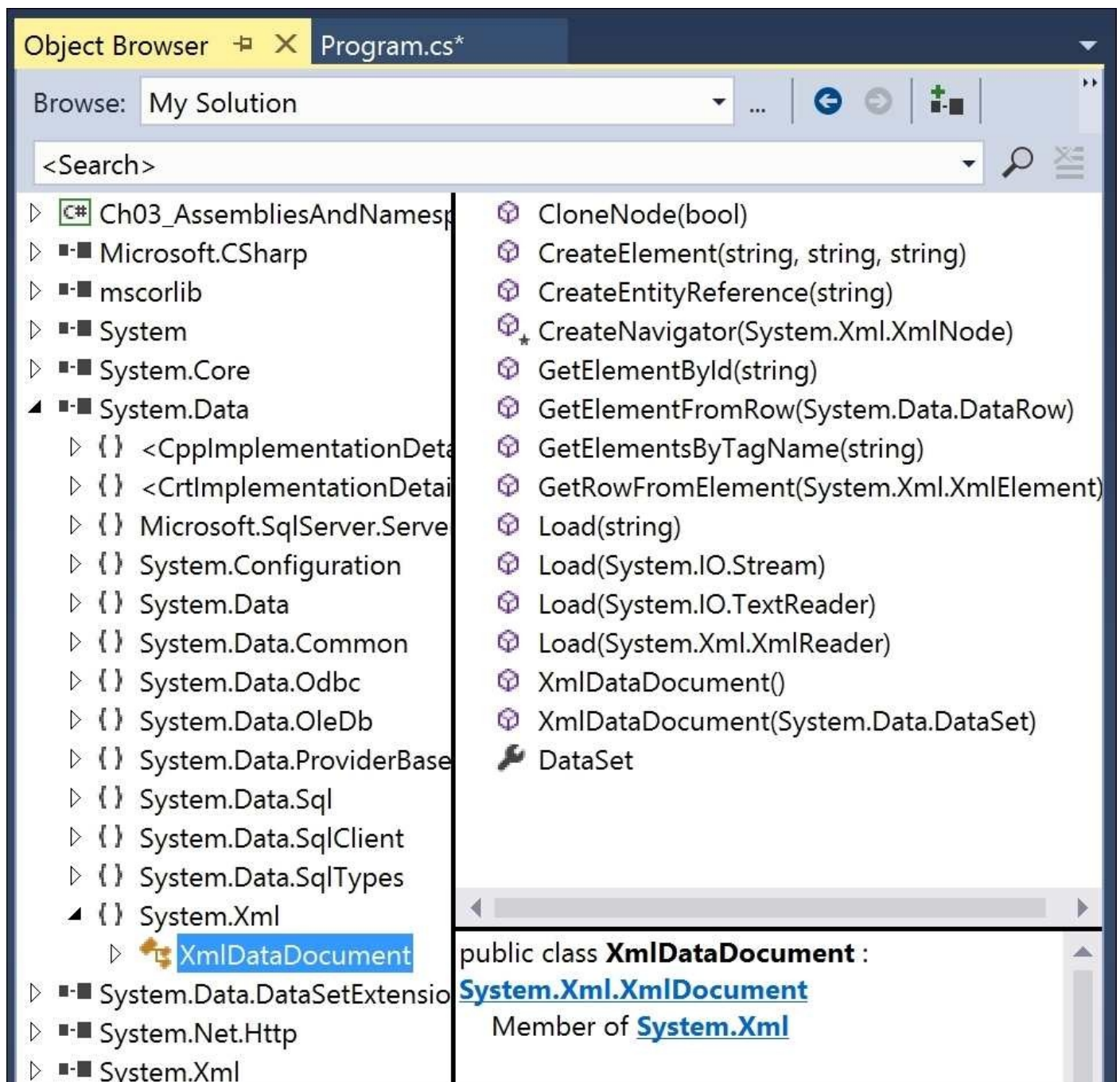
A useful tool for understanding the relationship between assemblies and namespaces is the **Object Browser**.

On the **View** menu, choose **Object Browser**, or press *Ctrl + W, J*.

Note

Remember that keyboard shortcuts are dependent upon your settings. If you have chosen an option other than Visual C# for your development settings, then your keyboard shortcut for the **Object Browser** window may be different!

The **Object Browser** window shows that inside the `System.Data` assembly is the namespace `System.Xml`, and that contains the `XmlDataDocument` type:

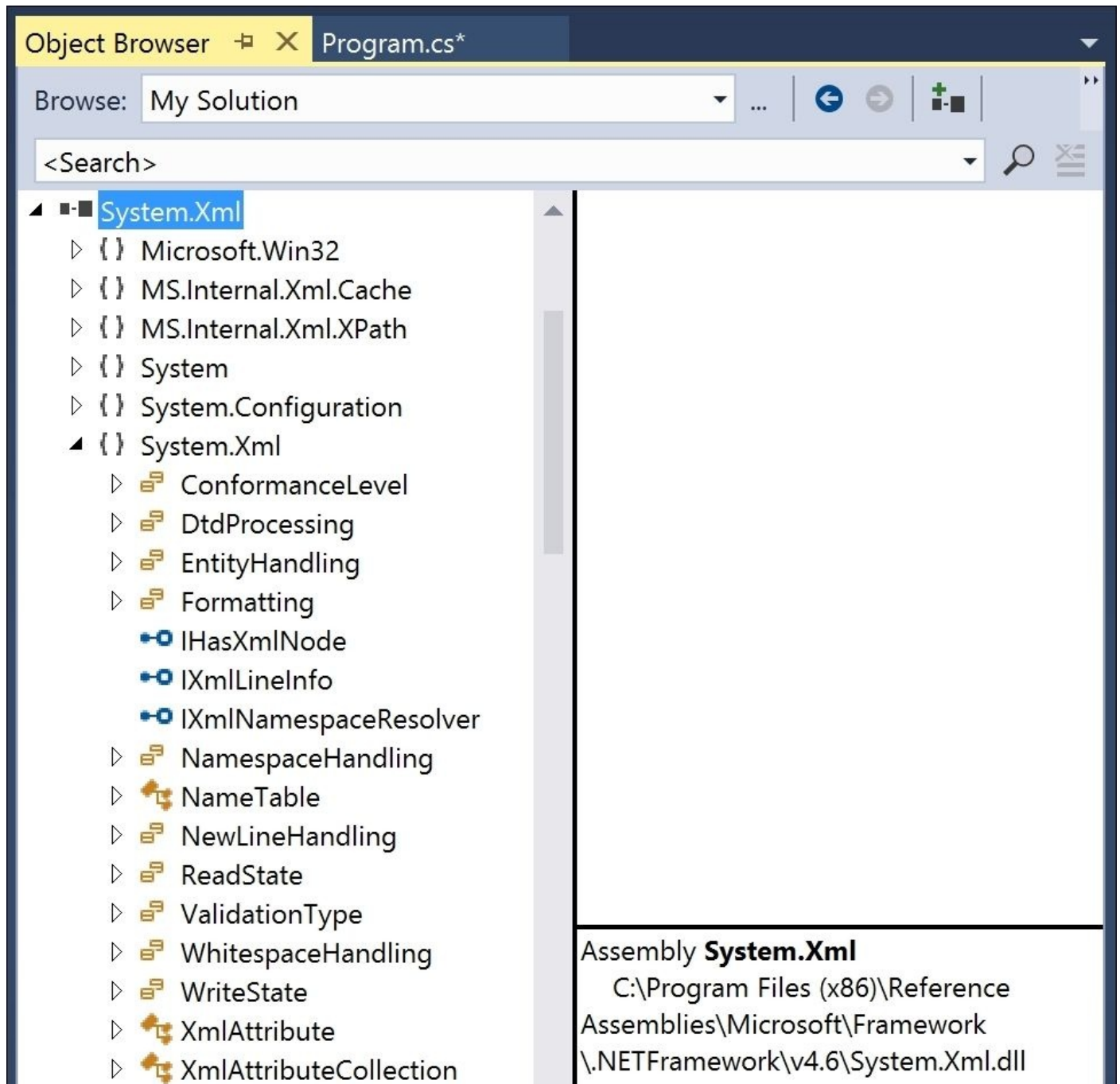


The screenshot shows the Visual Studio Object Browser window. The title bar reads "Object Browser" and "Program.cs*". The "Browse:" field contains "My Solution". The search bar is empty. The left pane shows a tree view of assemblies and namespaces, with `System.Xml` selected and `XmlDataDocument` highlighted. The right pane lists the members of `XmlDataDocument`, including `CloneNode(bool)`, `CreateElement(string, string, string)`, `CreateEntityReference(string)`, `CreateNavigator(System.Xml.XmlNode)`, `GetElementById(string)`, `GetElementFromRow(System.Data.DataRow)`, `GetElementsByTagName(string)`, `GetRowFromElement(System.Xml.XmlElement)`, `Load(string)`, `Load(System.IO.Stream)`, `Load(System.IO.TextReader)`, `Load(System.Xml.XmlReader)`, `XmlDataDocument()`, `XmlDataDocument(System.Data.DataSet)`, and `DataSet`. The bottom pane shows the class declaration: `public class XmlDataDocument : System.Xml.XmlDocument`, with `System.Xml.XmlDocument` and `System.Xml` highlighted as members.

If you expand the `System.Xml` assembly, you will see that it adds far more types to the `System.Xml` namespace.

If you select an assembly, you will see its location in the file system, for example,
`C:\Program Files (x86)\Reference`

`Assemblies\Microsoft\Framework\.NETFramework\v4.6\System.Xml.dll`:



Tip

Best Practice

Use class library assemblies to group together types with related functionality. Carefully consider the namespace that your types should belong to. Although Microsoft puts all .NET types underneath the `System` namespace, they often put other types underneath a

Microsoft.ApplicationName namespace. You should follow their example and therefore use your organization name and application names. For example, Packt.Publishing might be a good namespace for a Book type.

Relating C# keywords to .NET types

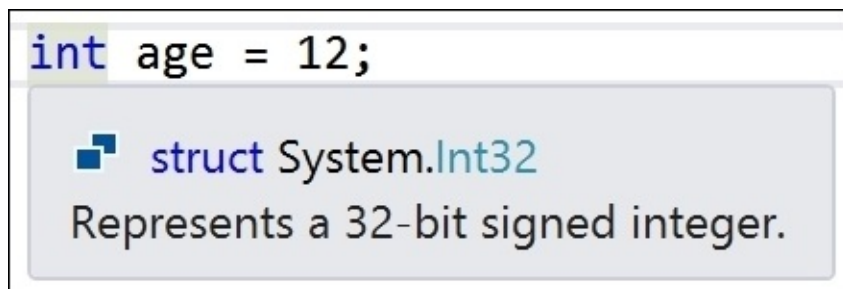
One of the common questions I get from new C# programmers is, “What is the difference between string with a lowercase and String with an uppercase?”

The short answer is easy: none.

The long answer is that all C# type keywords are aliases for a .NET type in a class library assembly.

When you use the keyword string, the compiler turns it into a System.String type.

When you use the type int, the compiler turns it into a System.Int32 type. You can even see this if you hover your mouse over an int type, as follows:



Tip

Best Practice

Use the C# keyword instead of the actual type because the keywords do not need the namespace imported.

The following table shows the 16 C# type keywords and their actual .NET types:

Keyword	.NET type	Keyword	.NET type
string	System.String	char	System.Char
sbyte	System.SByte	byte	System.Byte
short	System.Int16	ushort	System.UInt16
int	System.Int32	uint	System.UInt32
long	System.Int64	ulong	System.UInt64
float	System.Single	double	System.Double
decimal	System.Decimal	bool	System.Boolean
object	System.Object	dynamic	System.Dynamic.DynamicObject

Tip

Other .NET programming language compilers can do the same thing. For example, the

Visual Basic .NET language has a type named `Integer` that is its alias for `System.Int32`.

Storing and manipulating text

The most common type of data for variables is text. The most common types in .NET for working with text are shown in the following table:

Namespace	Type
System	Char
System	String
System.Text	StringBuilder
System.Text.RegularExpressions	Regex

Getting the length of a string

Add a new console application project named **Ch04_ManipulatingText**. Set the solution's startup project to be the current selection.

Sometimes, you need to find out the length of a piece of text stored in a string variable. Modify the code to look like this:

```
using static System.Console;
```

```
namespace Ch04_ManipulatingText
{
    class Program
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            string city = "London";
            WriteLine($"{city} is {city.Length} characters long.");
        }
    }
}
```

Getting the characters of a string

A string variable uses an array of char internally to store the text. It also has an indexer, which means that we can use the array syntax to read its characters. Add the following statement:

```
WriteLine($"First char is {city[0]} and third is {city[2]}.");
```

Splitting a string

Sometimes you need to split some text wherever there is a character such as a comma.

Add more lines of code to define a single string with comma-separated city names. You can use the `Split` method and specify a character that you want to treat as the separator. An array of strings is then created which you can enumerate using a `foreach` statement:

```
string cities = "Paris,Berlin,Madrid,New York";  
string[] citiesArray = cities.Split(',');  
foreach (string item in citiesArray)  
{  
    WriteLine(item);  
}
```


Extracting part of a string

Sometimes you need to get part of some text. For example, if you had a person's full name stored in a string with a space character between the first and last name, then you could find the position of the space using the `IndexOf` method, and then extract the first name and last name as two parts using the `Substring` method shown as follows:

```
string fullname = "Alan Jones";  
int indexOfTheSpace = fullname.IndexOf(' ');  
string firstname = fullname.Substring(0, indexOfTheSpace);  
string lastname = fullname.Substring(indexOfTheSpace + 1);  
WriteLine($"{lastname}, {firstname}");
```

Tip

If the format of the full name was different, for example, “Lastname, Firstname”, then the code would be slightly different.

Checking a string for content

Sometimes you need to check whether a piece of text starts or ends with some characters or contains some characters. For example, the following code checks whether the company variable starts with the letter M and contains the letter N:

```
string company = "Microsoft";  
bool startsWithM = company.StartsWith("M");  
bool containsN = company.Contains("N");  
WriteLine($"Starts with M: {startsWithM}, contains an N: {containsN}");
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* to run the application and check the output:

```
London is 6 characters long.  
First char is L and third is n.  
Paris  
Berlin  
Madrid  
New York  
Jones, Alan  
Starts with M: True, contains an N: False
```

Other string members

Here are some other string members:

Member	Description
Trim, TrimStart, and TrimEnd	These trim whitespace characters such as spaces, tabs, and new lines
ToUpper and ToLower	These convert to uppercase or lowercase
Insert and Remove	These insert or remove some text
Replace	This replaces some text
String.Concat (or use +)	This concatenates two strings
String.Join	This concatenates strings with a character in between each one
String.IsNullOrEmpty	This checks whether a string is empty or null
String.Empty	This can be used instead of allocating memory each time you use a literal string value using an empty pair of double quotes ("")

Building strings efficiently

You can concatenate two strings to make a new string using the `String.Concat` method or simply using the `+` operator. But, this is a bad practice because .NET must create a completely new string in memory. This might not be noticeable if you are only concatenating two strings but if you concatenate inside a loop, it can have a significant negative impact on performance and memory use.

Validating input with regular expressions

Regular expressions are useful for validating input from the user. They are very powerful and can get very complicated. Almost all programming languages have support for regular expressions, and use a common set of special characters to define them.

Add a new console application project named **Ch04_RegularExpressions**. At the top of the file, import the following namespace and type:

```
using System.Text.RegularExpressions;
using static System.Console;
```

In the Main method, add the following statements:

```
Write("Enter your age: ");
string input = ReadLine();
Regex ageChecker = new Regex(@"\d");
if(ageChecker.IsMatch(input))
{
    WriteLine("Thank you!");
}
else
{
    WriteLine($"This is not a valid age: {input}");
}
```

Tip

The @ character in front of a string switches off the ability to enter escape characters in a string variable. Escape characters are prefixed with a backslash (\). For example, \t means a tab and \n means new line. When writing regular expressions, we can disable this feature. Prefixing a string with @ allows a backslash to be a backslash.

Press *Ctrl + F5*, and see the output. If you enter a valid age, it will say “Thank you!”

```
Enter your age: 34
Thank you!
```

If you enter carrots, you will see the error message:

```
Enter your age: carrots
This is not a valid age: carrots
```

However, if you enter bob30smith it says “Thank you!”

```
Enter your age: bob30smith
Thank you!
```

The regular expression we used is \d, which means one digit. However, it does not limit what is entered *before* and *after* the digit.

Change the regular expression to ^\d\$, like this:

```
Regex ageChecker = new Regex(@"^\d$");
```

Rerun the application. Now, it rejects anything except a single digit.

We want to allow one or more digits. To do this, we add a + (plus) after the \d. Change the regular expression to look like this:

```
Regex ageChecker = new Regex(@"^\d+$");
```

Rerun the application and see how the regular expression now only allows positive whole numbers of any length.

The syntax of a regular expression

Here are some common special symbols that you can use in regular expressions:

Symbol	Meaning	Symbol	Meaning
<code>^</code>	Start of input	<code>\$</code>	End of input
<code>\d</code>	A single digit	<code>\D</code>	A single NON-digit
<code>\w</code>	Whitespace	<code>\W</code>	NON-whitespace
<code>[A-Za-z0-9]</code>	Range(s) of characters	<code>[AEIOU]</code>	Set of characters
<code>+</code>	One or more	<code>?</code>	One or none
<code>.</code>	A single character		
<code>{3}</code>	Exactly three	<code>{3,5}</code>	Three to five
<code>{3,}</code>	Three or more	<code>{,3}</code>	Up to three

Examples of regular expressions

Here are some examples of regular expressions:

Expression	Meaning
<code>\d</code>	A single digit somewhere in the input
<code>a</code>	The a character somewhere in the input
<code>Bob</code>	The word Bob somewhere in the input
<code>^Bob</code>	The word Bob at the start of the input
<code>Bob\$</code>	The word Bob at the end of the input
<code>^\d{2}\$</code>	Exactly two digits
<code>^[0-9]{2}\$</code>	Exactly two digits
<code>^[A-Z]{4,}\$</code>	At least four uppercase letters only
<code>^[A-Za-z]{4,}\$</code>	At least four upper or lowercase letters only
<code>^[A-Z]{2}\d{3}\$</code>	Two uppercase letters and three digits only
<code>^d.g\$</code>	The letter d, then any character, and then the letter g, so it would match both dig and dog or any character between the d and g
<code>^d\.g\$</code>	The letter d, then a dot (.), and then the letter g, so it would match d.g only

Tip

Best Practice

Use regular expressions to validate input from the user. The same regular expressions can be reused in C# and other languages, such as JavaScript.

Storing data with collections

If you need to store multiple values, you can use a collection. A **collection** is a data structure in memory that can manage multiple items in different ways, although all collections have some shared functionality.

There are two main namespaces for collections:

- `System.Collections`: Avoid the types in this namespace because they store any type that derives from `System.Object`, that is, every type (which is flexible but not type safe, thus leading to errors and boxing of value types, which can be slow and inefficient).
- `System.Collections.Generic`: The types in this namespace were introduced in C# 2 with .NET 2.0 and are better because they allow you to specify the type you want to store (which is safer, faster, and more efficient).

All collections have a `Count` property to tell you how many items are in it. For example, if we had a collection named `passengers` we could do this:

```
int howMany = passengers.Count;
```

All collections can be iterated using the `foreach` statement. To perform some action on all the items in the `passengers` collection, we can do this:

```
foreach (var passenger in passengers)
{
    // do something with each passenger
}
```

Understanding collections

There are several different collection categories: lists, dictionaries, stacks, queues, sets, and many other more specialized collections.

Lists

Lists are best when you want to manually control the order of items in a collection. Each item in a list has a unique index (or position) that is automatically assigned. Items can be any type (although they should all be the same type) and items can be duplicated. Indexes are `int` types and start from 0, so the first item in a list is at index 0, as shown in the following table:

Index	Item
0	London
1	Paris
2	London
3	Sydney

If a new item (for example, **Santiago**) is inserted between **London** and **Sydney**, the index of **Sydney** is automatically incremented. Therefore, you must be aware that an item's index can change after inserting or removing items, as shown in the following table:

Index	Item
0	London
1	Paris
2	London
3	Santiago
4	Sydney

Dictionaries

Dictionaries are best when each value (or item) has a unique subvalue (or a made-up value) that can be used as a key to quickly find the value in the collection later on. The key must be unique. If you are storing a list of people, you can use a government-issued identity number as the key.

Think of the key as being like an index entry in a real-world dictionary. It allows you to quickly find the definition of a word because the words (that is, keys) are kept sorted, and if we know we're looking for the definition of *Manatee*, we would jump to the middle of the dictionary to start looking, because the letter M is in the middle of the alphabet.

Dictionaries in programming are similarly optimized when looking something up.

Both the key and the value can be any type. This example uses strings for both:

Key	Value
BSA	Bob Smith
MW	Max Williams
BSB	Bob Smith
AM	Amir Mohammed

Stacks

Stacks are best when you want to implement the last-in, first-out (LIFO) behavior. With a stack, you can only directly access the one item at the top of the stack, although you can enumerate to read through the whole stack of items. You cannot, for example, access the second item in a stack.

For example, word processors use a stack to remember the sequence of actions you have recently performed, so that when you press *Ctrl + Z*, it will undo the last action in the stack, and then the next last action, and so on.

Queues

Queues are best when you want to implement the first-in, first out (FIFO) behavior. With a queue you can only directly access the one item at the front of the queue, although you can enumerate to read through the whole queue of items. You cannot, for example, access the second item in a queue.

For example, background processes use a queue to process work items in the order that they arrive, just like people standing in line at the post office.

Sets

Sets are best when you want to perform set operations between two collections. For example, you may have two collections of city names and you want to know which names appear in both sets (known as the **intersect** between the sets).

Working with lists

Add a new console application project named **Ch04_Lists**.

In the Main method, type the following code, which illustrates some of the common ways of working with lists:

```
var cities = new List<string>();
cities.Add("London");
cities.Add("Paris");
cities.Add("Milan");
WriteLine("Initial list");
foreach (string city in cities)
{
    WriteLine($" {city}");
}
WriteLine($"The first city is {cities[0]}.");
WriteLine($"The last city is {cities[cities.Count - 1]}.");
cities.Insert(0, "Sydney");
WriteLine("After inserting Sydney at index 0");
foreach (string city in cities)
{
    WriteLine($" {city}");
}
cities.RemoveAt(1);
cities.Remove("Milan");
WriteLine("After removing two cities");
foreach (string city in cities)
{
    WriteLine($" {city}");
}
```

Tip

The angle brackets after the `List<T>` type are a feature of C# called **generics**. It's just a fancy term for making a collection **strongly typed**, that is, the compiler knows more specifically what type of object is allowed to be stored in the collection. Generics improve the performance and correctness of your code. Strongly typed collections are different from **statically typed collections**. The old `System.Collection` types are statically typed to contain weakly typed `System.Object` items. The newer `System.Collection.Generic` types are statically typed to contain strongly typed `<T>` instances. Ironically, the term "generics" just means a *more specific* static type!

Press *Ctrl + F5* to see the output:

Initial list

London

Paris

Milan

The first city is London.

The last city is Milan.

After inserting Sydney at index 0

Sydney

London

Paris

Milan

After removing two cities

Sydney

Paris

Working with dictionaries

Add a new console application project named **Ch04_Dictionaries**.

In the Main method, type the following code that illustrates some of the common ways of working with dictionaries:

```
var keywords = new Dictionary<string, string>();
keywords.Add("int", "32-bit integer data type");
keywords.Add("long", "64-bit integer data type");
keywords.Add("float", "Single precision floating point number");
WriteLine("Keywords and their definitions");
foreach (KeyValuePair<string, string> item in keywords)
{
    WriteLine($" {item.Key}: {item.Value}");
}
WriteLine($"The definition of long is {keywords["long"]}");
```

Run the application by pressing *Ctrl + F5*.

Keywords and their definitions

int: 32-bit integer data type

long: 64-bit integer data type

float: Single precision floating point number

The definition of long is 64-bit integer data type

Sorting collections

A `List<T>` class can be sorted by calling its `Sort` method (but remember that the indexes of each item will change).

Tip

Sorting a list of strings or other built-in types works automatically, but if you create a collection of your own type, then that type must implement an interface named `IComparable`. You will learn how to do this in [Chapter 7, Implementing Interfaces and Inheriting Classes](#).

The `Dictionary<T>`, `Stack<T>`, or `Queue<T>` classes cannot be sorted, because you wouldn't usually want that functionality. For example, you would never sort a queue of guests checking into a hotel. But sometimes, you might want to sort a dictionary or a set.

The differences between these sorted collections are often subtle, but can have an impact on the memory requirements and performance of your application, so it is worth putting some effort into picking the best for your requirements. The following table summarizes some examples of sorted collection:

Collection	Description
<code>SortedDictionary<TKey, TValue></code>	This represents a collection of key/value pairs that are sorted on the key
<code>SortedList<TKey, TValue></code>	This represents a collection of key/value pairs that are sorted by key, based on the associated <code>IComparer<T></code> implementation
<code>SortedSet<T></code>	This represents a collection of objects that is maintained in a sorted order

Avoiding old collections

Avoid the old collections, listed in the following table, and use the more modern equivalents instead.

In 2005, Microsoft introduced generics that can be used to control more specifically which types can be stored in a collection. A collection that can only contain the `int` types is safer than one that can contain any object. The `<T>` parameter should be replaced with the type you want to store.

Avoid these collections	Use these collections instead
Namespaces: <code>System.Collections</code>, <code>System.Collections.Specialized</code>	Namespace: <code>System.Collections.Generic</code>
<code>ArrayList</code>	<code>List<T></code>
<code>Hashtable</code> , <code>HybridDictionary</code> , <code>ListDictionary</code>	<code>Dictionary<TKey, TValue></code>
<code>Stack</code>	<code>Stack<T></code>
<code>Queue</code>	<code>Queue<T></code>
<code>SortedList</code>	<code>SortedList<T></code>
<code>StringCollection</code>	<code>List<string></code>
<code>StringDictionary</code>	<code>Dictionary<string, string></code>

Using specialized collections

There are a few other collections for special situations. For example, the `NameValueCollection` can be used to automate filling in a form on a web page and posting the named values to the web server:

Collection	Description
<code>System.Collections.BitArray</code>	This manages a compact array of bit values, which are represented as Booleans, where <code>true</code> indicates that the bit is on (1) and <code>false</code> indicates the bit is off (0)
<code>System.Collections.Specialized.NameValueCollection</code>	This represents a collection of associated string keys and string values that can be accessed either with the key or with the index
<code>System.Collections.Generic.LinkedList<T></code>	This represents a doubly-linked list where every item has a reference to its previous and next item

Practicing and exploring

Test your knowledge and understanding by answering some questions, get some hands-on practice, and explore with deeper research into topics of this chapter.

Exercise 4.1 – test your knowledge

Use the Web to answer the following questions:

1. Does every assembly you create have a reference to the `microsoft.dll` assembly?
2. What is the maximum number of characters that can be stored in a `string`?
3. When and why should you use a `SecureString`?
4. When should you use a `LinkedList`?
5. When should you use a `SortedDictionary` class rather than a `SortedList` class?
6. Why should you *not* use the official standard for e-mail addresses to create a regular expression for validating a user's e-mail address?

Exercise 4.2 – practice regular expressions

Create a console application named **Ch04_Exercise02** that prompts the user to enter a regular expression, and then prompts the user to enter some input and compare the two for a match until the user presses *Esc*:

The default regular expression checks for at least one digit.

Enter a regular expression (or press ENTER to use the default): `^[a-z]+$`

Enter some input: apples

apples matches `^[a-z]+$`? True

Press ESC to end or any key to try again.

Enter a regular expression (or press ENTER to use the default): `^[a-z]+$`

Enter some input: abc123xyz

abc123xyz matches `^[a-z]+$`? False

Press ESC to end or any key to try again.

Exercise 4.3 – explore topics

Use the following links to read in more detail the topics covered in this chapter:

- **.NET Blog: A first hand look from the .NET engineering team:**
<http://blogs.msdn.com/b/dotnet/>
- **Assemblies and the Global Assembly Cache (C# and Visual Basic):**
<https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms173099.aspx>
- **String Class:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.string\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.string(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **StringBuilder Class:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.text.stringbuilder\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.text.stringbuilder(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Regex Class:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.text.regularexpressions.regex\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.text.regularexpressions.regex(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **How to: Search Strings Using Regular Expressions (C# Programming Guide):**
<https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms228595.aspx>
- **Regular Expression Language - Quick Reference:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/az24scfc\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/az24scfc(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **RegExr: Learn, Build, & Test RegExr:** <http://regexpr.com/>
- **Collections (C# and Visual Basic):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ybcx56wz.aspx>
- **List<T> Class:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/6sh2ey19\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/6sh2ey19(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Dictionary<TKey, TValue> Class:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/xfhwa508\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/xfhwa508(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Stack<T> Class:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/3278tedw\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/3278tedw(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Queue<T> Class:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/7977ey2c\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/7977ey2c(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **SortedList<TKey, TValue> Class:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms132319\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms132319(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **SortedDictionary<TKey, TValue> Class:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/f7fta44c\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/f7fta44c(v=vs.110).aspx)

Summary

In this chapter, you explored the relationship between assemblies and namespaces, you learned about the best types to use for storing and manipulating text, and which collections to use for storing multiple items.

In the next chapter, you will learn about more specialized .NET types.

Chapter 5. Using Specialized .NET Types

This chapter is about specialized .NET types used to debug and diagnose problems, unit test your code, support multiple languages and cultures, and access features and applications outside of .NET.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Debugging and diagnostics
- Unit testing an application
- Internationalizing an application
- Interoperating with unmanaged code

Debugging and diagnostics

In this section, you will learn how to debug problems at design time, trace problems at runtime, and use types such as `Debug`, `Trace`, `Process`, and `Stopwatch` that are in the `System.Diagnostics` namespace.

Debugging an application

In Visual Studio, press *Ctrl + Shift + N* or navigate to **File | New | Project...**

In the **New Project** dialog, from the **Installed Templates** list, select **Visual C#**. In the list at the center, select **Console Application**, type the name **Ch05_Debugging**, change the location to `C:\Code`, type the solution name **Chapter05**, and then click on **OK**.

Modify the template code to look like this:

```
using static System.Console;
```

```
namespace Ch05_Debugging
{
    class Program
    {
        static double Add(double a, double b)
        {
            return a * b; // deliberate bug!
        }
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            double a = 4.5; // or use var
            double b = 2.5;
            double answer = Add(a, b);
            WriteLine($"{a} + {b} = {answer}");
            ReadLine(); // wait for user to press ENTER
        }
    }
}
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* and take a look at the output:

```
4.5 + 2.5 = 11.25
```

There is a bug! 4.5 added to 2.5 should be 7 and not 11.25. We will use the **debugging tools** in Visual Studio 2015 to squash the bug.

Setting a breakpoint

Breakpoints allow us to mark a line of code that we want to pause at to find bugs. Click on the open curly bracket at the beginning of the `Main` method and go to the **Debug | Toggle Breakpoint** menu, or press *F9*.

A red highlight will appear with a red circle in the grey margin bar on the left-hand side, to indicate that a breakpoint has been set. Breakpoints can be toggled off with the same command. You can also click in the margin to toggle the breakpoint on and off, as shown in the following screenshot:

```
class Program
{
    static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        var a = 4.5;
    }
}
```

Go to **Debug | Start Debugging**, or press the **Start** toolbar button, or press *F5*. Visual Studio starts and then pauses when it hits the breakpoint. This is known as **break mode**. The line that will be executed next is highlighted in yellow, and a yellow arrow points at the line from the grey margin bar, as shown in the following screenshot:

```
static void Main(string[] args)
{
    var a = 4.5;
}
```

Tip

You can drag the yellow arrow and its highlight. When you continue executing, it will run from the new position. This is useful for moving back a few statements to rerun them or to skip over some statements.

The debugging toolbar

Visual Studio enables some extra toolbar buttons to make it easy to access debugging features. Here are a few of those:

- **Continue** / *F5* (green triangle): This button will run the code at full speed from the current position
- **Stop Debugging** / *Shift + F5* (red square): This button will stop the program
- **Restart** / *Ctrl + Shift + F5* (circular black arrow): This button will stop and then immediately restart the program
- **Step into** / *F11*, **Step over** / *F10*, and **Step out** / *Shift + F11* (blue arrows over dots): These buttons will step through the code in various ways

The following screenshot illustrates Visual Studio's extra toolbar buttons:



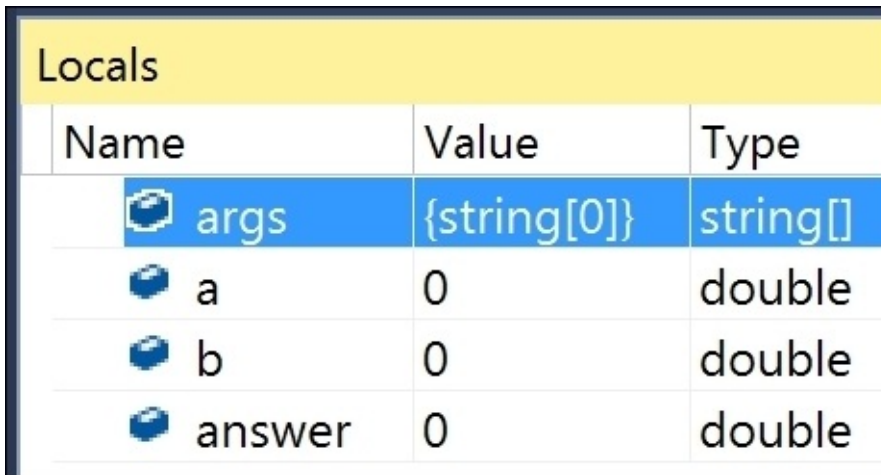
Debugging windows

Visual Studio makes some extra windows visible so that you can monitor useful information such as variables while you step through your code. If you cannot find one of these windows, then on the **Debug** menu, choose **Windows**, and then select the window you want to view.

Tip

Most of the debug windows are only available when you are in the **Break** mode.

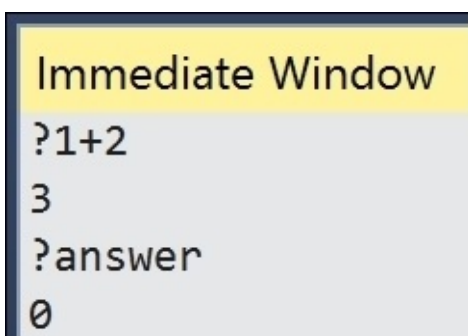
The **Locals** window shows the name, value, and type for any local variables. Keep an eye on this window while you step through your code:



Name	Value	Type
args	{string[0]}	string[]
a	0	double
b	0	double
answer	0	double

In [Chapter 1, Hello, C#! Welcome, .NET Core!](#), I introduced you to the **C# Interactive** window. The similar, but more basic, **Immediate Window** also allows live interaction with your code.

For example, you can ask a question such as, “What is 1+2?” by typing `?1+2` and pressing *Enter*. You can also use the question mark to find out the current value of a variable:



```
Immediate Window
?1+2
3
?answer
0
```

You can execute statements of code:

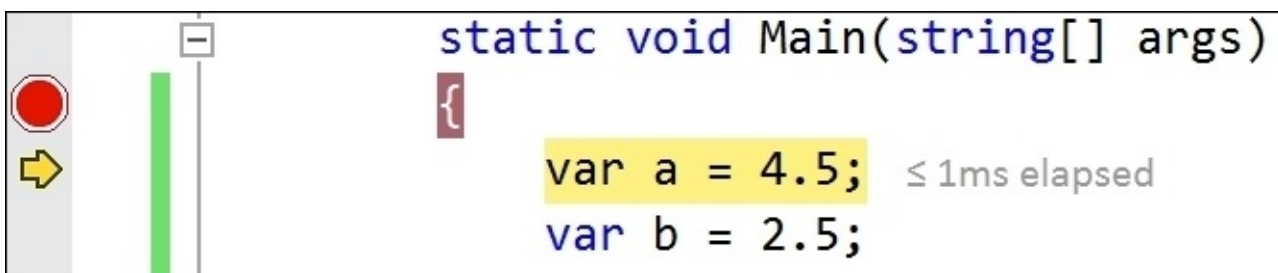
Immediate Window

```
ForegroundColor=System.ConsoleColor.Green
```

As long as you have Visual Studio 2015 with Update 1, the **C# Interactive** window is better.

Stepping through code

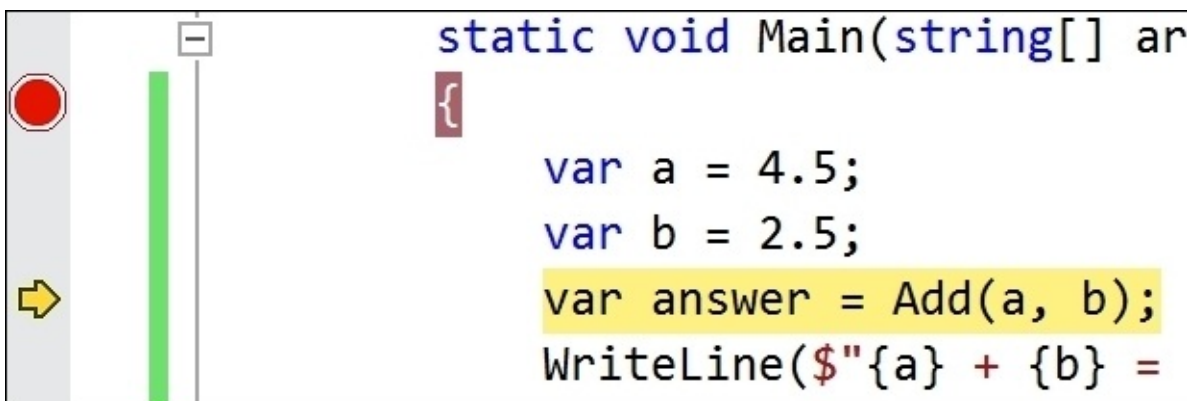
From the **Debug** menu, choose **Debug | Step Into**, or click on the **Step Into** button in the toolbar, or press *F11*. The yellow highlight steps forward one line, as shown in the following screenshot:



```
static void Main(string[] args)
{
    var a = 4.5; ≤ 1ms elapsed
    var b = 2.5;
```

Choose **Debug | Step Over** or press *F10*. The yellow highlight steps forward one line. At the moment, there is no difference between using **Step Into** or **Step Over**.

Press *F10* again so that the yellow highlight is on the line that calls the Add method:



```
static void Main(string[] ar
{
    var a = 4.5;
    var b = 2.5;
    var answer = Add(a, b);
    WriteLine($"{a} + {b} =
```

The difference between **Step Into** or **Step Over** can be seen when you are about to execute a method call. If you press **Step Into**, the debugger steps into the method so that you can step through every line in that method. If you press **Step Over**, the whole method is executed in one go (it does *not* skip over the method!).

Use **Step Into** to step inside the method. Hover your mouse over the multiply (*) operator. A tooltip will appear showing that this operator is multiplying a by b to give the result

11.25. We can see that this is the bug. You can pin the tooltip by clicking on the pin icon as I have done here:

A screenshot of a debugger interface. On the left, there's a vertical toolbar with a yellow arrow pointing right and a blue arrow pointing left. A green vertical bar is positioned on the left side of the code editor. The code editor shows the following code:

```
static double Add(double a, double b)
{
    ≤ 20ms elapsed
    return a * b;
}
```

A tooltip is displayed over the expression 'a * b' in the return statement. The tooltip contains the text 'a * b | 11.25'. A small blue pin icon is visible in the top-left corner of the tooltip, indicating it is pinned to the code.

Fix the bug by changing the * to +.

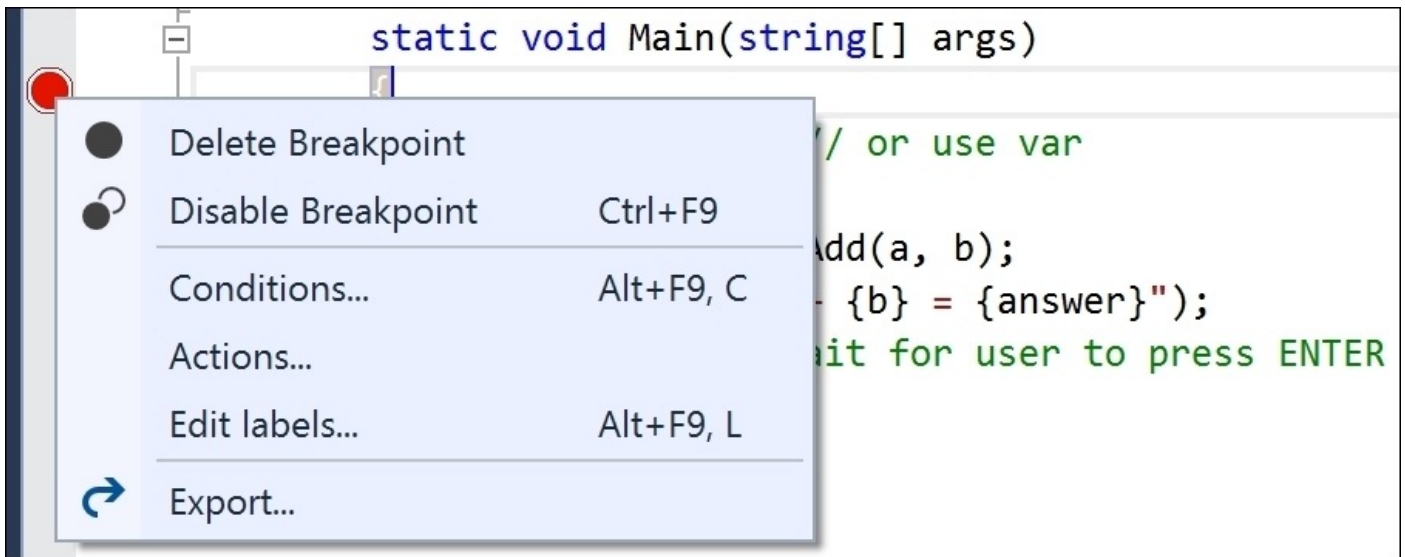
We don't need to step through all the lines in the Add method, so choose **Step Out** or press *Shift + F11*. Press *F11* or choose **Step Into** to assign the return value of the Add method to the variable answer.

The **Locals** window highlights the most recent change in red text. The answer is correct, so choose **Continue** or press *F5*:

Name	Value	Type
args	{string[0]}	string[]
a	4.5	double
b	2.5	double
answer	7	double

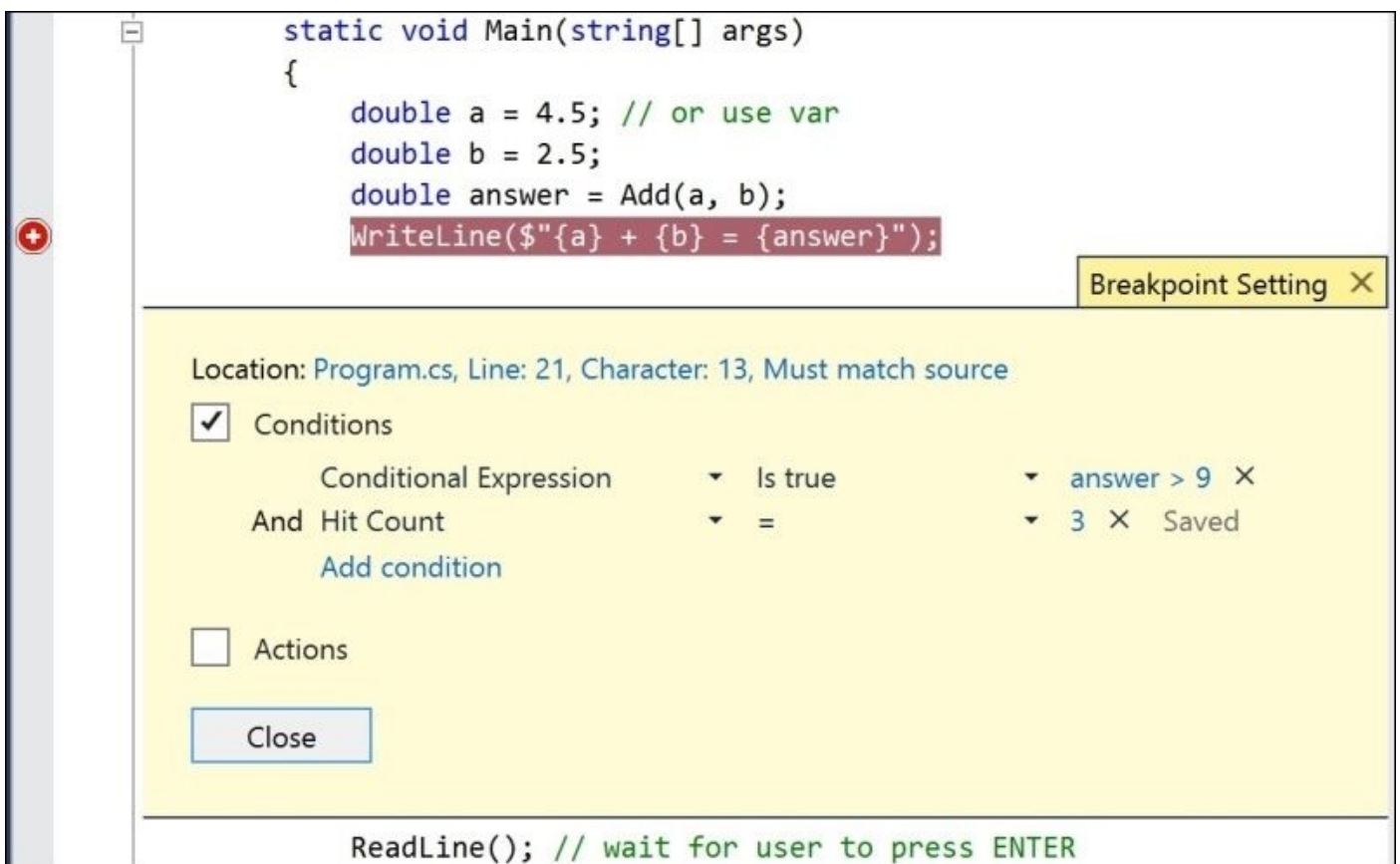
Customizing breakpoints

You can also right-click on a breakpoint and choose additional options, such as **Conditions**, as shown in the following screenshot:



The conditions for a breakpoint include an expression that must be true and a hit count to reach for the breakpoint to apply.

In the example, as you can see in the following screenshot, I have set a condition to only apply the breakpoint if both the answer variable is greater than 9 and we have hit the breakpoint three times:



You have now fixed a bug using some of Visual Studio's debugging features.

Monitoring performance and resource usage

To write the best applications, we need to be able to monitor the speed and efficiency of our code.

Evaluating the efficiency of types

What is the best type to use for a particular scenario? To answer this question, we need to carefully consider what we mean by best. We should consider the following four factors:

- **Functionality:** This can be decided by checking whether the type provides the features you need
- **Memory size:** This can be decided by the number of bytes of memory the type takes up
- **Performance:** This can be decided by how fast the type is
- **Future needs:** This depends on the changes in requirements and maintainability

There will be scenarios, such as storing numbers, where multiple types have the same functionality, so we would need to consider the memory and performance in order to make a choice.

If we need to store millions of numbers, then the best type to use would be the one that requires the least number of bytes of memory. If we only need to store a few numbers but we need to perform lots of calculations on them, then the best type to use would be the one that runs fastest on a particular CPU.

You have seen the use of the `sizeof()` operator to show the number of bytes a single instance of a type uses in memory. When we are storing lots of values in more complex data structures, such as arrays and lists, then we need a better way of measuring memory usage.

You can read lots of advice online and in books, but the only way to know for sure what the best type would be for your code is to compare the types yourself. In the next section, you will learn how to write the code to monitor the actual memory requirements and the actual performance when using different types.

Although today a `short` variable might be the best choice, it might be a better choice to use an `int` variable, even though it takes twice as much space in memory, because we might need a wider range of values to be stored in the future.

There is another metric we should consider: maintenance. This is a measure of how much effort another programmer would have to put in, to understand and modify your code. If you use a nonobvious type choice, it might confuse the programmer who comes along later and needs to fix a bug or add a feature. There are analyzing tools that will generate a report that shows how easily maintainable your code is.

Monitoring performance and memory use

The `System.Diagnostics` namespace has lots of useful types for monitoring your code. The first one we will look at is the `Stopwatch` type.

Add a new console application project named **Ch05_Monitoring**. Set the solution's start up project to be the current selection.

Modify the template code to look like this:

```
using System;
using System.Diagnostics;
using System.Linq;
using static System.Console;
using static System.Diagnostics.Process;

namespace Ch05_Monitoring
{
    class Recorder
    {
        static Stopwatch timer = new Stopwatch();
        static long bytesPhysicalBefore = 0;
        static long bytesVirtualBefore = 0;
        public static void Start()
        {
            GC.Collect();
            GC.WaitForPendingFinalizers();
            GC.Collect();
            bytesPhysicalBefore = GetCurrentProcess().WorkingSet64;
            bytesVirtualBefore = GetCurrentProcess().VirtualMemorySize64;
            timer.Restart();
        }
        public static void Stop()
        {
            timer.Stop();
            long bytesPhysicalAfter = GetCurrentProcess().WorkingSet64;
            vlong bytesVirtualAfter =
GetCurrentProcess().VirtualMemorySize64;
            WriteLine("Stopped recording.");
            WriteLine($"{bytesPhysicalAfter - bytesPhysicalBefore:N0}
physical bytes used.");
            WriteLine($"{bytesVirtualAfter - bytesVirtualBefore:N0} virtual
bytes used.");
            WriteLine($"{timer.Elapsed} time span ellapsed.");
            WriteLine($"{timer.ElapsedMilliseconds:N0} total milliseconds
ellapsed.");
        }
    }
    class Program
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            Write("Press ENTER to start the timer: ");
            ReadLine();
            Recorder.Start();
            int[] largeArrayOfInts = Enumerable.Range(1, 10000).ToArray();
            Write("Press ENTER to stop the timer: ");
            ReadLine();
            Recorder.Stop();
            ReadLine();
        }
    }
}
```

```
}  
}
```

Tip

The Start method of the Recorder class uses the **garbage collector (GC)** type to ensure that all the currently allocated memory is collected before recording the amount of used memory. This is an advanced technique that you should almost never use in production code.

You have created a class named Recorder with two methods to start and stop recording the time and memory used by any code you run. The Main method starts recording when the user presses *Enter*, creates an array of ten thousand int variables, and then stops recording when the user presses *Enter* again.

The Stopwatch type has some useful members, as shown in the following table:

Member	Description
The Restart method	This resets the elapsed time to zero and then starts the stopwatch
The Stop method	This stops the stopwatch
The Elapsed property	This is the elapsed time stored as a TimeSpan (hours:minutes:seconds)
The ElapsedMilliseconds property	This is the elapsed time in milliseconds stored as a long integer

The Process type has some useful members:

Member	Description
VirtualMemorySize64	This displays the amount of the virtual memory, in bytes, allocated for the process
WorkingSet64	This displays the amount of physical memory, in bytes, allocated for the process

Press *Ctrl + F5* to start the application without the debugger attached. The application will start recording the time and memory used when you press *Enter*, and then stop recording when you press *Enter* again:

```
Press ENTER to start the timer:  
Press ENTER to stop the timer:  
Stopped recording.  
942,080 physical bytes used.  
0 virtual bytes used.  
00:00:03.1166037 time span elapsed.  
3,116 total milliseconds elapsed.
```

Measuring the efficiency of processing strings

Now that you've seen how the Stopwatch and Process types can be used to monitor your code, we will use them to evaluate the best way to process string variables.

Add a new console application project named **Ch05_BuildingStrings**. Add the following

using statements:

```
using System;
using System.Diagnostics;
using System.Linq;
using System.Text;
using static System.Console;
using static System.Diagnostics.Process;
```

Copy and paste the class definition for the Recorder class from the earlier project.

Tip

Best Practice

Although copy and paste is a valid technique for code reuse in some scenarios, it would be better to create a class library assembly for the Recorder class so that we can share it between multiple projects without maintaining multiple copies. You will learn how to do this in [Chapter 6](#), *Building Your Own Types with Object-Oriented Programming*.

Add the following code to the Main method. It creates an array of ten thousand int variables and then concatenates them with commas for separators using a string and a StringBuilder:

```
int[] numbers = Enumerable.Range(1, 10000).ToArray();
Recorder.Start();
WriteLine("Using string");
string s = "";
for (int i = 0; i < numbers.Length; i++)
{
    s += numbers[i] + ", ";
}
Recorder.Stop();
Recorder.Start();
WriteLine("Using StringBuilder");
StringBuilder builder = new StringBuilder();
for (int i = 0; i < numbers.Length; i++)
{
    builder.Append(numbers[i]);
    builder.Append(", ");
}
Recorder.Stop();
ReadLine();
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* to see the output:

```
Using string
Stopped recording.
7,540,736 physical bytes used.
69,632 virtual bytes used.
00:00:00.0871730 time span ellapsed.
87 total milliseconds ellapsed.
```

```
Using StringBuilder
Stopped recording.
8,192 physical bytes used.
```

```
0 virtual bytes used.  
00:00:00.0015680 time span elapsed.  
1 total milliseconds elapsed.
```

We can summarize the results as follows:

- The `string` class used about 7.5 MB of memory and took 87 milliseconds
- The `StringBuilder` class used 8 KB of memory and took 1.5 milliseconds

In this scenario, `StringBuilder` is about one hundred times faster and about one thousand times more memory efficient when concatenating text!

Tip

Best Practice

Avoid using the `String.Concat` method or the `+` operator with `string` variables. Instead, use `StringBuilder` or the C# 6 `$` string interpolation to concatenate variables together, especially inside loops.

Monitoring with Debug and Trace

You have seen the use of the `Console` type and its `writeLine` method to provide output to the console window. We also have a pair of types named `Debug` and `Trace` that have more flexibility in where they write out to.

The `Debug` and `Trace` classes can write to any **trace listener**. A trace listener is a type that can be configured to write output anywhere you like when the `Trace.WriteLine` method is called. There are several trace listeners provided by .NET, and you can even make your own by inheriting from the `TraceListener` type.

Writing to the default trace listener

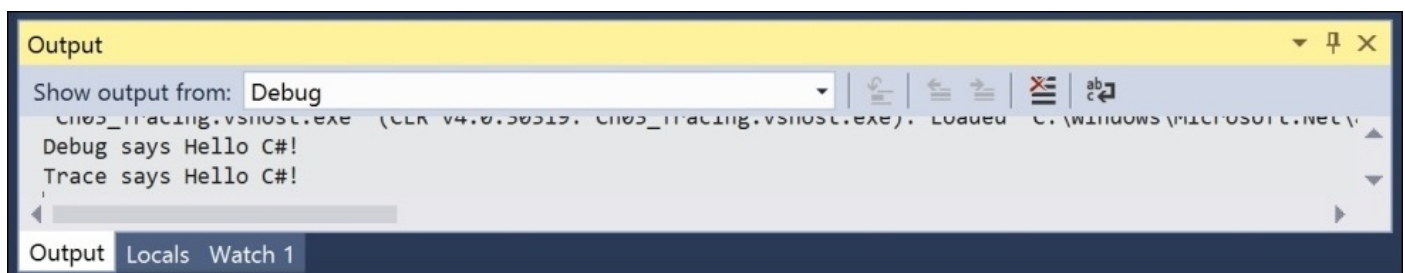
One, the `DefaultTraceListener`, is configured automatically and writes to Visual Studio's output window; you can configure others manually using code or a configuration file.

Add a new console application project named **Ch05_Tracing**. Modify the template code to look like this:

```
using System.Diagnostics;
using static System.Console;
namespace Ch05_Tracing
{
    class Program
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            Debug.WriteLine("Debug says Hello C#!");
            Trace.WriteLine("Trace says Hello C#!");
            WriteLine("Press ENTER to close.");
            ReadLine();
        }
    }
}
```

Press *F5* to start Visual Studio with the debugger attached. In Visual Studio's output window, you will see the two messages. If you cannot see the output window, press *Ctrl + W, O* or navigate to **View | Output** menu.

Ensure that you show output from **Debug**, as shown in the following screenshot:



Configuring trace listeners

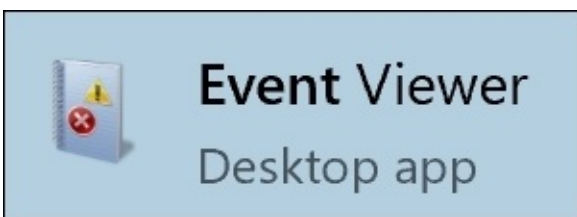
Now, we will configure some trace listeners that will also write to a text file and to the Windows application event log.

In Visual Studio's **Solution Explorer**, double-click on the file named `App.config` and modify it to look like this:

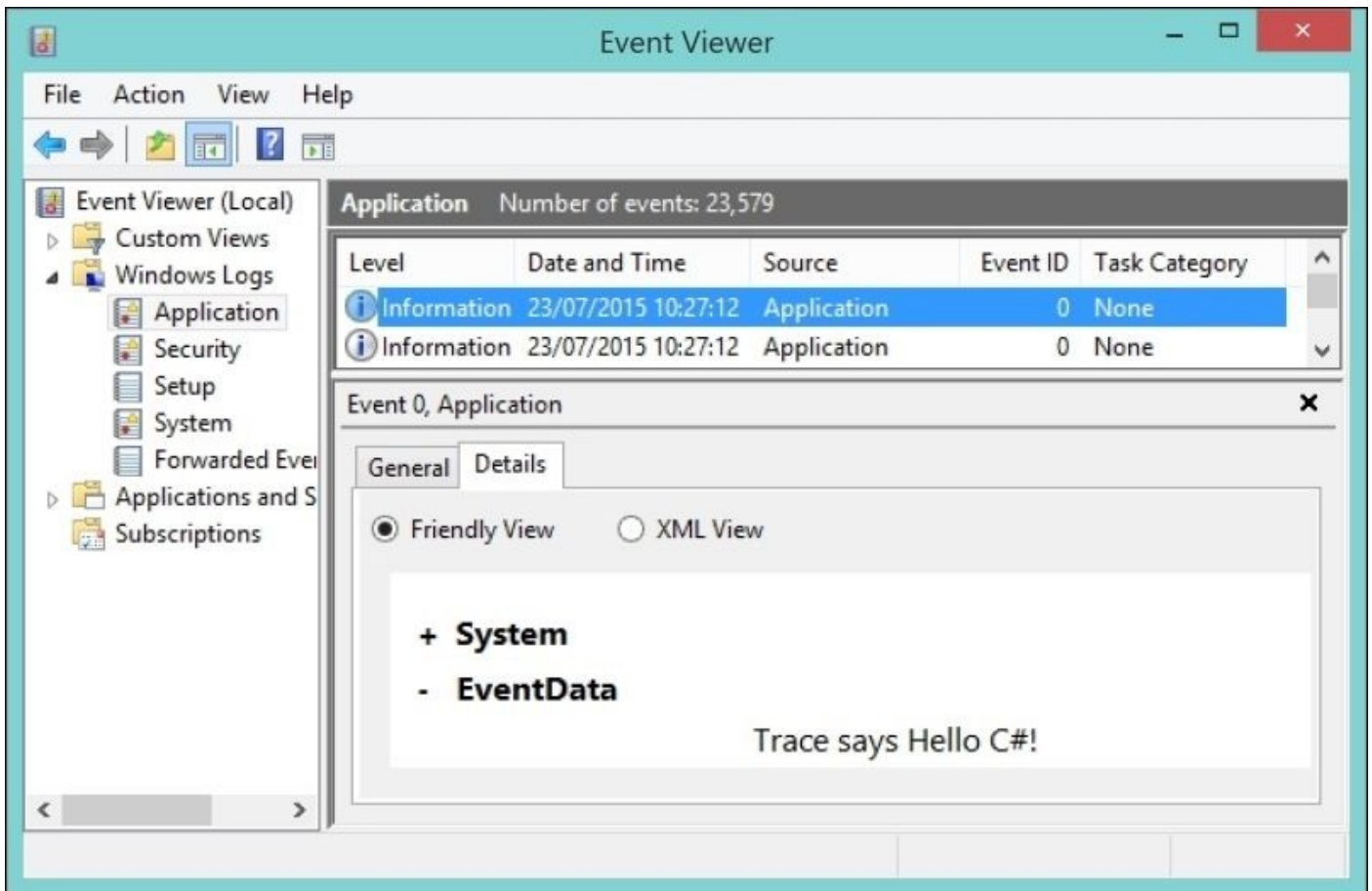
```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<configuration>
  <system.diagnostics>
    <sharedListeners>
      <add name="file" type="System.Diagnostics.TextWriterTraceListener"
initializeData="C:\Code\Trace.txt" />
      <add name="appeventlog"
type="System.Diagnostics.EventLogTraceListener"
initializeData="Application" />
    </sharedListeners>
    <trace autoflush="true">
      <listeners>
        <add name="file" />
        <add name="appeventlog" />
      </listeners>
    </trace>
  </system.diagnostics>
  <startup>
    <supportedRuntime version="v4.0" sku=".NETFramework,Version=v4.6" />
  </startup>
</configuration>
```

You have configured two shared listeners—one that writes to a text file and another that writes to the application event log.

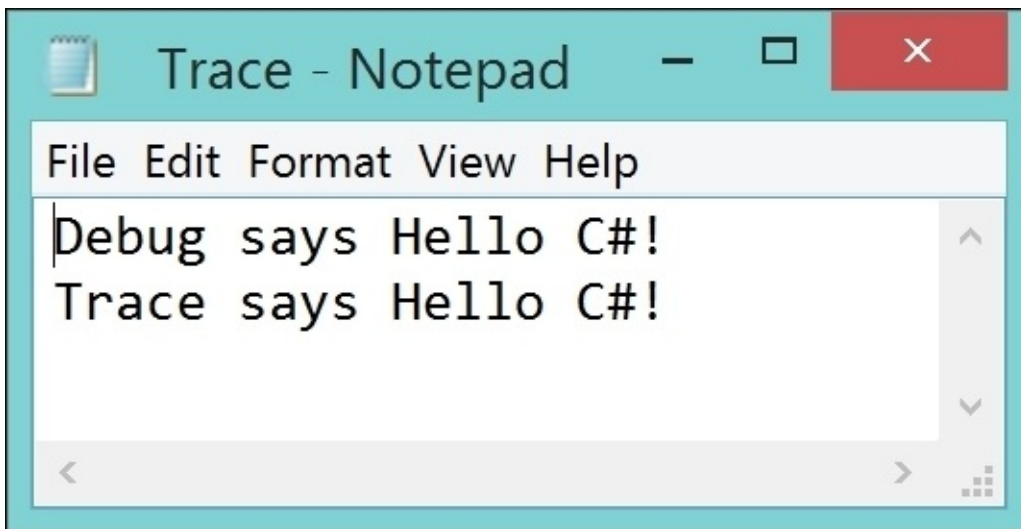
Press *F5* to start Visual Studio with the debugger attached. In the console application, press *Enter* to close it. This will release the file that it is writing to. Click on the Windows Start menu, type **event**, and then click on **Event Viewer**:



In the **Event Viewer** window, expand **Windows Logs**, choose **Application**, choose the most recent log entry, and then click on the **Details** tab. You should see that the **Friendly View** option of the **EventData** is the message we output:



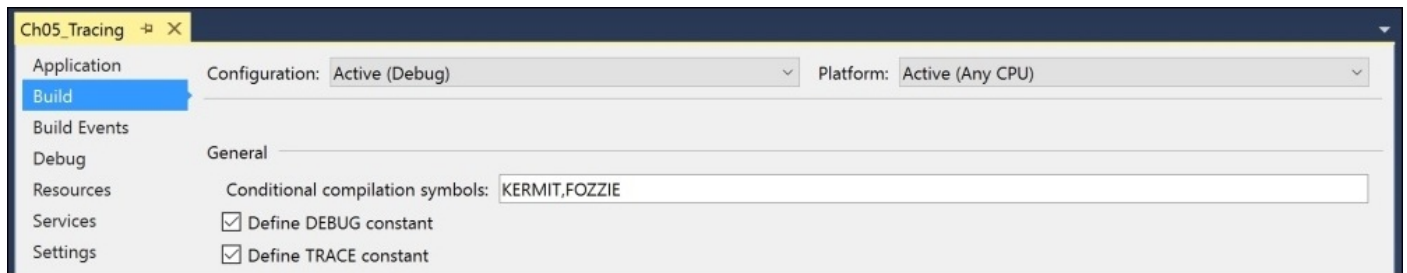
Run **File Explorer**, look in the `c:\code` folder, and open the file named `Trace.txt`. If you open it with Notepad, it will look like this:



Configuring compiler symbols for .NET Framework

You might be wondering what the difference between `Debug` and `Trace` is. When you compile and run any application, it can be configured with the `debug` or `trace` compiler symbols on or off. By default, both are enabled. You can see this by double-clicking on **Properties** in the **Solution Explorer** window, and then clicking on the **Debug** tab.

You can see that both the debug and trace symbols are enabled. You can define your own symbols by entering them in the **Conditional compilation symbols** box, as shown in the following screenshot, where I have defined two symbols named **KERMIT** and **FOZZIE**:



Defining compiler symbols for .NET Core

If you chose to create a **Console Application (Package)** project to target the .NET Core, then you must define compiler symbols using the **project.json** file.

In the project .json file, add the configurations section, as shown in the following code, that specifies options for the two possible solution configurations—Debug and Release:

```
{
  "version": "1.0.0-*",
  "description": "Ch05_Tracing Console Application",
  "authors": [ "markjprice" ],
  "tags": [ "" ],
  "projectUrl": "",
  "licenseUrl": "",

  "configurations": {
    "Debug": {
      "compilationOptions": {
        "define": [ "DEBUG", "TRACE", "KERMIT", "FOZZIE" ]
      }
    },
    "Release": {
      "compilationOptions": {
        "define": [ "RELEASE", "TRACE" ],
        "optimize": true
      }
    }
  }
},
```

Checking compiler symbols

Modify the content of the Main method to look like this. We are using conditional compilation `#if` statements to only write to the trace listeners if the **KERMIT** and **FOZZIE** symbols have been defined. Note that they are Booleans so we can use operators like AND (`&&`) on them:

```
namespace Ch05_Tracing
{
```

```

class Program
{
    static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        Debug.WriteLine("Debug says Hello C#!");
        Trace.WriteLine("Trace says Hello C#!");

#if KERMIT
        Trace.WriteLine("KERMIT is on!");
#endif
#if KERMIT && FOZZIE
        Trace.WriteLine("KERMIT and FOZZIE are on!");
#endif
}
}

```

Press *F5* to start Visual Studio with the debugger attached.

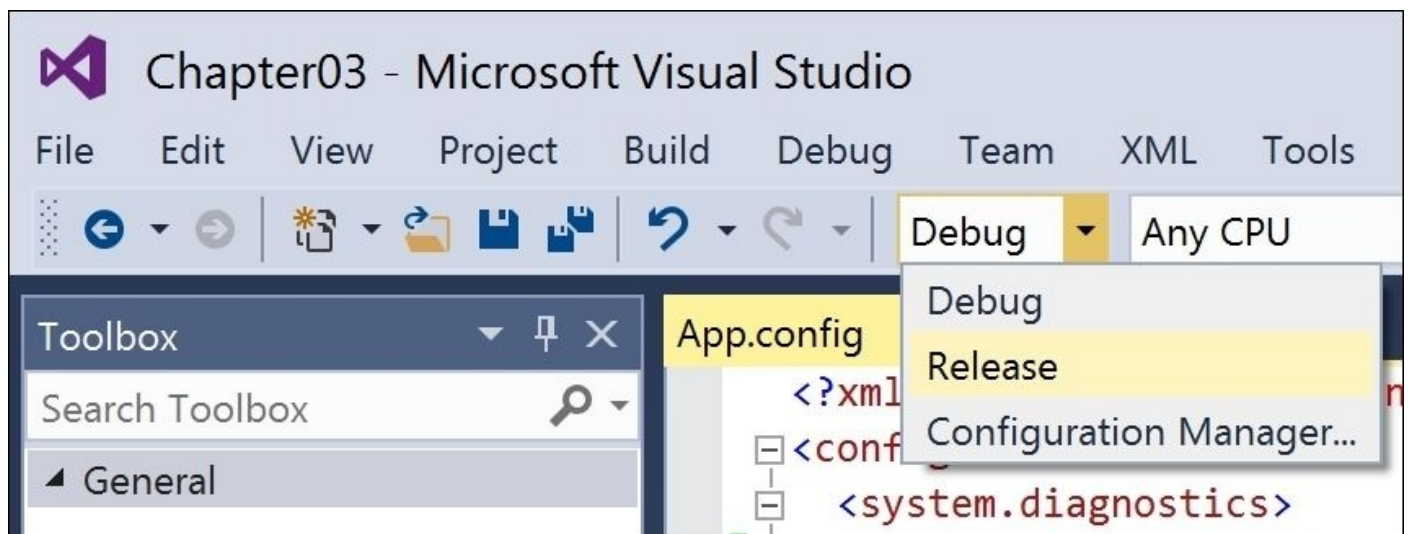
In Visual Studio's output window, you will see all the messages:

```

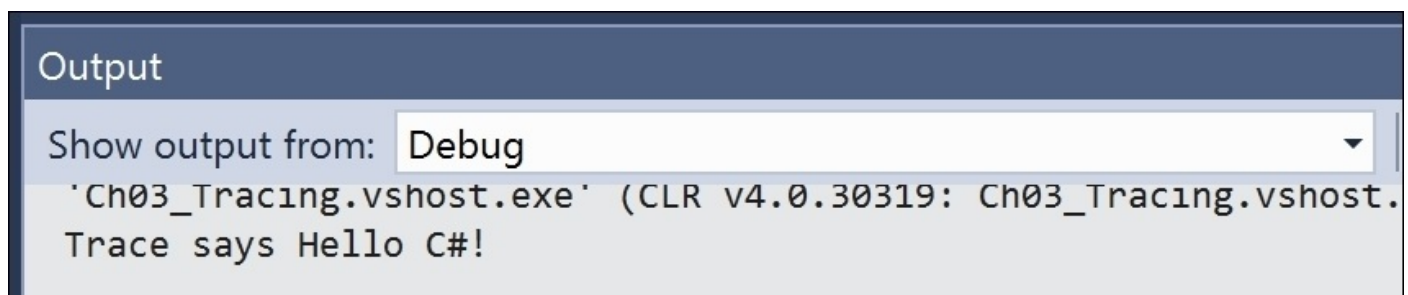
Debug says Hello C#!
Trace says Hello C#!
KERMIT is on!
KERMIT and FOZZIE are on!

```

In Visual Studio's toolbar, go to the drop-down menu that shows the list of configurations and choose **Release**. In this configuration, only the TRACE directive is set:



Press *F5* to start Visual Studio with the debugger attached. If you see a warning message, choose **Continue Debugging**. In Visual Studio's **Output** window, you will see only the Trace message:



The idea is that you can safely put as many `Debug.WriteLine` statements throughout your code, knowing that when you finally compile and deploy the release version of your application they will all be automatically removed.

Tip

Best Practice

Use `Debug.WriteLine` statements liberally throughout your code, knowing that they will be stripped out automatically when you compile the release version of your application.

If you need more flexibility, then you can also define your own symbols, but for these, you must manually check that your own symbol has been defined using `#if` statements.

But what about the `Trace.WriteLine` statements? They are left in your release code, so they should be used more sparingly. Even these can be configured using trace switches.

Switching trace levels

In the `App.config` file, add the following section inside `<system.diagnostics>`. It can go before or after the `<trace>` and `<sharedListeners>` sections:

```
<switches>
  <add name="PacktSwitch" value="3"/>
</switches>
```

The value of a switch can be set using a number or a word. For example, the number **3** can be replaced with the word **Info**, as shown in the following table:

Number	Word	Description
0	Off	This will output nothing
1	Error	This will output only errors
2	Warning	This will output errors and warnings
3	Info	This will output errors, warnings, and info messages
4	Verbose	This will output all levels

In the `Main` method, add the following statements before prompting the user to press *Enter*:

```
var ts = new TraceSwitch("PacktSwitch", "");
Trace.WriteLineIf(ts.TraceError, "TraceError");
Trace.WriteLineIf(ts.TraceWarning, "TraceWarning");
Trace.WriteLineIf(ts.TraceInfo, "TraceInfo");
Trace.WriteLineIf(ts.TraceVerbose, "TraceVerbose");
Trace.Close(); // release any file or database listeners
WriteLine("Press ENTER to close.");
ReadLine();
```

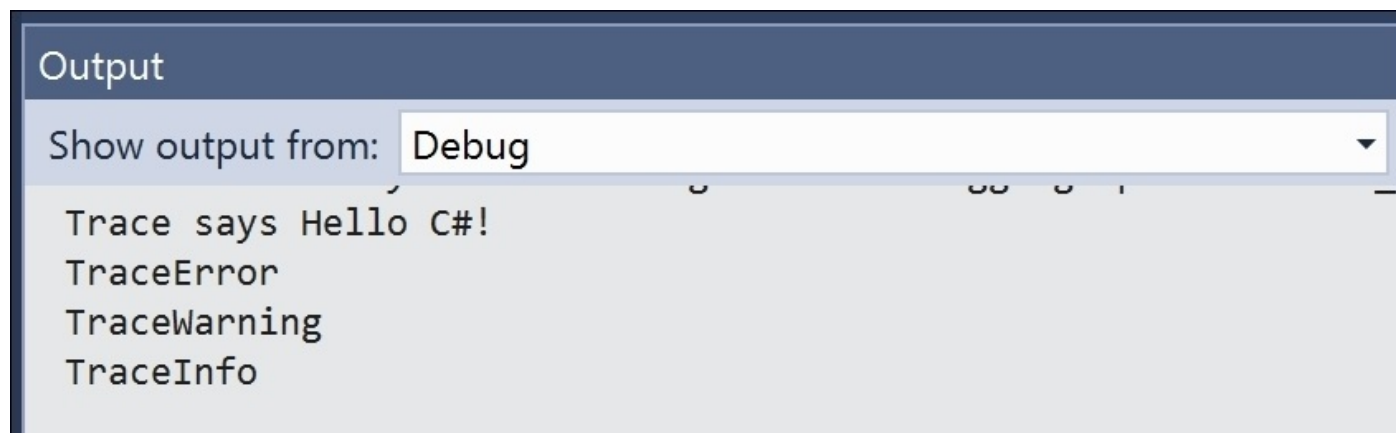
This code will check the value of the switch named `PacktSwitch` and only output if the level has been set.

Tip

Best Practice

Call the `Close` method of the `Trace` type to release any locks that might be held after writing to a text file trace listener. This is necessary only if you are writing to listeners that are buffered or apply locking, such as files and databases. However, it doesn't hurt to do this every time.

Press `F5` to start Visual Studio with the debugger attached. If you see a warning message, choose **Continue Debugging**. In Visual Studio's **Output** window, you will see only the Trace messages up to level 3 (Info):



Unit testing an application

Microsoft has a proprietary unit testing framework known as MS Test, which is closely integrated with Visual Studio. However, to use a unit testing framework that is compatible with .NET Core, we will use the third-party framework **xUnit.net**.

Creating a unit of code that needs testing

Add a new Class Library project named **Ch05_Calculator**. In the **Solution Explorer** window, right-click on the **Class1.cs** file and choose **Rename**. Change its name to **Calculator**.

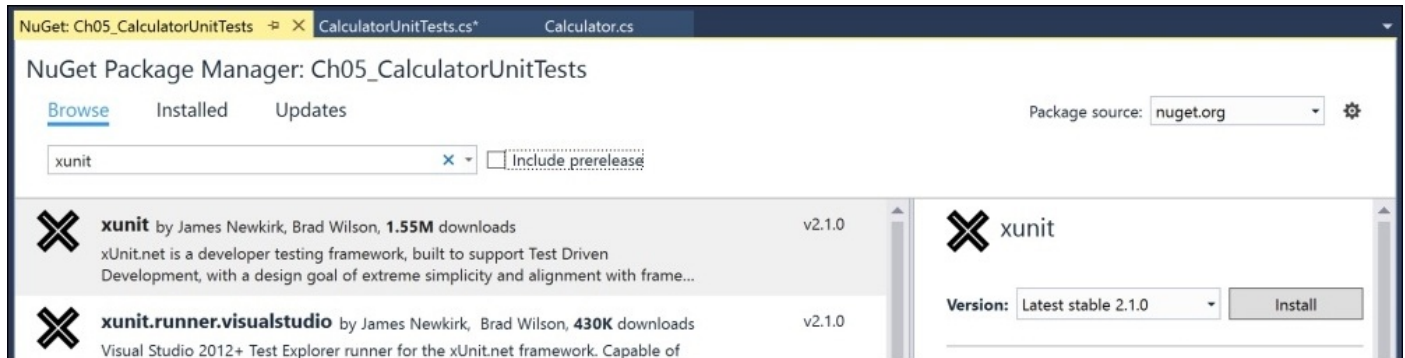
Modify the code to look like this:

```
namespace Ch05_Calculator
{
    public class Calculator
    {
        public double Add(double a, double b)
        {
            return a * b;
        }
    }
}
```

Creating a unit test project

Add a new Class Library project named **Ch05_CalculatorUnitTests**. In the **Solution Explorer**, right-click on **References** and choose **Manage NuGet Packages**.

In the **NuGet Package Manager** window, click on the **Browse** tab, and then search for **xunit**. Click on **Install** for the latest stable version:



In the **Solution Explorer**, right-click on **References** and choose **Add Reference....** In the **Reference Manager** window, select the checkbox for **Ch05_Calculator** and then click on **OK**. In the **Solution Explorer** window, right-click on the **Class1.cs** file and choose **Rename**. Change its name to **CalculatorUnitTests**.

Modify the code to look like this:

```
using Ch05_Calculator;
using Xunit;

namespace Ch05_CalculatorUnitTests
{
    public class CalculatorUnitTests
    {
        [Fact]
        public void TestAdding2And2()
        {
            // arrange
            double a = 2;
            double b = 2;
            double expected = 4;
            var calc = new Calculator();
            // act
            double actual = calc.Add(a, b);
            // assert
            Assert.Equal(expected, actual);
        }
        [Fact]
        public void TestAdding2And3()
        {
            // arrange
            double a = 2;
            double b = 3;
            double expected = 5;
```

```
        var calc = new Calculator();
        // act
        double actual = calc.Add(a, b);
        // assert
        Assert.Equal(expected, actual);
    }
}
```

A well-written unit test will have three parts:

- **Arrange:** This part will declare and instantiate variables for input and output
- **Act:** This part will execute the unit that you are testing
- **Assert:** This part will make one or more assertions about the output

Running unit tests

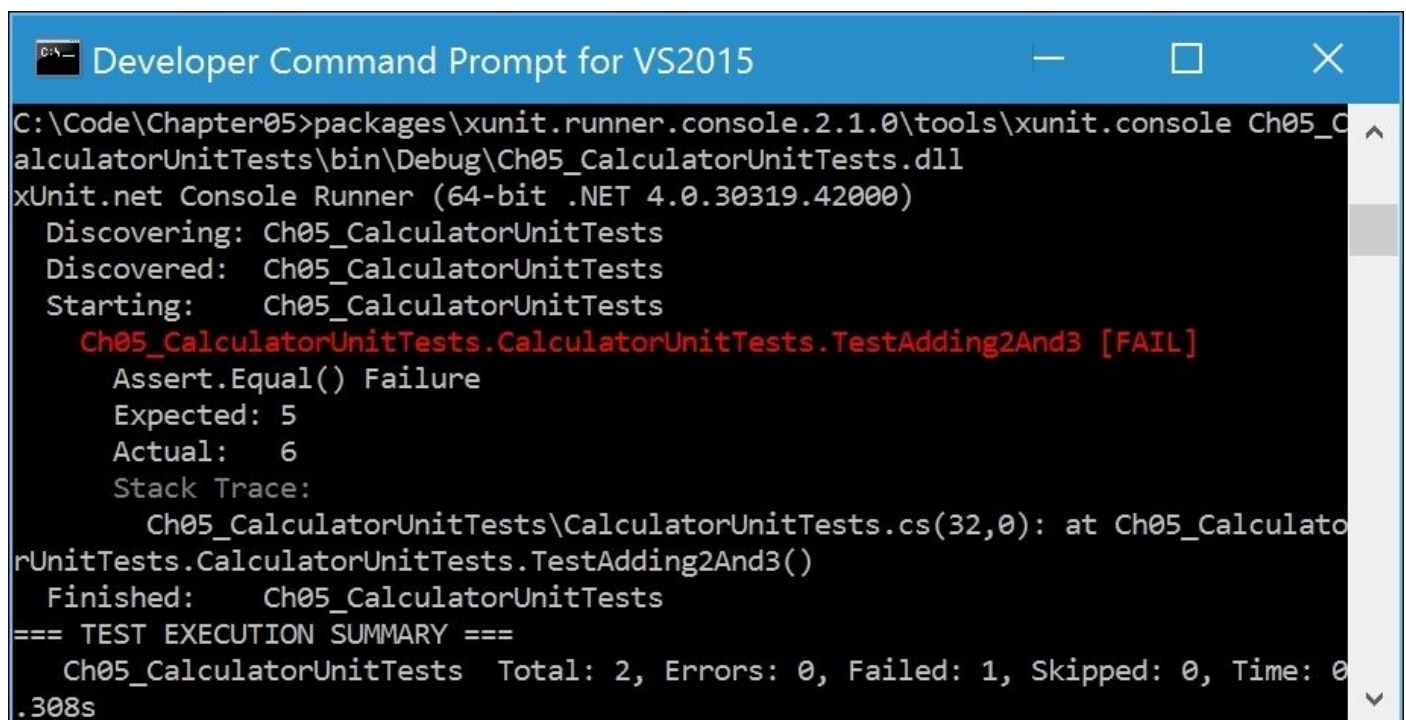
You must install a runner to execute your tests. There is a runner for Visual Studio, but we will use the one that executes in a console application because it is cross-platform.

In the **Solution Explorer** window, right-click on **References** and choose **Manage NuGet Packages**. In the **NuGet Package Manager**, click on the **Browse** tab, and then search for `xunit.runner.console`. Click on **Install** for the latest stable version.

Open a Command Prompt and navigate to `C:\Code\Chapter05\`. Enter the following command at the prompt to run your tests:

```
packages\xunit.runner.console.2.1.0\tools\xunit.console
Ch05_CalculatorUnitTests\bin\Debug\Ch05_CalculatorUnitTests.dll
```

You should see the following results:



```
C:\Code\Chapter05>packages\xunit.runner.console.2.1.0\tools\xunit.console Ch05_C
calculatorUnitTests\bin\Debug\Ch05_CalculatorUnitTests.dll
xUnit.net Console Runner (64-bit .NET 4.0.30319.42000)
  Discovering: Ch05_CalculatorUnitTests
  Discovered:  Ch05_CalculatorUnitTests
  Starting:    Ch05_CalculatorUnitTests
    Ch05_CalculatorUnitTests.CalculatorUnitTests.TestAdding2And3 [FAIL]
      Assert.Equal() Failure
      Expected: 5
      Actual:   6
      Stack Trace:
         Ch05_CalculatorUnitTests\CalculatorUnitTests.cs(32,0): at Ch05_Calculato
rUnitTests.CalculatorUnitTests.TestAdding2And3()
  Finished:   Ch05_CalculatorUnitTests
=== TEST EXECUTION SUMMARY ===
  Ch05_CalculatorUnitTests  Total: 2, Errors: 0, Failed: 1, Skipped: 0, Time: 0
.308s
```

Fix the bug in the Add method, rebuild the unit test project, and then rerun the unit tests at the Command Prompt. You should see the following results:

Developer Command Prompt for VS2015

```
C:\Code\Chapter05>packages\xunit.runner.console.2.1.0\tools\xunit.console Ch05_C
calculatorUnitTests\bin\Debug\Ch05_CalculatorUnitTests.dll
xUnit.net Console Runner (64-bit .NET 4.0.30319.42000)
  Discovering: Ch05_CalculatorUnitTests
  Discovered:  Ch05_CalculatorUnitTests
  Starting:    Ch05_CalculatorUnitTests
  Finished:   Ch05_CalculatorUnitTests
=== TEST EXECUTION SUMMARY ===
  Ch05_CalculatorUnitTests  Total: 2, Errors: 0, Failed: 0, Skipped: 0, Time: 0
.235s
C:\Code\Chapter05>
```


Internationalizing an application

Internationalization is the process of enabling your application to run correctly all over the world. It has two parts: **globalization** and **localization**.

Globalization is about writing your code to accommodate multiple languages and regions. The combination of a language and a region is known as a culture. It is important for your code to know both the language and region because date and currency formats are different in Quebec and Paris despite them both using French.

There are **International Standards Organization (ISO)** codes for all culture combinations. For example, in the code da-DK, da indicates the Danish language and DK indicates the country of Denmark.

Localization is about customizing the user interface to support a particular language. Since localization is just about the language, it doesn't need to know about the region.

Internationalization is a huge topic that entire books have been written about. In this section, you will get a brief introduction to the basics using the `CultureInfo` type in the `System.Globalization` namespace.

Tip

.NET Core 1.0 does not currently allow threads to get or set their `CurrentCulture` or `CurrentUICulture` properties. An alternative for getting these two properties (but not setting) is to use the `CultureInfo` class's static properties, but you cannot set them.

Globalizing an application

Add a new console application project named **Ch05_Internationalization**. At the top of the file, import the following types and namespaces:

```
using static System.Console;
using System;
using System.Threading;
using System.Globalization;
```

In the Main method, enter the following statements:

```
Thread t = Thread.CurrentThread;
WriteLine($"The current globalization culture is {t.CurrentCulture.Name}:
{t.CurrentCulture.DisplayName}");
WriteLine($"The current localization culture is {t.CurrentUICulture.Name}:
{t.CurrentUICulture.DisplayName}");
WriteLine();
WriteLine("en-US: English (United States)");
WriteLine("da-DK: Danish (Denmark)");
WriteLine("fr-CA: French (Canada)");
Write("Enter an ISO culture code: ");
string newculture = ReadLine();
if(!string.IsNullOrEmpty(newculture))
{
    var ci = new CultureInfo(newculture);
    Thread.CurrentThread.CurrentCulture = ci;
    Thread.CurrentThread.CurrentUICulture = ci;
}
Write("Enter your name: ");
string name = ReadLine();
Write("Enter your date of birth: ");
string dob = ReadLine();
Write("Enter your salary: ");
string salary = ReadLine();
DateTime date = DateTime.Parse(dob);
int minutes = (int)DateTime.Today.Subtract(date).TotalMinutes;
decimal earns = decimal.Parse(salary);
WriteLine($"{{name}} was born on a {{date:dddd}} and is {{minutes:N0}} minutes
old and earns {{earns:C}}.");
```

When you run an application, it automatically sets its thread to use the culture of the operating system. I am running my code in London, UK, so the thread is already set to English (United Kingdom).

The code prompts the user to enter an alternative ISO code. This allows your applications to replace the default culture at runtime.

The application then uses standard format codes to output the day of the week `dddd`, the number of minutes with thousand separators `N0`, and the salary with the currency symbol `c`. These adapt automatically based on the thread's culture.

Press *Ctrl + F5*. Enter **en-GB** for the ISO code and then enter some sample data. You will need to enter a date in a format valid for British English:

Enter an ISO culture code: en-GB

Enter your name: Alice

Enter your date of birth: 30/3/1967

Enter your salary: 23500

Alice was born on a Thursday, is 25,469,280 minutes old and earns £23,500.00.

Rerun the application and try a different culture such as Danish in Denmark (da-DK). You will need to enter a date in a format valid for the culture you chose:

Enter an ISO culture code: da-DK

Enter your name: Mikkel

Enter your date of birth: 12.3.1980

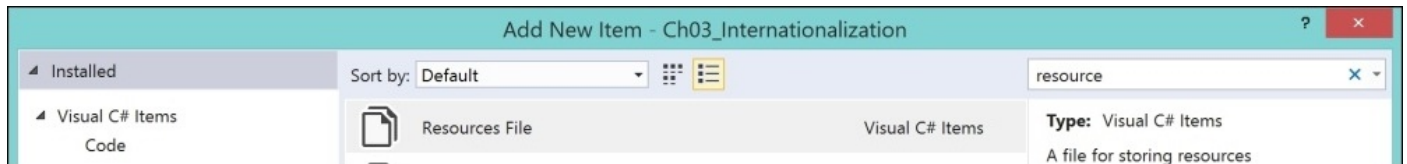
Enter your salary: 34000

Mikkel was born on a onsdag, is 18.656.640 minutes old and earns kr. 34.000,00.

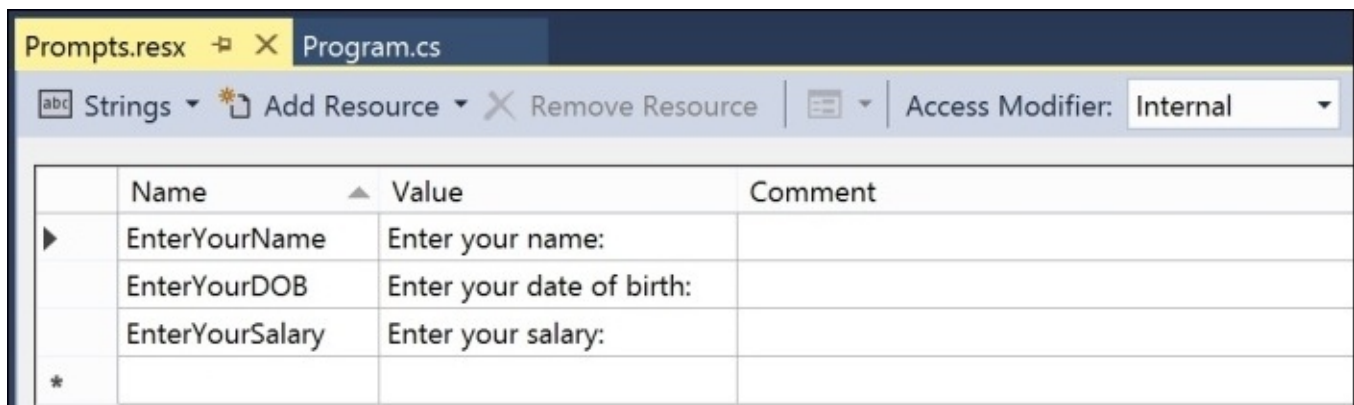
Localizing an application

The application does not currently change the prompts. They have been hardcoded to always ask in English. We can improve this using localization. Choose **Project | Add New Item...** or press *Ctrl + Shift + A*.

In the dialog box, type **resource** into the search box, change the name of the resources file that you are adding to **Prompts.resx**, and then click on **Add**:



Add the following entries and then close the resource editor:



In the **Solution Explorer** window, copy and paste the **Prompts.resx** file by selecting it and pressing *Ctrl + C* and then *Ctrl + V*.

Rename the new copy to **Prompts.fr.resx**. The **fr** indicates that this new copy should be used for French. Open it and modify the entry values as follows:

	Name	Value
▶	EnterYourDOB	Entrez votre date de naissance:
	EnterYourName	Entrez votre nom:
	EnterYourSalary	Entrez votre salaire:
*		

Modify the following statements in the Main method:

```
Write($"{Prompts.EnterYourName} ");
string name = ReadLine();
Write($"{Prompts.EnterYourDOB} ");
string dob = ReadLine();
Write($"{Prompts.EnterYourSalary} ");
string salary = ReadLine();
```

Press *Ctrl + F5*. With an ISO culture code of *fr-FR*, this will load the French prompts:

```
Enter an ISO culture code: fr-FR
Entrez votre nom: Michel
Entrez votre date de naissance: 4 5 1967
Entrez votre salaire: 72000
Michel was born on a jeudi, is 25 418 880 minutes old and earns 72 000,00
?.
```

With any other ISO code, it will load English prompts (think of a resource file without an ISO code in its name as being the default). You could use Microsoft Bing or Google Translate to create your resource files.



Tip

Best Practice

Consider whether your application needs to be internationalized and plan for that before you start coding! Write down all the pieces of text in the user interface that will need to be localized. Think about all the data that will need to be globalized (date formats, number formats, and sorting text behavior).

Interoperating with unmanaged code

.NET applications are loaded, executed, and managed by the CLR. We use the term **unmanaged** to refer to any code that is outside the control of the CLR.

If a .NET developer needs to interact with unmanaged code, they can use two technologies: **Component Object Model (COM) Interop** and **Platform Invoke** (also known as **P/Invoke**).

Tip

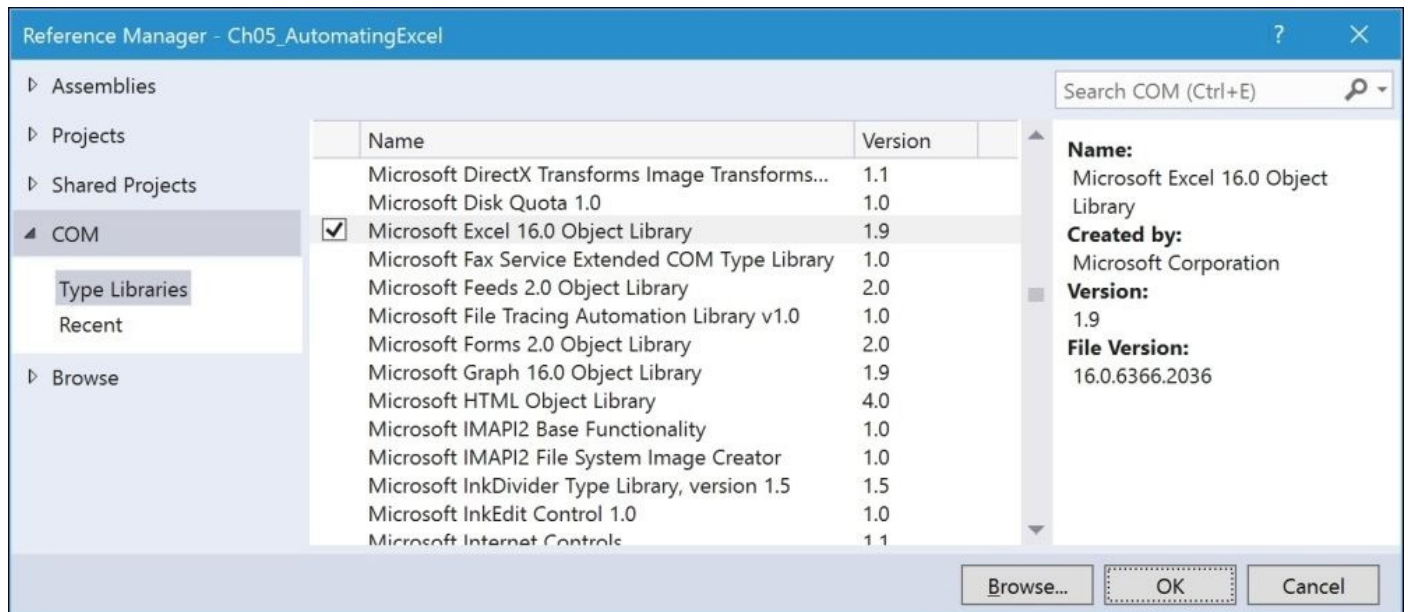
Both of these technologies are specific to Windows and, therefore, are only supported by the .NET Framework, not by the .NET Core.

Automating Microsoft Excel using COM Interop

Most of the popular Microsoft Office products support being automated using COM. If you have Microsoft Excel (for Windows) installed, then you can complete this exercise.

Add a new console application project named **Ch05_AutomatingExcel**. In the **Solution Explorer** window, right-click on **References** and choose **Add Reference....**

In the **Reference Manager** window, on the left-hand side, click on **COM**, and then select the checkbox for **Microsoft Excel 16.0 Object Library** (or the latest version that you have installed). Click on **OK**:



At the top of the code, import the following types and namespaces:

```
using static System.Console;  
using static System.Convert;  
using Microsoft.Office.Interop.Excel;
```

In the Main method, enter the following statements:

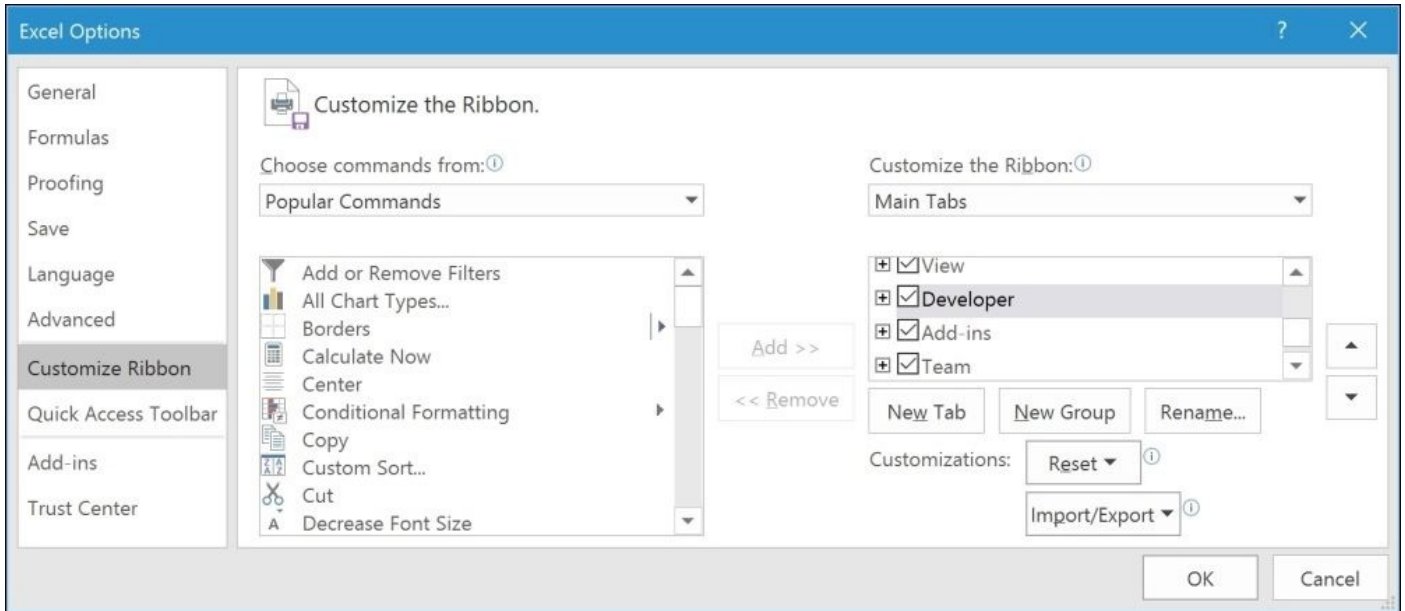
```
const int x1Pie = 5;  
Write("Enter a number: ");  
double number = ToDouble(ReadLine());  
var excel = new Application();  
excel.Visible = true;  
excel.Workbooks.Add();  
excel.Range["A1"].Value = number;  
excel.Range["A2"].Formula = "=A1*2";  
excel.Range["A1:A2"].Select();  
excel.ActiveSheet.Shapes.AddChart2(251, x1Pie).Select();  
excel.ActiveChart.SetSourceData(Source: excel.Range["Sheet1!$A$1:$A$2"]);
```

When you run the console application, it starts Excel, makes it visible (because it runs hidden in the background by default), adds a blank new workbook, sets the cell A1 to contain the number the user entered, doubles it using a formula, then selects the cells and

uses the numbers as a source for a pie chart:

Tip

To make it even easier to learn how to automate Excel, switch on the **Developer** tab in Excel and then use it to record a macro. The code recorded is Visual Basic for Applications, but that is easy to translate to C#.



Accessing the Win32 API with P/Invoke

All Windows applications make calls to the Win32 API to provide their functionality. That's what makes them Windows applications.

Technologies such as .NET are layers on top of the Win32 API. Most of the Win32 API functions have been exposed via .NET types, but not all. If a .NET developer needs to access a Win32 API that isn't already exposed, then they can use P/Invoke.

Add a new console application project named **Ch05_HackNotepad**. At the top of the file, import the following types and namespaces:

```
using static System.Console;
using static System.Diagnostics.Process;
using System.Runtime.InteropServices;
using System;
```

In the Program class, enter the following statements:

```
[DllImport("user32.dll", SetLastError = true)]
static extern IntPtr FindWindow(string lpClassName, string lpWindowName);
[DllImport("user32.dll", SetLastError = true, CharSet = CharSet.Auto)]
public static extern bool SetWindowText(IntPtr hwnd, string lpString);
```

In the Main method, enter the following statements:

```
Write("Enter a message: ");
string message = ReadLine();
WriteLine("Press any key to start Notepad.");
ReadKey();
Start("notepad.exe").WaitForInputIdle();
// use a Win32 API call to get reference to Notepad
IntPtr notepad = FindWindow("Notepad", null);
if (notepad != IntPtr.Zero)
{
    // if it is running, set it's window text with a message
    SetWindowText(notepad, "Notepad has been hacked! " + message);
}
else
{
    WriteLine("Notepad is not running!");
}
```

When you run the console application, it prompts the user to enter a message, starts an instance of Notepad, finds the Notepad window, and sets its title to a customized message.

Tip

A more practical example would be impersonating a user other than the current one while executing some statements. To do this, you would need to use P/Invoke to import the LogonUser function from advapi32.dll and the CloseHandle function from kernel32.dll. For more details, visit [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/w070t6ka\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/w070t6ka(v=vs.110).aspx).

Practicing and exploring

Test your knowledge and understanding by answering some questions, get some hands-on practice, and explore with deeper research into the topics covered in this chapter.

Exercise 5.1 – test your knowledge

Answer the following questions:

1. What is the difference between pressing *F5*, *Ctrl + F5*, *Shift + F5*, and *Ctrl + Shift + F5*?
2. What is the ISO culture code for Welsh?
3. Which information can you find out about a process?
4. Can your applications write to the security event log in Windows?
5. How accurate is the Stopwatch?
6. What is the difference between localization, globalization, and internationalization?

Exercise 5.2 – practice using Debug and Trace

Create a console application named **Ch05_Exercise02** that writes the message “I am debugging.” only when the `DEBUG` symbol is set, writes the message “I am tracing.” only when the `TRACE` symbol is set, and the message “I am confused!” only when `TRACE` and a custom conditional compilation symbol named `CONFUSED` is set.

Exercise 5.3 – explore topics

Use the following links to read more about the topics covered in this chapter:

- **Debugging in Visual Studio:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/sc65sadd.aspx>
- **Start, Break, Step, Run through Code, and Stop Debugging in Visual Studio:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/y740d9d3.aspx>
- **Breakpoints and Tracepoints:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ktf38f66.aspx>
- **System.Diagnostics Namespaces:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/gg145030\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/gg145030(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Stopwatch Class:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.diagnostics.stopwatch\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.diagnostics.stopwatch(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Process Class:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.diagnostics.process\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.diagnostics.process(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Debug Class:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.diagnostics.debug\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.diagnostics.debug(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **xUnit.net:** <http://xunit.github.io/>
- **Globalizing and Localizing .NET Framework Applications:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/h6270d0z\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/h6270d0z(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **System.Globalization Namespace:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.globalization.aspx>

Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to use the Visual Studio debugging and diagnostic features, how to unit test your code, how to internationalize your code, and how to interoperate with code outside of .NET.

In the next chapter, you will learn how to build your own types using object-oriented programming techniques.

Chapter 6. Building Your Own Types with Object-Oriented Programming

This chapter is about making your own types using object-oriented programming (OOP). You will learn about all the different categories of members that a type can have, including fields to store data and methods to perform actions. You will use OOP concepts such as aggregation and encapsulation.

This chapter will cover the following topics:

- Talking about OOP
- Building class libraries
- Storing data with fields
- Writing and calling methods
- Controlling access with properties and indexers
- Simplifying methods with operators
- Raising and handling events

Talking about OOP

An object in the real world is a thing, like a car or a person. An object in programming often represents something in the real world, such as a product or bank account, but can also be something more abstract.

In C#, we use a `class` (usually) or a `struct` (rarely) to define each type of object. You can think of a type as being a blueprint or template for an object.

Encapsulation is the combination of the data and actions that are related to an object. For example, a `BankAccount` type might have data such as `Balance` and `AccountName`, as well as actions such as `Deposit` and `Withdraw`. When encapsulating, you often want to control what is allowed to access those data and actions.

Composition is about what an object is made of. For example, a car is composed of different parts such as four wheels, several seats, an engine, and so on.

Aggregation is about what is related to an object. For example, a person could sit in the driver's seat and becomes the car's driver.

Inheritance is about reusing code by having a **subclass** derive from a **base** or **super** class. All functionality in the base class becomes available in the derived class.

Abstraction is about capturing the core idea of an object and ignoring the details or specifics. Abstraction is a tricky balance. If you make a class more abstract, more classes would be able to inherit from it, but there will be less functionality share.

Polymorphism is about allowing a derived class to override an inherited action to provide custom behavior.

Building class libraries

Class library assemblies group types together into easily deployable units (DLL files). So far, you have only created console applications to contain all your code. To make the code that you write reusable across multiple projects, you should put it in class library assemblies, just like Microsoft does.

Tip

Put types that you might reuse in a class library.

Creating a class library to share code

Start Microsoft Visual Studio 2015. In Visual Studio, press *Ctrl + Shift + N* or go to **File | New | Project....**

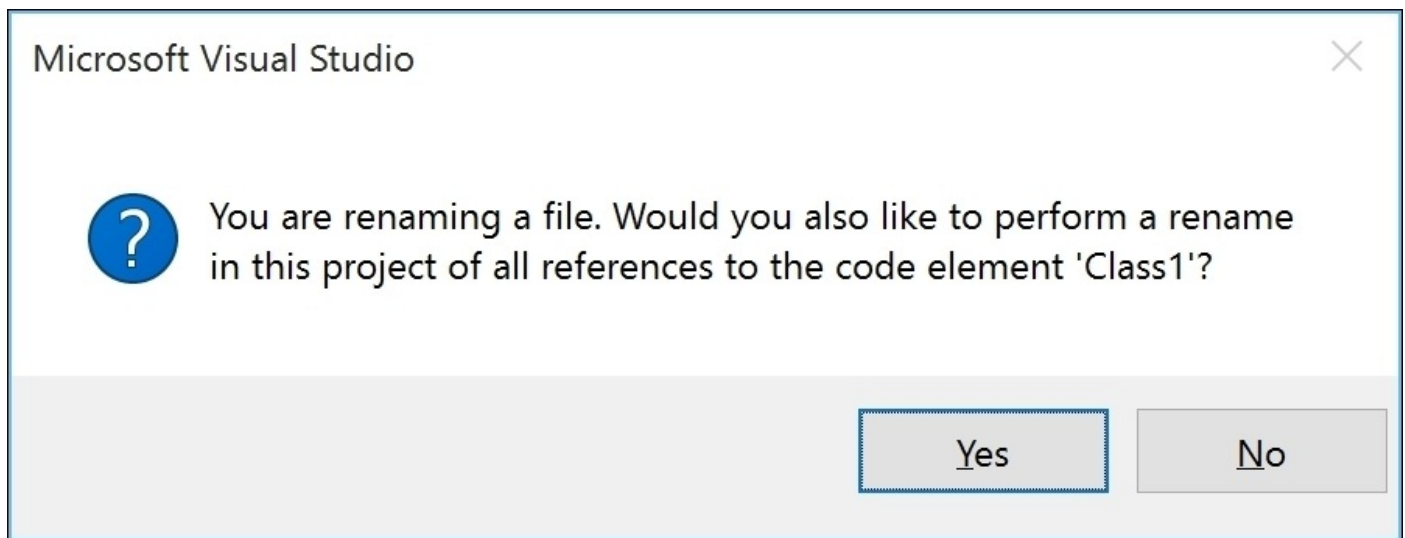
In the **New Project** dialog, in the **Installed Templates** list, select **Visual C#**. In the center list, select **Class Library**, type **Name** as **Ch06_PacktLibrary**, change **Location** to **C:\Code**, type **Solution name** as **Chapter06**, and then click on **OK**.

Note

Make sure you choose class library and *not* a console application!

Defining a class

In **Solution Explorer**, right-click on the file named `Class1.cs` and choose **Rename**. Type the name as **Person**. When you are prompted to rename all other references to the class, click on **Yes**:



Change the namespace to **Packt.CS6** because it is important to put your classes in a logically named namespace. Your code should now look like this:

```
namespace Packt.CS6
{
    public class Person
    {
    }
}
```

Notice that I chose to apply the C# keyword `public` before the class. This allows all code to access this class. If you do not explicitly apply the `public` keyword, then it would only be accessible within the assembly that defined it. We need it to be accessible outside the assembly too. This type does not yet have any members encapsulated within it. We will create some soon.

Members can be fields, methods, or specialized versions of both. They are described here:

- **Fields** are used to store data. These are the three specialized fields:
 - **Constants:** The data in this field never changes
 - **Read-only fields:** The data in this field cannot change after the class is instantiated
 - **Events:** These point to methods that you want to call automatically when something happens, such as clicking on a button
- **Methods** are used to execute statements. These are the four specialized methods:
 - **Constructors:** These are a type of method that execute when you use the `new` keyword to allocate memory and instantiate a class

- **Properties:** These are a type of method that execute when you want to control access to fields
- **Indexers:** These are a type of method that execute when you want to control access to fields
- **Operators:** These are a type of method that execute when you want to apply an operator

Instantiating a class

In this section, we will make an instance of the `Person` class.

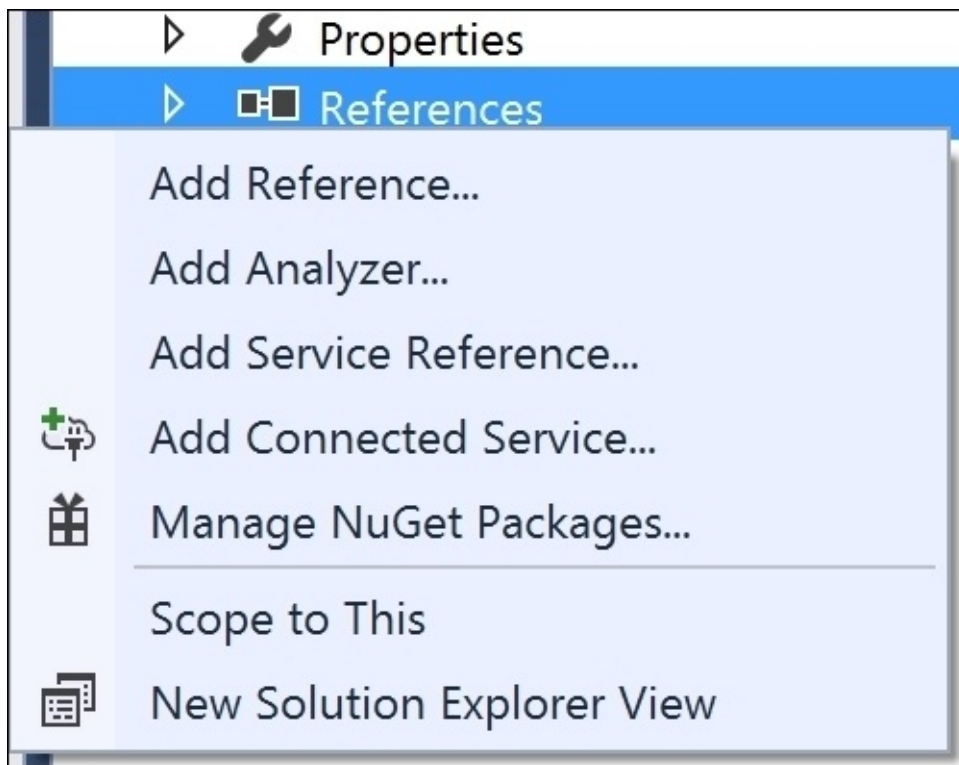
Add a new console application project named **Ch06_PeopleApp**.

Note

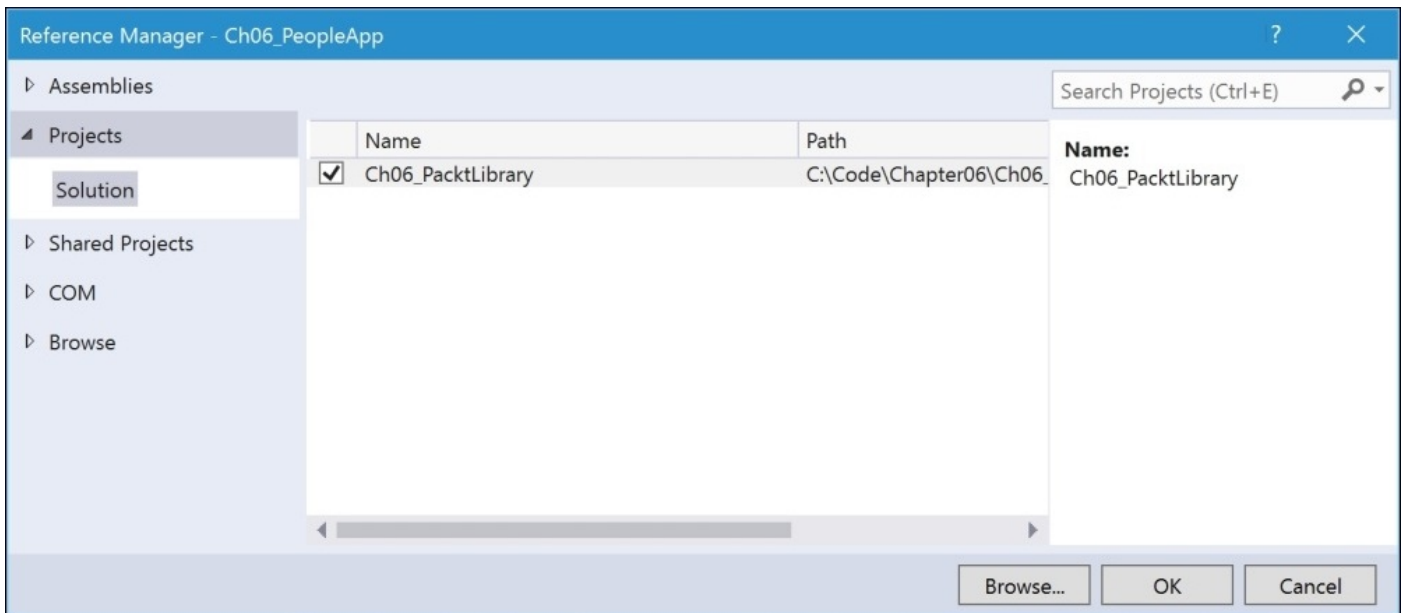
Make sure you choose console application and *not* a class library!

This project needs a reference to the class library we just made.

In **Solution Explorer**, right-click on **References** and choose **Add Reference...**:



In the **Reference Manager** dialog box, in the list on the left-hand side, choose **Projects**, select the **Ch06_PacktLibrary** assembly, and then click on **OK**:



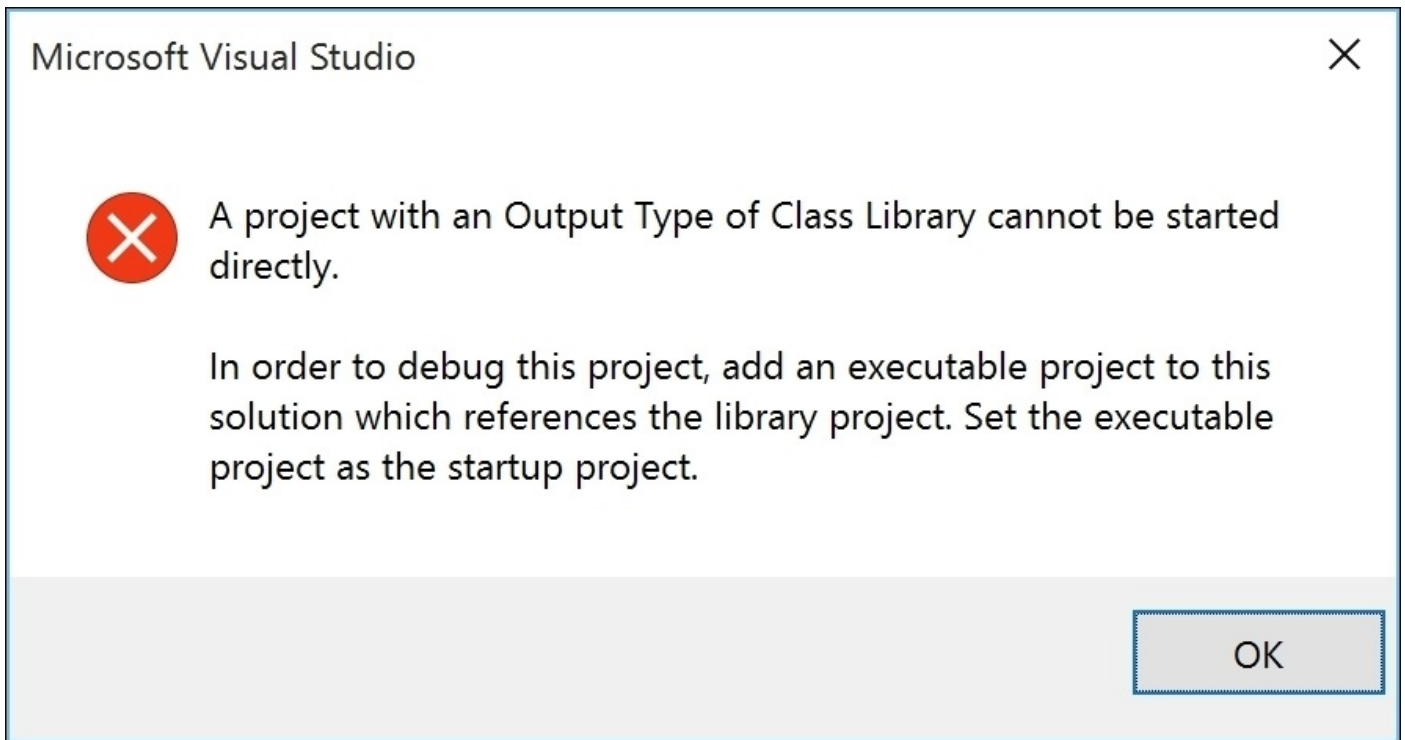
At the top of the file, type the following code to import the namespace for our class and to statically import the `Console` type:

```
using Packt.CS6;  
using static System.Console;
```

In the `Main` method, type the following code to create an instance of the `Person` type by using the `new` keyword. The `new` keyword allocates memory for the object and initializes any internal data. We could use `Person` in place of the `var` keyword, but the use of `var` involves less typing and is just as clear:

```
var p1 = new Person();  
WriteLine(p1.ToString());
```

Press `Ctrl + F5`. If you see the following dialog box, then dismiss it:



Set the solution's startup project to the current selection. Click inside the **Ch06_PeopleApp** project or inside the `Program.cs` file, and press *Ctrl + F5* again.

Although our `Person` class did not explicitly choose to inherit from a type, all types indirectly inherit from a special type named `System.Object`. The implementation of the `ToString` method in the `System.Object` type simply outputs the full namespace and type name like this:

Packt.CS6.Person

Back in the original `Person` class, we could have explicitly told the compiler that `Person` inherits from the `System.Object` type like this:

```
public class Person : System.Object
```

Tip

When class `A` inherits from class `B`, we say that `B` is the base or super class and `A` is the derived or subclass. In this case, `System.Object` is the base or super class and `Person` is the derived or subclass.

You can also use the C# alias `object` keyword:

```
public class Person : object
```

Modify the code to explicitly inherit from the `object` type. Then, click inside the keyword and press *F12*. You will see the Microsoft-defined `System.Object` type and its members. You do not need to understand any of this yet, but notice that it has a method named `ToString`, as you can see in the following screenshot:

```
[-] namespace System
{
  [+ ...] public class Object
  {
    [+ ...] public Object();

    [+ ...] ~Object();

    [+ ...] public static bool Equals(Object objA, Object objB);
    [+ ...] public static bool ReferenceEquals(Object objA, Object objB);
    [+ ...] public virtual bool Equals(Object obj);
    [+ ...] public virtual int GetHashCode();
    [+ ...] public Type GetType();
    [+ ...] public virtual string ToString();
    [+ ...] protected Object MemberwiseClone();
  }
}
```

Tip

Assume other programmers know that if inheritance is not specified, the class will inherit from `System.Object`.

Storing data with fields

Next, we will define some fields in the class to store information about a person.

Defining fields

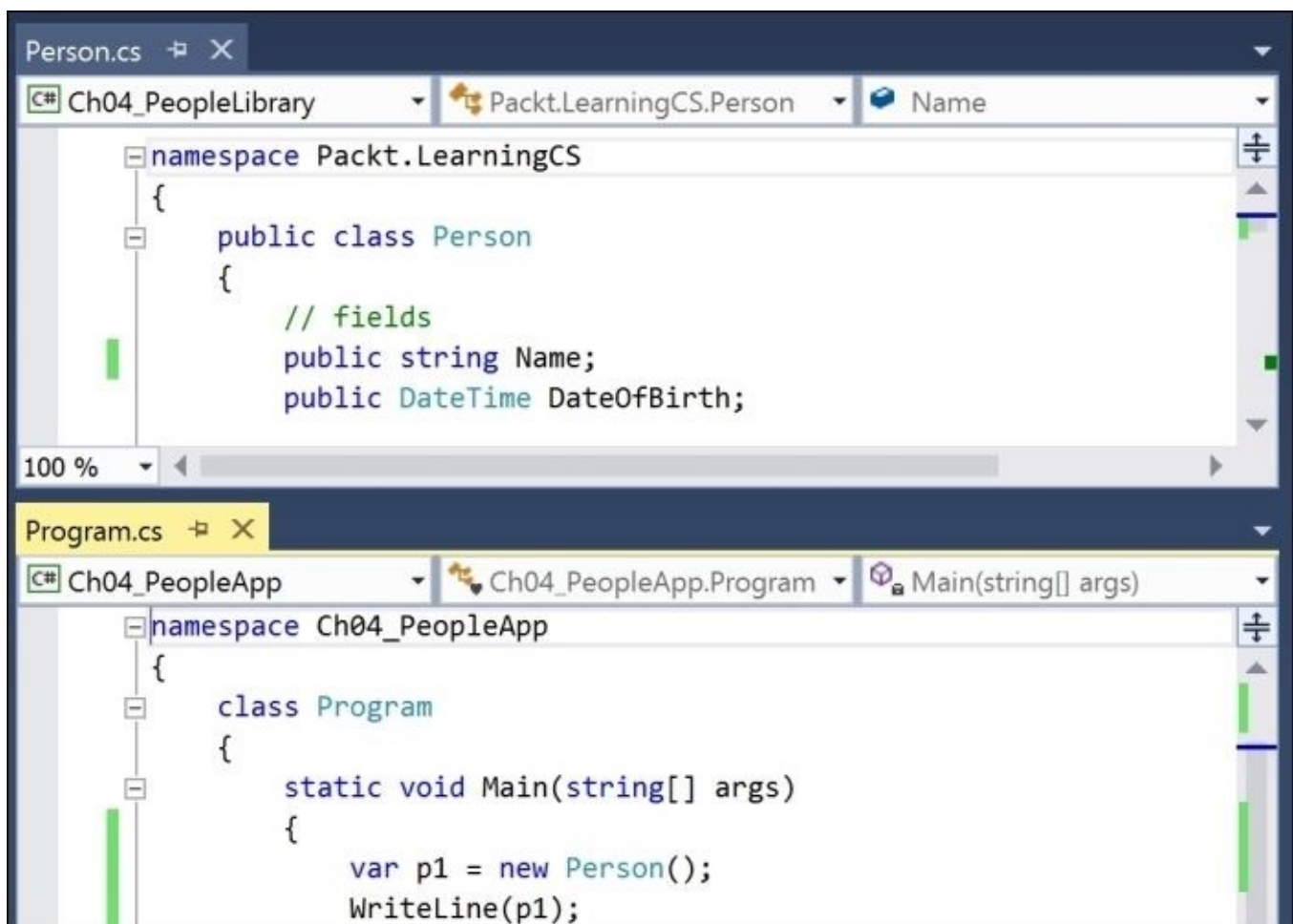
Inside the `Person` class, write the following code. At this point, we have decided that a person is composed of a name and a date of birth. We have **encapsulated** these two values inside the person. We have also made the fields public so that they are visible outside the class itself:

```
public class Person
{
    // fields
    public string Name;
    public DateTime DateOfBirth;
}
```

Tip

You can use any type for a field, including arrays and collections; for example, if you need to store multiple values.

You might want to click, hold, and drag the tab for one of your open files to arrange them so that you can see both files at once, like this:



Notice, that like we did with the class, we applied the `public` keyword to these fields. If we hadn't, then they would be `private` to the class, which means they are accessible only inside the class.

There are four access modifier keywords that you can apply to a class member such as a field or method. Part of encapsulation is choosing how visible the members are:

Access Modifier	Description
private (default)	Member is accessible inside the type only
internal	Member is accessible inside the type and any type in the same assembly
protected	Member is accessible inside the type and any type that inherits from the type
internal protected	Member is accessible inside the type, any type in the same assembly, and any type that inherits from the type
public	Member is accessible everywhere

Tip

Explicitly apply one of the access modifiers to all type members rather than use the default, which is private.

Inside the Main method, change the code to look like this:

```
var p1 = new Person();  
p1.Name = "Bob Smith";  
p1.DateOfBirth = new DateTime(1965, 12, 22);  
WriteLine($"{p1.Name} was born on {p1.DateOfBirth:dddd, d MMMM yyyy}");
```

Run the application by pressing *Ctrl + F5*, and view the output:

Bob Smith was born on Wednesday, 22 December 1965

You can also initialize fields using a short-hand object initializer syntax using curly brackets.

Add the following code underneath the existing code to create another new person. Note the different format code for the date of birth when writing to the console:

```
var p2 = new Person { Name = "Alice Jones", DateOfBirth = new  
DateTime(1998, 3, 17) };  
WriteLine($"{p2.Name} was born on {p2.DateOfBirth:d MMM yy}");
```

Run the application and view the output:

Alice Jones was born on 17 Mar 98

Storing a value using the enum keyword

Sometimes, a value needs to be one of a limited list of options. For example, a person may have a favorite ancient world wonder. Sometimes, a value needs to be combination of a limited list of options. For example, a person may have a bucket list of ancient world wonders they want to visit. We can store this data using an enum type.

An enum is a very efficient way of storing one or more choices, because internally, it uses int values in combination with a lookup table of string descriptions.

Add a new class to the **Ch06_PacktLibrary** project named **WondersOfTheAncientWorld** by pressing *Shift + Alt + C* or going to **Project | Add Class....**

Modify the code file to make it look like this. Notice that the `class` keyword has been changed to `enum` and made public:

```
namespace Packt.CS6
{
    public enum WondersOfTheAncientWorld
    {
        GreatPyramidOfGiza,
        HangingGardensOfBabylon,
        StatueOfZeusAtOlympia,
        TempleOfArtemisAtEphesus,
        MausoleumAtHalicarnassus,
        ColossusOfRhodes,
        LighthouseOfAlexandria
    }
}
```

In the `Person` class, add the following statement to your list of fields:

```
public WondersOfTheAncientWorld FavouriteAncientWonder;
```

Back in the `Main` method of **Ch06_PeopleApp**, add the following statements:

```
p1.FavouriteAncientWonder = WondersOfTheAncientWorld.StatueOfZeusAtOlympia;
WriteLine($"{p1.Name}'s favourite wonder is {p1.FavouriteAncientWonder}");
```

Run the application and view the output:

Bob Smith's favourite wonder is StatueOfZeusAtOlympia

For the bucket list, we could create a collection of instances of the enum, but there is a better way. We can combine multiple choices into a single value using **flags**.

Modify the enum to look like this. Notice that I have used the left shift operator (`<<`) to set individual bits within the flag. I could also have set the values to 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, and so on:

```
namespace Packt.CS6
{
    [System.Flags]
    public enum WondersOfTheAncientWorld : byte
```

```

{
    None = 0,
    GreatPyramidOfGiza = 1,
    HangingGardensOfBabylon = 1 << 1,
    StatueOfZeusAtOlympia = 1 << 2,
    TempleOfArtemisAtEphesus = 1 << 3,
    MausoleumAtHalicarnassus = 1 << 4,
    ColossusOfRhodes = 1 << 5,
    LighthouseOfAlexandria = 1 << 6
}
}

```

Notice that we are assigning explicit values for each choice that would not overlap when looking at the bits stored in memory. We must also mark the enum with the `System.Flags` attribute. Normally, an enum uses an `int` variable internally, but since we don't need values that big, we can make it more efficient by telling it to use a byte variable (with 8 bit columns).

If we want to indicate that our bucket list includes the Hanging Gardens and the Mausoleum at Halicarnassus, then we would want the 16 and 2 bits set to 1. In other words, we would store the value 18:

128	64	32	16	8	4	2	1
0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0

In the `Person` class, add the following statement to your list of fields:

```
public WondersOfTheAncientWorld BucketList;
```

Back in the `Main` method of **Ch06_PeopleApp**, add the following statements to set the bucket list using the `|` operator (logical OR) to combine enum values. We could also set the value using the number 18 cast into the enum type as in the comment:

```

p1.BucketList = WondersOfTheAncientWorld.HangingGardensOfBabylon |
WondersOfTheAncientWorld.MausoleumAtHalicarnassus;
// p1.BucketList = (WondersOfTheAncientWorld)18;
WriteLine($"{p1.Name}'s bucket list is {p1.BucketList}");

```

Run the application and view the output:

```

Bob Smith's bucket list is HangingGardensOfBabylon,
MausoleumAtHalicarnassus

```

Tip

Use enum values to store combinations of discreet options. Derive an enum from `byte` if there are up to eight options, from `short` if there are up to 16 options, from `int` if there are up to 32 options, and from `long` if there are up to 64 options.

Storing multiple values using collections

Let's add a field to store a person's children. This is an example of **aggregation** because children are instances of a class that is related to the current person, but are not part of the person themselves:

```
public List<Person> Children = new List<Person>();
```

Note that we need to ensure the collection is initialized to a new instance of a collection before we can add items to the collection.

In the Main method, add the following code:

```
p1.Children.Add(new Person());  
p1.Children.Add(new Person());  
WriteLine($"{p1.Name} has {p1.Children.Count} children.");
```

Run the application and view the output:

Bob Smith has 2 children.

Making a field static

The fields that we have created so far have all been instance members, meaning that a copy of each field exists for each instance of the class that is created.

Sometimes, you want to define a field that only has one copy, which is shared across all instances. These are called **static** members.

In the **Ch06_PacktLibrary** project, add a new class named `BankAccount`. Modify the code as follows:

```
namespace Packt.CS6
{
    public class BankAccount
    {
        public string AccountName;
        public decimal Balance;
        public static decimal InterestRate;
    }
}
```

Notice that each instance of `BankAccount` will have its own `AccountName` and `Balance`, but all instances will share a single `InterestRate` field.

In **Ch06_PeopleApp** and its `Main` method, add the following code, where we will set the shared interest rate and then create two instances of the `BankAccount` type:

```
BankAccount.InterestRate = 0.012M;
var ba1 = new BankAccount();
ba1.AccountName = "Mrs. Jones";
ba1.Balance = 2400;
WriteLine($"{ba1.AccountName} earned {ba1.Balance *
BankAccount.InterestRate} interest.");
var ba2 = new BankAccount();
ba2.AccountName = "Ms. Gerrier";
ba2.Balance = 98;
WriteLine($"{ba2.AccountName} earned {ba2.Balance *
BankAccount.InterestRate} interest.");
```

Run the application and view the output:

```
Mrs. Jones earned £28.80 interest.
Ms. Gerrier earned £1.18 interest.
```

Making a field constant

If the value of a field will never *ever* change, you can use `const` and assign the value at compile time.

Inside the `Person` class, add the following code:

```
// constants
public const string Species = "Homo Sapien";
```

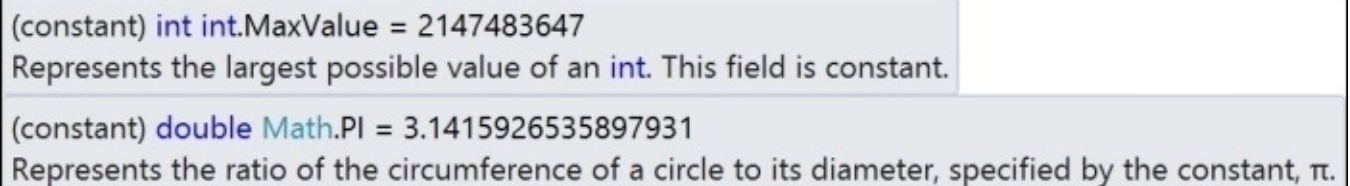
Inside the `Main` method, change the code to look like the following statement. Note that to read a constant field, you must write the name of the class, not the name of an instance of the class:

```
WriteLine($"{p1.Name} is a {Person.Species}");
```

Run the application and view the output:

Bob Smith is a Homo Sapien

Examples of `const` fields in Microsoft types include `System.Int32.MaxValue` and `System.Math.PI`, because neither value will *ever* change, as you can see in the following screenshot:



The screenshot shows two constant fields in a code editor. The first is `(constant) int int.MaxValue = 2147483647` with a tooltip that reads "Represents the largest possible value of an int. This field is constant." The second is `(constant) double Math.PI = 3.1415926535897931` with a tooltip that reads "Represents the ratio of the circumference of a circle to its diameter, specified by the constant, π."

Tip

Constants should be avoided for two important reasons:

- The value must be known at compile time, and it must be expressible as a literal string, Boolean, or number value
- Every reference to the `const` field is replaced with the literal value at compile time, which will, therefore, not be reflected if the value changes in a future version

Making a field read only

A better choice for fields that should not change is to mark them as read-only.

Inside the `Person` class, write the following code:

```
// read-only fields
public readonly string HomePlanet = "Earth";
```

Inside the `Main` method, add the following code statement. Notice that to get a read-only field, you must write the name of an instance of the class, not the type name, unlike constants:

```
WriteLine($"{p1.Name} was born on {p1.HomePlanet}");
```

Run the application and view the output:

Bob Smith was born on Earth

Tip

Use read-only fields over `const` fields for two important reasons:

- The value can be calculated or loaded at runtime and can be expressed using any executable statement. So, a read-only field can be set using a constructor.
- Every reference to the field is a live reference, so any future changes will be correctly reflected by calling code.

Initializing fields with constructors

Fields often need to be initialized at runtime. You do this in a constructor that will be called when you make an instance of the class using the new keyword. Constructors execute before any fields are set by the code that is using the type.

Inside the Person class, add the following code:

```
// read-only fields
public readonly string HomePlanet = "Earth";
public readonly DateTime Instantiated;

// constructors
public Person()
{
    Name = "Unknown"; // set a default name
    Instantiated = DateTime.Now;
}
```

Inside the Main method, add the following code:

```
var p3 = new Person();
WriteLine($"{p3.Name} was instantiated at {p3.Instantiated:hh:mm:ss} on
{p3.Instantiated:dddd, d MMMM yyyy}");
```

Run the application and view the output:

Unknown was instantiated at 11:58:12 on Sunday, 3 January 2016

You can have multiple constructors in a type. Inside the Person class, add the following code:

```
public Person(string initialName)
{
    Name = initialName;
    Instantiated = DateTime.Now;
}
```

Inside the Main method, add the following code:

```
var p4 = new Person("Aziz");
WriteLine($"{p4.Name} was instantiated at {p4.Instantiated:hh:mm:ss} on
{p4.Instantiated:dddd, d MMMM yyyy}");
```

Notice that when you enter the statement to call the constructor, it shows the name of the parameter to be passed, as shown in the following screenshot:



Run the application and view the output:

Aziz was instantiated at 11:59:25 on Sunday, 3 January 2016

Constructors are a special category of method. Let's look at methods in more detail.

Writing and calling methods

Methods are type members that execute a block of statements. A method that performs some actions but does not return a value is marked as returning `void`. A method that performs some actions and returns a value is marked as returning the type of that return value.

Inside the `Person` class, statically import the `System.Console` type and then add the following code:

```
// methods
public void WriteToConsole()
{
    WriteLine($"{Name} was born on {DateOfBirth:dddd, d MMMM yyyy}");
}
public string GetOrigin()
{
    return $"{Name} was born on {HomePlanet}";
}
```

Inside the `Main` method, add the following code:

```
p1.WriteToConsole();
WriteLine(p1.GetOrigin());
```

Run the application and view the output:

```
Bob Smith was born on Wednesday, 22 December 1965
Bob Smith was born on Earth
```

Methods can have parameters passed to them in order to change their behavior. Parameters are defined a bit like variable declarations but inside the parentheses of the method.

Inside the `Person` class, add the following code:

```
public string SayHello()
{
    return $"{Name} says 'Hello!'";
}
public string SayHelloTo(string name)
{
    return $"{Name} says 'Hello {name}!'";
}
```

Inside the `Main` method, add the following code:

```
WriteLine(p1.SayHello());
WriteLine(p1.SayHelloTo("Emily"));
```

Run the application and view the output:

```
Bob Smith says 'Hello!'
Bob Smith says 'Hello Emily!'
```

Overloading methods

When typing a statement that calls a method, you can press *Ctrl + K, I* or go to the **Edit | IntelliSense | Quick Info** to see **Quick Info** of a method:

```
SayHello();
```

```
string Person.SayHello()
```

Here is the `SayHelloTo` method's Quick Info:

```
SayHelloTo("Emily");
```

```
string Person.SayHelloTo(string name)
```

Instead of having two different method names, we could give both methods the same name. This is allowed because the methods each have a different signature. A method signature is the list of parameter types that can be passed when calling the method.

In the `Person` class, change the name of the `SayHelloTo` method to `SayHello`. Now, when you view the quick info for the method, it tells you that it has one additional overload:

```
SayHello("Emily");
```

```
string Person.SayHello(string name) (+ 1 overload)
```

Tip

Use overloaded methods to simplify your class by making it appear to have fewer methods.

Optional parameters and named arguments

Another way to simplify methods is to make parameters optional. You make a parameter optional by assigning a default value inside the method parameter list. Optional parameters must always come last in the list of parameters.

You will now create a method with three optional parameters.


Inside the `Person` class, add the following code:

```
public void OptionalParameters(string command = "Run!", double number = 0.0, bool active = true)
{
    WriteLine($"command is {command}, number is {number}, active is {active}");
}
```

Inside the `Main` method, add the following code. Notice IntelliSense Quick Info, that appears as you call the method, showing the three optional parameters in square brackets:

```
p1.OptionalParameters();
```

Watch Visual Studio as you type the code and you will see a tooltip as in the following screenshot:



```
p1.OptionalParameters();
void Person.OptionalParameters([string command = "Run!"], [double number = 0], [bool active = true])
```

When you run the application, you will see the following output:

```
command is Run!, number is 0, active is True
```

Add the following line that passes a string for the `command` and a double for the `number` parameters:

```
p1.OptionalParameters("Jump!", 98.5);
```

Run the application and see the output:

```
command is Jump!, number is 98.5, active is True
```

The default values for `command` and `number` have been replaced, but the default for `active` is still `true`.

Optional parameters are often combined with naming parameters when you call the method, because naming a parameter allows the values to be passed in a different order than how they were declared:

```
p1.OptionalParameters(number: 52.7, command: "Hide!");
```

Run the application and see the output:

```
command is Hide!, number is 52.7, active is True
```

You can even use named parameters to skip over optional parameters:

```
p1.OptionalParameters("Poke!", active: false);
```

Run the application and see the output:

```
command is Poke!, number is 0, active is False
```

Splitting classes using partial

When working on large projects with multiple team members, it is useful to be able to split the definition of a complex class across multiple files. You do this using the `partial` keyword.

Imagine we want to add a new method to the `Person` class without having to ask another programmer to close the `Person.cs` file. If the class is defined as `partial`, then we can split it over as many separate files as we like.

In the `Person` class, add the `partial` keyword:

```
namespace Packt.CS6
{
    public partial class Person
    {
```

In the **Project** menu, go to **Add Class...** or press *Shift + Alt + C*. Enter the name **Person2**.

We cannot enter `Person` because Visual Studio isn't smart enough to understand what we want to do. Instead, we must now rename the new class to `Person`, change the namespace, and add the `public partial` keywords:

```
namespace Packt.CS6
{
    public partial class Person
    {
```

The rest of the code we write can now be put in this new `Person2.cs` file.

Controlling access with properties and indexers

Earlier, you created a method named `GetOrigin` that returned a string containing the name and origin of the person. Languages such as Java do this a lot. C# has a better way: properties.

A property is simply a method (or pair of methods) that act like a field when you want to get or set a value, thereby simplifying the syntax.

Defining read-only properties

In the `Person2.cs` file, inside the `Person` class, add the following code to define three properties.

The first property will perform the same role as the `GetOrigin` method, using the property syntax that works with all versions of C# (although it uses the C# 6-only string interpolation syntax).

The second property will return a greeting message using the new C# 6 lambda expression (`=>`) syntax.

The third property will calculate the person's age.

Here is the code:

```
// property defined using C# 1 - 5 syntax
public string Origin
{
    get
    {
        return $"{Name} was born on {HomePlanet}";
    }
}

// two properties defined using C# 6 lambda expression syntax
public string Greeting => $"{Name} says 'Hello!'";

public int Age => (int)(DateTime.Today.Subtract(DateOfBirth).TotalDays /
365.25);
```

In the `Main` method, add the following code. You can see that to get (or read) a property, you need to treat it like a field:

```
var max = new Person { Name = "Max", DateOfBirth = new DateTime(1972, 1,
27) };
WriteLine(max.Origin);
WriteLine(max.Greeting);
WriteLine(max.Age);
```

Run the application and view the output:

```
Max was born on Earth
Max says 'Hello!'
43
```

Defining settable properties

To create a settable property, you must use the older syntax and provide a pair of methods, not just a get part but also a set part.

In the `Person2.cs` file, add the following code to define a string property that has both a get and set method (aka getter and setter). Although you have not manually created a field to store the person's favorite ice cream, it is there, automatically created by the compiler for you:

```
public string FavouriteIceCream { get; set; } // auto-syntax
```

Sometimes, you need more control over what happens when a property is set. In this scenario, you must use a more detailed syntax and manually create a private field to store the value for the property:

```
private string favouritePrimaryColour;
public string FavouritePrimaryColour
{
    get
    {
        return favouritePrimaryColour;
    }
    set
    {
        switch (value.ToLower())
        {
            case "red":
            case "green":
            case "blue":
                favouritePrimaryColour = value;
                break;
            default:
                throw new ArgumentException($"{value} is not a primary
colour. Choose from: red, green, blue.");
        }
    }
}
```

In the Main method add the following code:

```
max.FavouriteIceCream = "Chocolate Fudge";
WriteLine($"Max's favourite ice-cream flavour is
{max.FavouriteIceCream}.");
max.FavouritePrimaryColour = "Red";
WriteLine($"Max's favourite primary colour is
{max.FavouritePrimaryColour}.");
```

Run the application and view the output:

```
Max's favourite ice-cream flavour is Chocolate Fudge.
Max's favourite primary colour is Red.
```

If you try to set the color to any value other than red, green, or blue, then the code will throw an exception. The calling code could then use a try-catch statement to display the

error message.

Tip

Use properties instead of fields when you want to validate what value can be stored, when you want to data bind in XAML (we will cover this in [Chapter 13](#), *Building Universal Windows Platform Apps Using XAML*), and when you want to read and write to fields without using methods.

Defining indexers

Indexers allow the calling code to use the array syntax to access a property. For example, the string class defines an indexer so that the calling code can access individual characters in the string individually. We will define an indexer to simplify access to the children of a person.

In the `Person2.cs` file, add the following code to define an indexer to get and set a child using the index (position) of the child:

```
// indexers
public Person this[int index]
{
    get
    {
        return Children[index];
    }
    set
    {
        Children[index] = value;
    }
}
```

Tip

You can overload indexers so that different types can be used to call them. For example, as well as passing an `int`, you could also pass a `string`.

In the `Main` method, add the following code. After adding two children, we will access the first and second child using the longer `Children` field and the shorter indexer syntax:

```
max.Children.Add(new Person { Name = "Charlie" });
max.Children.Add(new Person { Name = "Ella" });
WriteLine($"Max's first child is {max.Children[0].Name}");
WriteLine($"Max's second child is {max.Children[1].Name}");
WriteLine($"Max's first child is {max[0].Name}");
WriteLine($"Max's second child is {max[1].Name}");
```

Run the application and view the output:

```
Max's first child is Charlie
Max's second child is Ella
Max's first child is Charlie
Max's second child is Ella
```

Tip

Only use indexers if it makes sense to use the square bracket/array syntax. For example, a Microsoft type that uses indexers is `DbDataReader`. It loads one record at a time from a database table and allows you to use the indexer syntax to read column values based on the index or name of the column.

Simplifying methods with operators

We might want two instances of a person to be able to procreate. We could do this with the following method:

```
// method to "multiply"
public Person Procreate(Person partner)
{
    var baby = new Person("Baby");
    Children.Add(baby);
    partner.Children.Add(baby);
    return baby;
}
```

Now, we can get two people to make a baby:

```
var harry = new Person { Name = "Harry" };
var mary = new Person { Name = "Mary" };
var baby1 = harry.Procreate(mary);
WriteLine($"{mary.Name} has {mary.Children.Count} children.");
WriteLine($"{harry.Name} has {harry.Children.Count} children.");
```

Run the application and view the output:

```
Mary has 1 children.
Harry has 1 children.
```

An alternative would be to define an operator to allow two people to “multiply”. To allow this, we need to define a static operator for the * symbol:

```
// operator to "multiply"
public static Person operator *(Person p1, Person p2)
{
    return p1.Procreate(p2);
}
```

Add the following code at the end of the Main method, but before writing the children count to the console:

```
var baby1 = harry.Procreate(mary);
var baby2 = harry * mary;
WriteLine($"{mary.Name} has {mary.Children.Count} children.");
```

Run the application and view the output:

```
Mary has 2 children.
Harry has 2 children.
```


Raising and handling events

Methods are often described as actions that an object can do. For example, a `List` class can add an item to itself or clear itself.

Events are often described as actions that happen to an object. For example, in a user interface, a `Button` has a `Click` event, click being something that happens to a button.

Another way of thinking of events is a way of exchanging messages between two objects.

Calling methods using delegates

You have already seen the most common way to call or execute a method: use the “dot” syntax to access the method using its name.

The other way to call or execute a method is to use a delegate. If you have used languages that support function pointers, then you can think of a delegate as being a type-safe method pointer. In other words, a delegate is just the memory address of a method that matches the same signature as the delegate.

For example, imagine there is a method that must have a string passed as its only parameter and it returns an int:

```
public int MethodIWantToCall(string input)
{
    return input.Length;
}
```

I could call this method directly like this:

```
int answer = p1.MethodIWantToCall("Frog");
```

Alternatively, I could define a delegate with a matching signature to call the method indirectly. Notice that the names of parameters do not have to match. Only the types of parameters and return values must match:

```
delegate int DelegateWithMatchingSignature(string s);
```

Now, I can create an instance of the delegate, point it at the method, and finally call the delegate (which calls the method!):

```
var d = new DelegateWithMatchingSignature(p1.MethodIWantToCall);
int answer2 = d("Frog");
```

You are probably thinking, “What’s the point of that?” Well, it provides flexibility.

We could use delegates to create a queue of methods that need to be called in order. Delegates have built-in support for asynchronous operations that run on a different thread for better performance. Most importantly, delegates allow us to create events.

Tip

Delegates and events are one of the most advanced features of C# and can take a few attempts to understand, so don’t worry if you’re feeling lost!

Defining events

Microsoft has predefined two delegates for use as events. They look like this:

```
public delegate void EventHandler(object sender, EventArgs e);
public delegate void EventHandler<TEventArgs>(object sender, TEventArgs e);
```

Tip

When you want to define an event in your own type, you should use one of these two predefined delegates.

Add the following code to `Person2.cs`. The code defines an event named `Shout`. It also defines a field to store `AngerLevel` and a method named `Poke`.

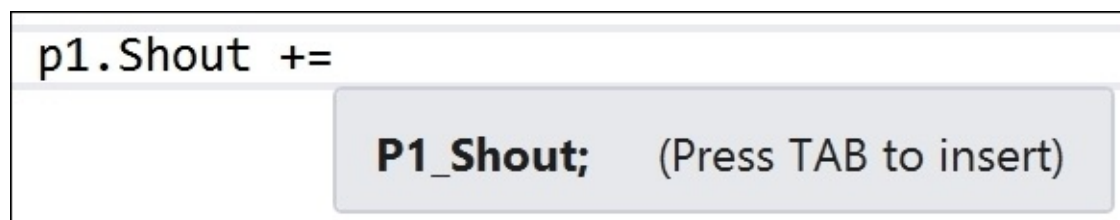
Each time a person is poked, their anger level increments. Once their anger level reaches three, they raise the `Shout` event, but only if the event delegate is pointing at a method (that is, NOT null):

```
// events
public event EventHandler Shout;
public int AngerLevel;
public void Poke()
{
    AngerLevel++;
    if (AngerLevel >= 3)
    {
        if (Shout != null)
        {
            Shout(this, EventArgs.Empty);
        }
    }
}
```

In the `Main` method, start typing the following code to assign an event handler:

```
p1.Shout +=
```

Notice the IntelliSense that appears when you type the `+=` operator, as shown in the following screenshot:



Press *Tab* and then *Enter* to accept the name of the method. Visual Studio inserts a method that correctly matches the signature of the event delegate. This method will be automatically called when the event is raised.

Tip

In older versions of Visual Studio, you had to press the *Tab* key twice.

Scroll down to find the method Visual Studio created for you and delete the statement that throws a `NotSupportedException`. Replace it with the following code:

```
private static void P1_Shout(object sender, EventArgs e)
{
    Person p = (Person)sender;
    WriteLine($"{p.Name} is this angry: {p.AngerLevel}.");
}
```

Back in the `Main` method, add the following code after handling the `Shout` event:

```
p1.Shout += P1_Shout;
p1.Poke();
p1.Poke();
p1.Poke();
p1.Poke();
```

Run the application. Notice that Bob only gets angry enough to shout once he's been poked three times:

```
Bob Smith is this angry: 3.
Bob Smith is this angry: 4.
```


Practicing and exploring

Test your knowledge and understanding by answering some questions, get some hands-on practice, and explore this chapter's topics with deeper research.

Exercise 6.1 – test your knowledge

Answer the following questions:

1. What are the four access modifiers and what do they do?
2. What is the difference between the `static`, `const`, and `readonly` keywords?
3. How many parameters can a method have?
4. What does a constructor do?
5. Why do you need to apply the `[Flags]` attribute to an enum keyword when you want to store combined values?
6. What is a delegate?
7. What is an event?
8. Why is the `partial` keyword useful?

Exercise 6.2 – practice writing mathematical methods

Create a console application named **Ch06_Exercise02** and add three static methods to the Program class to perform the following tasks:

- Numbers used to count are called “cardinal” numbers, for example, 1, 2, 3. Numbers used to order are “ordinal” numbers, for example, 1st, 2nd, 3rd. Write a method named `CardinalToOrdinal` that converts a cardinal `int` into an ordinal `string`, for example, converts 1 into 1st, 2 into 2nd, and so on.
- The factorial of 5 is 120, because factorials are calculated by multiplying the number by one less than itself and so on like this: $5 \times 4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1 = 120$. The factorial of 3 is 6 because it is $3 \times 2 \times 1 = 6$. Write a method named `Factorial` that calculates the factorial for an `int` variable passed to it as a parameter. You could either use a loop or a technique called **recursion**, which means a method that calls itself.
- Prime factors are the combination of smallest prime numbers that when multiplied together will produce the original number. For example, the prime factors of 30 are $2 \times 3 \times 5$. The prime factors of 4 are 2×2 . Write a method named `PrimeFactors` that, when passed an `int` variable as a parameter, returns a `string` showing the prime factors as stated earlier.

In the `Main` method, prompt the user to press A, B, or C to choose between the three mathematical functions. Then, prompt the user to enter a number as input and then show the output.

Exercise 6.3 – explore topics

Use the following links to read more about this chapter's topics:

- **.NET Framework class library:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/gg145045\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/gg145045(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Framework design guidelines:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/vstudio/ms229042\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/vstudio/ms229042(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Fields (C# programming guide):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms173118.aspx>
- **Access modifiers (C# programming guide):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms173121.aspx>
- **Constructors (C# programming guide):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ace5hbzh.aspx>
- **Methods (C# programming guide):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms173114.aspx>
- **Named and optional arguments (C# programming guide):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd264739.aspx>
- **Method parameters (C# reference):** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/8f1hz171\(v=vs.140\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/8f1hz171(v=vs.140).aspx)
- **Properties (C# programming guide):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/x9fsa0sw.aspx>
- **Indexers (C# programming guide):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/6x16t2tx.aspx>
- **Operator (C# reference):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/s53ehcz3.aspx>
- **Delegates (C# programming guide):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms173171.aspx>
- **Events (C# programming guide):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/awbftdfh.aspx>

Summary

In this chapter, you learned about making your own types using OOP. You learned about all the different categories of members that a type can have, including fields to store data and methods to perform actions. You used OOP concepts such as aggregation and encapsulation.

In the next chapter, you will take these concepts further by implementing interfaces and inheriting from existing classes.

Chapter 7. Implementing Interfaces and Inheriting Classes

This chapter is about deriving new types from existing ones using object-oriented programming (OOP). You will learn how to implement interfaces, about base and derived classes, how to override a type member, how to use polymorphism, how to create extension methods, and how to cast between classes in an inheritance hierarchy.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Implementing interfaces
- Managing memory with reference and value types
- Inheriting from classes
- Casting within inheritance hierarchies
- Documenting your types
- Inheriting and extending .NET types

Implementing interfaces

Interfaces are a way of connecting different types together to make new things. Think of them like the studs on top of LEGO bricks that allow them to “stick” together, or electrical standards for plugs and sockets.

If a type implements a particular interface, then it is making a promise to the rest of .NET that it supports a certain feature.

Common interfaces

Here are some common interfaces that your types might want to implement:

Interface	Method(s)	Description
IComparable	CompareTo(other)	This defines a comparison method that a type implements to order or sort its instances
IComparer	Compare(first, second)	This defines a comparison method that a secondary type implements to order or sort instances of a primary type
IDisposable	Dispose()	This defines a disposal method to release unmanaged resources more efficiently than waiting for a finalizer
IFormattable	ToString(format, culture)	This defines a culture-aware method to format the value of an object into a string representation
IFormatter	Serialize(stream, object), Deserialize(stream)	This defines methods to convert an object to and from a stream of bytes for storage or transfer

Comparing objects when sorting

One of the most common interfaces that you will want to implement is `IComparable`. It allows arrays and collections that contain instances of your type to be sorted.

In Visual Studio, open the **Chapter06** solution and the `Program.cs` file in the **Ch06_PeopleApp** project. Add the following code to the `Main` method. It creates an array of `Person` instances, attempts to sort it, and then outputs the array:

```
Person[] people =
{
    new Person { Name = "Simon" },
    new Person { Name = "Jenny" },
    new Person { Name = "Adam" },
    new Person { Name = "Richard" }
};
Array.Sort(people);
foreach (var person in people)
{
    WriteLine($"{person.Name}");
}
```

Run the application by pressing *Ctrl + F5*. You will see this runtime error:

Unhandled Exception: System.InvalidOperationException: Failed to compare two elements in the array. ---> System.ArgumentException: At least one object must implement IComparable.

As the error explains, to fix the problem our type must implement `IComparable`.

In the **Ch06_PacktLibrary** project in the `Person2.cs` file, add the following code to the end of the class definition:

```
public partial class Person : IComparable<Person>
```

Visual Studio will draw a red squiggle under the new code you have added to warn you that you have not yet implemented the method you have promised to.

Visual Studio can write the skeleton implementation for you if you click on the light bulb and choose the first option, that is, **Implement interface**.



Scroll down to find the method that Visual Studio wrote for you and delete the statement that throws the `NotImplementedException` error. Modify the method to look like this:

```
public int CompareTo(Person other)
{
    return Name.CompareTo(other.Name);
}
```

I have chosen to compare two Person instances by comparing their name fields. People will therefore be sorted alphabetically by their name.

Run the application. This time it works:

Adam
Jenny
Richard
Simon

Defining a separate comparer

Sometimes you won't have access to the source code for a type and it might not implement the `IComparable` interface. Luckily, there is another way to sort instances of a type. You can create a secondary type that implements a slightly different interface named `IComparer`.

In the **Ch06_PacktLibrary** project, add a new class named `PersonComparer` that implements the `IComparer` interface, as shown in the following block of code. It will compare two people by comparing the length of their `Name` field, or if the names are the same length, then by comparing the names alphabetically:

```
using System.Collections.Generic;
namespace Packt.CS6
{
    public class PersonComparer : IComparer<Person>
    {
        public int Compare(Person x, Person y)
        {
            int temp = x.Name.Length.CompareTo(y.Name.Length);
            if (temp == 0)
            {
                return x.Name.CompareTo(y.Name);
            }
            else
            {
                return temp;
            }
        }
    }
}
```

In the `Main` method, add the following code:

```
Array.Sort(people, new PersonComparer());
foreach (var person in people)
{
    WriteLine($"{person.Name}");
}
```

Run the application. This time, when we sort the `people` array, we explicitly ask the sorting algorithm to use the `PersonComparer` type instead, so the people are sorted with the shortest names first:

Adam
Jenny
Simon
Richard

Tip

Best Practice

If anyone might want to sort an array or collection of instances of your type, then

implement the `Comparable` interface.

Managing memory with reference and value types

There are two categories of memory: **stack** memory and **heap** memory. Stack memory is fast but limited and heap memory is slower but plentiful.

There are two C# keywords that you use to create object types: `class` and `struct`. Both can have the same members. The difference between the two is how memory is allocated and the lifetime of their variables.

Note

Technically, how memory is allocated is an implementation detail and not part of the C# or .NET specifications. Alternative implementations could choose to store instances of a `struct` type on the heap! You can read more about how value types are stored here: <https://blogs.msdn.microsoft.com/ericlippert/2010/09/30/the-truth-about-value-types/>.

When you define a type using `class`, you are defining a **reference** type. This means that the memory for the object itself is allocated on the heap along with some overhead consisting of a pointer to the object's method table and an object that is used to synchronize access from multiple threads, and only the memory address of the object (and a little overhead) is stored on the stack.

When you define a type using `struct`, you are defining a **value** type. This means that the memory for the object itself is allocated on the stack.

Tip

If your type defined by using the `struct` keyword uses reference types for any of its fields, then those fields will be stored on the heap!

These are most of the `struct` types, that is, value types in .NET:

- **These are number value types:** `byte`, `sbyte`, `short`, `ushort`, `int`, `uint`, `long`, `ulong`, `float`, `double`, `decimal`
- **These are character and Boolean value types:** `char`, `bool`
- **These are System.Drawing value types:** `Color`, `Point`, `Rectangle`

Almost all the other types in .NET are classes, that is, reference types, including `string`.

Tip

You cannot inherit from a `struct`.

Defining a type using the struct keyword

In **Solution Explorer**, ensure that the **Ch06_PacktLibrary** project has the focus. Next, from the **Project** menu, choose **Add Class...** or press *Shift + Alt + C*.

In the dialog box enter `DisplacementVector` for the name.

Tip

There isn't a template for `struct`, so you have to use `class` and then change it manually.

Modify the code to look like this:

```
namespace Packt.CS6
{
    public struct DisplacementVector
    {
        public int X;
        public int Y;
        public DisplacementVector(int initialX, int initialY)
        {
            X = initialX;
            Y = initialY;
        }
        public static DisplacementVector operator +(DisplacementVector
vector1, DisplacementVector vector2)
        {
            return new DisplacementVector(vector1.X + vector2.X, vector1.Y
+ vector2.Y);
        }
    }
}
```

In the **Ch06_PeopleApp** project, in the `Main` method, add the following code:

```
var dv1 = new DisplacementVector(3, 5);
var dv2 = new DisplacementVector(-2, 7);
var dv3 = dv1 + dv2;
WriteLine($"({dv1.X}, {dv1.Y}) + ({dv2.X}, {dv2.Y}) = ({dv3.X}, {dv3.Y})");
```

Run the application and view the output:

(3, 5) + (-2, 7) = (1, 12)

Tip

Best Practice

If your type uses 16 bytes or less of stack memory, only uses `struct` keywords for its field types, and you will never want to inherit from it, then Microsoft recommends that you use a `struct` keyword. If your type uses more than 16 bytes of stack memory, uses `classes` for its field types, and if you would want to inherit from your type, then use a `class`. By the way, if you are wondering what I mean by “inherit”, then read on...

Releasing unmanaged resources

In the previous chapter, we saw that constructors can be used to initialize fields. A type may have multiple constructors.

Imagine that a constructor allocates an unmanaged resource (that is, anything that is not controlled by .NET). The unmanaged resource must be manually released because .NET cannot do it for us.

Each type can have a single **finalizer** (also known as destructor) that will be called by the CLR when the resources need to be released. A finalizer has the same name as a constructor (that is, the type name) but it is prefixed with a tilde (~) as shown in the following code example:

```
public class Animal
{
    public Animal()
    {
        // allocate an unmanaged resource
    }
    ~Animal() // Finalizer aka destructor
    {
        // deallocate the unmanaged resource
    }
}
```

This is the minimum you should do in this scenario. The problem with just providing a finalizer is that the .NET garbage collector requires two garbage collections to completely release the allocated resources for this type.

Though optional, it is recommended to also provide a method to allow a developer who uses your type to explicitly release resources so that the garbage collector can then release the object in a single collection. There is a standard mechanism to do this in .NET by implementing the `IDisposable` interface, as shown in the following code example:

```
public class Animal : IDisposable
{
    public Animal()
    {
        // allocate unmanaged resource
    }
    ~Animal() // Finalizer aka destructor
    {
        if (disposed) return;
        Dispose(false);
    }
    bool disposed = false; // have resources been released?
    public void Dispose()
    {
        Dispose(true);
        GC.SuppressFinalize(this);
    }
    protected virtual void Dispose(bool disposing)
```

```
{
    if (disposed) return;
    // deallocate the *unmanaged* resource
    // ...
    if (disposing)
    {
        // deallocate any other *managed* resources
        // ...
    }
    disposed = true;
}
}
```

Note that there are two `Dispose` methods. The public method will be called by a developer using your type. The `Dispose` method with a `bool` parameter is used internally to implement the deallocation of resources, both unmanaged and managed. When the public `Dispose` method is called, both unmanaged and managed resources need to be deallocated, but when the finalizer runs, only unmanaged resources need to be deallocated.

Also, note the call to `GC.SuppressFinalize(this)`—this is what notifies the garbage collector that it no longer needs to run the finalizer and removes the need for a second collection.

Ensuring that dispose is called

When someone uses a type that implements `IDisposable`, they can ensure that the public `Dispose` method is called with the `using` statement, as shown in the following code:

```
using(Animal a = new Animal())
{
    // code that uses the Animal instance
}
```

The compiler converts your code into something like the following, which guarantees that even if an exception occurs, the `Dispose` method will still be called:

```
Animal a = new Animal();
try
{
    // code that uses the Animal instance
}
finally
{
    if (a != null) a.Dispose();
}
```


Inheriting from classes

Inheritance is a mechanism for code reuse where a derived (or sub) class is based on a base (or super) class thereby having access to all of the base class' members. The `Person` type we created earlier implicitly derived (inherited) from `System.Object`. Now, we will create a new class that explicitly inherits from `Person`.

In **Solution Explorer**, ensure that the **Ch06_PacktLibrary** project has the focus. Next, from the **Project** menu, choose **Add Class...** or press *Shift + Alt + C*. Name the class `Employee`.

Modify its code as follows:

```
using System;
namespace Packt.CS6
{
    public class Employee : Person
    {
    }
}
```

Add a new console application named **Ch07_InheritanceApp**.

Add a reference to the **Ch06_PacktLibrary** assembly.

Modify the `Program.cs` file to import the `Packt.CS6` namespace and add statements to the `Main` method to create an instance of the `Employee` class:

```
using Packt.CS6;
using System;
using static System.Console;
namespace Ch07_InheritanceApp
{
    class Program
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            Employee e1 = new Employee { Name = "John Jones", DateOfBirth =
new DateTime(1990, 7, 28) };
            e1.WriteToConsole();
        }
    }
}
```

Run the application and view the output:

John Jones was born on Saturday, 28 July 1990

Note that the `Employee` class has inherited all the members of `Person`.

Extending classes

Now, we will add some employee-specific members to extend the class.

In the Employee class, add the following code to define two properties:

```
public string EmployeeCode { get; set; }  
public DateTime HireDate { get; set; }
```

Back in the Main method, add the following code:

```
e1.EmployeeCode = "JJ001";  
e1.HireDate = new DateTime(2014, 11, 23);  
WriteLine($"{e1.Name} was hired on {e1.HireDate:dd/MM/yy}");
```

Run the application and view the output:

John Jones was hired on 23/11/14

Hiding members

So far, the `writeToConsole` method is inherited from `Person`, and it only outputs the employee's name and date of birth. We might want to change what this method does for an employee.

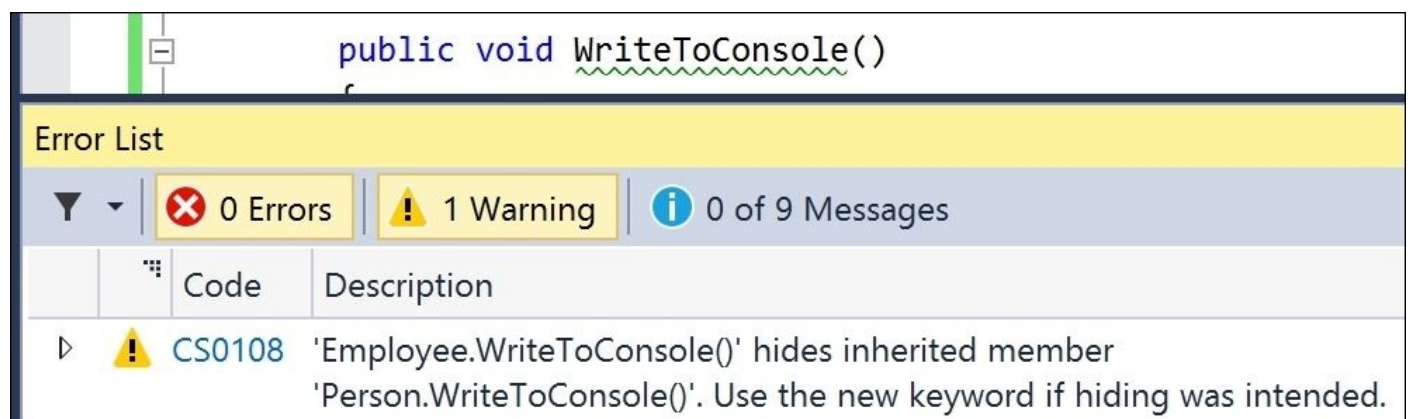
In the `Employee` class, add the following code to redefine the `writeToConsole` method:

```
using System;
using static System.Console;
namespace Packt.CS6
{
    public class Employee : Person
    {
        public string EmployeeCode { get; set; }
        public DateTime HireDate { get; set; }
        public void WriteToConsole()
        {
            WriteLine($"{Name}'s birth date is {DateOfBirth:dd/MM/yy} and
hire date was {HireDate:dd/MM/yy}");
        }
    }
}
```

Run the application and view the output:

```
John Jones's birth date is 28/07/90 and hire date was 01/01/01
John Jones was hired on 23/11/14
```

Note that Visual Studio warns you that your method now hides the method with the same name that you inherited from the `Person` class.



The screenshot shows a code editor with the following code snippet:

```
public void WriteToConsole()
```

Below the code, the Error List window is visible, showing a warning:

Code	Description
CS0108	'Employee.WriteToConsole()' hides inherited member 'Person.WriteToConsole()'. Use the new keyword if hiding was intended.

You can remove this warning by applying the new keyword to the method:

```
public new void WriteToConsole()
```

Overriding members

Rather than hiding a method, it is usually better to **override** it. You can only override members if the base class chooses to allow overriding by applying the `virtual` keyword.

In the `Main` method, add the following statement:

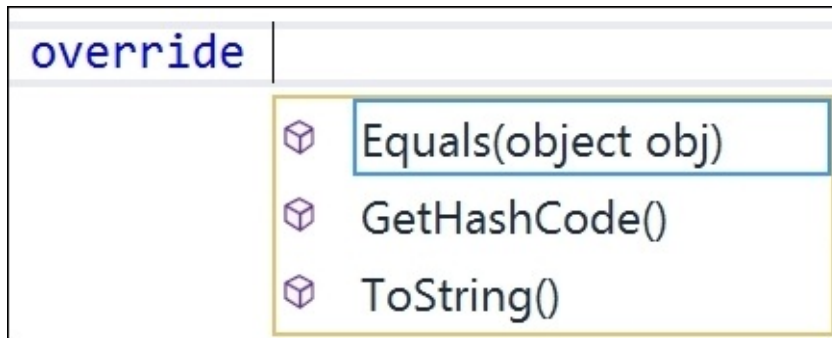
```
WriteLine(e1.ToString());
```

Run the application. The `ToString` method is inherited from `System.Object`. The implementation outputs the namespace and type name, as follows:

Packt.CS6.Employee

Let's override this behavior for the `Person` class.

Open the `Person.cs` file and at the bottom of the `Person.cs` file (but inside the class brackets), type the word `override` and enter a space after the word. You will see that Visual Studio shows a list of methods that have been marked as `virtual` so that they can be overridden.



Use the arrow keys on your keyboard to choose `ToString` and then press *Enter*.

Modify the code to look like this:

```
// overridden methods
public override string ToString()
{
    return $"{Name} is a {base.ToString()}";
}
```

Run the application. Now, when the `ToString` method is called, it outputs the person's name as well as the base class's implementation of `ToString`:

John Jones is a Packt.CS6.Employee

Preventing inheritance and overriding

You can prevent someone from inheriting from your class by applying the sealed keyword to its definition. No one can inherit from Mr. Money Bags:

```
public sealed class MrMoneyBags
{
}
```

You can prevent someone from further overriding a method in your class by applying the sealed keyword to the method. No one can change the way Lady Gaga sings:

```
public class Singer
{
    public virtual void Sing()
    {
    }
}

public class LadyGaga : Singer
{
    public override sealed void Sing()
    {
    }
}
```

Note

You can only seal a method that you have overridden so the sealed keyword is always used in combination with the override keyword.

Polymorphism

You have now seen two ways to change the behavior of an inherited method. We can hide an inherited method using `new` (known as non-polymorphic inheritance) or we can override it if it is virtual (polymorphic inheritance).

Both ways can call the base class using the base keyword, so what is the difference?

It all depends on the type of the variable holding a reference to the object. For example, a variable of the `Person` type can hold a reference to a `Person` class *or any type that derives from* `Person`.

In the `Employee` class, add the following code:

```
public override string ToString()
{
    return $"{Name}'s code is {EmployeeCode}";
}
```

In the `Main` method, write the following code:

```
Employee aliceInEmployee = new Employee { Name = "Alice", EmployeeCode =
"AA123" };
Person aliceInPerson = aliceInEmployee;
aliceInEmployee.WriteToConsole();
aliceInPerson.WriteToConsole();
WriteLine(aliceInEmployee.ToString());
WriteLine(aliceInPerson.ToString());
```

Run the application and view the output:

```
Alice's birth date is 01/01/01 and hire date was 01/01/01
Alice was born on Monday, 1 January 0001
Alice's code is AA123
Alice's code is AA123
```

Note that when a method is hidden with `new`, the compiler is not smart enough to know that the object is an employee, so it calls the `writeToConsole` method in `Person`.

When a method is overridden with `virtual` and `override`, the compiler is smart enough to know that although the variable is declared as a `Person` class, the object itself is an `Employee` and therefore the `Employee` implementation of `ToString` is called.

Variable type	Method defined with	Method executed
Person		WriteToConsole in Person
Employee	new	WriteToConsole in Employee
Person	virtual	ToString in Employee
Employee	override	ToString in Employee

Tip

Polymorphism is literally academic to most programmers. If you **grok** the concept, that's great, but if not, you shouldn't worry about polymorphism.

<http://www.urbandictionary.com/define.php?term=grok>

Casting within inheritance hierarchies

Casting is subtly different from converting between different types.

Implicit casting

In the previous example, you saw how an instance of a derived type can be stored in a variable of its base type (or its base's base type and so on). When we do this, it is called implicit casting.

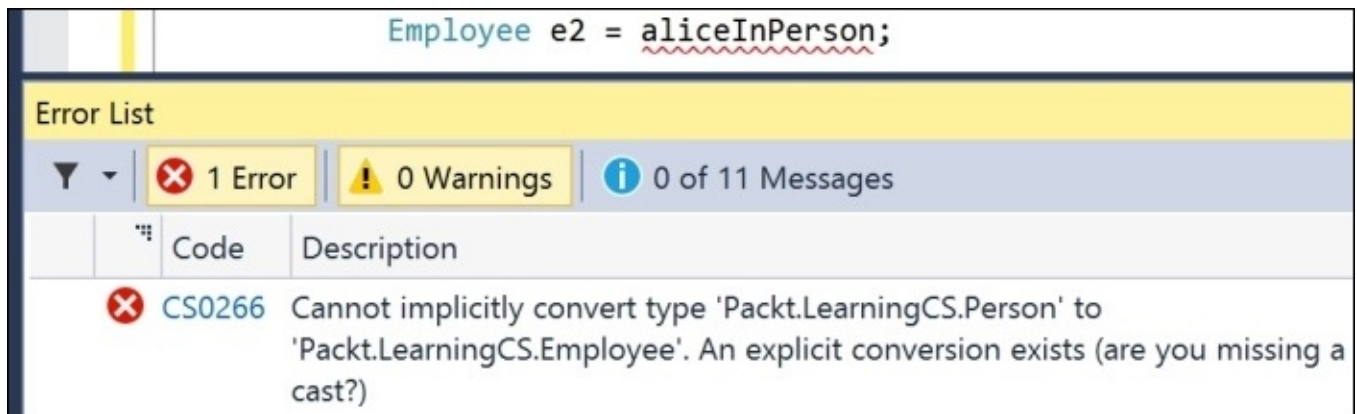
Explicit casting

Going the other way, for example, attempting to store an instance of a base type in a variable of a derived type, is an explicit cast and you must use parentheses to do it.

In the Main method, add the following code:

```
Employee e2 = aliceInPerson;
```

Visual Studio gives a compile error, as shown in the following screenshot:



Change the code as follows:

```
Employee e2 = (Employee)aliceInPerson;
```

Handling casting exceptions

The compiler is now happy *but* because `aliceInPerson` might be a different derived type, such as a `Student` instead of an `Employee`, we need to be careful. This statement might throw an `InvalidCastException`.

We can handle this by writing a try-catch statement, but there is a better way. We can check the current type of the object using the `is` keyword.

Wrap the explicit cast statement in an `if` statement, as follows:

```
if (aliceInPerson is Employee)
{
    WriteLine($"{nameof(aliceInPerson)} IS an Employee");
    Employee e2 = (Employee)aliceInPerson;
    // do something with e2
}
```

Run the application and view the output:

aliceInPerson IS an Employee

Alternatively, you can use the `as` keyword to cast. Instead of throwing an exception, the `as` keyword returns `null` if the type cannot be cast.

```
Employee e3 = aliceInPerson as Employee;
if (e3 != null)
{
    WriteLine($"{nameof(aliceInPerson)} AS an Employee");
    // do something with e3
}
```

Since accessing a `null` variable can throw a `NullReferenceException` error, you should always check for `null` before using the result.

Run the application and view the output:

aliceInPerson AS an Employee

Tip

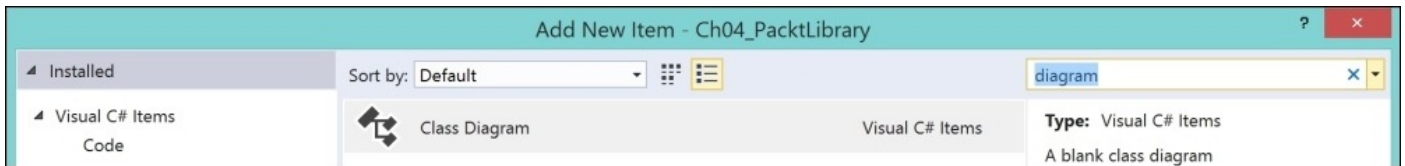
Best Practice

Use the `is` and `as` keywords to avoid throwing exceptions when casting between derived types.

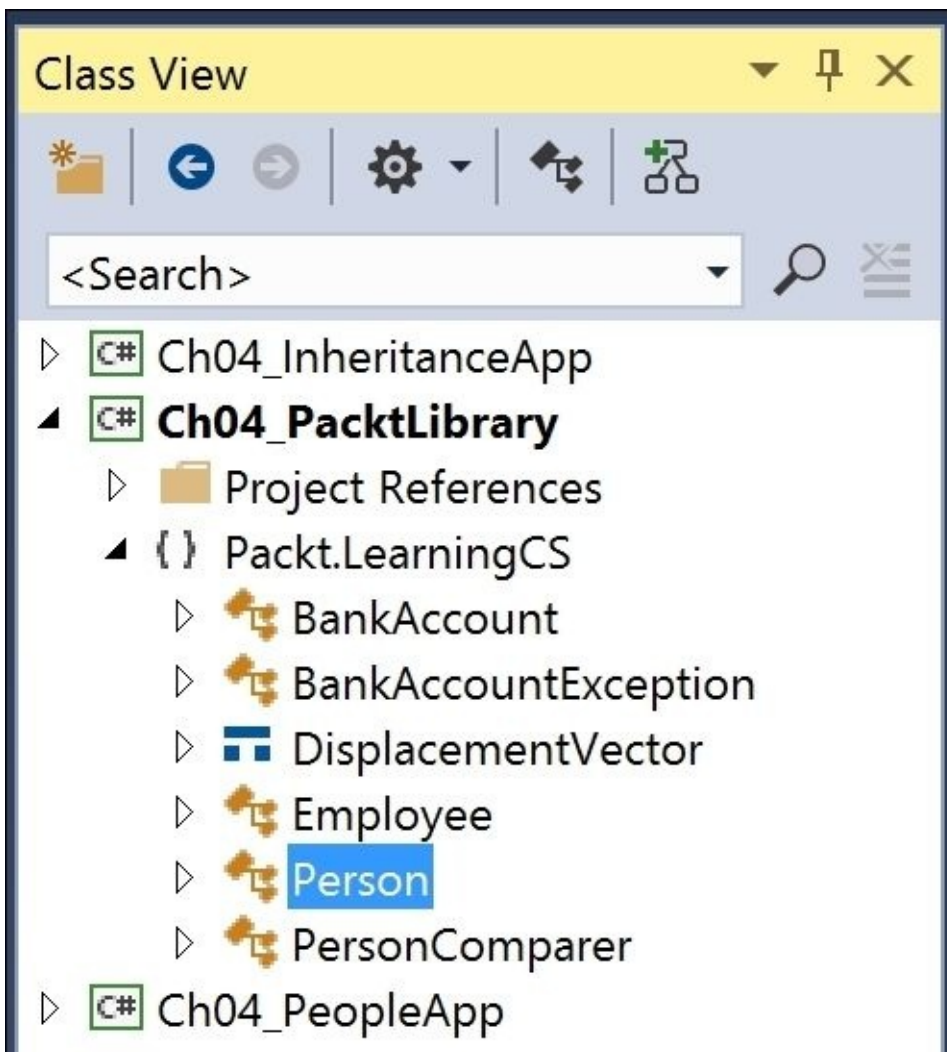
Documenting your types

One of the files that you can add to a Visual Studio project is **Class Diagram**.

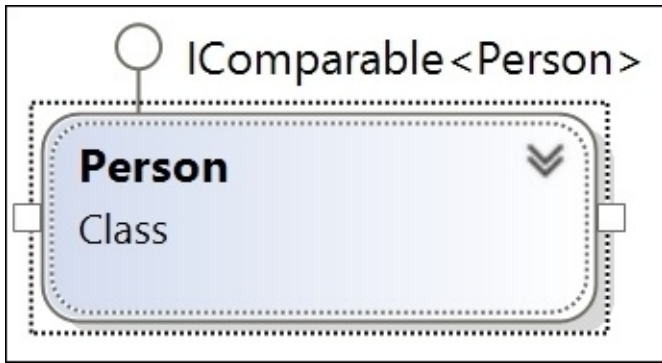
From the **Project** menu, choose **Add New Item** or press *Ctrl + Shift + A*. In the **Search** box, enter **diagram** and change the filename to **PacktLibrary.cd**, as shown in the following screenshot:



In the **View** menu, choose **Class View**. In the **Class View** window, expand **Ch06_PacktLibrary**, expand **Packt.CS6**, and then drag and drop the **Person** file into the middle of the class diagram, as shown in the following screenshot:

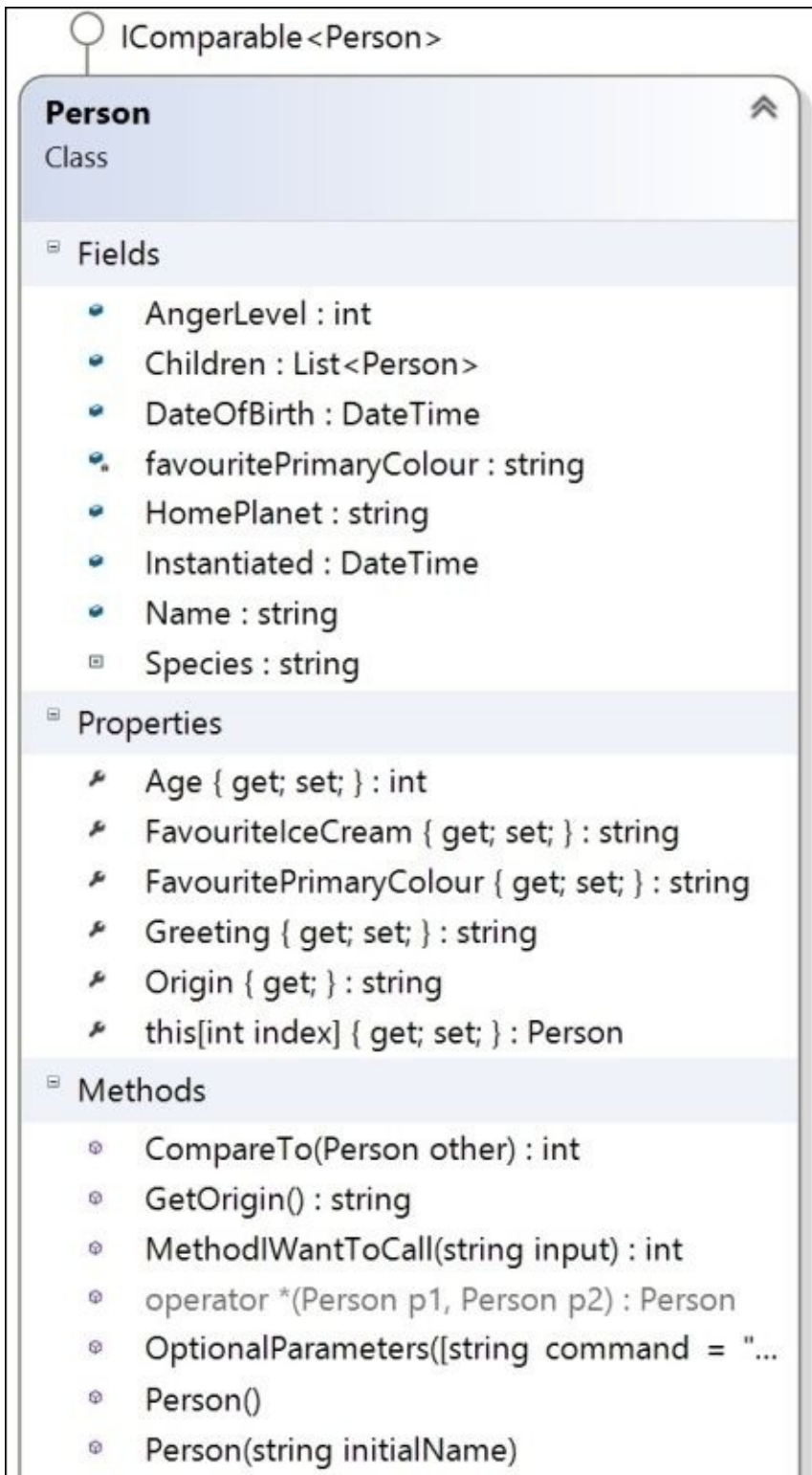


In the following diagram, you will see the **Person** class and the interface that it implements:

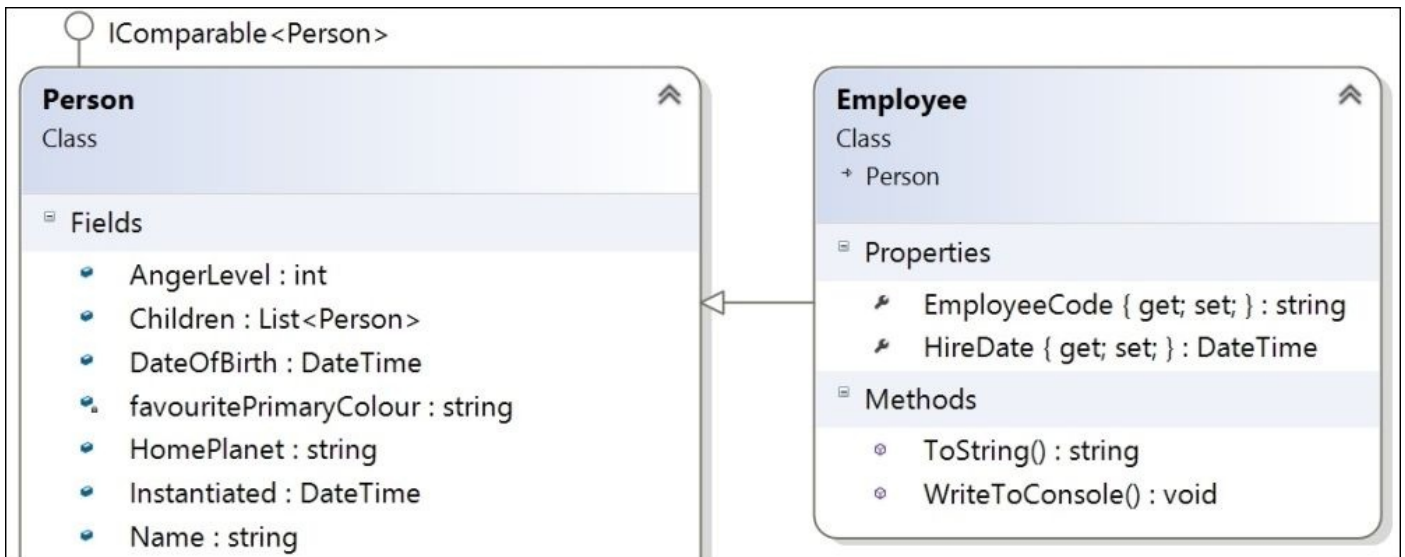


In the preceding diagram, right-click on the background, choose **Change Members Format**, and then **Display Full Signature**.

Click on the downward pointing chevron in the top-right corner of the class to expand its details and stretch the box to make it wide enough for you to see all the details.



Drag and drop the Employee class onto the diagram to show the inheritance hierarchy.



Right-click on the Employee class and choose **Class Details**. This window can be used to modify or add new members to a class.

Class Details - Employee			
	Name	Type	Modifier
Methods			
	ToString	string	public
	WriteToConsole	void	public
	<add method>		
Properties			
	EmployeeCode	string	public
	HireDate	DateTime	public
	<add property>		
Fields			
	<add field>		

Inheriting and extending .NET types

.NET has prebuilt class libraries containing hundreds of thousands of types. Rather than creating your own completely new types, you can often start by inheriting from one of Microsoft's.

Inheriting from the Exception class

In the **Ch06_PacktLibrary** project, add a new class named `BankAccountException`, as shown in the following code:

```
using System;

namespace Packt.CS6
{
    public class BankAccountException : Exception
    {
        public BankAccountException() : base() { }
        public BankAccountException(string message) : base(message) { }
        public BankAccountException(string message, Exception
innerException) : base(message, innerException) { }
    }
}
```

In the `BankAccount` class that you created in the previous chapter, add the following method:

```
public void Withdraw(decimal amount)
{
    if ((Balance - amount) < 0M)
    {
        throw new BankAccountException("Balance cannot be less than
zero!");
    }
    else
    {
        Balance -= amount;
    }
}
```

In **Ch07_InheritanceApp**, in the `Main` method, add the following statements to test what happens when we try to withdraw too much from a bank account:

```
try
{
    var ba = new BankAccount();
    ba.Balance = 100;
    WriteLine($"Balance is {ba.Balance}");
    ba.Withdraw(150);
    WriteLine($"Balance is {ba.Balance}");
}
catch (BankAccountException ex)
{
    WriteLine($"{{ex.GetType().Name}}: {{ex.Message}}");
}
```

Run the application and view the output:

```
Balance is 100
BankAccountException: Balance cannot be less than zero!
```

Tip

Best Practice

When defining your own exceptions, give them the three conventional constructors.

Extending types when you can't inherit

Earlier, we saw how the sealed modifier can be used to prevent inheritance.

Microsoft has applied the sealed keyword to the `System.String` class so that no one can inherit and potentially break the behavior of strings.

Can we still add new methods to strings? Yes, we can if we use a language feature named **extension methods** that was introduced with C# 3.

Using static methods to reuse functionality

Since the first version of C#, we have been able to create static methods to reuse functionality, such as the ability to validate that a string contains an e-mail address.

In the **Ch06_PacktLibrary** project, add a new class named `MyExtensions`, as shown in the following code:

```
using System.Text.RegularExpressions;

namespace Packt.CS6
{
    public class MyExtensions
    {
        public static bool IsValidEmail(string input)
        {
            // use simple regular expression to check
            // that the input string is a valid email
            return Regex.IsMatch(input,
                @"[a-zA-Z0-9\.\-_\+@[a-zA-Z0-9\.\-_\+");
        }
    }
}
```

Add a new Console Application named **Ch07_ExtensionMethods**.

Add a reference to the **Ch06_PacktLibrary** assembly.

Modify the `Program.cs` file to import the `Packt.CS6` namespace and add statements to the `Main` method to validate two examples of e-mail addresses:

```
using static System.Console;
using Packt.CS6;

namespace Ch07_ExtensionMethods
{
    class Program
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            string email1 = "pamela@test.com";
            string email2 = "ian&test.com";

            WriteLine($"{email1} is a valid e-mail address:
{MyExtensions.IsValidEmail(email1)}.");
            WriteLine($"{email2} is a valid e-mail address:
```

```
{MyExtensions.IsValidEmail(email2)}.");  
    }  
}  
}
```

Run the application and view the output:

```
pamela@test.com is a valid e-mail address: True.  
ian@test.com is a valid e-mail address: False.
```

This works, but extension methods can reduce the amount of code we have to type and simplify the usage of this function.

Using extension methods to reuse functionality

In the MyExtensions class, add the static modifier before the class, and add the this modifier before the string type, like this:

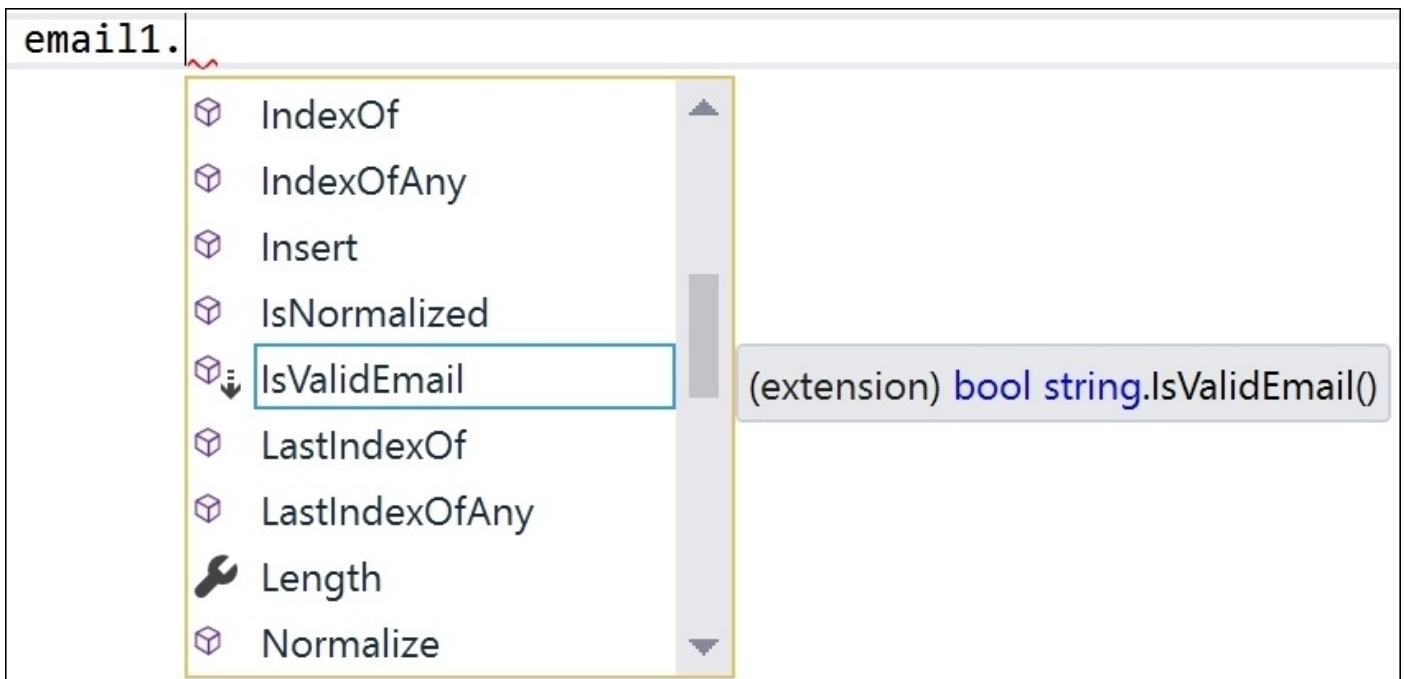
```
public static class MyExtensions  
{  
    public static bool IsValidEmail(this string input)  
    {
```

These two changes inform the compiler that it should treat the method as a method that extends the System.String type.

Back in the Program class, add some new statements to use the method as an extension method for strings:

```
WriteLine($"{email1} is a valid e-mail address: {email1.IsValidEmail()}.");  
WriteLine($"{email2} is a valid e-mail address: {email2.IsValidEmail()}.");
```

Note the subtle change in the syntax. The IsValidEmail method now appears to be an instance member of the string type.



Tip

Extension methods cannot replace or override existing instance methods, so you cannot, for example, redefine the `Insert` method of the `string` class. The extension method will appear as an overload but the instance method will be called in preference to the extension method with the same name and signature.

Although extension methods don't seem to give a big benefit compared to simply using static methods, in [Chapter 9, *Querying and Manipulating Data with LINQ*](#), you will see some extremely useful examples of extension methods.

Practice and explore

Test your knowledge and understanding by answering some questions. Get some hands-on practice and explore with deeper research into this chapter's topics.

Exercise 7.1 – test your knowledge

Answer the following questions:

1. How are a base class and a derived class related?
2. What is the difference between `is` and `as`?
3. Which keyword is used to prevent a class from being derived from or a method from being overridden?
4. Which keyword is used to prevent a class from being instantiated with the `new` keyword?
5. Which keyword is used to allow a member to be overridden?
6. What's the deal with polymorphism?
7. What are the signatures of the constructors that all exceptions should have?
8. What is an extension method and how do you define one?

Exercise 7.2 – practice creating an inheritance hierarchy

Add a new console application named **Ch07_Exercise02**.

Create a class named `Shape` with properties named `Height`, `Width`, and `Area`.

Add three classes that derive from it—`Rectangle`, `Square`, and `Circle`—with any additional members you feel are appropriate and that override and implement the `Area` property correctly.

Exercise 7.3 – explore topics

Use the following links to read more about the topics covered in this chapter:

- **Interfaces (C# Programming Guide):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms173156.aspx>
- **IComparable<T> Interface:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/4d7sx9hd\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/4d7sx9hd(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Classes (C# Programming Guide):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/x9afc042.aspx>
- **Reference Types (C# Reference):** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/490f96s2\(v=vs.140\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/490f96s2(v=vs.140).aspx)
- **Structs (C# Programming Guide):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/saxz13w4.aspx>
- **Value Types (C# Reference):** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/s1ax56ch\(v=vs.140\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/s1ax56ch(v=vs.140).aspx)
- **Inheritance (C# Programming Guide):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms173149.aspx>
- **Polymorphism (C# Programming Guide):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms173152.aspx>
- **Cleaning Up Unmanaged Resources:** <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/498928w2.aspx>
- **Destructors (C# Programming Guide):** <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/66x5fx1b.aspx>
- **IDisposable Interface:** <http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.idisposable.aspx>

Summary

In this chapter, you learned about deriving types using inheritance and object-oriented programming (OOP). You learned about base and derived classes, how to override a type member, how to use polymorphism, and how to cast between types.

In the next chapter, you will learn about working with relational data using the Entity Framework.

Chapter 8. Working with Relational Data Using the Entity Framework

This chapter is about reading and writing to Microsoft SQL Server (and other databases) using classic ADO.NET and the object-relational mapping technology known as the Entity Framework.

This chapter will cover the following topics:

- Relational Database Management Systems
- Using ADO.NET
- Using Entity Framework 6
- Using Entity Framework Core

Relational Database Management Systems

One of the most common places to store data is in a **Relational Database Management System (RDBMS)**. Common ones include Microsoft SQL Server, Oracle, and MySQL.

Connecting to Microsoft SQL Server LocalDb

Microsoft offers various editions of its SQL Server product. We will use a free version that can run standalone and is known as LocalDb. The latest version of LocalDb is installed as part of Visual Studio 2015.

When you write code to connect to a database, you need to know its **server name**. The name depends on the version you choose to use. Here are some examples:

- **Visual Studio 2015 installs SQL Server 2014:** `(localdb)\mssqllocaldb`
- **Visual Studio 2012/2013 installs SQL Server 2012:** `(localdb)\v11.0`
- **If you install SQL Server Express:** `.\sqlexpress`

The Northwind sample database

To learn how to manage a database, it would be useful to have a sample one to practice on that has a medium complexity and a decent amount of sample records. Microsoft offers several sample databases, most of which are too complex for our needs. So, we will use a database that was first created in the early 1990s known as **Northwind**.

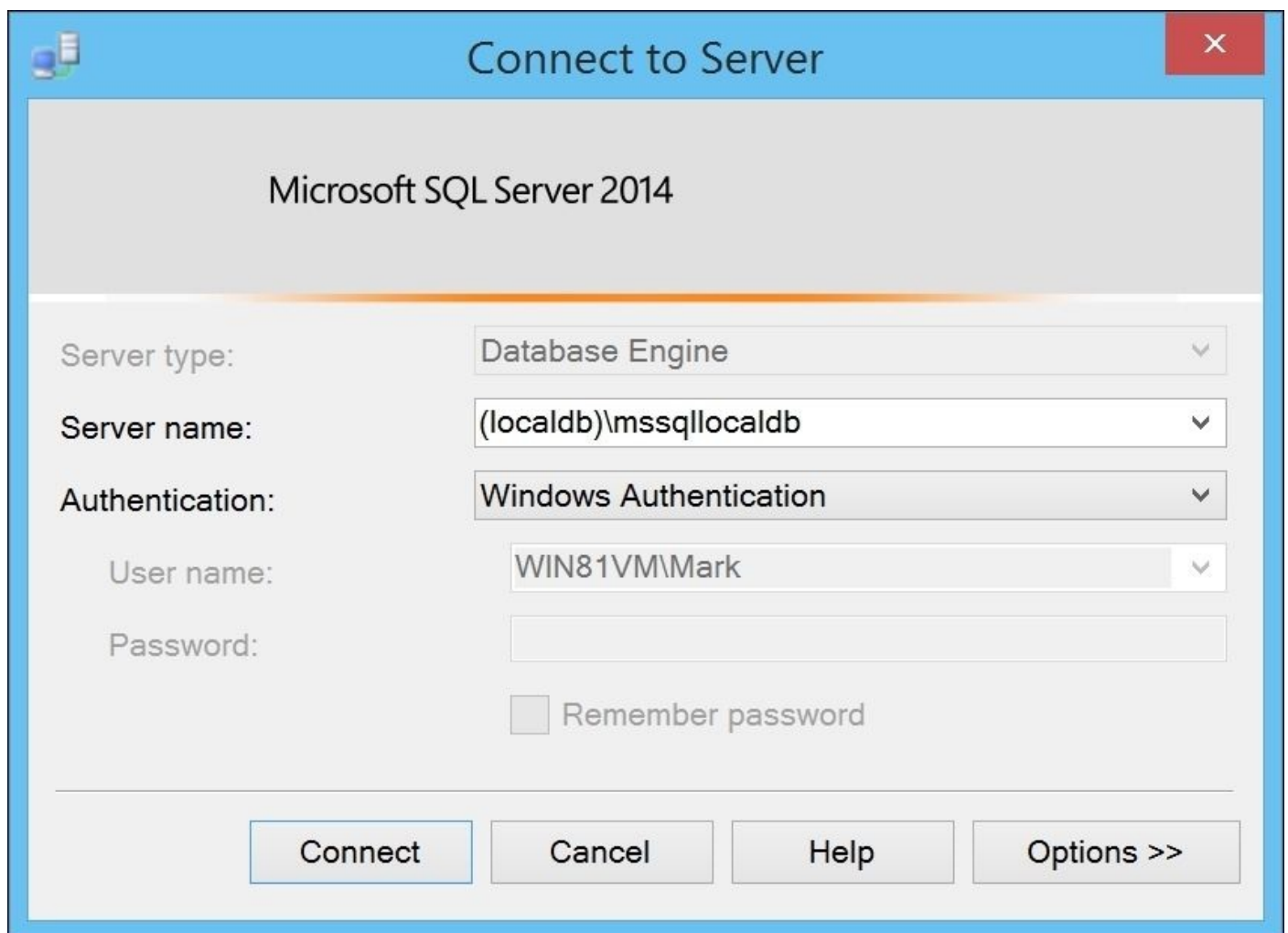
Use the link <https://github.com/markjprice/cs6dotnetcore> to download the Northwind.sql file.

In Microsoft Visual Studio 2015, go to **File | Open | File...** or press *Ctrl + O*.

Browse to the Northwind.sql file and choose **Open**.

In the editor window, right-click and choose **Execute...** or press *Ctrl + Shift + E*.

In the dialog box, enter the server name as (localdb)\mssqllocaldb and click on **Connect**, as shown in the following screenshot:



Note

LocalDb sometimes takes too long to start the first time, and you might see a timeout error. Simply click on **Connect** again, and it should work.

When you see the **Command(s) completed successfully** message, then the Northwind database has been created, and we can connect to it.

In Microsoft Visual Studio 2015, choose **View | Server Explorer...** or press *Ctrl + W, L*.

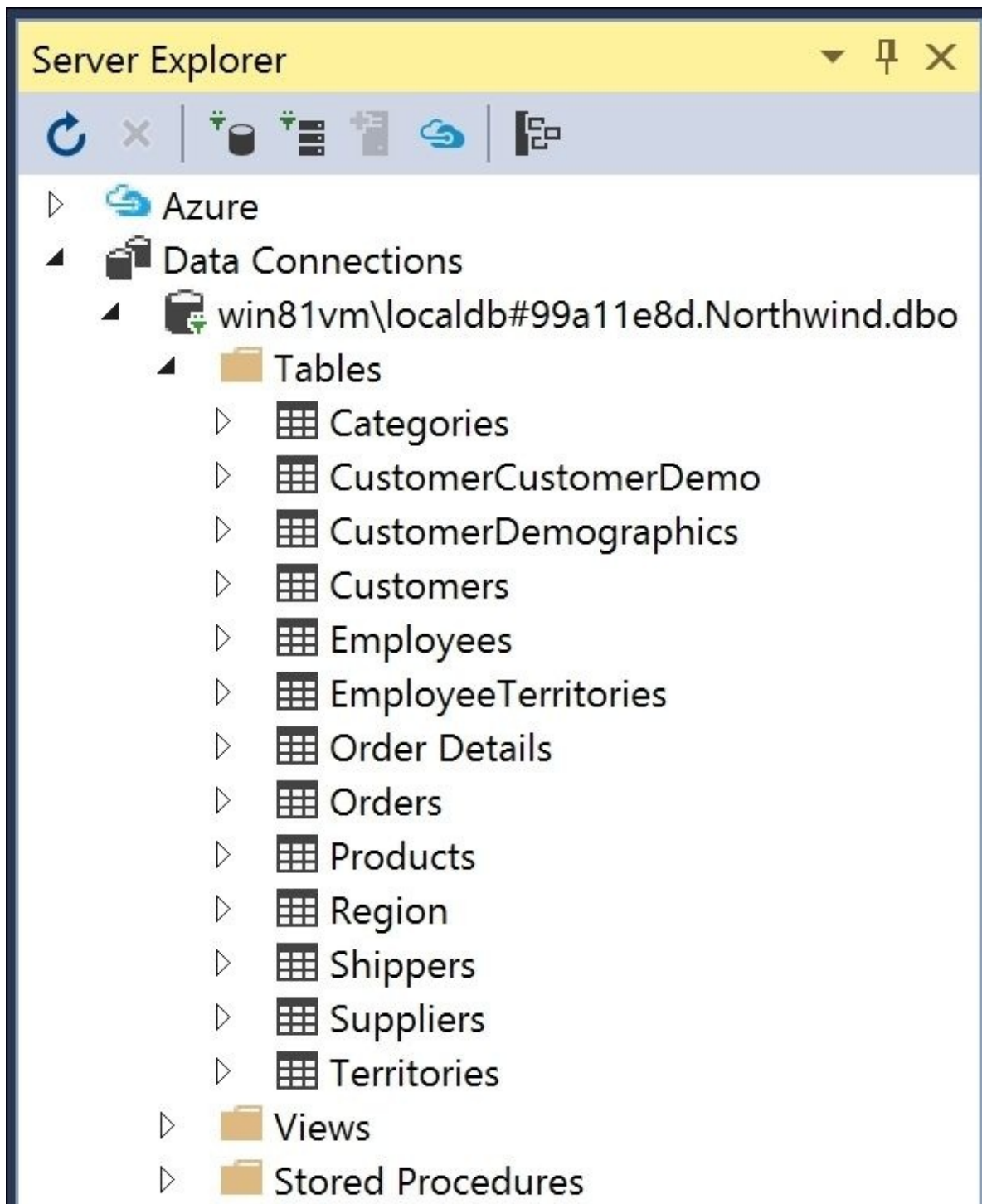
In the **Server Explorer** window, right-click on **Data Connections** and choose **Add Connection**.

In the dialog box, enter the server name as (localdb)\mssqllocaldb, enter the database name as Northwind, and click on **OK**:

The screenshot shows the 'Add Connection' dialog box with the following configuration:

- Data source:** Microsoft SQL Server (SqlClient)
- Server name:** (localdb)\mssqllocaldb
- Log on to the server:** Use Windows Authentication (selected)
- Connect to a database:** Select or enter a database name: Northwind

In **Server Explorer** window, expand the data connection and its tables. You should see a dozen tables, including the **Products** table:



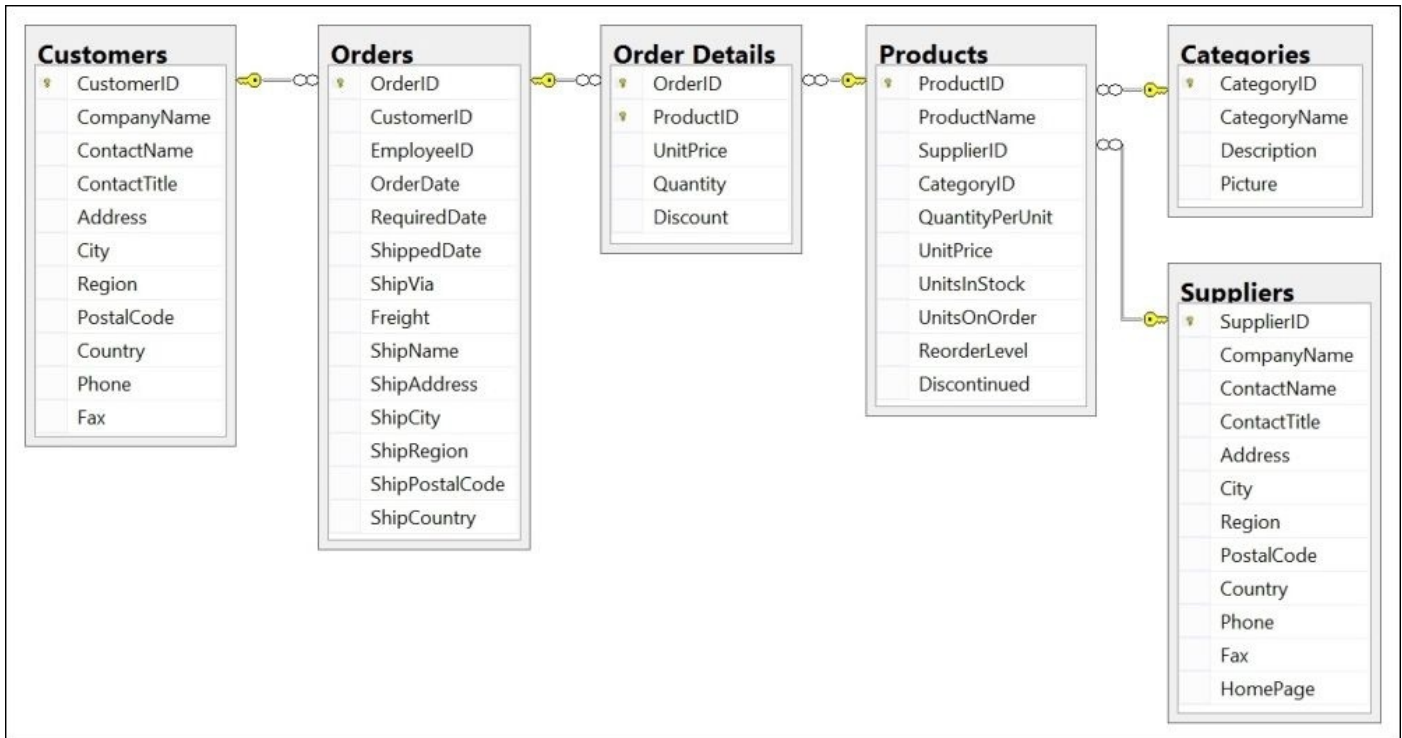
Right-click on the **Products** table and choose **Show Table Data**:

ProductID	ProductName	SupplierID	CategoryID	QuantityPerUnit
1	Chai	1	1	10 boxes x 20 bags
2	Chang	1	1	24 - 12 oz bottles
3	Aniseed Syrup	1	2	12 - 550 ml bottles
4	Chef Anton's Cajun Seasoning	2	2	48 - 6 oz jars
5	Chef Anton's Gumbo Mix	2	2	36 boxes

To see the details of the **Products** table columns and types, right-click on **Products** and choose **Show Table Definition**:

Name	Data Type	Allow Nulls	Default
ProductID	int	<input type="checkbox"/>	
ProductName	nvarchar(40)	<input type="checkbox"/>	
SupplierID	int	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
CategoryID	int	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
QuantityPerUnit	nvarchar(20)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
UnitPrice	money	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	((0))
UnitsInStock	smallint	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	((0))
UnitsOnOrder	smallint	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	((0))
ReorderLevel	smallint	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	((0))
Discontinued	bit	<input type="checkbox"/>	((0))

Here is a diagram of Northwind that you can refer to as we write queries:



Choosing a .NET data provider

Before we dive into the practicalities of managing data in a RDBMS, let's briefly talk about choosing between **.NET data providers**.

To manage data, we need classes that know how to efficiently “talk” to the database. .NET data providers are sets of classes that are optimized for a specific RDBMS.

.NET data providers are **native** if they are optimized for one type of RDBMS. Some .NET data providers act as a **bridge** to older data technologies such as OLEDB. The following table summarizes your choices:

To manage this RDBMS	.NET data provider namespace
Microsoft SQL Server 7.0 or later	System.Data.SqlClient
Oracle 8.1.7 or later	System.Data.OracleClient
Other databases with native providers	Download a provider from the manufacturer's website
Microsoft SQL Server 6.5 and earlier, Microsoft Access MDB files, or any other RDBMS that does not have a native provider	System.Data.OleDb
Only an RDBMS that does not have an OLE DB provider or a native provider	System.Data.Odbc

Using ADO.NET

When Microsoft first created .NET, it had one data access technology, and it was named ADO.NET. Since then, Microsoft has added additional technologies but reused the name ADO.NET, so it can get confusing. The following are your two main choices today:

- **ADO.NET:** This is the original .NET data access technology that has classes that inherit from abstract base classes such as `DbConnection` and `DbDataReader`. I often refer to this as classic ADO.NET.
- **ADO.NET Entity Framework:** This is a layer on top of ADO.NET that adds object-relational mapping (ORM) capabilities. I often refer to this as Entity Framework or just EF.

Tip

Both are supported on .NET Core. Use classic ADO.NET for performance, to maintain existing code that already uses it, and when your tables must always be accessed through stored procedures instead of directly. Use Entity Framework when developer productivity is more important than performance and when you are allowed to execute dynamically generated SQL statements against your tables.

Connecting to the database

To connect to an RDBMS, we need to know some information about it:

- The name of the server computer that is running the RDBMS
- The name of the database
- Security information such as username and password or if we should pass the currently logged-on user's credentials automatically

We specify this information in a connection string. For backward compatibility, there are multiple possible keywords we can use. Here are some examples:

- **Data Source** or **server** or **addr**: This is the name of the server (and optional instance)
- **Initial Catalog** or **database**: This is the name of the database
- **Integrated Security** or **trusted_connection**: This keyword is set to true or SSPI to pass the thread's current user credentials

Start Microsoft Visual Studio 2015. In Visual Studio, press *Ctrl + Shift + N* or go to **File | New | Project....**

In the **New Project** dialog, in the **Installed Templates** list, select **Visual C#**. In the center list, select **Console Application**, type name as **Ch08_ADONET**, change the location to `C:\Code`, type solution name as **Chapter08**, and then click on **OK**.

To connect to the database, we need a class that inherits from `DbConnection`. The one for SQL Server is named `SqlConnection`. To use it, we must import the `System.Data.SqlClient` namespace.

Add the following code to the top of the `Program.cs` file:

```
using static System.Console;
using System.Data.SqlClient;
```

Add the following code inside the `Main` method. Note the `@` symbol at the beginning of the connection string. This disables escape characters because we need to use a back slash (`\`) in the server and instance name:

```
var connection = new SqlConnection(@"Data Source=
(localdb)\mssqllocaldb;Initial Catalog=Northwind;Integrated
Security=true;");
connection.Open();
WriteLine($"The connection is {connection.State}.");
connection.Close();
WriteLine($"The connection is {connection.State}.");
```

Run the application by pressing *Ctrl + F5* and view the output:

```
The connection is Open.
The connection is Closed.
```

If you see an exception similar to the following, then check the connection string for typos. If you enter an invalid database name, you will see this exception:

Unhandled Exception: System.Data.SqlClient.SqlException: Cannot open database "Northwnd" requested by the login. The login failed. Login failed for user 'WIN81VM\Mark'.

If you enter an invalid server or instance name, you will see this exception:

Unhandled Exception: System.Data.SqlClient.SqlException: A network-related or instance-specific error occurred while establishing a connection to SQL Server. The server was not found or was not accessible. Verify that the instance name is correct and that SQL Server is configured to allow remote connections. (provider: SQL Network Interfaces, error: 50 - Local Database Runtime error occurred. The specified LocalDB instance does not exist.)

Note

If you make a mistake in the server or instance name, then the connection will wait for 30 seconds before returning the exception!

Executing commands and reading result sets

Now that we have a successful connection to the database we can issue SQL statements such as SELECT to query records and INSERT to add new records.

Tip

This book does not teach the SQL language. To learn about Microsoft SQL Server and the SQL language, refer to SQL Server 2014 Development Essentials at <https://www.packtpub.com/networking-and-servers/sql-server-2014-development-essentials>.

We will work with the Categories table because it is small and simple. First, we will execute a statement to get all the categories. Then, we will add a new category, list the categories again to see the new category, and finally delete the category we inserted.

Inside the Program class, add a method shown as follows:

```
// a method we will call three times to list the categories
private static void ListCategories(SqlConnection connection)
{
    var getCategories = new SqlCommand("SELECT CategoryID, CategoryName
FROM Categories", connection);

    SqlDataReader reader = getCategories.ExecuteReader();

    // find out the index positions of the columns that you want to read
    int indexOfID = reader.GetOrdinal("CategoryID");
    int indexOfName = reader.GetOrdinal("CategoryName");

    while (reader.Read())
    {
        // use the typed GetXxx methods to efficiently read the column
values
        WriteLine($"{reader.GetInt32(indexOfID)}:
{reader.GetString(indexOfName)}");
    }
    reader.Close();
}
```

Modify the code in the Main method to add statements between the Open and Close method calls as shown in the following code. The code:

- Lists the eight categories in the original table
- Prompts the user to enter a new category name
- Truncates the name entered down to a maximum of 15 characters
- Inserts the new category using a parameter to avoid SQL injection attacks
- Lists the nine categories now in the table
- Deletes the new category
- Lists the eight categories in the original table

```
WriteLine("Original list of categories:");
ListCategories(connection);
```

```

Write("Enter a new category name: ");
string name = ReadLine();
// the category name column only allows up to 15 chars so truncate if
necessary
if (name.Length > 15) name = name.Substring(0, 15);

var insertCategory = new SqlCommand($"INSERT INTO Categories(CategoryName)
VALUES(@NewCategoryName)", connection);
insertCategory.Parameters.AddWithValue("@NewCategoryName", name);
int rowsAffected = insertCategory.ExecuteNonQuery();
WriteLine($"{rowsAffected} row(s) were inserted.");

WriteLine("List of categories after inserting:");
ListCategories(connection);

var deleteCategory = new SqlCommand($"DELETE FROM Categories WHERE
CategoryName = @DeleteCategoryName", connection);
deleteCategory.Parameters.AddWithValue("@DeleteCategoryName", name);
rowsAffected = deleteCategory.ExecuteNonQuery();
WriteLine($"{rowsAffected} row(s) were deleted.");

WriteLine("List of categories after deleting:");
ListCategories(connection);

```

Press *Ctrl + F5*. When prompted, enter a new category name, for example, Tasty Treats:

The connection is Open.

Original list of categories:

- 1: Beverages**
- 2: Condiments**
- 3: Confections**
- 4: Dairy Products**
- 5: Grains/Cereals**
- 6: Meat/Poultry**
- 7: Produce**
- 8: Seafood**

Enter a new category name: Tasty Treats

1 row(s) were inserted.

List of categories after inserting:

- 1: Beverages**
- 2: Condiments**
- 3: Confections**
- 4: Dairy Products**
- 5: Grains/Cereals**
- 6: Meat/Poultry**
- 7: Produce**
- 8: Seafood**
- 9: Tasty Treats**

1 row(s) were deleted.

List of categories after deleting:

- 1: Beverages**
- 2: Condiments**
- 3: Confections**
- 4: Dairy Products**
- 5: Grains/Cereals**

6: Meat/Poultry

7: Produce

8: Seafood

The connection is Closed.

Loading a connection string from configuration

Instead of hard coding the connection string in your source code, it is better to load it from a file so that it can be easily changed in the future without recompiling.

In **Solution Explorer** window, inside the **Ch08_ADONET** project, right-click on **References** and choose **Add Reference...** In the dialog box, select **System.Configuration** and click on **OK**.

At the top of the file, import the `System.Configuration` namespace, as shown here:

```
using System.Configuration;
```

Modify the existing code that instantiates `SqlConnection` to load the connection string at runtime from the configuration file:

```
var connection = new  
SqlConnection(ConfigurationManager.ConnectionStrings["Northwind"].Connectio  
nString);
```

Double-click on the `App.config` file to open it, and add the following element for `connectionStrings` inside the existing configuration element:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>  
<configuration>  
  <connectionStrings>  
    <add name="Northwind"  
      providerName="System.Data.SqlClient"  
      connectionString="Data Source=(localdb)\mssqllocaldb;Initial  
Catalog=Northwind;Integrated Security=true;" />  
  </connectionStrings>
```

Press `Ctrl + F5` and check whether the application still functions as it did earlier.

Note

Every time you run this console application, you will notice that the ID for the new category increments by one. This is because Microsoft SQL Server uses an `IDENTITY` column, which remembers if a previous category has already been allocated the previous ID and won't reuse it to maintain data integrity.

Tip

In [Chapter 12](#), *Improving Performance and Scalability with Multitasking*, you will see how you can improve the preceding code using asynchronous operations to prevent the current thread from blocking.

Using Entity Framework 6

The **Entity Framework (EF)** was first released as part of **.NET Framework 3.5 with Service Pack 1** back in late 2008. Since then it has evolved, as Microsoft has observed how programmers use an **object-relational mapping (ORM)** tool in the real world.

The version included with Visual Studio 2015 is **Entity Framework 6.1.3 (EF6)**. It is mature, stable, and supports the “old” EDMX design-time way of defining complex inheritance models, and a few other advanced features. However, EF6 is only supported by the .NET Framework, not by the .NET Core.

The next version, **Entity Framework Core 1.0 (EF Core)**, has been renamed and had its version reset to 1.0 to emphasize that it is a reset of functionality. Although EF Core has a similar name, you should be aware that it is different in many ways to EF6. Take a look at its pros and cons:

- Pros
 - EF Core is available for the .NET Core as well as the .NET Framework, which means it can be used cross-platform, on Linux and Max OS X as well as Windows
 - EF Core supports modern cloud-based, non-relational, schema-less data stores such as Microsoft Azure Table Storage and Redis
- Cons
 - EF Core does not support the EDMX design-time XML file format
 - EF Core does not (yet) support complex inheritance models and other advanced features of EF6

Tip

Use EF6 for Windows platform applications until EF Core becomes more stable and implements more features. Use EF Core for cross-platform development.

Building an Entity Framework 6 model

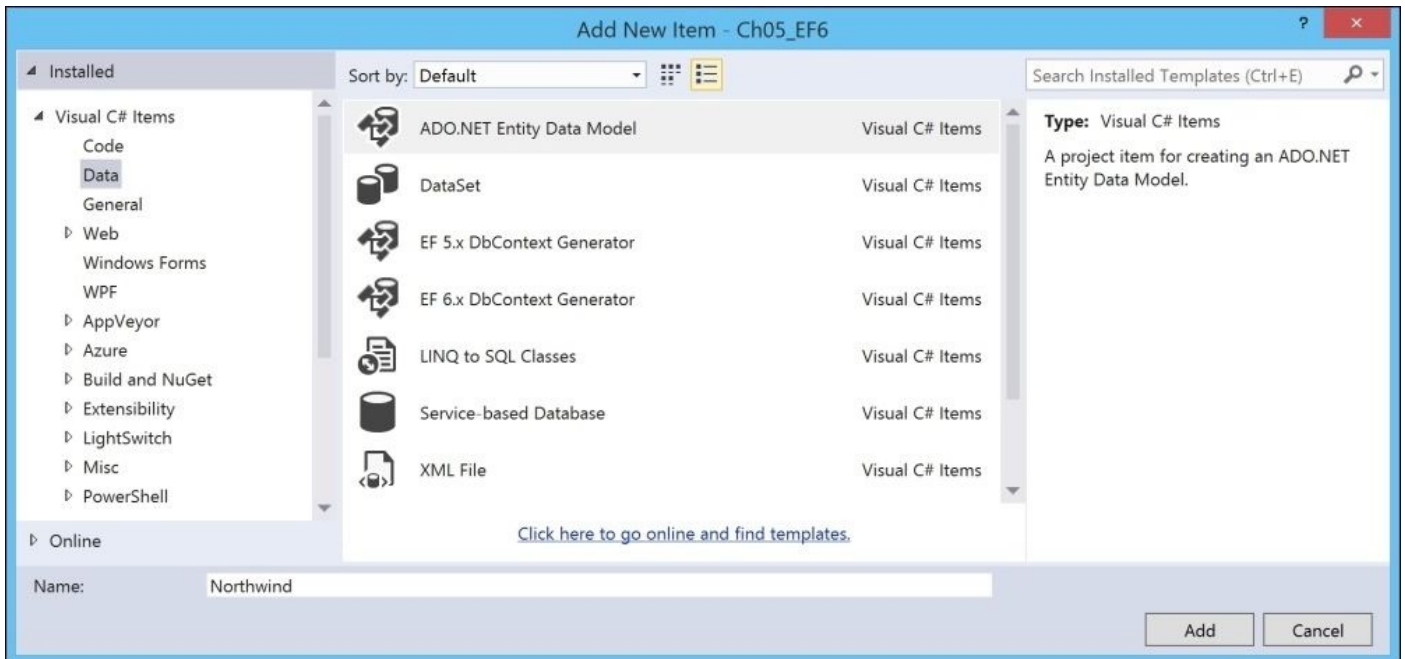
Using EF6 is easy because tooling support is built into Visual Studio 2015.

We will create a console application that lists the details of every product that costs more than an amount entered by the user.

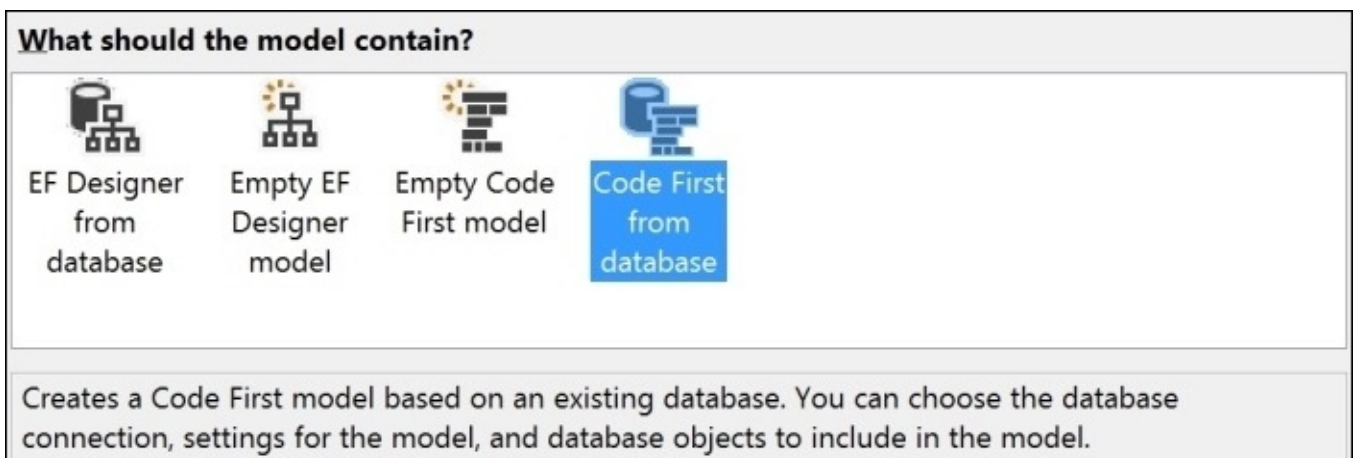
Add a new console application project named **Ch08_EF6**.

Set the solution's startup project to be the current selection.

On the **Project** menu, choose **Add New Item...**, and in the dialog box, choose **ADO.NET Entity Data Model** and name it **Northwind**:



In the first step of the wizard, choose **Code First from database** and then click on **Next**:

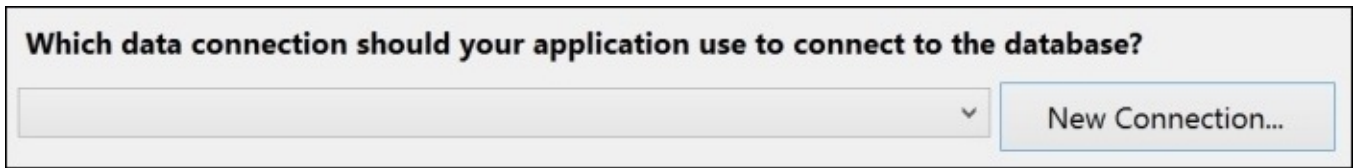


Tip

Do not choose either of the first two options because those use the EDMX design-time file

that is not supported in EF Core. Even when using EF6, I recommend that you get used to the Code First way of defining the Entity data model.

In the second step of the wizard, click on **New Connection**:



Which data connection should your application use to connect to the database?

▼ New Connection...

In the **Connection Properties** dialog, enter server name as **(localdb)\mssqllocaldb** and choose database name as **Northwind**. Then, click on **OK**:

Connection Properties

Enter information to connect to the selected data source or click "Change" to choose a different data source and/or provider.

Data source:
Microsoft SQL Server (SqlClient) Change...

Server name:
(localdb)\mssqllocaldb Refresh

Log on to the server

Use Windows Authentication
 Use SQL Server Authentication

User name:
Password:
 Save my password

Connect to a database

Select or enter a database name:
Northwind

Attach a database file:
 Browse...
Logical name:

Advanced...

Test Connection OK Cancel

Tip

If you have connection problems, then check which version of SQL Server LocalDb you have installed, and use the appropriate server and instance name.

Click on **Next** to go to the step of the wizard for picking database objects, check the box to choose all **Tables**, and then click on **Finish**:

Which database objects do you want to include in your model?



In **Solution Explorer**, double-click on the `App.config` file and notice that a connection string named `Northwind` has been defined:

```
<connectionStrings>
  <add name="Northwind" connectionString="data source=
(localdb)\mssqllocaldb;initial catalog=Northwind;integrated
security=True;MultipleActiveResultSets=True;App=EntityFramework"
providerName="System.Data.SqlClient" />
</connectionStrings>
```

In **Solution Explorer**, double-click on the `Northwind.cs` file and notice that it is a class that inherits from `DbContext`. This class represents the context of all interaction with the database and will track any changes we make to the local data so that those changes can be saved to the actual database:

```
public partial class Northwind : DbContext
```

Notice that the `Northwind` class has properties that represent the tables within the database. The `DbSet` type has built-in methods to add, delete, and find records:

```
public virtual DbSet<Category> Categories { get; set; }
```

Notice the overridden method named `OnModelCreating` that adds extra information to the model that cannot be inferred using conventions. For example, the following statement tells the model that the `CustomerID` column is of fixed length:

```
modelBuilder.Entity<Customer>()
    .Property(e => e.CustomerID)
    .IsFixedLength();
```

In **Solution Explorer**, double-click on the `Customer.cs` file and notice that it is a normal class. We call this a **POCO (Plain Old CLR Object)** class, because it does not need to inherit from any special type. It represents an entity (record or row) in a table in the database:

```
public partial class Customer
```

Each class has properties that represent the columns in the `Customer` table:

```
[StringLength(5)]
public string CustomerID { get; set; }
```


Entity Framework Code First models

The Entity Framework uses a combination of **conventions**, **annotation attributes**, and **Fluent API** statements to build a model at runtime so that any actions performed using the classes can be automatically translated into actions performed on the actual database.

EF Code First conventions

The code generated uses the following conventions:

- If a connection string exists with the same name as the class derived from `DbContext`, then it is loaded and used to connect to the database automatically.
- The name of a table is assumed to match the name of a `DbSet<T>` property in the `DbContext` class, for example, `Customers`.
- The names of the columns are assumed to match the names of properties in the class, for example, `CustomerID`.
- The `string` .NET type is assumed to be an `nvarchar` type in the database.
- The `int` .NET type is assumed to be an `int` type in the database.
- A property that is named `ID` or the name of the class has `ID` as the suffix, it is assumed to be a primary key. If this property is any integer type or the `Guid` type, then it is also assumed to be an `IDENTITY` (automatically assigned value when inserting).

There are other conventions, and you can even define your own, but that is beyond the scope of this book.

EF annotation attributes

Conventions often aren't enough to completely map the classes to the database objects. A simple way of adding more metadata to your model is to apply annotation attributes.

For example, in the database, the maximum length of the company name of a customer is 40, and the value cannot be null (empty). In the class, the wizard applies attributes to specify this:

```
[Required]
[StringLength(40)]
public string CompanyName { get; set; }
```

When there isn't an obvious map between .NET types and database types, an attribute can be used. For example, in the database, the column type of `UnitPrice` for the `Products` table is `money`. .NET does not have a `money` type, so it should use `decimal` instead:

```
[Column(TypeName = "money")]
public decimal? UnitPrice { get; set; }
```

In the `Category` table, `Description` can be longer than the 8,000 characters that can be stored in an `nvarchar` variable, so it needs to map to `ntext` instead:

```
[Column(TypeName = "ntext")]
public string Description { get; set; }
```

There are other attributes, but they are beyond the scope of this book.

EF Fluent API

The last way that the model can be defined is using the **Fluent API**. It can be used instead of attributes or in addition to them. For example, look at the following two attributes in the Customer class:

```
[Required]
[StringLength(40)]
public string CompanyName { get; set; }
```

They could be deleted and replaced with this Fluent API statement in the Northwind class' OnModelCreating method:

```
modelBuilder.Entity<Customer>()
    .Property(customer => customer.CompanyName)
    .IsRequired()
    .HasMaxLength(40);
```

Querying an Entity Data Model

In the Main method, add the following statements to:

- Prompt the user for a price
- Create an instance of the Northwind class that will manage the database
- Write a simple query using LINQ
- Loop through the results

```
WriteLine("List of products that cost more than a given price with most  
expensive first.");  
string input;  
decimal price;  
do  
{  
    Write("Enter a product price: ");  
    input = ReadLine();  
} while (!decimal.TryParse(input, out price));  
  
var db = new Northwind();  
  
IQueryable<Product> query = db.Products  
    .Where(product => product.UnitPrice > price)  
    .OrderByDescending(product => product.UnitPrice);  
  
foreach (Product item in query)  
{  
    WriteLine($"{item.ProductID}: {item.ProductName} costs  
{item.UnitPrice:$#,##0.00}");  
}
```

Tip

You will learn much more about LINQ in [Chapter 9, Querying and Manipulating Data with LINQ](#).

Press *Ctrl + F5*. Enter 50 when prompted to enter a product price:

List of products that cost more than a given price with most expensive first.

Enter a product price: 50

38: Côte de Blaye costs \$263.50

29: Thüringer Rostbratwurst costs \$123.79

9: Mishi Kobe Niku costs \$97.00

20: Sir Rodney's Marmalade costs \$81.00

18: Carnarvon Tigers costs \$62.50

59: Raclette Courdavault costs \$55.00

51: Manjimup Dried Apples costs \$53.00

Logging SQL statements

There are two ways to find out how the LINQ query is being translated into the underlying database's query language. The first is to convert the query into a string.

Add the following code before the for statement that loops through the results:

```
WriteLine(query.ToString());
```

Rerun the application with *Ctrl + F5* and enter 50 again. You will see the Transact-SQL statement that was dynamically generated at runtime and then executed in the database to fetch the data we asked for:

List of products that cost more than a given price with most expensive first.

Enter a product price: 50

```
SELECT
    [Project1].[ProductID] AS [ProductID],
    [Project1].[ProductName] AS [ProductName],
    [Project1].[SupplierID] AS [SupplierID],
    [Project1].[CategoryID] AS [CategoryID],
    [Project1].[QuantityPerUnit] AS [QuantityPerUnit],
    [Project1].[UnitPrice] AS [UnitPrice],
    [Project1].[UnitsInStock] AS [UnitsInStock],
    [Project1].[UnitsOnOrder] AS [UnitsOnOrder],
    [Project1].[ReorderLevel] AS [ReorderLevel],
    [Project1].[Discontinued] AS [Discontinued]
FROM ( SELECT
    [Extent1].[ProductID] AS [ProductID],
    [Extent1].[ProductName] AS [ProductName],
    [Extent1].[SupplierID] AS [SupplierID],
    [Extent1].[CategoryID] AS [CategoryID],
    [Extent1].[QuantityPerUnit] AS [QuantityPerUnit],
    [Extent1].[UnitPrice] AS [UnitPrice],
    [Extent1].[UnitsInStock] AS [UnitsInStock],
    [Extent1].[UnitsOnOrder] AS [UnitsOnOrder],
    [Extent1].[ReorderLevel] AS [ReorderLevel],
    [Extent1].[Discontinued] AS [Discontinued]
FROM [dbo].[Products] AS [Extent1]
WHERE [Extent1].[UnitPrice] > @p__linq__0
) AS [Project1]
ORDER BY [Project1].[UnitPrice] DESC
38: Côte de Blaye costs $263.50
29: Thüringer Rostbratwurst costs $123.79
9: Mishi Kobe Niku costs $97.00
20: Sir Rodney's Marmalade costs $81.00
18: Carnarvon Tigers costs $62.50
59: Raclette Courdavault costs $55.00
51: Manjimup Dried Apples costs $53.00
```

A better way is to use the database logging feature.

Comment out the previous statement to output the query as a string. Then, add the following code after creating the db variable:

```
var db = new Northwind();
db.Database.Log = new Action<string>(message => { WriteLine(message); });
```

Rerun the application and enter 50 again.

In the following output, you will see all the activity happening between our application and the database, including every time a connection is opened and closed, and useful timings for performance testing.

Note

Ignore the statements that use INFORMATION_SCHEMA.TABLES and [dbo].[__MigrationHistory]. These are internal checks made by EF.

List of products that cost more than a given price with most expensive first.

Enter a product price: 50

Opened connection at 30/08/2015 13:59:40 +01:00

SELECT

```
[Project1].[ProductID] AS [ProductID],
[Project1].[ProductName] AS [ProductName],
[Project1].[SupplierID] AS [SupplierID],
[Project1].[CategoryID] AS [CategoryID],
[Project1].[QuantityPerUnit] AS [QuantityPerUnit],
[Project1].[UnitPrice] AS [UnitPrice],
[Project1].[UnitsInStock] AS [UnitsInStock],
[Project1].[UnitsOnOrder] AS [UnitsOnOrder],
[Project1].[ReorderLevel] AS [ReorderLevel],
[Project1].[Discontinued] AS [Discontinued]
```

FROM (SELECT

```
[Extent1].[ProductID] AS [ProductID],
[Extent1].[ProductName] AS [ProductName],
[Extent1].[SupplierID] AS [SupplierID],
[Extent1].[CategoryID] AS [CategoryID],
[Extent1].[QuantityPerUnit] AS [QuantityPerUnit],
[Extent1].[UnitPrice] AS [UnitPrice],
[Extent1].[UnitsInStock] AS [UnitsInStock],
[Extent1].[UnitsOnOrder] AS [UnitsOnOrder],
[Extent1].[ReorderLevel] AS [ReorderLevel],
[Extent1].[Discontinued] AS [Discontinued]
```

FROM [dbo].[Products] AS [Extent1]

WHERE [Extent1].[UnitPrice] > @p__linq__0

) AS [Project1]

ORDER BY [Project1].[UnitPrice] DESC

-- p__linq__0: '50' (Type = Decimal, IsNullable = false, Precision = 2)

-- Executing at 30/08/2015 13:59:40 +01:00

-- Completed in 7 ms with result: SqlDataReader

38: Côte de Blaye costs \$263.50

29: Thüringer Rostbratwurst costs \$123.79

9: Mishi Kobe Niku costs \$97.00

20: Sir Rodney's Marmalade costs \$81.00

18: Carnarvon Tigers costs \$62.50

59: Raclette Courdavault costs \$55.00

51: Manjimup Dried Apples costs \$53.00

Closed connection at 30/08/2015 13:59:40 +01:00

Tip

Notice that internally, EF6 uses classic ADO.NET types such as `SqlConnection` and `SqlDataReader`. For this reason, EF will always be slower than using classic ADO.NET. If performance is your goal, then use classic ADO.NET in preference to EF.

Manipulating data with Entity Data Models

It is easy to insert, update, and delete entities using EF.

Inserting entities

After the foreach statement, add the following code to insert a product and relist all products:

```
var newProduct = new Product
{
    ProductName = "Bob's Burger",
    UnitPrice = 500M
};
// mark product as added in change tracking
db.Products.Add(newProduct);
// save tracked changes to database
db.SaveChanges();
foreach (var item in query)
{
    WriteLine($"{item.ProductID}: {item.ProductName} costs
{item.UnitPrice:$#,##0.00}");
}
```

Rerun the application and enter 50. You will see that the product has been inserted:

78: Bob's Burger costs \$500.00

The following statement is logged, showing how the row was inserted within a transaction:

```
Opened connection at 30/08/2015 14:04:22 +01:00
Started transaction at 30/08/2015 14:04:22 +01:00
INSERT [dbo].[Products]([ProductName], [SupplierID], [CategoryID],
[QuantityPerUnit], [UnitPrice], [UnitsInStock], [UnitsOnOrder],
[ReorderLevel], [Discontinued])
VALUES (@0, NULL, NULL, NULL, @1, NULL, NULL, NULL, @2)
SELECT [ProductID]
FROM [dbo].[Products]
WHERE @@ROWCOUNT > 0 AND [ProductID] = scope_identity()
-- @0: 'Bob's Burger' (Type = String, Size = 40)
-- @1: '500' (Type = Decimal, Precision = 19, Scale = 4)
-- @2: 'False' (Type = Boolean)
-- Executing at 30/08/2015 14:04:22 +01:00
-- Completed in 12 ms with result: SqlDataReader
Committed transaction at 30/08/2015 14:04:22 +01:00
Closed connection at 30/08/2015 14:04:22 +01:00
```

Updating entities

Add the following code to increase the price by \$20 of the product with a primary key value for its ProductID of 78 and then relist the products:

```
Product updateProduct = db.Products.Find(78);
updateProduct.UnitPrice += 20M;
db.SaveChanges();
```

```
foreach (var item in query)
{
    WriteLine($"{item.ProductID}: {item.ProductName} costs
{item.UnitPrice:$#,##0.00}");
}
```

Rerun the application and notice that the existing entity for Bob's Burger has increased in price by \$20:

78: Bob's Burger costs \$520.00

Did you see the update statement that was dynamically generated and executed against the database and logged to the console? It looked something like this:

```
Opened connection at 30/08/2015 14:10:07 +01:00
Started transaction at 30/08/2015 14:10:07 +01:00
UPDATE [dbo].[Products]
SET [UnitPrice] = @0
WHERE ([ProductID] = @1)
-- @0: '520.0000' (Type = Decimal, Precision = 19, Scale = 4)
-- @1: '78' (Type = Int32)
-- Executing at 30/08/2015 14:10:07 +01:00
-- Completed in 2 ms with result: 1
Committed transaction at 30/08/2015 14:10:07 +01:00
Closed connection at 30/08/2015 14:10:07 +01:00
```

Notice the following aspects:

- When you call the SaveChanges method, EF implicitly creates a transaction so that if something goes wrong, it would automatically rollback all the changes, and if everything works *ok*, it would commit the transaction
- EF is repeatedly opening and closing the connection

We can improve performance by manually controlling when we open and close the connection.

Add the following code immediately after creating the db object:

```
var db = new Northwind();
// if you manually open a connection it will stop
// automatically opening and closing repeatedly
db.Database.Connection.Open();
```

Add the following code at the end of the Main method:

```
db.Database.Connection.Close();
```

If you rerun the application, you will see that the connection is only opened and closed once.

Transactions

Every time you call the SaveChanges method, an **implicit transaction** is started. If every operation succeeds, then the transaction is committed.

Transactions maintain the integrity of your database by applying locks to prevent reads

and writes while a sequence of operations is occurring.

Transactions are ACID, which is explained here:

- **A** is for atomic. Either all the operations in the transaction commit or none of them do.
- **C** is for consistent. The state of the database before and after a transaction is consistent. This is dependent on your code logic.
- **I** is for isolated. During a transaction, changes are hidden from other processes. There are multiple isolation levels that you can pick from (see the following table). The stronger the level, the better the integrity of the data. However, more locks must be applied which will negatively affect other processes. Snapshot is a special case, because it creates multiple copies of rows to avoid locks, but this will increase the size of your database while transactions occur.
- **D** is for durable. If a failure occurs during a transaction, it can be recovered. The opposite of durable is volatile.

Isolation level	Lock(s)	Integrity problems allowed
ReadUncommitted	None	Dirty reads, non-repeatable reads, and phantom data
ReadCommitted	When editing, it applies read lock(s) to block other users from reading the record(s) until the transaction ends	Non-repeatable reads and phantom data
RepeatableRead	When reading, it applies edit lock(s) to block other users from editing the record(s) until the transaction ends	Phantom data
Serializable	Applies key-range locks to prevent any action that would affect the results, including inserts and deletes	None
Snapshot	None	None

Defining an explicit transaction

You can define an explicit transaction using the `TransactionScope` type.

Add a reference to the **System.Transactions** assembly and import the `System.Transactions` namespace.

Before the instantiation of the `db` variable, add the following statement to instantiate an explicit transaction scope. Also, add options to weaken the isolation level to allow dirty reads and other integrity issues, reduce locks to improve performance, and to automatically rollback if the transaction is not disposed within 10 seconds, to prevent deadlocks:

```
var options = new TransactionOptions
{
    IsolationLevel = IsolationLevel.ReadUncommitted,
    Timeout = TimeSpan.FromSeconds(10)
};
using (var scope = new TransactionScope(TransactionScopeOption.Required,
```

```
options))
```

```
{  
    var db = new Northwind();
```

You will also need to enter a close brace, }, after you close the database connection. When the close brace executes, the transaction scope will dispose and check whether everything worked. If it did, then all participants in the transaction would be asked to commit. If an exception occurs, then all participants would be asked to rollback:

```
    db.Database.Connection.Close();  
}
```

Tip

Always specify a transaction timeout so that deadlocks cannot occur.

Loading patterns with EF

There are three **loading patterns** that can be used with EF: **lazy loading**, **eager loading**, and **explicit loading**.

Lazy loading entities

Add a new console application project named **Ch08_LoadingPatterns**.

Add an **ADO.NET Entity Data Model** for the Northwind database, as we did earlier.

Back in Program.cs, add the following code to the top of the file:

```
using System;
using static System.Console;
```

Add the following code to the Main method:

```
var db = new Northwind();
db.Database.Log = new Action<string>(message => { WriteLine(message); });
var query = db.Categories;
foreach (var item in query)
{
    WriteLine(item.CategoryName);
}
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* to run the application and notice that Transact-SQL queried only the Categories table:

```
SELECT
    [Extent1].[CategoryID] AS [CategoryID],
    [Extent1].[CategoryName] AS [CategoryName],
    [Extent1].[Description] AS [Description],
    [Extent1].[Picture] AS [Picture]
FROM [dbo].[Categories] AS [Extent1]
-- Executing at 23/08/2015 12:17:02 +01:00
-- Completed in 14 ms with result: SqlDataReader
Beverages
Condiments
Confections
Dairy Products
Grains/Cereals
Meat/Poultry
Produce
Seafood
```

Each item in foreach is an instance of the Category class, which has a property named Products, that is, the list of products in that category. Since the original query only selected from the Categories table, this property is empty for each category.

Let's see what happens when we attempt to output how many products there are in each category. Temporarily comment out the line for logging:

```
// db.Database.Log = new Action<string>(message => { WriteLine(message);
});
```

Modify the `WriteLine` statement inside `foreach`:

```
WriteLine($"{item.CategoryName} has {item.Products.Count} products.");
```

Rerun the application. Notice that the correct number of products is output:

```
Beverages has 12 products.  
Condiments has 12 products.  
Confections has 13 products.  
Dairy Products has 10 products.  
Grains/Cereals has 7 products.  
Meat/Poultry has 6 products.  
Produce has 5 products.  
Seafood has 12 products.
```

This is due to a feature of EF known as **lazy loading**.

Uncomment the logging line and rerun the application. You will notice that when the code accesses the `Products` property, EF automatically checks to see whether they are loaded. If not, EF loads them for us “lazily.”

For example, just before outputting the count of seafood products, this query is executed:

```
SELECT  
    [Extent1].[ProductID] AS [ProductID],  
    [Extent1].[ProductName] AS [ProductName],  
    [Extent1].[SupplierID] AS [SupplierID],  
    [Extent1].[CategoryID] AS [CategoryID],  
    [Extent1].[QuantityPerUnit] AS [QuantityPerUnit],  
    [Extent1].[UnitPrice] AS [UnitPrice],  
    [Extent1].[UnitsInStock] AS [UnitsInStock],  
    [Extent1].[UnitsOnOrder] AS [UnitsOnOrder],  
    [Extent1].[ReorderLevel] AS [ReorderLevel],  
    [Extent1].[Discontinued] AS [Discontinued]  
FROM [dbo].[Products] AS [Extent1]  
WHERE [Extent1].[CategoryID] = @EntityKeyValue1  
-- EntityKeyValue1: '8' (Type = Int32, IsNullable = false)  
-- Executing at 30/08/2015 14:16:26 +01:00  
-- Completed in 0 ms with result: SqlDataReader  
Seafood has 12 products.
```

The problem with lazy loading is that multiple round trips to the database server are required to eventually fetch all the data.

Eager loading entities

Sometimes, it is better to disable lazy loading and manually specify that all the data is brought across the network immediately using eager loading (aka early loading).

Add the following line of code after creating the `db` variable to disable lazy loading:

```
db.Configuration.LazyLoadingEnabled = false;
```

If you rerun the application, you will now find that all the product counts are zero:

```
Beverages has 0 products.  
Condiments has 0 products.
```

Confections has 0 products.
 Dairy Products has 0 products.
 Grains/Cereals has 0 products.
 Meat/Poultry has 0 products.
 Produce has 0 products.
 Seafood has 0 products.

To perform eager loading, modify the query line to make it look like this:

```
var query = db.Categories.Include("Products");
```

Rerun the application. You will see that EF generates a SELECT statement with a subquery in order to fetch the related products for each category, all in one go:

```
SELECT
    [Project1].[CategoryID] AS [CategoryID],
    [Project1].[CategoryName] AS [CategoryName],
    [Project1].[Description] AS [Description],
    [Project1].[Picture] AS [Picture],
    [Project1].[C1] AS [C1],
    [Project1].[ProductID] AS [ProductID],
    [Project1].[ProductName] AS [ProductName],
    [Project1].[SupplierID] AS [SupplierID],
    [Project1].[CategoryID1] AS [CategoryID1],
    [Project1].[QuantityPerUnit] AS [QuantityPerUnit],
    [Project1].[UnitPrice] AS [UnitPrice],
    [Project1].[UnitsInStock] AS [UnitsInStock],
    [Project1].[UnitsOnOrder] AS [UnitsOnOrder],
    [Project1].[ReorderLevel] AS [ReorderLevel],
    [Project1].[Discontinued] AS [Discontinued]
FROM ( SELECT
    [Extent1].[CategoryID] AS [CategoryID],
    [Extent1].[CategoryName] AS [CategoryName],
    [Extent1].[Description] AS [Description],
    [Extent1].[Picture] AS [Picture],
    [Extent2].[ProductID] AS [ProductID],
    [Extent2].[ProductName] AS [ProductName],
    [Extent2].[SupplierID] AS [SupplierID],
    [Extent2].[CategoryID] AS [CategoryID1],
    [Extent2].[QuantityPerUnit] AS [QuantityPerUnit],
    [Extent2].[UnitPrice] AS [UnitPrice],
    [Extent2].[UnitsInStock] AS [UnitsInStock],
    [Extent2].[UnitsOnOrder] AS [UnitsOnOrder],
    [Extent2].[ReorderLevel] AS [ReorderLevel],
    [Extent2].[Discontinued] AS [Discontinued],
    CASE WHEN ([Extent2].[ProductID] IS NULL) THEN CAST(NULL AS int)
ELSE 1
END AS [C1]
    FROM [dbo].[Categories] AS [Extent1]
    LEFT OUTER JOIN [dbo].[Products] AS [Extent2] ON [Extent1].
[CategoryID]
= [Extent2].[CategoryID]
) AS [Project1]
ORDER BY [Project1].[CategoryID] ASC, [Project1].[C1] ASC
```

Explicit loading entities

The last type of loading we will look at is explicit loading. It works similar to lazy loading, but you are in control of exactly which related data is loaded and when.

Modify your code to make it look like this:

```
using System;
using System.Linq;
using static System.Console;
namespace Ch08>LoadingPatterns
{
    class Program
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            WriteLine("Loading Patterns with the Entity Framework");
            var db = new Northwind();
            IQueryable<Category> query;
            Write("Enable lazy loading? (Y/N): ");
            var lazyloading = (ReadKey().Key == ConsoleKey.Y);
            db.Configuration.LazyLoadingEnabled = lazyloading;
            WriteLine();
            Write("Enable logging? (Y/N): ");
            var logging = (ReadKey().Key == ConsoleKey.Y);
            if (logging)
            {
                db.Database.Log = new Action<string>(message => {
                    WriteLine(message); });
            }
            WriteLine();
            Write("Enable eager loading? (Y/N): ");
            var eagerloading = (ReadKey().Key == ConsoleKey.Y);
            if (eagerloading)
            {
                query = db.Categories.Include("Products");
            }
            else
            {
                query = db.Categories;
            }
            WriteLine();
            Write("Enable explicit loading? (Y/N): ");
            var explicitloading = (ReadKey().Key == ConsoleKey.Y);
            WriteLine();
            foreach (var item in query)
            {
                if (explicitloading)
                {
                    Write($"Explicitly load products for
                    {item.CategoryName}? (Y/N): ");
                    if (ReadKey().Key == ConsoleKey.Y)
                    {
                        var products = db.Entry(item).Collection(c =>
                            c.Products);
                        if (!products.IsLoaded) products.Load();
                    }
                    WriteLine();
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```

        }
        WriteLine($"{item.CategoryName} has {item.Products.Count}
products.");
    }
}
}

```

Rerun the application, disable lazy loading, disable logging, disable eager loading, and enable explicit loading.

For each category, press Y or N to load its products as you wish. For example, this is the output when I ran it. I chose to load products for only four of the eight categories:

```

Enable lazy-loading? (Y/N): n
Enable logging? (Y/N): n
Enable eager-loading? (Y/N): n
Enable explicit-loading? (Y/N): y
Explicitly load products for Beverages? (Y/N): y
Beverages has 12 products.
Explicitly load products for Condiments? (Y/N): n
Condiments has 0 products.
Explicitly load products for Confections? (Y/N): n
Confections has 0 products.
Explicitly load products for Dairy Products? (Y/N): y
Dairy Products has 10 products.
Explicitly load products for Grains/Cereals? (Y/N): y
Grains/Cereals has 7 products.
Explicitly load products for Meat/Poultry? (Y/N): y
Meat/Poultry has 6 products.
Explicitly load products for Produce? (Y/N): n
Produce has 0 products.
Explicitly load products for Seafood? (Y/N): n
Seafood has 0 products.

```

Tip

Carefully consider which loading pattern is best for your code. The default of lazy loading can literally make you into a lazy database developer!

Using Entity Framework Core

Add a new **Console Application (Package)** project named **Ch08_EFCore**.

Tip

Notice that we have chosen **Console Application (Package)** to target .NET Core.

To use EF Core, you must install a provider for the RDBMS you want to use. You can find an up-to-date list of data providers here:

<http://ef.readthedocs.org/en/latest/providers/index.html>

To install the provider for SQL Server, on the **Tools** menu, choose **NuGet Package Manager** and then choose **Package Manager Console**.

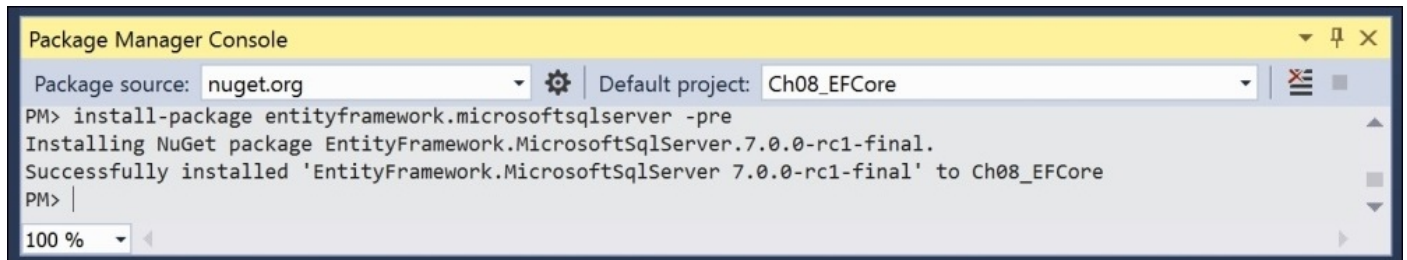
In **Package Manager Console**, ensure package source is set to `nuget.org` and default project is set to `Ch08_EFCore`. Then, enter the following command in the prompt:

```
install-package entityframework.microsoftsqlserver
```

Tip

By the time you read this book, the final release version should be available so that the preceding command will work. If you get an error with the preceding line, add the `-pre` flag to the end to install the pre-release version.

At the time of writing this book, the pre-release version of EF Core is **7.0.0-rc1-final**, as you can see in the following screenshot:



Later, we will run migration commands, so you will need to install the following package too:

```
install-package entityframework.commands
```

By the time you read this book, the final release version should be available so that the preceding command will work. If you get an error with the preceding line, add the `-pre` flag to the end to install the pre-release version.

At the time of writing this book, there are no graphical tools or wizards to help you write the code, so we will have to do it all manually.

On the **Project** menu, choose **Add Class...** or press `Shift + Alt + C` and name it **Category**.

Modify its code to look like the following code block. Note the following aspects:

- The initialization of the Products property with an empty HashSet (to avoid NullReferenceExceptions when reading its Count property)
- The Products property is virtual (so that EF Core can inherit from our class and implement automatic lazy loading)

```
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations.Schema;
namespace Ch08_EFCore
{
    [Table("Categories")]
    public class Category
    {
        public int CategoryID { get; set; }
        public string CategoryName { get; set; }
        public virtual ICollection<Product> Products { get; set; }
        public Category()
        {
            Products = new HashSet<Product>();
        }
    }
}
```

Tip

At the time of writing this book, EF Core does not have an automatic pluralizer or singularizer, so we must explicitly specify the table name using an attribute (or we could have used the Fluent API).

Add a class named Product and modify its code to look like the following code block. Notice the attribute to explicitly specify the column to use for the relationship between Categories and Products:

```
using System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations.Schema;
namespace Ch08_EFCore
{
    [Table("Products")]
    public class Product
    {
        public int ProductID { get; set; }
        public string ProductName { get; set; }
        public decimal? UnitPrice { get; set; }
        public int CategoryID { get; set; }
        [ForeignKey("CategoryID")]
        public virtual Category Category { get; set; }
    }
}
```

Add a class named Northwind and modify its code to look like the following code block:

```
using Microsoft.Data.Entity;
namespace Ch08_EFCore
{
    public class Northwind : DbContext
    {
        public DbSet<Category> Categories { get; set; }
    }
}
```

```

        public DbSet<Product> Products { get; set; }
        protected override void OnConfiguring(DbContextOptionsBuilder
optionsBuilder)
        {
            optionsBuilder.UseSqlServer(@"Data Source=
(localdb)\mssqllocaldb;initial catalog=Northwind;integrated
security=true;");
            base.OnConfiguring(optionsBuilder);
        }
    }
}

```

Tip

EF Core prefers code over the old XML .config files to specify the connection string. This is because it removes the dependency on .config XML files. You should still load the connection string from an external source, but you can now store it wherever you want.

In Program.cs file, import the Microsoft.Data.Entity namespace, statically import the System.Console type, and add the following statements inside the Main method:

```

var db = new Northwind();
var query = db.Categories.Include(c => c.Products);
foreach (var item in query)
{
    WriteLine($"{item.CategoryName} has {item.Products.Count} products.");
}
ReadLine(); // wait for user to press ENTER when debugging

```

Open the project's **Properties** and on the **Debug** tab, select **Use Specific Runtime** and choose **.NET Core** and **x64**.

Run the application with *F5*, and view the output, which is the same as it was for EF6:

```

Beverages has 12 products.
Condiments has 12 products.
Confections has 13 products.
Dairy Products has 10 products.
Grains/Cereals has 7 products.
Meat/Poultry has 6 products.
Produce has 5 products.
Seafood has 12 products.

```

Note that this console application has a titlebar that shows that it targets .NET Core executed by the CoreCLR and the 64-bit CPU architecture, so it could be deployed to Windows, Max OS X, and Linux.

C:\Users\markjprice\dnx\runtimes\dnx-coreclr-win-x64.1.0.0-rc1-update1\...

```
Beverages has 12 products.  
Condiments has 12 products.  
Confections has 13 products.  
Dairy Products has 10 products.  
Grains/Cereals has 7 products.  
Meat/Poultry has 6 products.  
Produce has 5 products.  
Seafood has 12 products.
```


Practicing and exploring

Test your knowledge and understanding by answering some questions, getting some hands-on practice, and exploring this chapter's topics with deeper research.

Exercise 8.1 – test your knowledge

Answer the following questions:

1. Which .NET data provider would you use to work with Microsoft Access .MDB database files?
2. Which .NET data provider would you use to work with Microsoft SQL Server 2012 Express Edition?
3. What must you do with `DbConnection` variable before executing a `DbCommand` variable?
4. When would you use `CommandBehavior.SequentialAccess`?
5. When would you use classic ADO.NET instead of Entity Framework?
6. When defining a `DbContext` class, what type would you use for the property that represents a table, for example, the `Products` property of a `Northwind` context?
7. What are the EF conventions for primary keys?
8. When would you use an annotation attribute in an entity class?
9. Why might you choose the Fluent API in preference to annotation attributes?
10. What is the difference between Database First and Code First in EF6?

Exercise 8.2 – explore the EF Core documentation

Go to the following website and read the official Entity Framework Core 1.0 documentation. Follow the tutorials to create Windows desktop and web applications and services. If you have a Mac or a Linux virtual machine, follow the tutorials to use EF Core on those alternative platforms.

<http://ef.readthedocs.org/en/latest/>

Exercise 8.3 – explore topics

Use the following links to read more on this chapter's topics:

- **.NET Framework data providers:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/a6cd7c08\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/a6cd7c08(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Retrieving and modifying data in ADO.NET:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms254937\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms254937(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Data points – looking ahead to Entity Framework 7:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/magazine/dn890367.aspx>

Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to connect to a database, how to execute an SQL statement and process the results, and how to build Code First data models for an existing database such as Northwind.

In the next chapter, you will learn how to write a LINQ query to select, filter, sort, join, and group data of all types.

Chapter 9. Querying and Manipulating Data with LINQ

This chapter is about **Language Integrated Queries (LINQ)**, language extensions that add the ability to work with sequences of items and filter, sort, and project them into different outputs.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Writing LINQ queries
- Using multiple threads with Parallel LINQ
- Creating your own LINQ extension methods
- Working with LINQ to XML

Writing LINQ queries

In the previous chapter, you wrote a few simple LINQ queries, but I didn't properly explained how LINQ works.

LINQ has several parts; some are required and some are optional:

- **Extension methods** (required): These are `where`, `OrderBy`, `Select`, and so on. These provide the functionality of LINQ.
- **LINQ providers** (required): LINQ to Objects, LINQ to Entities, LINQ to XML, LINQ to OData, LINQ to Amazon, and so on, are LINQ providers. These convert standard LINQ operations into specific commands for different types of data.
- **Lambda expressions** (optional): These can be used instead of named methods to simplify LINQ extension method calls.
- **LINQ query comprehension syntax** (optional): These include `from`, `in`, `where`, `orderby`, `descending`, `select`, and so on. These are C# keywords that are aliases for some of the LINQ extension methods, and their use can simplify the queries you write, especially if you already have experience with other query languages such as **Structured Query Language (SQL)**.

Tip

When programmers are first introduced to LINQ, they often believe that the query comprehension syntax is LINQ, but ironically, that is one of the parts of LINQ that is optional!

Extending sequences with the Enumerable class

The extension methods, such as `Where` and `Select`, are appended by the `Enumerable` static class to any type, known as a **sequence**, that implements `IEnumerable<T>`.

For example, an array of a type `T` implements the `IEnumerable<T>` class, where `T` is the type of items in the array, so all arrays support LINQ to query and manipulate them.

All collections, such as `List<T>`, `Dictionary<TKey, TValue>`, `Stack<T>`, and `Queue<T>` implement `IEnumerable<T>`, so they can be queried and manipulated with LINQ.

Filtering entities with Where

The most common reason for using LINQ is to filter items in a sequence using the `Where` extension method.

Start Microsoft Visual Studio 2015. In Visual Studio, press *Ctrl + Shift + N* or navigate to **File | New | Project...**

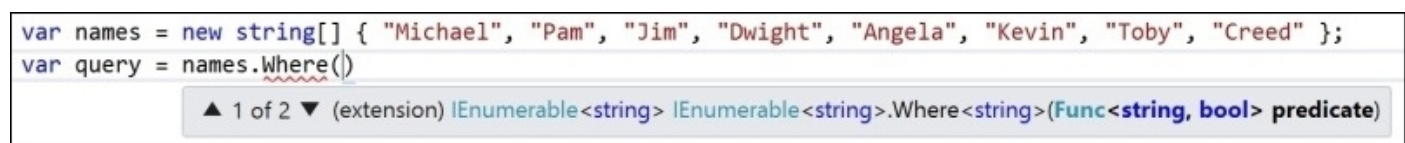
In the **New Project** dialog, in the **Installed Templates** list, select **Visual C#**. In the list at the center, select **Console Application**, type the name **Ch09_LinqToObjects**, change the location to `C:\Code`, type the solution name **Chapter09**, and then click on **OK**.

Statically import the `System.Console` type.

In the `Main` method, add the following statements:

```
var names = new string[] { "Michael", "Pam", "Jim", "Dwight", "Angela",  
"Kevin", "Toby", "Creed" };  
var query = names.Where(
```

As you type the open parenthesis after `where`, note the IntelliSense. It tells us that to call `where`, we must pass in an instance of a `Func<string, bool>` delegate. This delegate must target a method with a matching signature, as you can see in the following screenshot::



```
var names = new string[] { "Michael", "Pam", "Jim", "Dwight", "Angela", "Kevin", "Toby", "Creed" };  
var query = names.Where()  
▲ 1 of 2 ▼ (extension) IEnumerable<string> IEnumerable<string>.Where<string>(Func<string, bool> predicate)
```

For each `string` variable passed to the method, the method must return a `Boolean` value. If the method returns `true`, it indicates that we should include the `string` in the results, and if the method returns `false`, it indicates that we should exclude it.

Targeting a named method

Let's define a method that only includes names that are longer than four characters.

Add the following method under the `Main` method:

```
static bool NameLongerThanFour(string name)  
{  
    return name.Length > 4;  
}
```

Complete the `where` call and loop through the query items, as shown in the following code:

```
var query = names.Where(new Func<string, bool>(NameLongerThanFour));  
foreach (var item in query)  
{  
    WriteLine(item);  
}
```


Run the application by pressing *Ctrl + F5* and view the output:

```
Michael  
Dwight  
Angela  
Kevin  
Creed
```

Simplifying the code by removing the explicit delegate instantiation

We can simplify the code by deleting the explicit instantiation of the `Func<string, bool>` delegate. The C# compiler will instantiate the `Func<string, bool>` delegate for us, so you never need to explicitly do it.

Modify the query to look like this:

```
var query = names.Where(NameLongerThanFour);
```

Rerun the application and note that the output is the same as before.

Targeting a lambda expression

We can simplify our code even further using a **lambda expression** in place of the named method.

Although it can look complicated and magical at first, a lambda expression is simply a *nameless function*. It uses the `=>` (read as “goes to”) symbol to indicate the return value.

Modify the query to look like the following statement:

```
var query = names.Where(name => name.Length > 4);
```

Note that the syntax for a lambda expression includes all the important parts of the `NameLongerThanFour` method, but nothing extraneous. A lambda expression only needs to define the following:

- The names of input parameters
- A return value expression

The type of the name input parameter is inferred from the fact that the sequence contains strings and the return type must be a `bool` value for `where` to work, so the expression after the `=>` symbol must return a `bool` value.

The compiler does most of the work for us, so our code can be as concise as possible.

Rerun the application and note that the output is the same as earlier.

Sorting sequences with OrderBy

Extension methods can be chained if the previous method returns another sequence, that is, a type that implements the `IEnumerable<T>` class.

Append a call to `OrderBy` to the end of the existing query as shown here:

```
var query = names
    .Where(name => name.Length > 4)
    .OrderBy(name => name.Length);
```

Tip

I like to format the line so that each extension method call happens on its own line. I think this makes LINQ queries easier to read.

Rerun the application and note that the names are now sorted with shortest first:

```
Kevin
Creed
Dwight
Angela
Michael
```

Tip

To put the longest name first, you would use `OrderByDescending`.

Sorting by multiple properties with the ThenBy method

We might want to sort the array of names by more than one property.

Append a call to `ThenBy` to the end of the existing query as shown here:

```
var query = names
    .Where(name => name.Length > 4)
    .OrderBy(name => name.Length)
    .ThenBy(name => name);
```

Rerun the application and note the slight difference in the sort order. Within a group of names of the same length, the names are sorted alphabetically by the full value of the string, so Creed comes before Kevin, and Angela comes before Dwight:

```
Creed
Kevin
Angela
Dwight
Michael
```

Working with sets

Sets are one of the most fundamental concepts in mathematics. A set is a collection of one or more objects. You might remember being taught about Venn diagrams in school. Common set operations include the **intersect** or **union** between sets.

Add a new console application project named **Ch09_Sets**. Set the solution's start up project to be the current selection.

Statically import the `System.Console` type.

This application will define three arrays of strings for cohorts of apprentices and then perform some common set operations.

On the top of the `Main` method, add the following method, that outputs any sequence of string variables as a comma-separated single string to the console output along with an optional description:

```
private static void Output(IEnumerable<string> cohort, string description =
"")
{
    WriteLine(description);
    WriteLine(string.Join(", ", cohort.ToArray()));
}
```

In the `Main` method, write the following statements:

```
var cohort1 = new string[] { "Rachel", "Gareth", "Jonathan", "George" };
var cohort2 = new string[] { "Jack", "Stephen", "Daniel", "Jack", "Jared"
};
var cohort3 = new string[] { "Declan", "Jack", "Jack", "Jasmine", "Conor"
};
Output(cohort1, "Cohort 1");
Output(cohort2, "Cohort 2");
Output(cohort3, "Cohort 3");
WriteLine();
Output(cohort2.Distinct(), "cohort2.Distinct(): removes duplicates");
Output(cohort2.Union(cohort3), "cohort2.Union(cohort3): combines two
sequences and removes any duplicates");
Output(cohort2.Concat(cohort3), "cohort2.Concat(cohort3): combines two
sequences but leaves in any duplicates");
Output(cohort2.Intersect(cohort3), "cohort2.Intersect(cohort3): returns
items that are in both sequences");
Output(cohort2.Except(cohort3), "cohort2.Except(cohort3): removes items
from the first sequence that are in the second sequence");
Output(cohort1.Zip(cohort2, (c1, c2) => $"{c1} matched with {c2}"),
"cohort1.Zip(cohort2, (c1, c2) => $"{c1} matched with {c2}\"): matches
items based on position in the sequence");
```

Run the application by pressing `Ctrl + F5` and view the output:

```
Cohort 1
Rachel, Gareth, Jonathan, George
Cohort 2
Jack, Stephen, Daniel, Jack, Jared
```

Cohort 3

Declan, Jack, Jack, Jasmine, Conor

cohort2.Distinct(): removes duplicates

Jack, Stephen, Daniel, Jared

cohort2.Union(cohort3): combines two sequences and removes any duplicates

Jack, Stephen, Daniel, Jared, Declan, Jasmine, Conor

cohort2.Concat(cohort3): combines two sequences but leaves in any duplicates

Jack, Stephen, Daniel, Jack, Jared, Declan, Jack, Jack, Jasmine, Conor

cohort2.Intersect(cohort3): returns items that are in both sequences

Jack

cohort2.Except(cohort3): removes items from the first sequence that are in the second sequence

Stephen, Daniel, Jared

cohort1.Zip(cohort2, (c1, c2) => \$"{c1} matched with {c2}"): matches items based on position in the sequence

Rachel matched with Jack, Gareth matched with Stephen, Jonathan matched with Daniel, George matched with Jack

Note that with Zip, if there are unequal numbers of items in the two sequences, then some items will not have a matching partner, like poor Jared.

Projecting entities with Select statement

To learn about **projection**, it is best to have some more complex sequences to work with, so in the next project, we will use the Northwind sample database.

Add a new console application project named **Ch09_Projection**. Add a new **ADO.NET Entity Data Model** item named **Northwind**. Use **Code First from database**, connect to the **Northwind** database with the server and instance name (localdb)\mssqllocaldb, and select all the tables.

In the Main method, write the following statements:

```
var db = new Northwind();

var query = db.Products
    .Where(product => product.UnitPrice < 10M)
    .OrderByDescending(product => product.UnitPrice);

foreach (var item in query)
{
    WriteLine($"{item.ProductID}: {item.ProductName} costs
{item.UnitPrice:$#,##0.00}");
}
```

Run the application by pressing *Ctrl + F5* and view the output:

```
41: Jack's New England Clam Chowder costs $9.65
45: Rogede sild costs $9.50
47: Zaanse koeken costs $9.50
19: Teatime Chocolate Biscuits costs $9.20
23: Tunnbröd costs $9.00
75: Rhönbräu Klosterbier costs $7.75
54: Tourtière costs $7.45
52: Filo Mix costs $7.00
13: Konbu costs $6.00
24: Guaraná Fantástica costs $4.50
33: Geitost costs $2.50
```

Although this query outputs the information we want, it does so inefficiently because it returns entire rows of all columns from the table. We can see this by outputting the query.

Add the following statement before the foreach statement:

```
WriteLine(query.ToString());
```

Rerun the applications and note that the SQL logged statement includes all columns:

```
SELECT
    [Extent1].[ProductID] AS [ProductID],
    [Extent1].[ProductName] AS [ProductName],
    [Extent1].[SupplierID] AS [SupplierID],
    [Extent1].[CategoryID] AS [CategoryID],
    [Extent1].[QuantityPerUnit] AS [QuantityPerUnit],
    [Extent1].[UnitPrice] AS [UnitPrice],
    [Extent1].[UnitsInStock] AS [UnitsInStock],
    [Extent1].[UnitsOnOrder] AS [UnitsOnOrder],
```

```

[Extent1].[ReorderLevel] AS [ReorderLevel],
[Extent1].[Discontinued] AS [Discontinued]
FROM [dbo].[Products] AS [Extent1]
WHERE [Extent1].[UnitPrice] < cast(10 as decimal(18))
ORDER BY [Extent1].[UnitPrice] DESC

```

Change the LINQ to call the `Select` method to project the results into a new anonymous type with only the three columns that we actually need, like this:

```

var query = db.Products
    .Where(product => product.UnitPrice < 10M)
    .OrderByDescending(product => product.UnitPrice)
    .Select(product => new { product.ProductID, product.ProductName,
product.UnitPrice });

```

Rerun the application and note that the SQL now only includes three columns that we need:

```

SELECT
    [Extent1].[ProductID] AS [ProductID],
    [Extent1].[ProductName] AS [ProductName],
    [Extent1].[UnitPrice] AS [UnitPrice]
FROM [dbo].[Products] AS [Extent1]
WHERE [Extent1].[UnitPrice] < cast(10 as decimal(18))
ORDER BY [Extent1].[UnitPrice] DESC

```

Tip

You might also have noticed that the sequences implement `IQueryable<T>` instead of `IEnumerable<T>`. This is an indication that we are using a LINQ provider that uses deferred execution and builds the query in memory using expression trees. The query will not be executed until the last possible moment and only then will it be converted into another query language, such as Transact-SQL for Microsoft SQL Server. Enumerating the query with `foreach` or calling a method such as `ToArray` will force immediate execution of the query.

Joining and grouping

Add a new console application project named **Ch09_JoiningGrouping**.

Add a new **ADO.NET Entity Data Model** item named **Northwind**. Use **Code First from database**, connect to the **Northwind** database with the server and instance name `(localdb)\mssqllocaldb`, and select all the tables.

In the Main method, write the following statements:

```
var db = new Northwind();

var categories = db.Categories.Select(c => new { c.CategoryID,
c.CategoryName }).ToArray();
var products = db.Products.Select(p => new { p.ProductID, p.ProductName,
p.CategoryID }).ToArray();

// join every product to its category to return 77 matches
var queryJoin = categories.Join(products,
    category => category.CategoryID,
    product => product.CategoryID,
    (c, p) => new { c.CategoryName, p.ProductName, p.ProductID });

foreach (var item in queryJoin)
{
    WriteLine($"{item.ProductID}: {item.ProductName} is in
{item.CategoryName}.");
}
```

Run the application and view the output. Note that there is a single line output for each of the 77 products, and the results show all products in the Beverages category first, then the Condiments category, and so on:

```
1: Chai is in Beverages.
2: Chang is in Beverages.
24: Guaraná Fantástica is in Beverages.
34: Sasquatch Ale is in Beverages.
35: Steeleye Stout is in Beverages.
38: Côte de Blaye is in Beverages.
39: Chartreuse verte is in Beverages.
43: Ipoh Coffee is in Beverages.
67: Laughing Lumberjack Lager is in Beverages.
70: Outback Lager is in Beverages.
75: Rhönbräu Klosterbier is in Beverages.
76: Lakkalikööri is in Beverages.
3: Aniseed Syrup is in Condiments.
4: Chef Anton's Cajun Seasoning is in Condiments.
```

Change the query to sort by ProductID:

```
var queryJoin = categories.Join(products,
    category => category.CategoryID,
    product => product.CategoryID,
    (c, p) => new { c.CategoryName, p.ProductName, p.ProductID })
    .OrderBy(cp => cp.ProductID);
```

Rerun the application and view the output:

```
1: Chai is in Beverages.
2: Chang is in Beverages.
3: Aniseed Syrup is in Condiments.
4: Chef Anton's Cajun Seasoning is in Condiments.
5: Chef Anton's Gumbo Mix is in Condiments.
6: Grandma's Boysenberry Spread is in Condiments.
7: Uncle Bob's Organic Dried Pears is in Produce.
8: Northwoods Cranberry Sauce is in Condiments.
9: Mishi Kobe Niku is in Meat/Poultry.
10: Ikura is in Seafood.
11: Queso Cabrales is in Dairy Products.
12: Queso Manchego La Pastora is in Dairy Products.
13: Konbu is in Seafood.
14: Tofu is in Produce.
15: Genen Shouyu is in Condiments.
```

Add some new statements, as shown below, to the existing code to use the `GroupJoin` method, and in the output, show the group name and then all the items within each group:

```
// group all products by their category to return 8 matches
var queryGroup = categories.GroupJoin(products,
    category => category.CategoryID,
    product => product.CategoryID,
    (c, Products) => new { c.CategoryName, Products = Products.OrderBy(p =>
p.ProductName) });

foreach (var item in queryGroup)
{
    WriteLine($"{item.CategoryName} has {item.Products.Count()}
products.");
    foreach (var product in item.Products)
    {
        WriteLine($" {product.ProductName}");
    }
}
```

Rerun the application. Note that the products inside each category have been sorted by their name as the query asked:

```
Beverages has 12 products.
Chai
Chang
Chartreuse verte
Côte de Blaye
Guaraná Fantástica
Ipoh Coffee
Lakkalikööri
Laughing Lumberjack Lager
Outback Lager
Rhönbräu Klosterbier
Sasquatch Ale
Steeleye Stout
Condiments has 12 products.
Aniseed Syrup
```


Chef Anton's Cajun Seasoning

Chef Anton's Gumbo Mix

Sweetening the syntax with syntactic sugar

C# 3 introduced some new keywords in 2008 to make it easier for programmers with experience in SQL to write LINQ queries. This **syntactic sugar** is sometimes called the **LINQ query comprehension syntax**.

Tip

LINQ query comprehension syntax is limited in functionality. You must use extension methods to access all the features of LINQ.

Consider the following code:

```
var query = names
    .Where(name => name.Length > 4)
    .OrderBy(name => name.Length)
    .ThenBy(name => name);
```

Instead of writing the preceding code, you can write this:

```
var query = from name in names
            where name.Length > 4
            orderby name.Length, name
            select name;
```

C# compiles the query comprehension syntax into the equivalent query using extension methods and lambda expressions.

Not all extension methods have a C# keyword equivalent, for example, the `Skip` and `Take` extension methods. The following query cannot be written using only the query syntax:

```
var query = names
    .Where(name => name.Length > 4)
    .OrderBy(name => name.Length)
    .ThenBy(name => name)
    .Skip(1)
    .Take(2);
```

Luckily, you can wrap query syntax in parentheses and then switch to using extension methods, as follows:

```
var query = (from name in names
            where name.Length > 4
            orderby name.Length, name
            select name)
    .Skip(1)
    .Take(2);
```

Tip

Best Practice

Learn both extension methods with lambda expressions and the comprehension syntax ways of writing LINQ queries because you are likely to have to maintain code that uses both.

Using multiple threads with Parallel LINQ

By default, only one thread is used to execute a LINQ query. **Parallel LINQ (PLINQ)** is an easy way to enable multiple threads to execute a query.

To see it in action, we will start with some code that only uses a single thread to double 200 million integers.

Add a new console application project named **Ch09_PLINQ**. Import the `System.Diagnostics` namespace and statically import the `System.Console` type.

Add the following statements to the `Main` method:

```
var watch = Stopwatch.StartNew();
Write("Press ENTER to start. ");
ReadLine();
watch.Start();
IEnumerable<int> numbers = Enumerable.Range(1, 200000000);
var squares = numbers.Select(number => number * 2).ToArray();
watch.Stop();
WriteLine($"{watch.ElapsedMilliseconds:#,##0} elapsed milliseconds.");
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* to run the application, but *do not* press *Enter* yet.

Right-click on the Windows Taskbar or press *Ctrl + Alt + Delete*, and then click on **Task Manager**.

At the bottom of the **Task Manager** window, click on the **More details** button. At the top of the **Task Manager** window, click on the **Performance** tab.

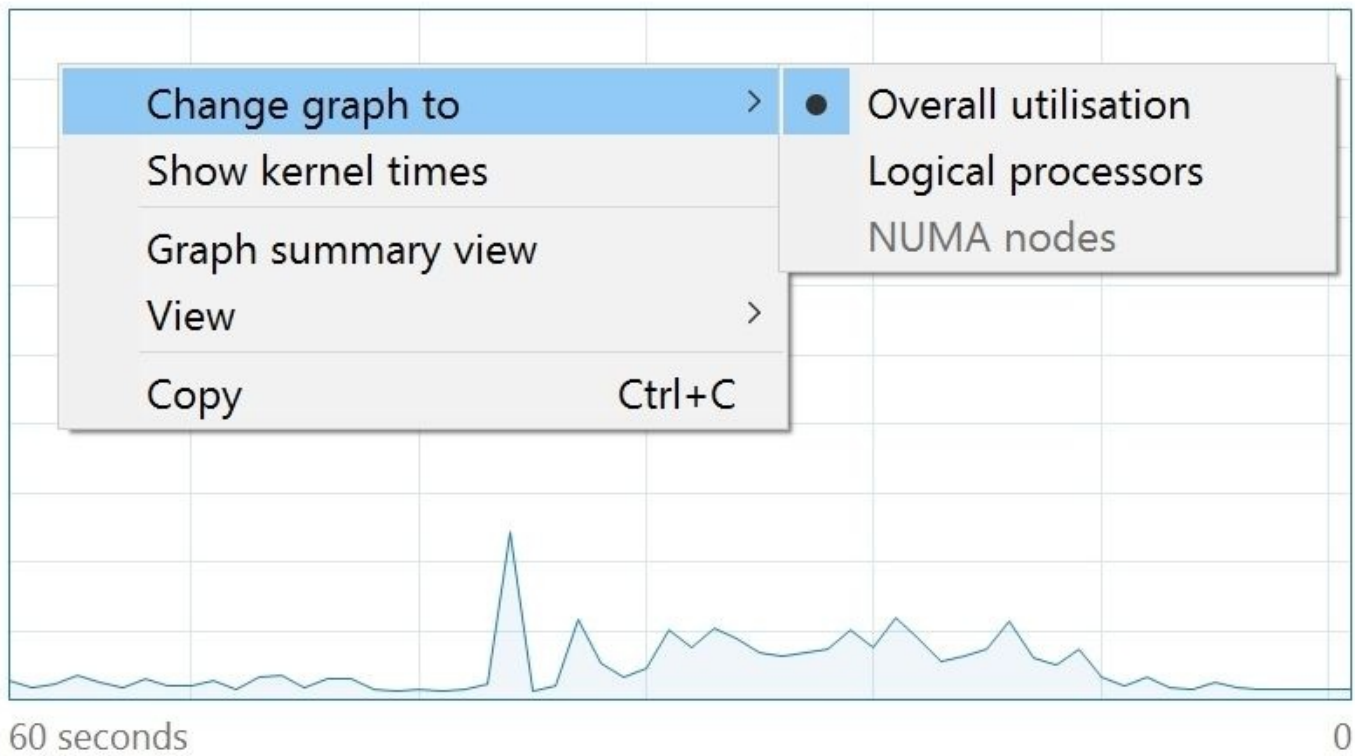
Right-click on the **CPU Utilization** graph, choose **Change graph to**, and then **Logical processors**, as you can see in the following screenshot:

CPU

Intel(R) Core(TM) i7-3615QM CPU @ 2.30G...

% Utilisation

100%



Note

If you do not have multiple CPUs, then this exercise won't show much!

Rearrange the **Task Manager** window and your console application so that they are side by side.

Wait for the CPUs to settle and then press *Enter* to start the stopwatch and run the query. Your output should look like this:

```
Press ENTER to start.  
19,404 ellapsed milliseconds.
```

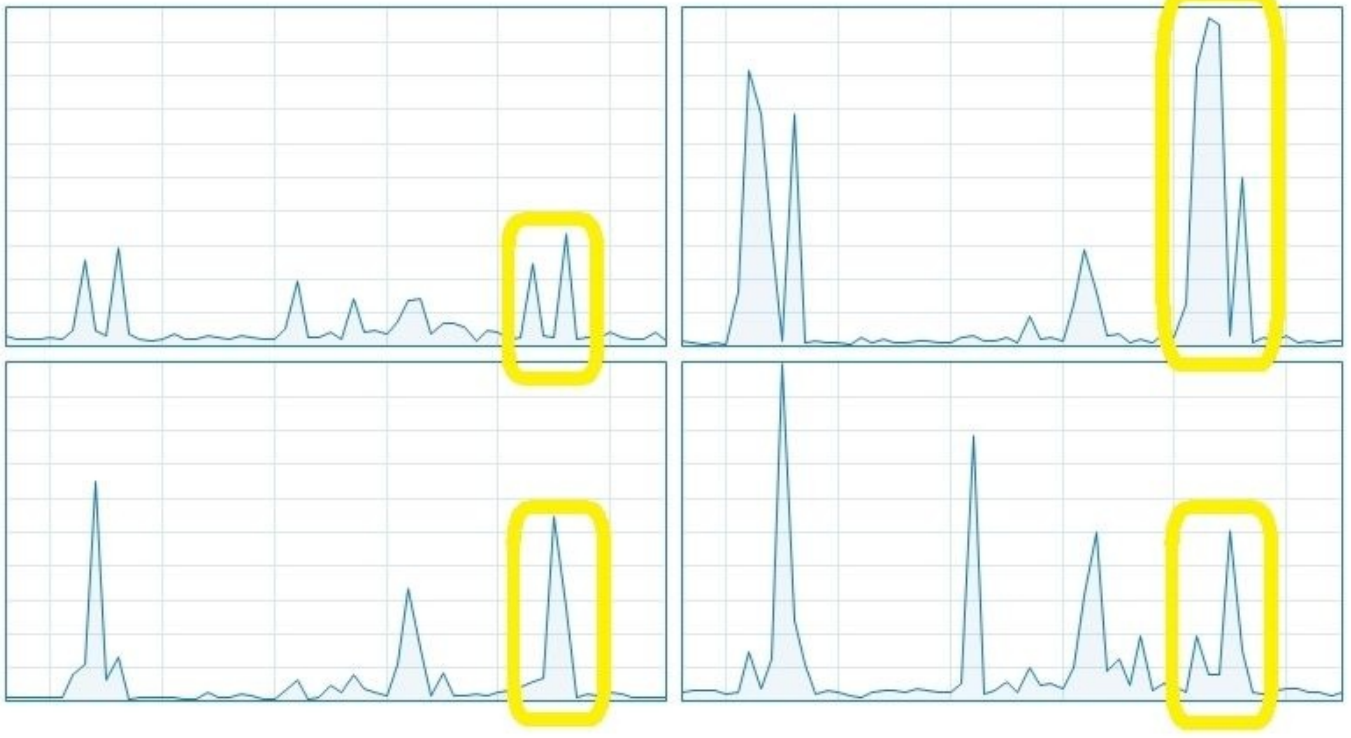
The **Task Manager** window should show that while the code executed, one CPU was used the most. However, other CPUs could execute background tasks, such as the garbage collector, so they won't be completely flat:

CPU

Intel(R) Core(TM) i7-3615QM CPU @ 2.30G...

% Utilisation over 60 seconds

100%



Close the console application, and back in the Main method, modify the query to make a call to the `AsParallel` extension method as follows:

```
var squares = numbers.AsParallel().Select(number => number * 2).ToArray();
```

Press `Ctrl + F5` to run the application again. Wait for the **Task Manager** window to settle and then press `Enter` to start the stopwatch and run the query. This time, the application should complete in less time (although it might not be as much less as you might hope for—managing those multiple threads takes extra effort!), as shown in the following output:

```
Press ENTER to start.  
17,971 ellapsed milliseconds.
```

The **Task Manager** window should show that all CPUs were used equally to execute the LINQ query, as shown in the following screenshot:

CPU

Intel(R) Core(TM) i7-3615QM CPU @ 2.30G...

% Utilisation over 60 seconds

100%



Tip

You will learn more about managing multiple threads in [Chapter 12, Improving Performance and Scalability with Multitasking](#).

Creating your own LINQ extension methods

In [Chapter 7, Implementing Interfaces and Inheriting Classes](#), you learned how to create your own extension methods. To create LINQ extension methods, all you have to do is extend the `IEnumerable<T>` type.

Add a new **Class Library** project named **Ch09_MyLINQExtensions**. Rename the `Class1.cs` file to `MyLINQExtensions`.

Modify the class to look like the following code. Note that the `ProcessSequence` extension method doesn't actually modify the sequence because it exists only as an example. It would be up to you to process the sequence in whatever manner you want. The `SummariseSequence` extension method also doesn't do anything especially useful. It simply returns the number of items in the sequence by using the built-in `LongCount` extension method. Again, it would be up to you to decide exactly what this method should do and what type it should return:

```
using System.Collections.Generic;

namespace System.Linq
{
    public static class MyLINQExtensions
    {
        // this is a chainable LINQ extension method
        public static IEnumerable<T> ProcessSequence<T>(this IEnumerable<T>
sequence)
        {
            return sequence;
        }

        // this is a scalar LINQ extension method
        public static long SummariseSequence<T>(this IEnumerable<T>
sequence)
        {
            return sequence.LongCount();
        }
    }
}
```

To use your LINQ extension methods in a project, you would simply need to reference the class library assembly because the `System.Linq` namespace is usually already imported.

In the **Ch09_LinqToObjects** project, add a reference to the **Ch09_MyLINQExtensions** assembly.

Modify the LINQ query to call your chainable extension method as follows:

```
var query = names
    .ProcessSequence()
    .Where(name => name.Length > 4)
    .OrderBy(name => name.Length)
```

```
.ThenBy(name => name);
```

If you run the console application, then you will see the same output as before because your method doesn't actually modify the sequence. But you now know how to extend LINQ with your own functionality.

Working with LINQ to XML

LINQ to XML is a provider that allows you to use LINQ to query and manipulate XML.

Generating XML using LINQ to XML

Add a new console application project named **Ch09_LINQandXML**. Add a new **ADO.NET Entity Data Model** item named **Northwind**. Use **Code First from database**, connect to the Northwind database on the server named (localdb)\mssqllocaldb, and select all the tables.

Import `System.Xml.Linq`. In the `Main` method, write the following statements:

```
var db = new Northwind();
var products = db.Products.ToArray();

var xml = new XElement("products",
    from p in products
    select new XElement("product",
        new XAttribute("id", p.ProductID),
        new XAttribute("price", p.UnitPrice),
        new XElement("name", p.ProductName)));

Console.WriteLine(xml.ToString());
```

Run the application. Notice that the structure of the XML generated matches the elements and attributes that the LINQ to XML statement declaratively described in the preceding code:

```
<products>
  <product id="1" price="18.0000">
    <name>Chai</name>
  </product>
  <product id="2" price="19.0000">
    <name>Chang</name>
  </product>
  <product id="3" price="10.0000">
    <name>Aniseed Syrup</name>
  </product>
```

Reading XML by using LINQ to XML

The .NET Framework uses XML to store its configuration. You might want to use LINQ to XML to more easily query those files.

In the **Solution Explorer** window, double-click on the App.config file for the **Ch09_LINQandXML** project and add the following into the <configuration> element:

```
<appSettings>
  <add key="color" value="red" />
  <add key="size" value="large" />
  <add key="price" value="23.99" />
</appSettings>
```

Back in the Program class, add the following statements to load the configuration file for this console application, use LINQ to XML to search for an element named appSettings and its descendants named add, then project the XML into an array of an anonymous type with a Key and Value property, and then enumerate through the array to show the results:

```
XDocument doc = XDocument.Load("Ch09_LINQandXML.exe.config");

var appSettings = doc.Descendants("appSettings").Descendants("add")
    .Select(node => new
    {
        Key = node.Attribute("key").Value,
        Value = node.Attribute("value").Value
    })
    .ToArray();

foreach (var item in appSettings)
{
    WriteLine($"{item.Key}: {item.Value}");
}
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* to run the application and view the output:

```
color: red
size: large
price: 23.99
```


Practicing and exploring

Test your knowledge and understanding by answering some questions, get some hands-on practice, and explore, with deeper research into the topics covered in this chapter.

Exercise 9.1 – test your knowledge

Answer the following questions:

1. What are the two requirements to use LINQ?
2. Which LINQ extension method would you use to return a subset of properties from a type?
3. Which LINQ extension method would you use to filter a sequence?
4. List five LINQ extension methods that perform aggregation.
5. What is the difference between the `Select` and `SelectMany` extension methods?

Exercise 9.2 – practice querying with LINQ

Create a console application named **Ch09_Exercise02** that prompts the user for a city and then lists the company names for Northwind customers in that city, as shown in the following output:

```
Enter the name of a city: London
There are 6 customers in London:
Around the Horn
B's Beverages
Consolidated Holdings
Eastern Connection
North/South
Seven Seas Imports
```

Enhance the application by displaying a list of all unique cities that customers already reside in as a prompt to the user before they enter their preferred city:

```
Aachen, Albuquerque, Anchorage, Århus, Barcelona, Barquisimeto, Bergamo,
Berlin, Bern, Boise, Bräcke, Brandenburg, Bruxelles, Buenos Aires, Butte,
Campinas, Caracas, Charleroi, Cork, Cowes, Cunewalde, Elgin, Eugene,
Frankfurt a.M., Genève, Graz, Helsinki, I. de Margarita, Kirkland,
Kobenhavn, Köln, Lander, Leipzig, Lille, Lisboa, London, Luleå, Lyon,
Madrid, Mannheim, Marseille, México D.F., Montréal, München, Münster,
Nantes, Oulu, Paris, Portland, Reggio Emilia, Reims, Resende, Rio de
Janeiro, Salzburg, San Cristóbal, San Francisco, Sao Paulo, Seattle,
Sevilla, Stavern, Strasbourg, Stuttgart, Torino, Toulouse, Tsawassen,
Vancouver, Versailles, Walla Walla, Warszawa
```

Exercise 9.3 – explore topics

Use the following links to read more details about the topics covered in this chapter:

- **Query Syntax and Method Syntax in LINQ (C#):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/bb397947.aspx>
- **101 LINQ Samples:** <https://code.msdn.microsoft.com/101-LINQ-Samples-3fb9811b>
- **Parallel LINQ (PLINQ):** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd460688\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd460688(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **LINQ to XML:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/bb387098.aspx>
- **LINQPad – The .NET Programmer’s Playground:** <https://www.linqpad.net/>

Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to write LINQ queries to select, project, filter, sort, join, and group data in many different formats, including XML, which are tasks you will perform every day.

In the next chapter, you will learn how to manage files and streams, encode and decode text, and perform serialization.

Chapter 10. Working with Files, Streams, and Serialization

This chapter is about reading and writing to files and streams, encoding and decoding text, and serialization.

This chapter will cover the following topics:

- Managing the filesystem
- Reading and writing with streams
- Encoding text
- Serializing object graphs

Managing the filesystem

Your applications will often need to perform input and output with files and directories. The `System.IO` namespace contains classes for this purpose.

Managing directories

Start Microsoft Visual Studio 2015. In Visual Studio, press *Ctrl + Shift + N* or choose **File | New | Project....**

In the **New Project** dialog, in the **Installed Templates** list, select **Visual C#**. In the center list, select **Console Application**, type **Name** as **Ch10_FileSystem**, change location to **C:\Code**, type solution name as **Chapter10**, and then click on **OK**.

At the top of the `Program.cs` file, add the following import statements:

```
using static System.Console;  
using System.IO;
```

In the `Main` method, write the following statements to check for the existence of a directory, and then, create and delete it:

```
// define a directory  
string dir = @"C:\Code\Ch10_Example\";  
// check if it exists  
WriteLine($"Does {dir} exist? {Directory.Exists(dir)}");  
// create a directory  
Directory.CreateDirectory(dir);  
WriteLine($"Does {dir} exist? {Directory.Exists(dir)}");  
// delete a directory  
Directory.Delete(dir);  
WriteLine($"Does {dir} exist? {Directory.Exists(dir)}");
```

Run the application by pressing *Ctrl + F5* and notice the output:

```
Does C:\Code\Ch10_Example\ exist? False  
Does C:\Code\Ch10_Example\ exist? True  
Does C:\Code\Ch10_Example\ exist? False
```

Managing files

In the Main method, add the following statements to:

- Check for the existence of a file
- Create a text file
- Write a line of text to the file
- Copy the file to a backup
- Delete the original file
- Read the backup file's contents

```
string textFile = @"C:\Code\Ch10.txt";
string backupFile = @"C:\Code\Ch10.bak";

// check if a file exists
WriteLine($"Does {textFile} exist? {File.Exists(textFile)}");

// create a new text file and write a line to it
StreamWriter textWriter = File.CreateText(textFile);
textWriter.WriteLine("Hello C#!");
textWriter.Dispose();
WriteLine($"Does {textFile} exist? {File.Exists(textFile)}");

// copy a file and overwrite if it already exists
File.Copy(textFile, backupFile, true);
WriteLine($"Does {backupFile} exist? {File.Exists(backupFile)}");

// delete a file
File.Delete(textFile);
WriteLine($"Does {textFile} exist? {File.Exists(textFile)}");

// read from a text file
string textReader = File.OpenText(backupFile);
WriteLine(textReader.ReadToEnd());
textReader.Dispose();
```

Rerun the application and notice the output:

```
Does C:\Code\Ch10.txt exist? False
Does C:\Code\Ch10.txt exist? True
Does C:\Code\Ch10.bak exist? True
Does C:\Code\Ch10.txt exist? False
Hello C#!
```

Note

In the .NET Framework, you can use either the `Close` or `Dispose` method when you are finished with `StreamReader` or `StreamWriter`. In the .NET Core, you can only use `Dispose`, because Microsoft has simplified the API.

Managing paths

Sometimes you need to work with paths, for example, you might want to extract just the folder name, just the file name, or just the extension. Sometimes, you need to generate temporary folders and file names. You can do this with the Path class.

Add the following statements to the Main method:

```
WriteLine($"File Name: {Path.GetFileName(textFile)}");  
WriteLine($"File Name without Extension:  
{Path.GetFileNameWithoutExtension(textFile)}");  
WriteLine($"File Extension: {Path.GetExtension(textFile)}");  
WriteLine($"Random File Name: {Path.GetRandomFileName()}");  
WriteLine($"Temporary File Name: {Path.GetTempFileName()}");
```

Rerun the application:

```
File Name: Ch10.txt  
File Name without Extension: Ch10  
File Extension: .txt  
Random File Name: u45w1zki.co3  
Temporary File Name: C:\Users\Mark\AppData\Local\Temp\tmpDF0B.tmp
```

Getting file information

To get more information about a file or directory, you can create an instance of the `FileInfo` or `DirectoryInfo` class.

Add the following statements to the end of the `Main` method:

```
string backup = @"C:\Code\Ch10.bak";
string info = new FileInfo(backup);
WriteLine($"{backup} contains {info.Length} bytes.");
WriteLine($"{backup} was last accessed {info.LastAccessTime}.");
WriteLine($"{backup} has readonly set to {info.IsReadOnly}.");
```

Rerun the application and see the output.:

```
C:\Code\Ch10.bak contains 11 bytes.
C:\Code\Ch10.bak was last accessed 29/08/2015 16:25:47.
C:\Code\Ch10.bak has readonly set to False.
```


Reading and writing with streams

A **stream** is a sequence of bytes.

There is an abstract class named `Stream` that represents a stream. There are many classes that inherit from this base class, so they all work the same way. In the following table are some of the common members of the `Stream` class:

Member	Description
<code>CanRead, CanWrite</code>	Determines whether you can read to and write from the stream
<code>Length, Position</code>	Determines the total number of bytes and the current position within the stream
<code>Close()</code>	Closes the stream and releases its resources
<code>Flush()</code>	If the stream has a buffer, then it is cleared and written to the underlying stream
<code>Read()</code>	Reads a specified number of bytes from the stream into a byte array and advances the position
<code>ReadByte()</code>	Reads the next byte from the stream and advances the position
<code>Seek()</code>	Moves the position to the specified position (if <code>CanSeek</code> is <code>true</code>)
<code>Write()</code>	Writes the contents of a byte array into the stream
<code>WriteByte()</code>	Writes a byte to the stream

Storage streams can be read and written to, and the bytes will be stored in that location. The following table has examples of storage stream classes:

Class	Description
<code>FileStream</code>	Stored in the filesystem
<code>MemoryStream</code>	Stored in memory in the current process
<code>NetworkStream</code>	Stored at a network location

Function streams can only be “plugged onto” other streams to add functionality. The following table has examples of function stream classes:

Class	Description
<code>CryptoStream</code>	Encrypts and decrypts the stream
<code>GZipStream, DeflateStream</code>	Compresses and decompresses the stream
<code>AuthenticatedStream</code>	Sends credentials across the stream

Although there will be occasions where you need to work with streams at a low level,

most often, you can plug helper classes into the chain to make things easier. Here are some helper classes to handle common scenarios:

Class	Description
StreamReader	Reads from streams as text
StreamWriter	Writes to streams as text
XmlReader	Reads from streams as XML
XmlWriter	Writes to streams as XML
BinaryReader	Reads from streams as .NET types
BinaryWriter	Writes to streams as .NET types

Writing to text and XML streams

Add a new console application project named **Ch10_Streams**. Set the solution's start-up project to be the current selection.

Import the `System.IO` and `System.Xml` namespaces, statically import the `System.Console` type, and add the following statement to the `Main` method:

```
// define an array of strings
string[] callsigns = new string[] { "Husker", "Starbuck", "Apollo",
"Boomer", "Bulldog", "Athena", "Helo", "Racetrack" };

// define a file to write to using a text writer helper
string textFile = @"C:\Code\Ch10_Streams.txt";
StreamWriter text = File.CreateText(textFile);

// enumerate the strings writing each one to the stream
foreach (string item in callsigns)
{
    text.WriteLine(item);
}
text.Dispose(); // release the stream resources

// output all the contents of the file to the Console
WriteLine($"{textFile} contains {new FileInfo(textFile).Length} bytes.");
WriteLine(File.ReadAllText(textFile));

// define a file to write to using the XML writer helper
string xmlFile = @"C:\Code\Ch10_Streams.xml";
FileStream xmlFileStream = File.Create(xmlFile);
XmlWriter xml = XmlWriter.Create(xmlFileStream, new XmlWriterSettings {
Indent = true });

// write the XML declaration
xml.WriteStartDocument();

// write a root element
xml.WriteStartElement("callsigns");

// enumerate the strings writing each one to the stream
foreach (string item in callsigns)
{
    xml.WriteElementString("callsign", item);
}

// write the close root element
xml.WriteEndElement();
xml.Dispose();

// output all the contents of the file to the Console
WriteLine($"{xmlFile} contains {new FileInfo(xmlFile).Length} bytes.");
WriteLine(File.ReadAllText(xmlFile));
```

Run the application using *Ctrl + F5*:

C:\Code\Ch10_Streams.txt contains 68 bytes.

Husker
Starbuck
Apollo
Boomer
Bulldog
Athena
Helo
Racetrack

C:\Code\Ch10_Streams.xml contains 320 bytes.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
```

```
<callsigns>
```

```
  <callsign>Husker</callsign>
```

```
  <callsign>Starbuck</callsign>
```

```
  <callsign>Apollo</callsign>
```

```
  <callsign>Boomer</callsign>
```

```
  <callsign>Bulldog</callsign>
```

```
  <callsign>Athena</callsign>
```

```
  <callsign>Helo</callsign>
```

```
  <callsign>Racetrack</callsign>
```

```
</callsigns>
```

Compressing streams

XML is relatively verbose, so it takes up more space in bytes than plain text. We could squeeze the XML using a common compression algorithm known as **GZIP**.

Import the following namespace:

```
using System.IO.Compression;
```

Add the following code to the end of the Main method:

```
// compress the XML output
string gzipFilePath = @"C:\Code\Ch10.gzip";
FileStream gzipFile = File.Create(gzipFilePath);
GZipStream compressor = new GZipStream(gzipFile, CompressionMode.Compress);
XmlWriter xmlGzip = XmlWriter.Create(compressor);
xmlGzip.WriteStartDocument();
xmlGzip.WriteStartElement("callsigns");
foreach (string item in callsigns)
{
    xmlGzip.WriteElementString("callsign", item);
}
xmlGzip.Dispose();
compressor.Dispose(); // also closes the underlying stream

// output all the contents of the compressed file to the Console
WriteLine($"{gzipFilePath} contains {new FileInfo(gzipFilePath).Length} bytes.");
WriteLine(File.ReadAllText(gzipFilePath));

// read a compressed file
WriteLine("Reading the compressed XML file:");
gzipFile = File.Open(gzipFilePath, FileMode.Open);
GZipStream decompressor = new GZipStream(gzipFile, CompressionMode.Decompress);
XmlReader reader = XmlReader.Create(decompressor);
while (reader.Read())
{
    // check if we are currently on an element node named callsign
    if ((reader.NodeType == XmlNodeType.Element) && (reader.Name == "callsign"))
    {
        reader.Read(); // move to the Text node inside the element
        WriteLine($"{reader.Value}"); // read its value
    }
}
reader.Dispose();
decompressor.Dispose();
```

Rerun the application and notice that the compressed XML is less than half the size of the same XML without compression:

C:\Code\Ch10.gzip contains 144 bytes.

```
▼ ◆ {??}En?BYjQqf~?????Bj^r~Jf^??RiI?????MrbNNqfz^1?i?QZ??Zd?
*!@H*?$_%?
&gc?t,????*????H?????t?&?d??%b??H?aUPbrjIQ"?-?◀?◆ ??9→L☺
```

Reading the compressed XML file:

Husker

Starbuck

Apollo

Boomer

Bulldog

Athena

Helo

Racetrack

Encoding text

Text characters can be represented in different ways. For example, the Western alphabet can be encoded using Morse code, into a series of dots and dashes for transmission over a telegraph line.

In a similar way, text inside a computer is stored as bits; ones and zeros. .NET uses a standard called **Unicode** to encode text internally. Sometimes, you will need to move text outside .NET for use by systems that do not use Unicode or use a variation of Unicode. The following table shows some alternative encodings:

Encoding	Description
ASCII	Encodes a limited range of characters using the lower seven bits of a byte
UTF-8	Represents each Unicode code point as a sequence of one to four bytes
UTF-16	Represents each Unicode code point as a sequence of one or two 16-bit integers
ANSI/ISO encodings	Provides support for a variety of code pages that are used to support a specific language or group of languages

Encoding strings as byte arrays

Add a new console application project named **Ch10_Encoding**.

Import the `System.Text` namespace and add the following statement to the `Main` method. The code encodes a string using the chosen encoding, loops through each byte, and then decodes back into a string and outputs it:

```
WriteLine("Encodings");
WriteLine("[1] ASCII");
WriteLine("[2] UTF-7");
WriteLine("[3] UTF-8");
WriteLine("[4] UTF-16 (Unicode)");
WriteLine("[5] UTF-32");
WriteLine("[any other key] Default");

// choose an encoding
Write("Press a number to choose an encoding: ");
ConsoleKey number = ReadKey(false).Key;
WriteLine();
WriteLine();

Encoding encoder;
switch (number)
{
    case ConsoleKey.D1:
        encoder = Encoding.ASCII;
        break;
    case ConsoleKey.D2:
        encoder = Encoding.UTF7;
        break;
    case ConsoleKey.D3:
        encoder = Encoding.UTF8;
        break;
    case ConsoleKey.D4:
        encoder = Encoding.Unicode;
        break;
    case ConsoleKey.D5:
        encoder = Encoding.UTF32;
        break;
    default:
        encoder = Encoding.GetEncoding(0);
        break;
}

// define a string to encode
string message = "A pint of milk is £1.99";

// encode the string into a byte array
byte[] encoded = encoder.GetBytes(message);

// check how many bytes the encoding needed
WriteLine($"{encoder.GetType().Name} uses {encoded.Length} bytes.");

// enumerate each byte
```

```

WriteLine($"Byte Hex Char");
foreach (byte b in encoded)
{
    WriteLine($"{b,4} {b.ToString("X"),4} {(char)b,5}");
}

// decode the byte array back into a string and display it
string decoded = encoder.GetString(encoded);
WriteLine(decoded);

```

Run the application and press 1 to choose ASCII. Notice that when outputting the bytes, the pound sign (£) cannot be represented in ASCII, so it uses a question mark (?) instead:

Encodings

```

[1] ASCII
[2] UTF-7
[3] UTF-8
[4] UTF-16 (Unicode)
[5] UTF-32
[any other key] Default
Press a number to choose an encoding: 1

```

ASCIIEncoding uses 23 bytes.

Byte	Hex	Char
65	41	A
32	20	
112	70	p
105	69	i
110	6E	n
116	74	t
32	20	
111	6F	o
102	66	f
32	20	
109	6D	m
105	69	i
108	6C	l
107	6B	k
32	20	
105	69	i
115	73	s
32	20	
63	3F	?
49	31	1
46	2E	.
57	39	9
57	39	9

A pint of milk is ?1.99

Rerun the application and press 3 to choose UTF-8. Notice that UTF-8 requires one extra byte (24 bytes instead of 23 bytes), but it can store the £:

UTF8Encoding uses 24 bytes.

Byte	Hex	Char
65	41	A
32	20	

112	70	p
105	69	i
110	6E	n
116	74	t
32	20	
111	6F	o
102	66	f
32	20	
109	6D	m
105	69	i
108	6C	l
107	6B	k
32	20	
105	69	i
115	73	s
32	20	
194	C2	Â
163	A3	£
49	31	1
46	2E	.
57	39	9
57	39	9

A pint of milk is £1.99

Rerun the application and press 4 to choose Unicode (UTF-16). Notice that UTF-16 requires two bytes for every character, but it can store the £:

UnicodeEncoding uses 46 bytes.

Encoding and decoding text in files

When using stream helper classes such as `StreamReader` and `StreamWriter`, you can specify the encoding you want to use. As you write to the helper, the strings will automatically be encoded, and as you read from the helper, the bytes will be automatically decoded. This is how you can specify the encoding:

```
var reader = new StreamReader(stream, Encoding.UTF7);  
var writer = new StreamWriter(stream, Encoding.UTF7);
```

Tip

Often, you won't have a choice of encoding to use, because you will be generating a file for use by another system. However, if you do, pick one that uses the least amount of bytes but can store every character you need.

Serializing object graphs

Serialization is the process of converting a live object into a sequence of bytes using a specified format. **Deserialization** is the reverse process.

There are dozens of formats you can choose, but the two most common ones are **eXtensible Markup Language (XML)** and **JavaScript Object Notation (JSON)**.

Tip

JSON is more compact and is best for web and mobile applications. XML is more verbose, but is better supported on older systems.

.NET has multiple classes that will serialize to and from XML and JSON. We will start by looking at `XmlSerializer` and `JavaScriptSerializer`.

Serializing with XML

Add a new console application project named **Ch10_Serialization**.

Note

If you are targeting the .NET Core, then you would need to manually add the latest version of the `System.Xml.XmlSerializer` NuGet package.

To show a common example, we will define a custom class to store information about a person and then create an object graph using a list of `Person` instances with nesting.

Add a class named `Person` with the following definition. Notice that the `Salary` property is protected, meaning it is only accessible to itself and the derived classes. To populate the salary, the class has a constructor with a single parameter to set the initial salary:

```
public class Person
{
    public Person(decimal initialSalary)
    {
        Salary = initialSalary;
    }
    public string FirstName { get; set; }
    public string LastName { get; set; }
    public DateTime DateOfBirth { get; set; }
    public HashSet<Person> Children { get; set; }
    protected decimal Salary { get; set; }
}
```

Back in `Program.cs`, import the following namespaces:

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Xml.Serialization;
using System.IO;
using static System.Console;
```

Add the following statements to the `Main` method:

```
// create an object graph
var people = new List<Person>
{
    new Person(30000M) { FirstName = "Alice", LastName = "Smith",
DateOfBirth = new DateTime(1974, 3, 14) },
    new Person(40000M) { FirstName = "Bob", LastName = "Jones", DateOfBirth
= new DateTime(1969, 11, 23) },
    new Person(20000M) { FirstName = "Charlie", LastName = "Rose",
DateOfBirth = new DateTime(1964, 5, 4), Children = new HashSet<Person>
{ new Person(0M) { FirstName = "Sally", LastName = "Rose",
DateOfBirth = new DateTime(1990, 7, 12) } } }
};

// create a file to write to
string xmlFilepath = @"C:\Code\Ch10_People.xml";
FileStream xmlStream = File.Create(xmlFilepath);
```

```
// create an object that will format a List of Persons as XML
var xs = new XmlSerializer(typeof(List<Person>));

// serialize the object graph to the stream
xs.Serialize(xmlStream, people);

// you must dispose the stream to release the file lock
xmlStream.Dispose();

WriteLine($"Written {new FileInfo(xmlFilepath).Length} bytes of XML to
{xmlFilepath}");
WriteLine();

// Display the serialized object graph
WriteLine(File.ReadAllText(xmlFilepath));
```

Run the application with *Ctrl + F5*. Notice that an exception is thrown:

**Unhandled Exception: System.InvalidOperationException:
Ch10_Serialization.Person cannot be serialized because it does not have a
parameterless constructor.**

Back in the `Person.cs` file, add the following statement to define a parameter-less constructor. Notice that the constructor does not need to do anything, but it must exist so that the `XmlSerializer` can call it to instantiate new `Person` instances when deserializing:

```
public Person() { }
```

Rerun the application and see the output. Notice that the object graph is serialized and the `Salary` property is not included:

Written 778 bytes of XML to C:\Code\Ch10_People.xml

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<ArrayOfPerson xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">
  <Person>
    <FirstName>Alice</FirstName>
    <LastName>Smith</LastName>
    <DateOfBirth>1974-03-14T00:00:00</DateOfBirth>
  </Person>
  <Person>
    <FirstName>Bob</FirstName>
    <LastName>Jones</LastName>
    <DateOfBirth>1969-11-23T00:00:00</DateOfBirth>
  </Person>
  <Person>
    <FirstName>Charlie</FirstName>
    <LastName>Rose</LastName>
    <DateOfBirth>1964-05-04T00:00:00</DateOfBirth>
    <Children>
      <Person>
        <FirstName>Sally</FirstName>
        <LastName>Rose</LastName>
        <DateOfBirth>1990-07-12T00:00:00</DateOfBirth>
      </Person>
    </Children>
  </Person>
</ArrayOfPerson>
```

```
    </Children>
  </Person>
</ArrayOfPerson>
```

We could make the XML more efficient using attributes instead of elements for some fields.

In the `Person.cs` file, import the `System.Xml.Serialization` namespace and modify all the properties, except `Children`, with the `[XmlAttribute]` attribute:

```
[XmlAttribute("fname")]
public string FirstName { get; set; }
[XmlAttribute("lname")]
public string LastName { get; set; }
[XmlAttribute("dob")]
public DateTime DateOfBirth { get; set; }
```

Rerun the application and notice that the XML is now more efficient:

Written 473 bytes of XML to C:\Code\Ch10_People.xml

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<ArrayOfPerson xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
xmlns:xsd="
http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema">
  <Person fname="Alice" lname="Smith" dob="1974-03-14T00:00:00" />
  <Person fname="Bob" lname="Jones" dob="1969-11-23T00:00:00" />
  <Person fname="Charlie" lname="Rose" dob="1964-05-04T00:00:00">
    <Children>
      <Person fname="Sally" lname="Rose" dob="1990-07-12T00:00:00" />
    </Children>
  </Person>
</ArrayOfPerson>
```

Deserializing with XML

Add the following statements to the end of the Main method:

```
FileStream xmlLoad = File.Open(xmlFilepath, FileMode.Open);
// deserialize and cast the object graph into a List of Person
var loadedPeople = (List<Person>)xs.Deserialize(xmlLoad);
foreach (var item in loadedPeople)
{
    WriteLine($"{item.LastName} has {item.Children.Count} children.");
}
xmlLoad.Dispose();
```

Rerun the application and notice that the people are loaded successfully from the XML file:

```
Smith has 0 children.
Jones has 0 children.
Rose has 1 children.
```

Customizing the XML

There are many other attributes that can be used to control the XML generated. See the references at the end of this chapter for more information.

Tip

When using `XmlSerializer`, remember that only `public` fields and properties are included, and the type must have a parameter-less constructor. You can customize the output with attributes.

Serializing with JSON

Add a reference to the `System.Web.Extensions` assembly.

Note

The `System.Web.Extensions` assembly is supported by the .NET Framework only. Use Newtonsoft's JSON.NET if you need to serialize cross platform with the .NET Core, which can be found at <http://www.newtonsoft.com/json>

Import the following namespace at the top of the `Program.cs` file:

```
using System.Web.Script.Serialization;
```

Add the following statements to the end of the `Main` method:

```
// create a file to write to
string jsonFilepath = @"C:\Code\Ch10_People.json";
FileStream jsonStream = File.Create(jsonFilepath);

// create an object that will format as JSON
var jss = new JavaScriptSerializer();

// serialize the object graph into a string
string json = jss.Serialize(people);

// write the string to a file
var writer = new StreamWriter(jsonStream);
writer.Write(json);

// you must dispose the stream to release the file lock
writer.Dispose();

WriteLine();
WriteLine($"Written {new FileInfo(jsonFilepath).Length} bytes of JSON to:
{jsonFilepath}");

// Display the serialized object graph
WriteLine(File.ReadAllText(jsonFilepath));
```

Rerun the application, and notice that JSON requires less than half the number of bytes compared to XML with elements. It's even smaller than XML that uses attributes:

Written 380 bytes of JSON to: C:\Code\Ch10_People.json

```
[{"FirstName":"Alice","LastName":"Smith","DateOfBirth":"\\/Date(132451200000)\\/", "Children":null},
{"FirstName":"Bob","LastName":"Jones","DateOfBirth":"\\/Date(-3369600000)\\/", "Children":null},
{"FirstName":"Charlie","LastName":"Rose","DateOfBirth":"\\/Date(-17867880000)\\/", "Children":
[{"FirstName":"Sally","LastName":"Rose","DateOfBirth":"\\/Date(64773720000)\\/", "Children":null}]]
```

Tip

Use JSON to minimize the size of serialized object graphs. You can also use JSON when sending object graphs to web applications and mobile applications.

Serializing with other formats

There are many other formats built into .NET that you can use for serialization and even more if you purchase additional libraries.

Type	Description
<code>System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatter.Binary.BinaryFormatter</code>	This uses a Microsoft proprietary binary format. It should only be used when a .NET application needs to serialize and deserialize the object graph.
<code>System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatter.Soap.SoapFormatter</code>	This is used by ASP.NET XML web services to serialize with the SOAP format. To use it you must add a reference to the <code>System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatter</code> assembly and import the <code>System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatter</code> namespace.
<code>System.Runtime.Serialization.DataContractSerializer</code>	This is used by Windows Communication Foundation (WCF) to serialize with SOAP (or XML when an endpoint has the <code>webHttp</code> behavior). To use it yourself, you must add a reference to the <code>System.Runtime.Serialization</code> assembly and import the <code>System.Runtime.Serialization</code> namespace.
<code>System.Runtime.Serialization.DataContractJsonSerializer</code>	This is used by WCF to serialize into the JSON format when an endpoint has a <code>webHttp</code> behavior.
<code>System.Runtime.Serialization.IFormatter</code>	This is used to implement your own custom serializers.

Serializing with runtime serializers

BinaryFormatter type is one of the serializers that can be used only with .NET Framework. These are powerful, but they have the special requirement that the type being serialized must be marked as serializable using an attribute. Like JavaScriptSerializer, they are not cross-platform!

Ch10_Serialization, Version=1.0.0.0, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=null (.NETFramework,Version=v4.6.1)				
Target type	.NET Core (Cross-platform),Version=v5.0	.NET Framework,Version=v4.5	.NET Native,Version=v1.0	Recommended changes
System.Console	✓	✓	✗	
WriteLine	✓	✓	✗	
WriteLine(System.String)	✓	✓	✗	
System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatters.Binary.BinaryFormatter	✗	✓	✗	
#ctor	✗	✓	✗	
Serialize(System.IO.Stream,System.Object)	✗	✓	✗	
System.Web.Script.Serialization.JavaScriptSerializer	✗	✓	✗	Use JSON.NET instead
#ctor	✗	✓	✗	Use JSON.NET instead
Serialize(System.Object)	✗	✓	✗	Use JSON.NET instead

Import the `System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatters.Binary` namespace:

```
using System.Runtime.Serialization.Formatters.Binary;
```

At the bottom of the Main method, add the following statements:

```
string binaryFilepath = @"C:\Code\Ch10_People.bin";  
FileStream binaryStream = File.Create(binaryFilepath);  
var bf = new BinaryFormatter();  
bf.Serialize(binaryStream, people);  
binaryStream.Dispose();  
WriteLine($"Written {new FileInfo(binaryFilepath).Length} bytes of  
proprietary binary to {binaryFilepath}");  
WriteLine();  
// Display the serialized object graph  
WriteLine(File.ReadAllText(binaryFilepath));
```

Rerun the application and notice the exception that is thrown.:

Unhandled Exception: System.Runtime.Serialization.SerializationException: Type 'Ch10_Serialization.Person' in Assembly 'Ch10_Serialization, Version=1.0.0.0, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=null' is not marked as serializable.

In the `Person.cs`, add the `[Serializable]` attribute to the `Person` class:

```
[Serializable]  
public class Person
```

Rerun the application. Now, the object graph is successfully serialized:

written 1573 bytes of proprietary binary to C:\Code\Ch10_People.bin

```

☺   ????☺   ♀☺   ICh10_Serialization, Version=1.0.0.0,
Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=null☺   ?☺
System.Collections.Generic.List`1[[Ch10_Serialization.Person,
Ch10_Serialization, Version=1.0.0.0, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=null]]
♥   ♠_items♠_siz_version♦   ←Ch10_Serialization.Person[] ♥   ♥   ♥   ♥   ☺
♦   ♦↓Ch10_Serialization.Person☺   ♦   ♣   ♠♀   NSystem.Core,
Version=4.0.0.0, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=b77a5c561934e089♠♦
↓Ch10_Serialization.Person♠
→<FirstName>k__BackingField↓<LastName>k__BackingField↓<DateOfBirth>k__Backi
ngField↓<Children>k__BackingField↓<Salary>k__Ba?☺
System.Collections.Generic.HashSet`1[[Ch10_Serialization.Person,
Ch10_Serialization, Version=1.0.0.0, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=null]]
♣☺   ♠Alice♠   ♠Smith @??4? ♠30000☺♣   ♦   ♠   ♥Bob♠♂   ♠Jones @??Pa?
♦Rose ?rY?& ♪   ♠20000♠♪   ?☺
System.Collections.Generic.HashSet`1[[Ch10_Serialization.Person,
Ch10_Serialization, Version=1.0.0.0, Culture=neutral,
PublicKeyToken=null]]♦   VersioCompareCapacitElements ♥ ?☺
System.Collections.Generic.ObjectEqualityComparer`1[[Ch10_Serialization.Per
son, Ch10_Serialization, Version=1.0.0.0, Culture=neutral,
PublicKeyToken=null]]←Ch10_Serialization.Person[]☺   ☺   ☺   ♥
▶   ♦☺   ?☺
System.Collections.Generic.ObjectEqualityComparer`1[[Ch10_Serialization.Per
son, Ch10_Serialization, Version=1.0.0.0, Culture=neutral,
PublicKeyToken=null]]   ▶   ☺   ☺   ♦↓Ch10_Serialization.Person☺   @?
♦   ♠↑   ♠Sally!?? ☺0♂

```

Tip

Use the BinaryFormatter or any of the other runtime serializers only when you will serialize and deserialize with .NET Framework.

Practice and explore

Test your knowledge and understanding by answering some questions, getting some hands-on practice, and exploring this chapter's topics with deeper research.

Exercise 10.1 – test your knowledge

Answer the following questions:

1. What is the difference between using the `File` class and the `FileInfo` class?
2. What is the difference between the `ReadByte` method and the `Read` method of a stream?
3. When would you use `StringReader`, `TextReader`, and `StreamReader` classes?
4. What does the `DeflateStream` type do?
5. How many bytes per character does the UTF-8 encoding use?
6. What is an object graph?
7. What is the best serialization format to choose for minimizing space requirements?
8. What is the best serialization format to choose for cross-platform compatibility?
9. Which Microsoft technology uses the `DataContractSerializer` type by default?
10. Is it possible to create your own custom runtime serializers?

Exercise 10.2 – practice serializing as XML

Create a console application named **Ch10_Exercise02** that creates a list of shapes, uses serialization to save it to the filesystem using XML, and then deserializes it back:

```
// create a list of Shapes to serialize
var listOfShapes = new List<Shape>
{
    new Circle { Colour = "Red", Radius = 2.5 },
    new Rectangle { Colour = "Blue", Height = 20.0, Width = 10.0 },
    new Circle { Colour = "Green", Radius = 8 },
    new Circle { Colour = "Purple", Radius = 12.3 },
    new Rectangle { Colour = "Blue", Height = 45.0, Width = 18.0 }
};
```

Shapes should have a read-only property named `Area` so that when you deserialize, you can output a list of shapes, including their areas, as shown here:

```
List<Shape> loadedShapesXml = serializer.Xml.Deserialize(fileXml) as
List<Shape>;
foreach (Shape item in loadedShapesXml)
{
    WriteLine($"{item.GetType().Name} is {item.Colour} and has an area of
{item.Area}");
}
```

This is what your output should look like when you run the application:

Loading shapes from XML:

```
Circle is Red and has an area of 19.6349540849362
Rectangle is Blue and has an area of 200
Circle is Green and has an area of 201.061929829747
Circle is Purple and has an area of 475.2915525616
Rectangle is Blue and has an area of 810
```

Exercise 10.3 – explore serialization formats

Create a console application named **Ch10_Exercise03** that queries the Northwind database for all the categories and products, and then serializes the data using all the formats of serialization available in .NET. Which uses the least number of bytes?

Exercise 10.4 – explore Microsoft’s System.IO types

Use ILSpy to explore the Microsoft .NET Framework implementations of the Stream, FileStream, and StreamWriter classes. You will find those classes in the System.IO namespace in the mscorlib.dll assembly.

In particular, look at the Dispose and Close methods. My students often ask which to use and whether there is a difference. By viewing the actual implementation, you can find out.

The Close method looks like this:

```
// System.IO.Stream
+ /// <summary>Closes the current
- public virtual void Close()
{
    this.Dispose(true);
    GC.SuppressFinalize(this);
}
```

The Dispose method looks like this:

```
// System.IO.Stream
/// <summary>Releases all
[___DynamicallyInvokable]
- public void Dispose()
{
    this.Close();
}
```

Tip

In the .NET Core, Microsoft has removed the Close method so you must use the Dispose method instead.

Exercise 10.5 – explore topics

Use the following links to read more on this chapter's topics:

- **File and Stream I/O:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/k3352a4t\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/k3352a4t(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Character encoding in the .NET Framework:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms404377\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms404377(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Serialization:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/7ay27kt9\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/7ay27kt9(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Introducing XML serialization:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/182eeyhh\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/182eeyhh(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Serialization and deserialization:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms731073\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms731073(v=vs.110).aspx)

Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to read from and write to text files and XML files, how to compress and decompress files, how to encode and decode text, and how to serialize an object into JSON and XML (and deserialize it back again).

In the next chapter, you will learn how to protect data and applications.

Chapter 11. Protecting Your Data and Applications

This chapter is about protecting your data from being viewed by malicious users using encryption and from being manipulated or corrupted using hashing and signing. It is also about checking who is running your application and restricting their actions to only those that they are given permission to do.

Note

Security is tightly bound to the operating system, so this is an area that is not very well supported by the .NET Core (at least for now). To complete the exercises in this chapter, I recommend that you target the .NET Framework on Windows 10. Then, once you have learned the skills, you can try implementing them using the equivalent .NET Core types.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Understanding the vocabulary of protection
- Encrypting and decrypting data
- Hashing data
- Signing data
- Authenticating and authorizing users

Understanding the vocabulary of protection

There are many techniques to protect your applications and data, some of them are as follows:

- **Encryption and decryption:** This is a two-way process to convert cleartext into ciphertext and back again
- **Hashes:** This is a one-way process to; generate a hash to securely store passwords, or a hash can be used to detect malicious changes and corruption of data
- **Signatures:** This technique is used to ensure that data has come from someone you trust by validating a signature against someone's public key
- **Authentication:** This technique is used to identify someone by checking their credentials
- **Authorization:** This technique is used to ensure someone has permission to perform an action, or work with some data by checking the roles or groups they belong to

Tip

Best Practice

If security is important to you, then hire an experienced security expert for guidance rather than relying on advice found online. It is very easy to make small mistakes and leave your applications and data vulnerable without realizing until it is too late!

Keys and key sizes

Protection algorithms often use a **key**. Keys can be **symmetric** (also known as shared or secret because the same key is used to encrypt and decrypt) or **asymmetric** (a public-private key pair where the public key is used to encrypt and only the private key can be used to decrypt). Keys are represented by byte arrays of varying size.

Tip

Best Practice

Choose a bigger key size for stronger protection.

IVs and block sizes

When encrypting large amounts of data, there are likely to be repeating sequences. For example, in an English document the sequence of characters “the” would appear frequently. A good cracker would use this knowledge to make it easier to crack the encryption. Note the becomes hQ2 in the following example:

When **the** wind blew hard **the** umbrella broke.
5:s4&hQ2aj#D f9d1d£8fh"&hQ2s0)an DF8SFd#][1

We can avoid repeating sequences by dividing data into **blocks**. After encrypting a block, a byte array value is generated from that block and this value is fed into the next block to adjust the algorithm so that “the” isn’t encrypted in the same way. To encrypt the first block, we need a byte array to feed in. This is called the **initialization vector (IV)**.

Tip

Best Practice

Choose a small block size for stronger encryption.

Salts

A salt is a random byte array that is used as an additional input to a one-way hash function. If you do not use a salt when generating hashes, then when many of your users register with “**123456**” as their password (about 8% of users still do this!), they all have the same hashed value, and their account will be vulnerable to a dictionary attack.

When a user registers, a salt should be randomly generated and concatenated with their chosen password before being hashed. The output (but not the original password) is stored with the salt in the database.

When the user next logs in and enters their password, you look up their salt, concatenate it with the entered password, regenerate a hash, and then compare its value with the hash stored in the database. If they are the same, you know they entered the correct password.

Generating keys and IVs

Keys and IVs are byte arrays. You can reliably generate a key or IV using a **password-based key derivation function (PBKDF2)**. A good one is the `Rfc2898DeriveBytes` class, which takes a password, a salt, and an iteration count, and then generates keys and IVs by making calls to its `GetBytes` method.

Tip

Best Practice

The salt size should be 8 bytes or larger and the iteration count should be greater than zero. The minimum recommended number of iterations is 1000.

Encrypting and decrypting data

There are multiple encryption algorithms you can choose from in .NET. Some algorithms are implemented by the operating system and their names are suffixed with the text `CryptoServiceProvider`, some are implemented in managed code and their names are suffixed with the text `Managed`, some use symmetric keys, and some use asymmetric keys. The following table summarizes some of the more common encryption algorithms:

Type	Description
<code>RSACryptoServiceProvider</code>	This performs asymmetric encryption and decryption using the implementation of the RSA algorithm. RSA stands for Ron Rivest, Adi Shamir, and Leonard Adleman, who described it in 1978.
<code>AesManaged</code>	This provides a managed implementation of the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) symmetric algorithm that is based on Rijndael.
<code>RijndaelManaged</code>	This provides a managed implementation of the Rijndael symmetric algorithm.
<code>RC2CryptoServiceProvider</code>	This defines a wrapper to access the cryptographic service provider (CSP) implementation of the RC2 symmetric algorithm.
<code>DESCryptoServiceProvider</code>	This defines a wrapper to access the CSP version of the Data Encryption Standard (DES) symmetric algorithm.

Tip

Best Practice

Choose AES for symmetric encryption and RSA for asymmetric encryption.

Encrypting symmetrically with AES

To make it easier to reuse your protection code in the future, we will create a static class named `Protector` in its own class library.

Start Microsoft Visual Studio 2015. In Visual Studio, press *Ctrl + Shift + N* or navigate to **File | New | Project...**

In the **New Project** dialog, in the **Installed Templates** list, select **Visual C#**. In the list at the center, select **Class Library**, type the name **Ch11_Cryptography**, change the location to `C:\Code`, type the solution name as **Chapter11**, and then click on **OK**.

Rename `Class1.cs` to `Protector.cs`. Change its contents to look like this:

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Security.Cryptography;
using System.Text;

namespace Ch11_Cryptography
{
    public static class Protector
    {
        // salt size must be at least 8 bytes, we will use 16 bytes
        private static readonly byte[] salt =
Encoding.Unicode.GetBytes("7BANANAS");

        // iterations must be at least 1000, we will use 2000
        private static readonly int iterations = 2000;

        public static string Encrypt(string plainText, string password)
        {
            byte[] plainBytes = Encoding.Unicode.GetBytes(plainText);
            var aes = Aes.Create();
            var pbkdf2 = new Rfc2898DeriveBytes(password, salt,
iterations);
            aes.Key = pbkdf2.GetBytes(32); // set a 256-bit key
            aes.IV = pbkdf2.GetBytes(16); // set a 128-bit IV
            var ms = new MemoryStream();
            using (var cs = new CryptoStream(ms, aes.CreateEncryptor(),
CryptoStreamMode.Write))
            {
                cs.Write(plainBytes, 0, plainBytes.Length);
            }
            return Convert.ToBase64String(ms.ToArray());
        }

        public static string Decrypt(string cryptoText, string password)
        {
            byte[] cryptoBytes = Convert.FromBase64String(cryptoText);
            var aes = Aes.Create();
            var pbkdf2 = new Rfc2898DeriveBytes(password, salt,
iterations);
            aes.Key = pbkdf2.GetBytes(32);
            aes.IV = pbkdf2.GetBytes(16);
```



```

        var ms = new MemoryStream();
        using (var cs = new CryptoStream(ms, aes.CreateDecryptor(),
CryptoStreamMode.Write))
        {
            cs.Write(cryptoBytes, 0, cryptoBytes.Length);
        }
        return Encoding.Unicode.GetString(ms.ToArray());
    }
}

```

Note the following about the preceding code:

- We used double the recommended salt size and iteration count
- Although the salt and iteration count can be hardcoded, the password *must* be passed at runtime when calling `Encrypt` and `Decrypt`
- We use a temporary `MemoryStream` variable to store the results of encrypting and decrypting and then call `ToArray` to turn the stream into a byte array
- We convert the encrypted byte arrays to and from the Base64 encoding to make them easier to read

Tip

Best Practice

Never hardcode a password in your source code because it can be read using ILDASM and other tools.

Add a new Console Application project named **Ch11_Encryption**. Add a reference to the **Ch11_Cryptography** assembly and then import the following namespaces:

```

using Ch11_Cryptography;
using static System.Console;

```

In the `Main` method, add the following statements to prompt the user for a message and a password and then encrypt and decrypt:

```

Write("Enter a message that you want to encrypt: ");
string message = ReadLine();
Write("Enter a password: ");
string password = ReadLine();
string cryptoText = Protector.Encrypt(message, password);
WriteLine($"Encrypted text: {cryptoText}");
string clearText = Protector.Decrypt(cryptoText, password);
WriteLine($"Decrypted text: {clearText}");

```

Run the application and try entering a message and password, and see the output.

```

Enter a message that you want to encrypt: Hello Bob
Enter a password: secret
Encrypted text: pV5qPDF1CCZmGzUMH2gapFSkn5731g7tMj5ajice3cQ=
Decrypted text: Hello Bob

```


Hashing data

There are multiple hash algorithms you can choose from in .NET. Some do not use any key, some use symmetric keys, and some use asymmetric keys.

There are two important factors to consider when choosing a hash algorithm:

- **Collision resistance:** How rare is it to find two inputs that share the same hash?
- **Preimage resistance:** For a hash, how difficult would it be to find another input that shares the same hash?

Here are some common hashing algorithms:

Algorithm	Hash size	Description
MD5	16 bytes	This is commonly used because it is fast, but it is not collision resistant.
SHA1, SHA256, SHA384, SHA512	20 bytes, 32 bytes, 48 bytes, 64 bytes	These are Secure Hashing Algorithm 2nd generation algorithms (SHA2) with different hash sizes. The use of SHA1 on the Internet has been deprecated since 2011.

Note

Best Practice

Avoid MD5 and SHA1 because they have known weaknesses. Choose a larger hash size to improve collision and preimage resistance.

Hashing with SHA256

In the Ch11_Cryptography class library project, add a new class named User. This will represent a user stored in memory, a file, or a database.

```
public class User
{
    public string Name { get; set; }
    public string Salt { get; set; }
    public string SaltedHashedPassword { get; set; }
}
```

Add the following code to the Protector class. We will use a dictionary to store multiple users in memory. There are two methods, one to register a new user and one to validate their password when they subsequently log in.

```
public static Dictionary<string, User> Users = new Dictionary<string, User>
();
```

```
public static User Register(string username, string password)
{
    // generate a random salt
    var rng = RandomNumberGenerator.Create();
    var saltBytes = new byte[16];
    rng.GetBytes(saltBytes);
    var saltText = Convert.ToBase64String(saltBytes);

    // generate the salted and hashed password
    var sha = SHA256.Create();
    var saltedPassword = password + saltText;
    var saltedhashedPassword =
Convert.ToBase64String(sha.ComputeHash(Encoding.Unicode.GetBytes(saltedPass
word))));

    var user = new User
    {
        Name = username,
        Salt = saltText,
        SaltedHashedPassword = saltedhashedPassword
    };
    Users.Add(user.Name, user);

    return user;
}

public static bool CheckPassword(string username, string password)
{
    if (!Users.ContainsKey(username))
    {
        return false;
    }
    var user = Users[username];

    // re-generate the salted and hashed password
    var sha = SHA256.Create();
```

```

    var saltedPassword = password + user.Salt;
    var saltedhashedPassword =
Convert.ToBase64String(sha.ComputeHash(Encoding.Unicode.GetBytes(saltedPass
word)));

    return (saltedhashedPassword == user.SaltedHashedPassword);
}

```

Add a new Console Application project named **Ch11_Hashing**. Add a reference to the **Ch11_Cryptography** assembly and then import the following namespaces:

```

using Ch11_Cryptography;
using static System.Console;

```

In the Main method, add the following statements to register a user and prompt to register a second user, and then prompt to log in as one of those users and validate the password.

```

WriteLine("A user named Alice has been registered with Pa$$w0rd as her
password.");
var alice = Protector.Register("Alice", "Pa$$w0rd");
WriteLine($"Name: {alice.Name}");
WriteLine($"Salt: {alice.Salt}");
WriteLine($"Salted and hashed password: {alice.SaltedHashedPassword}");
WriteLine();
Write("Enter a different username to register: ");
string username = ReadLine();
Write("Enter a password to register: ");
string password = ReadLine();
var user = Protector.Register(username, password);
WriteLine($"Name: {user.Name}");
WriteLine($"Salt: {user.Salt}");
WriteLine($"Salted and hashed password: {user.SaltedHashedPassword}");

bool correctPassword = false;
while (!correctPassword)
{
    Write("Enter a username to log in: ");
    string loginUsername = ReadLine();
    Write("Enter a password to log in: ");
    string loginPassword = ReadLine();
    correctPassword = Protector.CheckPassword(loginUsername,
loginPassword);
    if (correctPassword)
    {
        WriteLine($"Correct! {loginUsername} has been logged in.");
    }
    else
    {
        WriteLine("Invalid username or password. Try again.");
    }
}
}

```

Run the application by pressing *Ctrl + F5* and view the output:

**A user named Alice has been registered with Pa\$\$w0rd as her password.
Name: Alice**

Salt: tLn3gRn9DXmp2oeuvBSxTg==

Salted and hashed password: w8Ub2aH5NNQ8MJarYsUgm29bbbl01V/9dlozjWs2Ipk=

Enter a different username to register: Bob

Enter a password to register: Pa\$\$w0rd

Name: Bob

Salt: zPU9YyFLaz0idhQkKpzY+g==

Salted and hashed password: 8w14w8WNHoZddEeIx2+UJhpHQqSs4EmyoazqjbmmEz0=

Enter a username to log in: Bob

Enter a password to log in: secret

Invalid username or password. Try again.

Enter a username to log in: Alice

Enter a password to log in: secret

Invalid username or password. Try again.

Enter a username to log in: Bob

Enter a password to log in: Pa\$\$w0rd

Correct! Bob has been logged in.

Note that even if two users register with the same password, they have randomly generated salts so that their salted and hashed passwords are different.

Signing data

To prove that some data has come from someone we trust, it can be signed. Actually, you don't sign the data itself, instead you sign a hash of the data. We will use the RSA algorithm combined with the SHA256 algorithm.

Signing with SHA256 and RSA

In the **Ch11_Cryptography** class library project, add the following code to the Protector class:

```
public static string PublicKey;

public static string GenerateSignature(string data)
{
    byte[] dataBytes = Encoding.Unicode.GetBytes(data);
    var sha = SHA256.Create();
    var hashedData = sha.ComputeHash(dataBytes);

    var rsa = RSA.Create();
    PublicKey = rsa.ToXmlString(false); // exclude private key

    var signer = new RSAPKCS1SignatureFormatter(rsa);
    signer.SetHashAlgorithm("SHA256");

    return Convert.ToBase64String(signer.CreateSignature(hashedData));
}

public static bool ValidateSignature(string data, string signature)
{
    byte[] dataBytes = Encoding.Unicode.GetBytes(data);
    var sha = SHA256.Create();
    var hashedData = sha.ComputeHash(dataBytes);

    byte[] signatureBytes = Convert.FromBase64String(signature);

    var rsa = RSA.Create();
    rsa.FromXmlString(PublicKey);

    var checker = new RSAPKCS1SignatureDeformatter(rsa);
    checker.SetHashAlgorithm("SHA256");

    return checker.VerifySignature(hashedData, signatureBytes);
}
```

Note the following about the preceding code:

- Only the public part of the public-private key pair needs to be made available to the code that is checking the signature, so we can pass the value `false` when we call the `ToXmlString` method.
- The hash algorithm used to generate the hash from the data must match the hash algorithm set on the signer and checker. In the preceding code, we used SHA256.

Add a new Console Application project named **Ch11_Signing**. Add a reference to the **Ch11_Cryptography** assembly, and then import the following namespaces:

```
using static System.Console;
using Ch11_Cryptography;
```

In the `Main` method, add the following code:

```

Write("Enter some text to sign: ");
string data = ReadLine();
var signature = Protector.GenerateSignature(data);
WriteLine($"Signature: {signature}");
WriteLine("Public key used to check signature:");
WriteLine(Protector.PublicKey);

if (Protector.ValidateSignature(data, signature))
{
    WriteLine("Correct! Signature is valid.");
}
else
{
    WriteLine("Invalid signature.");
}

```

Run the application and enter some text:

Enter some text to sign: The cat sat on the mat.

Signature:

**LSmfgRuRRvYzM1/jg7U7jkKINCu4KKGpFUCvCB87hmWpa3gDVLjLj0Wift+CktZuPSkc/gAnIzC
1bQC0yELsrNWzATnPDFa/B0Gpy0vAJ8VJ9FPs1vFy353mMnGcnQU8f0ummKgEv4r1JpsnkJQ41M
GUMNCH9YVod06Bn6o81g0=**

Public key used to check signature:

<RSAKeyValue>

**<Modulus>qPnY4UHIqJMuUJ0CQ4F0Xy/fxaugNFFe/QNikGsufdKrwa1t+CcQqCmWso4zUDW3NT
FCWFGilisJ4SqTBgYee/VT9UGuFng68TrZXNiNJ08dP80ZHNBirWkhtsNQx9A6rq9bZ/9dsjY1h
YsWpGKCw4WhxsHjmGuevQew8C+I2z0=</Modulus><Exponent>AQAB</Exponent>**

</RSAKeyValue>

Correct! Signature is valid.

Authenticating and authorizing users

Authentication is the process of discovering and verifying the identity of a user by validating their credentials against some authority.

There are multiple authentication mechanisms to choose from. They all implement a pair of interfaces: `IIdentity` and `IPrincipal`. The most common mechanism is Windows authentication.

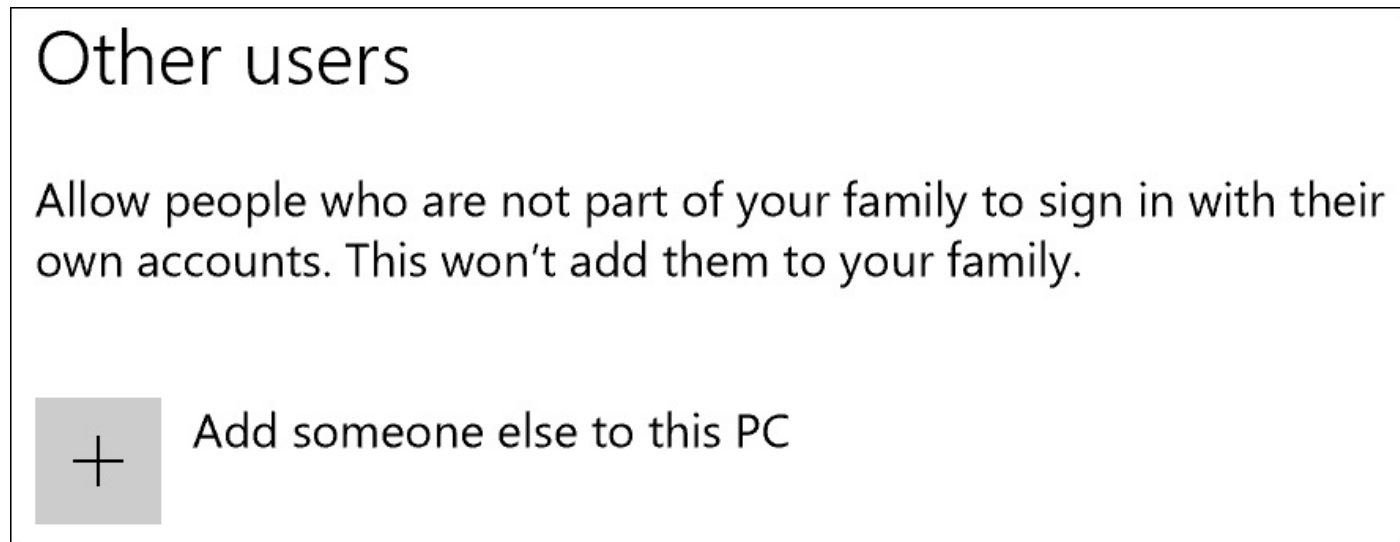
Tip

You can implement your own authentication mechanism using the `GenericIdentity` and `GenericPrincipal` classes, but that is beyond the scope of this book.

Managing local accounts

For testing purposes, we will create a new local user account.

In the Windows 10 Start Menu, navigate to **Settings | Accounts | Family and other users**. In the **Other users** section, click on **Add someone else to this PC**, as shown in the following screenshot:



In the **How will this person sign in?** step, click on **The person who I want to add doesn't have an email address**. In the **Let's create an account** step, click on **Add a user without a Microsoft account**.

In the **Create an account for this PC** step, enter AliceJones for the username and Pa\$\$w0rd for the password, and then click **Next**.



Create an account for this PC

If you want to use a password, choose something that will be easy for you to remember but hard for others to guess.

Who's going to use this PC?

Make it secure.

Back

Next

Authenticating with Windows

Add a new Console Application project named **Ch11_Authentication**. Import the following namespaces:

```
using System;
using System.Security.Permissions;
using System.Security.Principal;
using static System.Console;
```

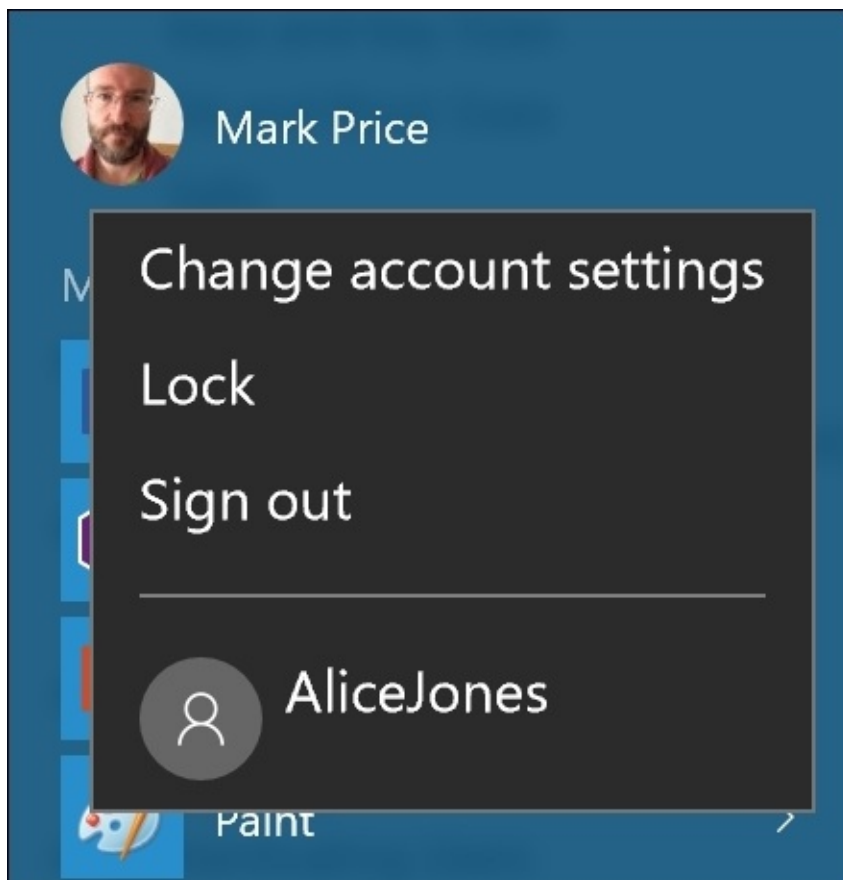
In the Main method, add the following statements:

```
var user = new WindowsPrincipal(WindowsIdentity.GetCurrent());
WriteLine($"Name: {user.Identity.Name}");
WriteLine($"IsAuthenticated: {user.Identity.IsAuthenticated}");
WriteLine($"AuthenticationType: {user.Identity.AuthenticationType}");
ReadLine(); // keep the application running
```

Run the application. The name of my computer is DARKMATTER, and I am currently logged on to Windows 10 using my linked MSN account, so this is what I see:

```
Name: DARKMATTER\markjprice
IsAuthenticated: True
AuthenticationType: CloudAP
```

In the Windows 10 start menu, click on your username, and then click on **AliceJones**.



Enter **Pa\$\$w0rd** and wait for the new user to be set up. It should only take a minute or

two. Use File Explorer to open the
C:\Code\Chapter11\Ch11_Authentication\bin\Debug folder and then double-click on
the Ch11_Authentication.exe file to run it. You will see the following output:

```
Name: DARKMATTER\AliceJones  
IsAuthenticated: True  
AuthenticationType: NTLM
```

Note that local users are authenticated with **NTLM** (which meant **New Technology LAN Manager** back in the 1990s).

Switch back to your own account by clicking on the username on the start menu.

Authorizing with Windows

Authorization is usually a check to ensure that the current user belongs to a role or group.

In the Main method, add the following statements:

```
// to check if the current user belongs to a specific role
WriteLine($"Is in Administrators group?
{user.IsInRole("Administrators")}");
WriteLine($"Is in Users group? {user.IsInRole("Users")}");
WriteLine($"Is in Sales group? {user.IsInRole("Sales")}");
WriteLine();
WriteLine($"{{user.Identity.Name}} belongs to these roles/groups:");
foreach (var claim in user.Claims)
{
    if(claim.Type ==
"http://schemas.microsoft.com/ws/2008/06/identity/claims/groupsid")
    {
        WriteLine($"{{claim.Value}}: {{(new
SecurityIdentifier(claim.Value)).Translate(typeof(NTAccount)).Value}}");
    }
}
```

Note that the roles/groups that a user belongs to are stored in the user's Claims collection as security identifier strings (SIDs) using a Type of groupsid, for example, a Group SID of S-1-5-32-545 means the User's group. To see the group name, we have to translate the SID into an NTAccount object.

Run the application by pressing *Ctrl + F5* and view the output:

```
Is in Administrators group? False
Is in Users group? True
Is in Sales group? False
```

```
DARKMATTER\markjprice belongs to these roles/groups:
S-1-1-0: Everyone
S-1-5-32-559: BUILTIN\Performance Log Users
S-1-5-32-545: BUILTIN\Users
S-1-5-4: NT AUTHORITY\INTERACTIVE
S-1-2-1: CONSOLE LOGON
S-1-5-11: NT AUTHORITY\Authenticated Users
S-1-5-15: NT AUTHORITY\This Organization
S-1-11-96-3623454863-58364-18864-2661722203-1597581903-1800426060-
9997179511-9995030342-2042432011-970967485:
MicrosoftAccount\markjprice@msn.com
S-1-5-113: NT AUTHORITY\Local account
S-1-2-0: LOCAL
S-1-5-64-36: NT AUTHORITY\Cloud Account Authentication
```

You can use either statements or attributes to prevent the current user from accessing parts of your application.

Add the following method to the Program class. Note that the attribute demands that the current user be in the role named Users. If they are not, then a SecurityException will be thrown.

```
[PrincipalPermission(SecurityAction.Demand, Role = "Users")]
public static void SecureFeature()
{
    WriteLine("This is a secure feature!");
}
```

Add the following statements to the bottom of the Main method. Note that we must set the principal policy to ensure that the current thread knows about the current user in order for the PrincipalPermission attribute to work correctly. This only has to be done once, so it is usually executed as the first statement in a Main method.

```
if(user.IsInRole("Users"))
{
    WriteLine("You are in the role so you are allowed access to this
feature.");
}
else
{
    WriteLine("You are NOT in the role so you are banned from this
feature.");
}
// copy the current user principal to the current thread
AppDomain.CurrentDomain.SetPrincipalPolicy(PrincipalPolicy.WindowsPrincipal
);
try
{
    SecureFeature();
}
catch(Exception ex)
{
    WriteLine($"{ex.GetType()}: {ex.Message}");
}
```

Run the application and view the output:

**You are in the role so you are allowed access to this feature.
This is a secure feature!**

Change the role name to Administrators in the if statement and the attribute, and then rerun the application:

**You are NOT in the role so you are banned from this feature.
System.Security.SecurityException: Request for principal permission failed.**

Unfortunately, the string for the Role in the PrincipalPermission attribute must be a literal value, so it cannot reference a variable.

Tip

Best Practice

Use the IsInRole method to check whether the current user is authorized to access a feature of your application rather than the PrincipalPermission attribute.

Practicing and exploring

Test your knowledge and understanding by answering some questions, get some hands-on practice, and explore the topics covered in this chapter with deeper research.

Exercise 11.1 – test your knowledge

Answer the following questions:

1. Of the encryption algorithms provided by .NET, which is the best choice for symmetric encryption?
2. Of the encryption algorithms provided by .NET, which is the best choice for asymmetric encryption?
3. For encryption algorithms, is it better to have a larger or smaller block size?

Exercise 11.2 – practice protecting data with encryption and hashing

Create a console application named **Ch11_Exercise02** that protects an XML file similar to the following code. Note that the customer record credit card number and password are currently stored in clear text. The credit card must be encrypted so that it can be decrypted and used later, and the password must be salted and hashed:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<customers>
  <customer>
    <name>Bob Smith</name>
    <creditcard>1234-5678-9012-3456</creditcard>
    <password>Pa$$w0rd</password>
  </customer>
</customers>
```

Exercise 11.3 – practice protecting data with decryption

Create a console application named **Ch11_Exercise03** that opens the XML file that you protected in the preceding code and decrypts the credit card number.

Exercise 11.4 – explore topics

Use the following links to read more about the topics covered in this chapter:

- **Key Security Concepts:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/z164t8hs\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/z164t8hs(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Encrypting Data:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/as0w18af\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/as0w18af(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Cryptographic Signatures:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/hk8wx38z\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/hk8wx38z(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **How to: Create GenericPrincipal and GenericIdentity Objects:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/y9dd5fx0\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/y9dd5fx0(v=vs.110).aspx)

Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to encrypt and decrypt using symmetric encryption, how to generate a salted hash, how to find out who is running the application, and how to check that the user running the application is allowed to access a feature of the application.

In the next chapter, you will use the `Task` type to improve the performance of your applications.

Chapter 12. Improving Performance and Scalability with Multitasking

This chapter is about allowing multiple actions to occur at the same time to improve performance, scalability, and user productivity.

In this chapter, we will cover the following topics:

- Understanding processes and threads
- Running tasks asynchronously
- The `async` and `await` keywords
- Synchronizing access to shared resources

Understanding processes and threads

A process, like each of the console applications we have created, has resources allocated to it, such as memory and threads. A thread executes your code, statement by statement.

Windows uses pre-emptive multitasking, which simulates the parallel execution of tasks. It divides the processor time among the threads, allocating a “time slice” to each thread, one after another. The current thread is suspended when its time slice finishes. The processor allows another thread to run for a time slice.

When Windows switches from one thread to another, it saves the context of the thread and reloads the previously saved context of the next thread in the thread queue.

Most modern operating systems work the same as Windows, and are known as pre-emptive multitasking OSes.

By default, each process only has one thread, and this can cause problems when we need to do more than one thing at the same time.

Running tasks asynchronously

First, we will write a simple console application that needs to execute three actions.

Running multiple actions synchronously

Start Microsoft Visual Studio 2015. In Visual Studio, press *Ctrl + Shift + N* or go to **File | New | Project....**

In the **New Project** dialog, in the **Installed Templates** list, select **Visual C#**. In the center list, select **Console Application**, type the name as **Ch12_Tasks**, change the location to `C:\Code`, type the solution name as **Chapter12**, and then click on **OK**.

Ensure that the following namespaces have been imported:

```
using System;
using System.Threading;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using System.Diagnostics;
using static System.Console;
```

In the Program class, add the following code. There are three methods that need to be executed: the first takes three seconds, the second takes two seconds, and the third takes one second. To simulate work, we can use the Thread class to tell the current thread to go to sleep for a specified number of milliseconds:

```
static void MethodA()
{
    WriteLine("Starting Method A..");
    Thread.Sleep(3000); // simulate three seconds of work
    WriteLine("Finished Method A.");
}
static void MethodB()
{
    WriteLine("Starting Method B..");
    Thread.Sleep(2000); // simulate two seconds of work
    WriteLine("Finished Method B.");
}
static void MethodC()
{
    WriteLine("Starting Method C..");
    Thread.Sleep(1000); // simulate one second of work
    WriteLine("Finished Method C.");
}
```

In the Main method, add the following statements:

```
static void Main(string[] args)
{
    var timer = Stopwatch.StartNew();
    WriteLine("Running methods synchronously on one thread.");
    MethodA();
    MethodB();
    MethodC();
    WriteLine($"{timer.ElapsedMilliseconds:#,##0}ms elapsed.");
    WriteLine("Press ENTER to end.");
    ReadLine();
}
```


Run the application by pressing *Ctrl + F5* and view the output. Since there is only one thread, the total time required is just over six seconds.

Running methods synchronously on one thread.

Starting Method A...

Finished Method A.

Starting Method B...

Finished Method B.

Starting Method C...

Finished Method C.

6,047ms elapsed.

Press ENTER to end.

Running multiple actions asynchronously using tasks

The `Thread` class has been available since the first version of C#, but it can be tricky to work with directly. C# 4 introduced the `Task` class, which is a wrapper around a thread that enables easier management. Creating multiple threads wrapped in tasks will allow our code to execute asynchronously (at the same time).

We will look at three ways to start the methods using `Task` instances. Each has a slightly different syntax, but they all define a task and start it. Comment out the calls to the three methods and the associated console message, and then add the highlighted statements in the following code:

```
static void Main(string[] args)
{
    var timer = Stopwatch.StartNew();
    //WriteLine("Running methods synchronously on one thread.");
    //MethodA();
    //MethodB();
    //MethodC();
    WriteLine("Running methods asynchronously on multiple threads.");
    var taskA = new Task(MethodA);
    taskA.Start();
    var taskB = Task.Factory.StartNew(MethodB);
    var taskC = Task.Run(new Action(MethodC));
    WriteLine($"{timer.ElapsedMilliseconds:#,##0}ms elapsed.");
    WriteLine("Press ENTER to end.");
    ReadLine();
}
```

Rerun the application by pressing *Ctrl + F5* and view the output.

The actual elapsed milliseconds will depend on the performance of your CPU, so you are likely to see a different value than shown in the following example output:

```
Running methods asynchronously on multiple threads.
10 milliseconds elapsed.
Press ENTER to end.
Starting Method C...
Starting Method A...
Starting Method B...
Finished Method C.
Finished Method B.
Finished Method A.
```

Notice that the stopwatch displays the elapsed time almost immediately, because each of the three methods are now being executed by three new threads. The original thread continues executing until it reaches the `ReadLine` call at the end of the `Main` method.

Meanwhile, the three new threads execute their code in parallel, and they start in any order. `MethodC` will usually finish first, because it takes only one second, then `MethodB`, and finally `MethodA`, because it takes three seconds.

However, the actual CPU used has a big effect on the results. It is the CPU that allocates time slices to each process to allow them to execute their threads. You have little control over when the methods run.

Waiting for tasks

Sometimes you need to wait for a task to complete before continuing. To do this, you can use the `wait` method on a `Task` instance, or the `waitAll` or `waitAny` method on an array of `Task` instances, as shown in the following table:

Method	Description
<code>wait</code>	Waits for this instance of the task to complete execution
<code>waitAny</code>	Waits for any of the provided task objects to complete execution
<code>waitAll</code>	Waits for all of the provided task objects to complete execution

Add the following statements to the `Main` method immediately after creating the three tasks. This will combine references to the three tasks into an array and pass them to the `waitAll` method. Now, the original thread will pause on that statement, waiting for all three tasks to finish before outputting the elapsed time:

```
Task[] tasks = { taskA, taskB, taskC };  
Task.WaitAll(tasks);
```

Rerun the application by pressing `Ctrl + F5` and view the output:

```
Running methods asynchronously on multiple threads.  
Starting Method B...  
Starting Method C...  
Starting Method A...  
Finished Method C.  
Finished Method B.  
Finished Method A.  
3,024 milliseconds elapsed.  
Press ENTER to end.
```

Note that the total time is now slightly more than the time to run the longest method. If all three tasks can be performed at the same time, then this would be all we need to do.

However, often, a task is dependent on the output from another task. To handle this scenario, we need to define **continuation tasks**.

Continuing with another task

Add the following methods to the Program class:

```
static decimal CallWebService()  
{  
    WriteLine("Starting call to web service...");  
    Thread.Sleep((new Random()).Next(2000, 4000));  
    WriteLine("Finished call to web service.");  
    return 89.99M;  
}  
static string CallStoredProcedure(decimal amount)  
{  
    WriteLine("Starting call to stored procedure...");  
    Thread.Sleep((new Random()).Next(2000, 4000));  
    WriteLine("Finished call to stored procedure.");  
    return $"12 products cost more than {amount:C}.";  
}
```

These methods simulate a call to a web service, that returns a monetary amount that then needs to be used to retrieve how many products cost more than that amount in a database. The result returned from the first method needs to be fed into the input of the second method.

Tip

I have used the Random class to wait for a random interval of between two and four seconds for each method.

Inside the Main method, comment out the previous tasks by highlighting the statements and pressing *Ctrl + K, C*. Then, add the following statements before the existing statement that outputs the total time elapsed and then calls `ReadLine` to wait for the user to press *Enter*:

```
WriteLine("Passing the result of one task as an input into another.");  
var taskCallWebServiceAndThenStoredProcedure =  
Task.Factory.StartNew(CallWebService)  
    .ContinueWith(previousTask =>  
CallStoredProcedure(previousTask.Result));  
WriteLine($"{taskCallWebServiceAndThenStoredProcedure.Result}");
```

Run the application by pressing *Ctrl + F5* and view the output:

```
Passing the result of one task as an input into another.  
Starting call to web service...  
Finished call to web service.  
Starting call to stored procedure...  
Finished call to stored procedure.  
12 products cost more than £89.99.  
5,971 milliseconds elapsed.  
Press ENTER to end.
```

Nested and child tasks

Add a new console application project named **Ch12_NestedAndChildTasks**. In the solution's **Properties**, remember to change the **Startup Project** to **Current selection**.

Ensure the following namespaces have been imported:

```
using System;
using System.Threading;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using System.Diagnostics;
using static System.Console;
```

Inside the Main method, add the following statements:

```
var outer = Task.Factory.StartNew(() =>
{
    WriteLine("Outer task starting...");
    var inner = Task.Factory.StartNew(() =>
    {
        WriteLine("Inner task starting...");
        Thread.Sleep(2000);
        WriteLine("Inner task finished.");
    });
});
outer.Wait();
WriteLine("Outer task finished.");
ReadLine();
```

Run the application by pressing *Ctrl + F5* and view the output:

```
Outer task starting...
Outer task finished.
Inner task starting...
Inner task finished.
```

Notice that although we wait for the outer task to finish, its inner task does not have to finish as well. To link the two tasks, we must use a special option.

Modify the code that defines the inner task to add `TaskCreationOption` of `AttachedToParent`:

```
var inner = Task.Factory.StartNew(() =>
{
    WriteLine("Inner task starting...");
    Thread.Sleep(2000);
    WriteLine("Inner task finished.");
}, TaskCreationOptions.AttachedToParent);
```

Rerun the application by pressing *Ctrl + F5*. Notice that the inner task must finish before the outer task is allowed to:

```
Outer task starting...
Inner task starting...
Inner task finished.
Outer task finished.
```


The `async` and `await` keywords

C# 5 introduced two new keywords to simplify working with the `Task` type. They are especially useful when multitasking with graphical user interfaces.

Creating a GUI that blocks

In Visual Studio, go to **File | Add | New Project...** In the **Add New Project** dialog, in the **Installed Templates** list, select **Visual C#**. In the center list, select **WPF Application**, type the name as **Ch12_GUITasks**, and then click on **OK**.

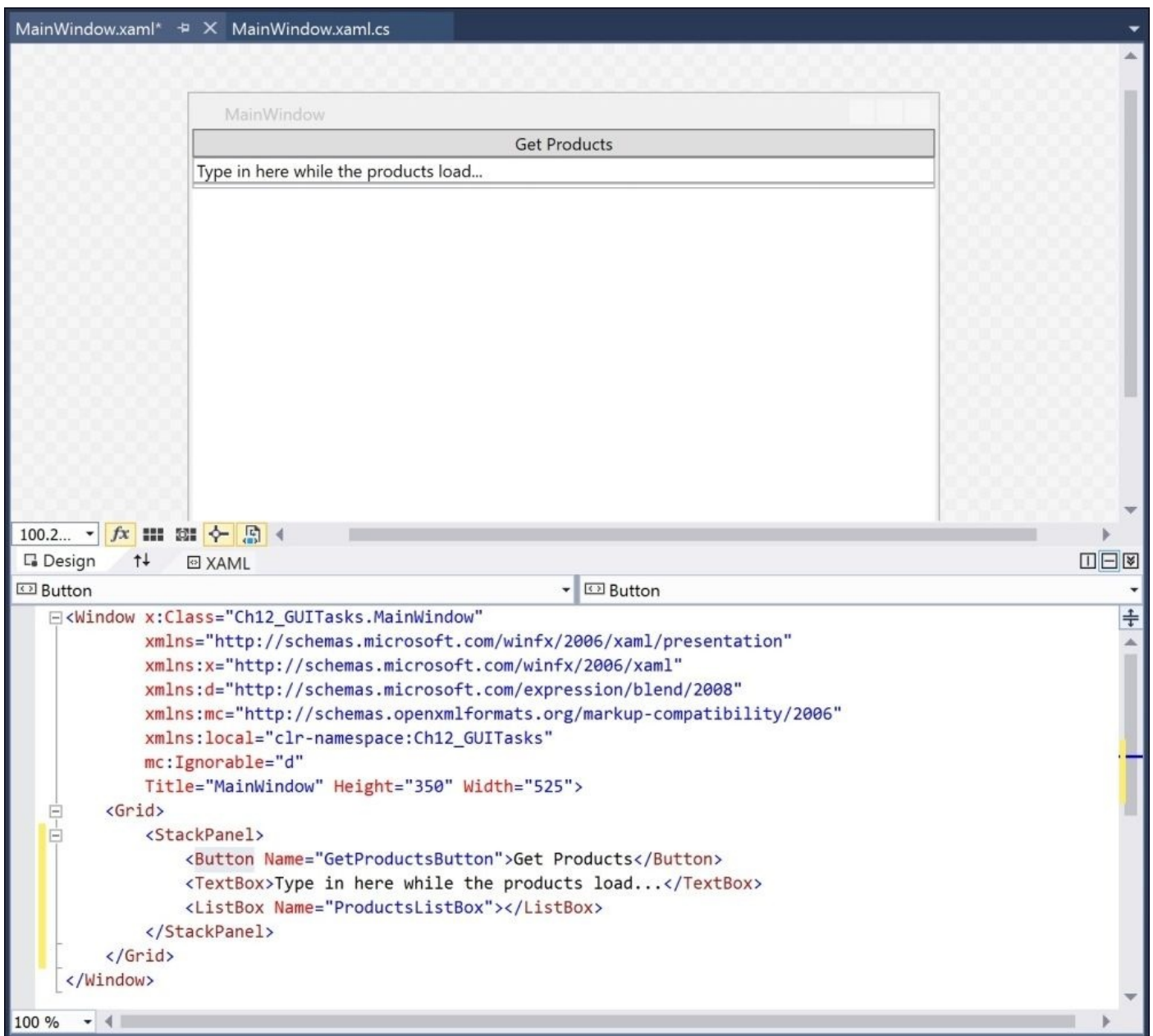
Tip

We will use a WPF application because these can be created on versions of Windows older than 10. In [Chapter 13](#), *Building Universal Windows Platform Apps Using XAML*, you will learn about modern Windows apps. However, these can only be created on Windows 10. Obviously, Windows applications of *any* sort are not cross-platform, so they cannot be executed by the .NET Core!

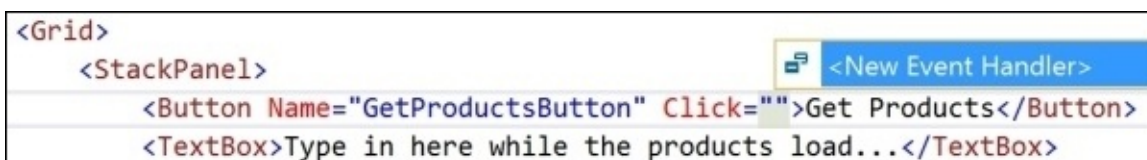
You will learn more about XAML in the next chapter, but for now, just enter the following code in the XAML view inside the <Grid> element:

```
<StackPanel>
    <Button Name="GetProductsButton">Get Products</Button>
    <TextBox>Type in here while the products load...</TextBox>
    <ListBox Name="ProductsListBox"></ListBox>
</StackPanel>
```

Your main editor window should now look like this:



Inside the Button element, after setting the Name, enter an attribute named Click, as shown in the following screenshot, and when the IntelliSense appears, press *Enter* to insert a new event handler:



Choose the **View | Code** menu or press *F7*. Add the following code to the top of the code file:

```
using System.Data.SqlClient;
```

Add the following code inside the GetProductsButton_Click method.

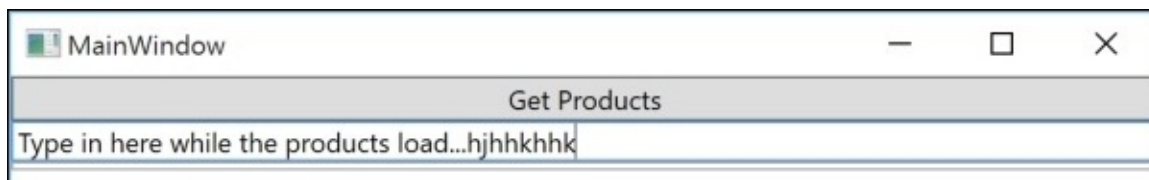
Note the following:

- The database connection string uses Microsoft SQL Server LocalDb and connects to the Northwind sample database
- The SQL statement waits for five seconds before returning four columns from the Products table

```
var connection = new SqlConnection(@"Data Source=
(localdb)\mssqllocaldb;Initial Catalog=Northwind;Integrated
Security=true;");
connection.Open();
var getProducts = new SqlCommand("WAITFOR DELAY '00:00:05';SELECT
ProductID, ProductName, UnitPrice FROM Products", connection);
SqlDataReader reader = getProducts.ExecuteReader();
int indexOfID = reader.GetOrdinal("ProductID");
int indexOfName = reader.GetOrdinal("ProductName");
int indexOfPrice = reader.GetOrdinal("UnitPrice");
while (reader.Read())
{
    ProductsListBox.Items.Add($"{reader.GetInt32(indexOfID)}:
{reader.GetString(indexOfName)} costs
{reader.GetDecimal(indexOfPrice):C}");
}
reader.Dispose();
connection.Dispose();
```

Run the application by pressing *Ctrl + F5*.

Click inside the text box and enter some text. The user interface is responsive. Click on the **Get Products** button and then try to enter some text in the text box. The user interface is blocked because the thread is busy running the SQL command:



Creating a GUI that doesn't block

The types in the `SqlClient` namespace have been improved in .NET Framework 4.5 and later by giving any method that might take a long time an asynchronous equivalent that returns a `Task`.

For example, the `SqlConnection` class has both an `Open` method, that returns `void`, and an `OpenAsync` method, that returns `Task`. `SqlCommand` has both an `ExecuteReader` method, that returns `SqlDataReader`, and an `ExecuteReaderAsync` method, that returns `Task<SqlDataReader>`.

We can use these `Task` objects as we did earlier, but that would still block the user interface when we call any of the wait methods.

Instead we can use `await` keyword for any `Task`. This means that the main thread will not be blocked while we wait, but will remember its current position within the statements so that once the `Task` has completed, the main thread continues executing from that same point. This allows us to write code that looks as simple as synchronous, but underneath, it is actually much more complex.

Tip

Internally, `await` creates a state machine to manage the complexity of passing state between any worker threads and the user interface thread.

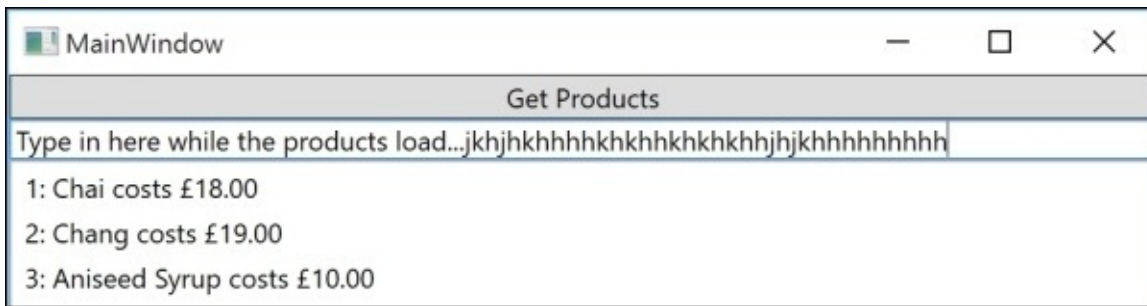
Modify the code like this. Notice that to use the `await` keyword, we must mark any method that contains `await` with the `async` keyword. They always work as a pair:

```
private async void GetProductsButton_Click(object sender, RoutedEventArgs e)
{
    var connection = new SqlConnection(@"Data Source=
(localdb)\mssqllocaldb;Initial Catalog=Northwind;Integrated
Security=true;");
    await connection.OpenAsync();
    var getProducts = new SqlCommand("WAITFOR DELAY '00:00:05';SELECT
ProductID, ProductName, UnitPrice FROM Products", connection);
    SqlDataReader reader = await getProducts.ExecuteReaderAsync();
    int indexOfID = reader.GetOrdinal("ProductID");
    int indexOfName = reader.GetOrdinal("ProductName");
    int indexOfPrice = reader.GetOrdinal("UnitPrice");
    while (await reader.ReadAsync())
    {
        ProductsListBox.Items.Add($"{await reader.GetFieldValueAsync<int>
(indexOfID)}: {await reader.GetFieldValueAsync<string>(indexOfName)} costs
{await reader.GetFieldValueAsync<decimal>(indexOfPrice):C}");
    }
    reader.Dispose();
    connection.Dispose();
}
```

Run the application by pressing *Ctrl + F5*.

This time, after clicking on the **Get Products** button, you will be able to enter text in the

text box while the command executes:



Other types with Async methods

Here are some of the other types that have asynchronous method support:

Class	Methods
HttpClient	GetAsync, PostAsync, PutAsync, DeleteAsync, SendAsync
StreamReader	ReadAsync, ReadLineAsync, ReadToEndAsync
StreamWriter	WriteAsync, WriteLineAsync, FlushAsync.
SOAP service clients	When you generate a proxy to a SOAP service using Visual Studio's Add Service Reference dialog or the svcutil.exe command-line tool, the class created can include Async methods for the service operations

Tip

Any time you see a method that ends in the suffix Async, check to see whether it returns Task or Task<T>. If it does, then you can call it using await if you mark your method using async.

await in catch blocks

In C# 5, it was only possible to use the `await` keyword in a try exception handling block, but not in a catch block.

In C# 6, it is now possible to use `await` in both try and catch blocks.

Improving scalability for client-server applications

In the previous example, we saw how using the `async` and `await` keywords can improve the performance of a client-side graphical application by preventing the blocking of the user interface thread.

The same keywords can be applied on the server-side when building web applications and services. From the client application's point of view, nothing changes (or they might even notice a small increase in the time for a request to return). So, from a single client's point of view, the use of `async` on the server side makes their experience worse!

On the server-side, additional, cheaper worker threads are created to wait for long-running tasks to finish so that expensive I/O threads can handle other clients' requests instead of being blocked. This improves the overall scalability of a web application or service. More clients can be supported simultaneously.

Tip

You will create asynchronous operations on the server-side in [Chapter 14](#), *Building Web Applications and Services Using ASP.NET Core*.

Synchronizing access to shared resources

When you have multiple threads executing at the same time, there is a possibility that two or more threads may access the same variable or other resource at the same time and cause a problem.

For this reason, you should carefully consider how to make your code “thread safe”.

The simplest mechanism for implementing thread safety is to use an object variable as a “flag” or “traffic light” to indicate when a shared resource has an exclusive lock applied.

Tip

In William Golding’s *Lord of the Flies*, Piggy and Ralph spot a conch shell and use it to call a meeting. The boys impose a “rule of the conch” on themselves, deciding that no one can speak unless he’s holding the conch. I like to name the object variable I use the “conch”. When a thread has the conch, no other thread can access the shared resource(s) represented by that conch.

Accessing a resource from multiple threads

In Visual Studio, go to **File | Add | New Project...** In the **Add New Project** dialog, in the **Installed Templates** list, select **Visual C#**. In the center list, select **Console Application**, type the name as **Ch12_LockAndMonitor**, and then click on **OK**.

Modify the Program class to:

- Declare and instantiate an object to generate random wait times
- Declare a string variable to store a message (this will be the shared resource)
- Declare two methods that add a letter, A or B, to the shared string five times in a loop, and wait for a random interval of up to two seconds for each iteration
- A Main method that starts both methods on separate threads using a pair of tasks and waits for them to complete before outputting the elapsed milliseconds they took:

```
using static System.Console;
using System.Threading;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using System;
using System.Diagnostics;

namespace Ch12_LockAndMonitor
{
    class Program
    {
        static Random r = new Random();
        static string Message; // a shared resource

        static void MethodA()
        {
            for (int i = 0; i < 5; i++)
            {
                Thread.Sleep(r.Next(2000));
                Message += "A";
                Write(".");
            }
        }

        static void MethodB()
        {
            for (int i = 0; i < 5; i++)
            {
                Thread.Sleep(r.Next(2000));
                Message += "B";
                Write(".");
            }
        }

        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            WriteLine("Please wait for the tasks to complete.");
            Stopwatch watch = Stopwatch.StartNew();

            Task a = Task.Factory.StartNew(MethodA);
```

```
        Task b = Task.Factory.StartNew(MethodB);

        Task.WaitAll(new Task[] { a, b });
        WriteLine();
        WriteLine($"Results: {Message}.");
        WriteLine($"{watch.ElapsedMilliseconds:#,##0} elapsed
milliseconds.");
    }
}
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* to run the application and view the output:

Please wait for the tasks to complete.

.....

Results: BABBABBAAA.

6,099 elapsed milliseconds.

Notice that the results show that both threads were modifying the message concurrently. In an actual application, this could be a problem. We could prevent concurrent access by using a mutually exclusive lock or `conch`.

Applying a mutually exclusive lock to a resource

In the Program class, define an object variable for the conch:

```
static object conch = new object();
```

In both the methods, add a lock statement around the for statement:

```
lock(conch)
{
    for (int i = 0; i < 5; i++)
    {
        Thread.Sleep(r.Next(2000));
        Message += "A";
        Write(".");
    }
}
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* and view the output:

Please wait for the tasks to complete.

.....

Results: AAAAABBBBB.

9,751 elapsed milliseconds.

Notice that although the time elapsed was longer, only one method at a time could access the shared resource.

Understanding the lock statement

The compiler changes this:

```
lock(conch)
{
    // access shared resource
}
```

Into this:

```
try
{
    Monitor.Enter(conch);
    // access shared resource
}
finally
{
    Monitor.Exit(conch);
}
```

Knowing how the lock statement works internally is important because using the lock statement can cause a deadlock.

Deadlocks occur when there are two or more shared resources (and therefore conches), and the following sequence of events happens:

- Thread X locks conch A
- Thread Y locks conch B
- Thread X attempts to lock conch B, but is blocked because thread Y already has it
- Thread Y attempts to lock conch A, but is blocked because thread X already has it

A proven way to prevent deadlocks is to specify a timeout when attempting to get a lock. To do this, you must manually use the `Monitor` class instead of using the lock statement.

Modify your code to replace the lock statements with code that tries to enter the conch with a timeout like this:

```
try
{
    Monitor.TryEnter(conch, TimeSpan.FromSeconds(15));
    for (int i = 0; i < 5; i++)
    {
        Thread.Sleep(r.Next(2000));
        Message += "A";
        Write(".");
    }
}
finally
{
    Monitor.Exit(conch);
}
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* and view the output. It should be the same as before.

Making operations atomic

Look at the following increment operation:

```
int x = 3;  
x++;
```

It is not atomic! Incrementing an integer requires three CPU operations:

- Load a value from an instance variable into a register
- Increment the value
- Store the value back into the instance variable

A thread could be pre-empted after executing the first two steps. A second thread could then execute all three steps. When the first thread resumes execution, it would overwrite the value in the variable, and the effect of the increment or decrement performed by the second thread would be lost!

Declare another shared resource that will count how many operations have occurred:

```
static int Counter; // another shared resource
```

In both methods, add the following statement to safely increment the counter:

```
Interlocked.Increment(ref Counter);
```

After outputting the elapsed time, output the counter:

```
WriteLine($"{Counter} string modifications.");
```

Press *Ctrl + F5* and view the output:

10 string modications.

Applying other types of synchronization

The Monitor and Interlocked mutually exclusive locks are simple and effective, but sometimes, you need more advanced options to synchronize access to shared resources, as shown in the following table:

Type	Description
ReaderWriterLock and ReaderWriterLockSlim (recommended)	Allows multiple threads to be in the shared read mode, allows one thread to be in the write mode with exclusive ownership of the lock, and allows one thread that has read access to be in the upgradeable read mode, from which the thread can upgrade to the write mode without having to relinquish its read access to the resource
Mutex	Similar to Monitor in that it provides exclusive access to a shared resource, except when it is used for inter-process synchronization
Semaphore and SemaphoreSlim	Limits the number of threads that can access a resource or pool of resources concurrently
AutoResetEvent and ManualResetEvent	Event wait handles allow threads to synchronize activities by signaling each other and by waiting for each other's signals

Practicing and exploring

Test your knowledge and understanding by answering some questions, get some hands-on practice, and explore this chapter's topics with deeper research.

Exercise 12.1 – test your knowledge

Answer the following questions:

1. By convention, what suffix should be applied to a method that returns `Task` or `Task<T>`?
2. To use the `await` keyword inside a method, what keyword must be applied to the method declaration?
3. How do you create a child task?
4. Why should you avoid the `lock` keyword?
5. When should you use the `Interlocked` class?

Exercise 12.2 – explore topics

Use the following links to read more about this chapter's topics:

- **Threads and threading:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/6kac2kdh\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/6kac2kdh(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Task parallelism (task parallel library):** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd537609\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dd537609(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **await (C# reference):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-GB/library/hh156528.aspx>
- **Asynchronous Programming with Async and Await (C# and Visual Basic):** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/vstudio/hh191443.aspx>
- **Interlocked Operations:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/sbhbke0y\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/sbhbke0y(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **EventWaitHandle, AutoResetEvent, CountdownEvent, ManualResetEvent:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ksb7zs2x\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ksb7zs2x(v=vs.110).aspx)

Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to define and start a task, how to wait for one or more tasks to finish, and how to control task completion order. You also learned how to use `async` and `await` to prevent the user interface thread from being blocked, and how to synchronize access to shared resources.

In the next chapter, you will learn how to create apps for the Universal Windows Platform.

Chapter 13. Building Universal Windows Platform Apps Using XAML

This chapter is about seeing what can be achieved with XAML when defining the user interface for a graphical app, in particular, for the **Universal Windows Platform (UWP)**.

In a single chapter, we will only be able to scratch the surface of everything that can be done with UWP. However, I hope to excite you into wanting to learn more about this cool technology and platform.

Think of this chapter as a whistle-stop tour of the coolest parts of UWP and XAML, including template-able controls, data binding, and animation!

Note

UWP apps are not cross-platform, but they are cross-device, if those devices run a modern flavor of Windows. You will need Windows 10 to create the examples in this chapter.

In this chapter, we will cover the following topics:

- Understanding the UWP
- Understanding XAML
- Creating a Windows Desktop Application using WPF
- Creating an app for the UWP
- Using resources and templates
- Data binding
- Animating with storyboards
- Testing in emulators

Understanding the UWP

The UWP is Microsoft's latest technology solution to build applications for its Windows suite of operating systems.

UWP provides a guaranteed API layer across multiple device types. You can create a single app package that can be uploaded to a single Windows Store to be distributed to reach all the device types your app can run on. These devices include Windows 10, Windows 10 Mobile, Xbox One, and Microsoft HoloLens.

Adapting your app's layout

XAML and UWP provide layout panels that adapt how they display their child controls to make the most of the device they are currently running on. It is the Windows app equivalent of web page responsive design.

XAML and UWP provide visual state triggers to alter the layout, based on dynamic changes such as the horizontal or vertical orientation of a tablet.

Taking advantage of unique device capabilities

UWP provides standard mechanisms to detect the capabilities of the current device and then activate additional features of your app to fully take advantage of them.

Understanding XAML

XAML can be used to create:

- UWP apps for Windows 10
- Windows Store apps for Windows 8 and 8.1
- **Windows Presentation Foundation (WPF)** applications for the Windows desktop, including Windows 7 and later
- Silverlight applications for web browsers, Windows Phone, and desktop

Note

Although Silverlight is still supported by Microsoft, it is not being actively developed, so it should be avoided.

Simplifying code using XAML

XAML simplifies C# code, especially when building a user interface.

Imagine that you need two or more buttons laid out horizontally to create a toolbar. In C#, you would write this code:

```
var toolbar = new StackPanel();
toolbar.Orientation = Orientation.Horizontal;
var newButton = new Button();
newButton.Content = "New";
newButton.Background = new SolidColorBrush(Colors.Pink);
toolbar.Children.Add(newButton);
var openButton = new Button();
openButton.Content = "Open";
openButton.Background = new SolidColorBrush(Colors.Pink);
toolbar.Children.Add(openButton);
```

In XAML, it would be simplified to the following lines of code. When this XAML is processed, the equivalent properties are set and methods are called, to achieve the same goal as the preceding C# code:

```
<StackPanel Name="toolbar" Orientation="Horizontal">
  <Button Name="newButton" Background="Pink">New</Button>
  <Button Name="openButton" Background="Pink">Open</Button>
</StackPanel>
```

XAML is an alternative (better) way of declaring and instantiating .NET types.

Creating a Windows desktop application using WPF

In 2006, Microsoft released WPF, which was the first technology to use XAML. It is still used today to create desktop applications.

Tip

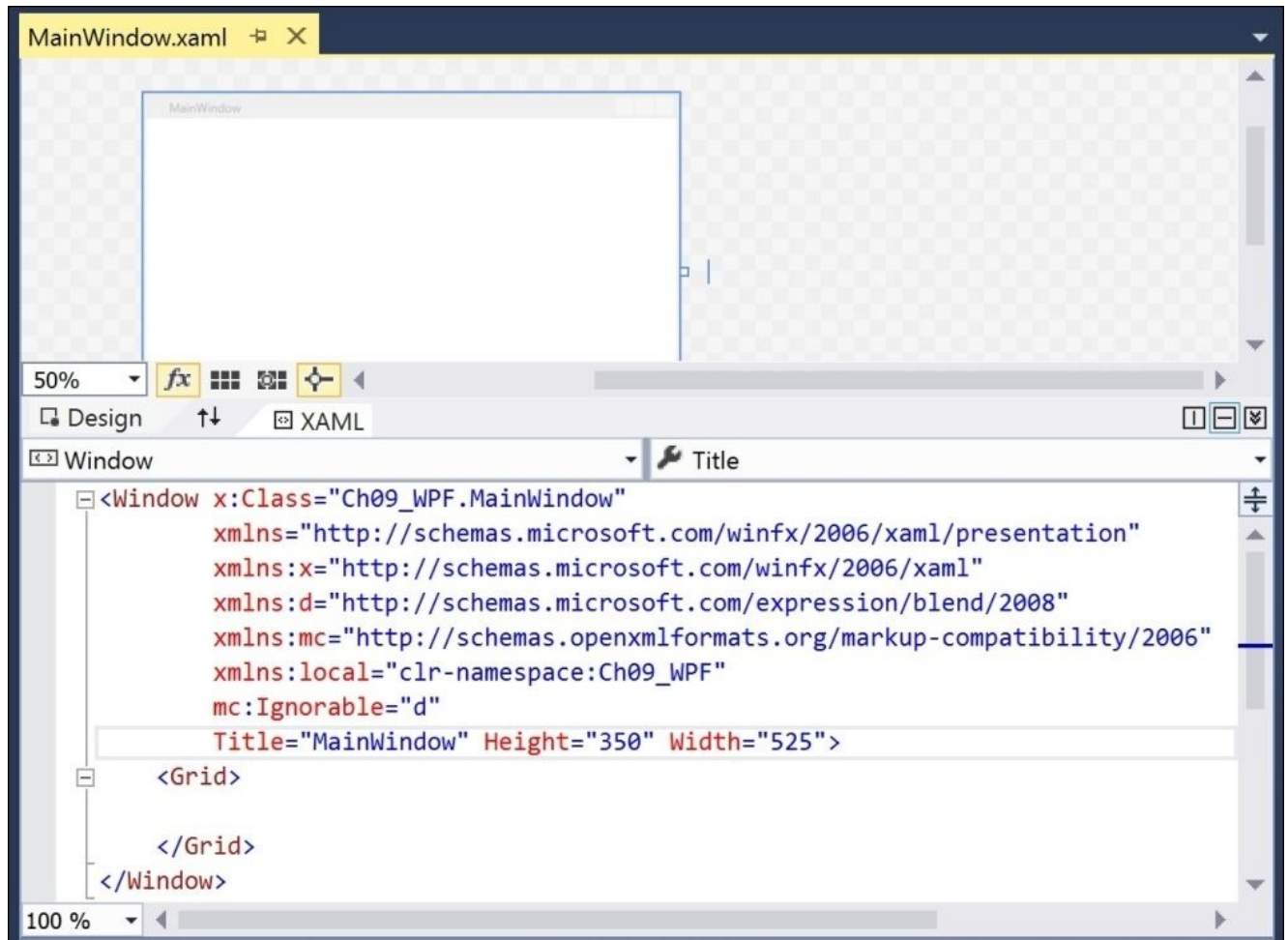
Microsoft Visual Studio 2015 and Microsoft Blend are WPF applications.

Start Microsoft Visual Studio 2015. In Visual Studio, press *Ctrl + Shift + N*, or choose **File | New | Project....**

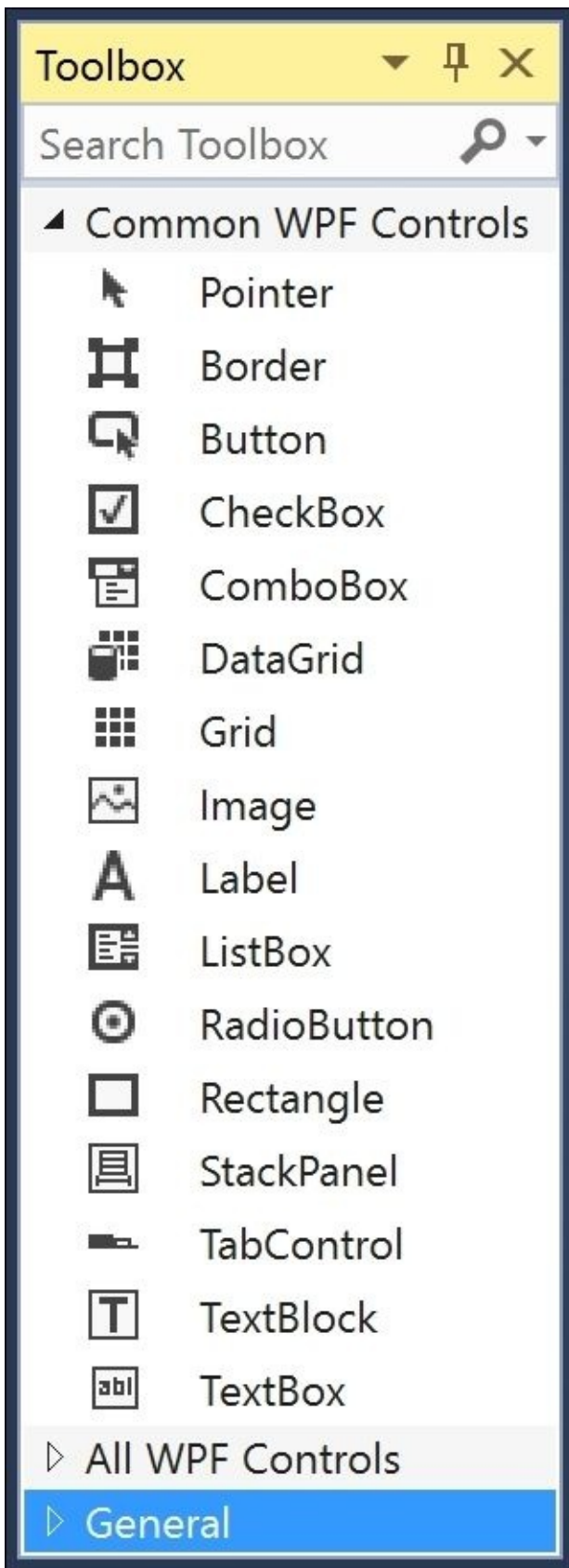
In the **New Project** dialog, in the **Installed Templates** list, select **Visual C#**. In the center list, select **WPF Application**, type the name as **Ch13_WPF**, change the location to **C:\Code**, type the solution name as **Chapter13**, and then click on **OK**.

You will see the XAML design window showing a graphical view and an XAML view of the `MainWindow.xaml` file. You will be able to make the following observations:

- The XAML designer is split horizontally, but you can toggle to vertical split and collapse one side by clicking the buttons on the right edge of the divider
- You can swap the views by clicking the double-arrow button in the divider
- You can scroll and zoom both views:

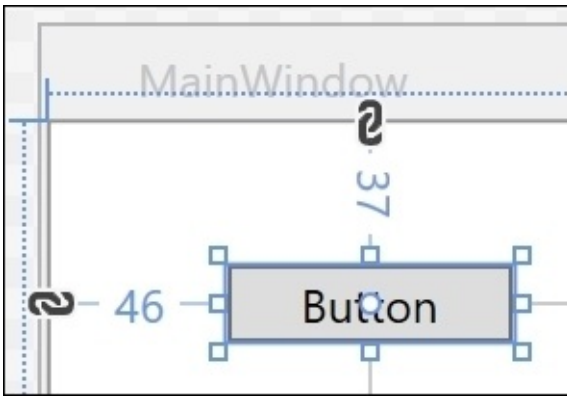


On the **View** menu, choose **Toolbox**, or press *Ctrl + W, X*. Notice that the toolbox has sections for **Common WPF Controls** and **All WPF Controls**:



Drag and drop the **Button** control from the toolbox onto the graphical view. Notice that

the button is given a fixed width and margin to position it inside the grid:



Although you can drag and drop controls, it is better to use the XAML view for layout.

In the XAML view, find the Button element and delete it.

In the XAML view, inside the Grid element, type the following line of code, and notice that the button stretches to take up the whole grid:

```
<Button Margin="6" Padding="6" Name="clickMeButton">Click Me</Button>
```

Modify the XAML to put the Button element inside a StackPanel, and notice the change in its layout:

```
<StackPanel Orientation="Horizontal" VerticalAlignment="Top">
  <Button Margin="6" Padding="6" Name="clickMeButton">Click Me</Button>
</StackPanel>
```

Modify the Button element to give it a new event handler for its Click event:

```
<Button Margin="6" Padding="6" Name="clickMeButton"
Click="clickMeButton_Click">Click Me</Button>
```

In the MainWindow.xaml.cs file, add the following statement to the event handler:

```
clickMeButton.Content = DateTime.Now.ToLongTimeString();
```

Run the application by pressing *Ctrl + F5* and view the window:



Click on the **Click Me** button. Every time you click the button, the button's content changes to show the current time:



MainWindow



14:50:57

Choosing common controls

There are lots of predefined controls that you can choose from for common user interface scenarios. Almost all versions of XAML support the controls in the following table:

Control(s)	Description
Button, Menu, Toolbar	Executing actions
CheckBox, RadioButton	Choosing options
Calendar, DatePicker	Choosing dates
ComboBox, ListBox, ListView, TreeView	Choosing items from lists and hierarchical trees
Canvas, DockPanel, Grid, StackPanel, WrapPanel	Layout containers that affect their children in different ways
Label, TextBlock	Displaying read-only text
RichTextBox, TextBox	Editing text
Image, MediaElement	Embedding images, videos, and audio files
DataGrid	Viewing and editing bound data
Scrollbar, Slider, StatusBar	Miscellaneous. user interface elements

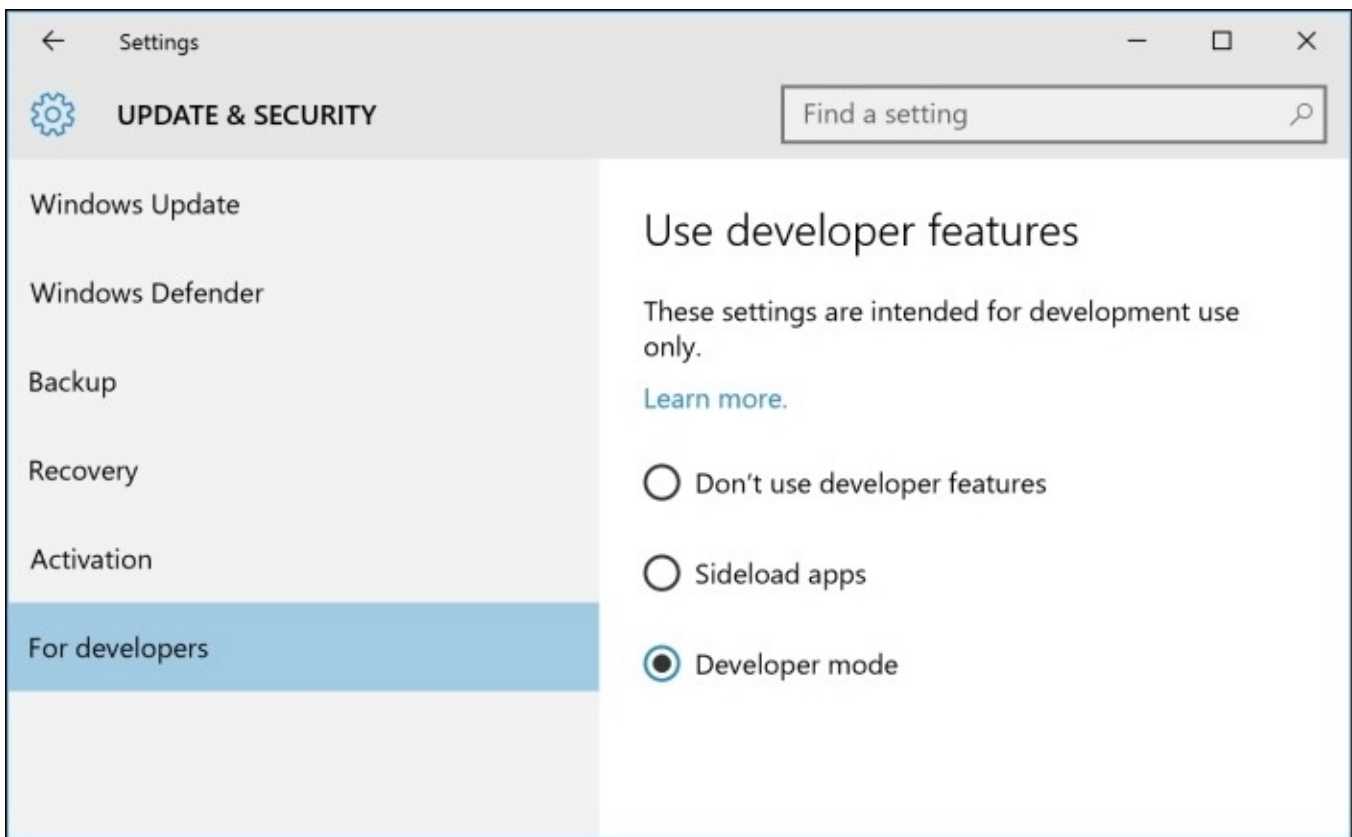
Tip

You can learn more about the controls available at <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/apps/mt185405.aspx>.

Creating an app for the Universal Windows Platform

To be able to create apps for the UWP, you must enable the developer mode in Windows 10.

Go to the **Start Menu | Settings | Update & Security**, and then click on **Developer mode**. Close the **Settings** app:



Start Microsoft Visual Studio 2015. In Visual Studio, click on **File | Add | New Project....** In the **Add New Project** dialog, in the **Installed Templates** list, select **Visual C#**. In the center list, select **Blank App (Universal Windows)**, type the name as **Ch13_UWP**, and then click on **OK**.

Set the solution's startup project to be the current selection.

In the **Solution Explorer** window, double-click on the `MainPage.xaml` file to open it for editing.

Modify the XAML to put a `Button` element inside a `StackPanel`. Add the event handler by choosing **New Event Handler**, so that a method is created in the code-behind file:

```
<StackPanel VerticalAlignment="Top">
    <StackPanel Orientation="Horizontal">
        <Button Margin="6" Padding="6" Name="clickMeButton"
Click="clickMeButton_Click">Click Me</Button>
```

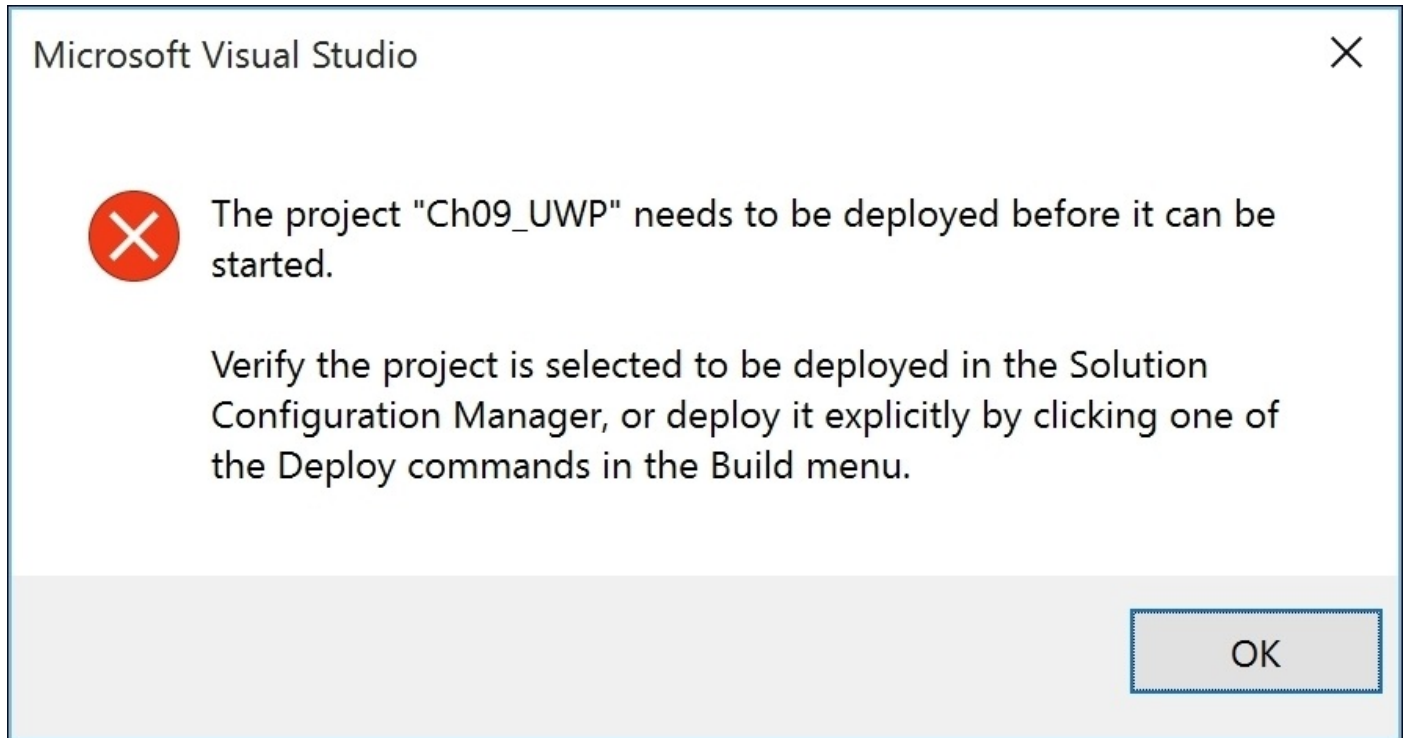
```
</StackPanel>
</StackPanel>
```

Right-click and chose **View Code** or press *F7*.

In the `clickMeButton_Click` method, add the following statement:

```
clickMeButton.Content = DateTime.Now.ToLongTimeString();
```

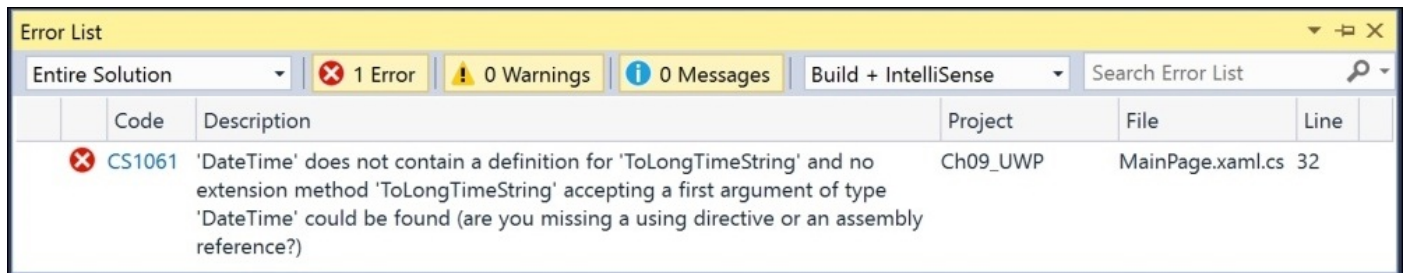
Run the application by pressing *Ctrl + F5*, and notice the warning:



UWP apps have extra requirements compared to console and WPF applications. They must be deployed before being run.

On the **Build** menu, choose **Deploy Ch13_UWP**.

You will see a compile error. This is because UWP apps have a more limited version of the base-class libraries, and the `ToLongTimeString` method has not been implemented for instances of `DateTime`:



Note

UWP apps cannot use the full features of .NET. because they use a custom implementation

of .NET Core.

Modify your code to make it look like this:

```
clickMeButton.Content = DateTime.Now.ToString("hh:mm:ss");
```

Redeploy the application and then run it by pressing *Ctrl + F5*.

This time, it works just as our WPF application did earlier, except that this app will also run on Windows 10 Mobile phones, Xbox One, and even HoloLens:



Analyzing UWP portability

If you run the .NET Portability Analyzer on this project, you will see the following report:

Ch13_UWP, Version=1.0.0.0, Culture=neutral, PublicKeyToken=null (.NETCore,Version=v5.0)			
Target type	.NET Core (Cross-platform),Version=v5.0	.NET Framework,Version=v4.5	.NET Native,Version=v1.0
System.Runtime.InteropServices.WindowsRuntime.EventRegistrationToken	✘	✔	✔
System.Runtime.InteropServices.WindowsRuntime.WindowsRuntimeMarshal	✘	✔	✔
AddEventHandler`1(System.Func{`0,System.Runtime.InteropServices.WindowsRuntime.EventRegistrationToken},System.Action{System.Runtime.InteropServices.WindowsRuntime.EventRegistrationToken},`0)	✘	✔	✔

Note

Note that UWP apps do not support cross-platform .NET Core because they use a custom implementation of .NET Core. However, they are cross-device if that device runs a modern flavor of Windows. Also, they support .NET Native. This means that the .NET code is compiled to native CPU instructions for a smaller memory footprint and faster execution.

Using resources and templates

When building graphical user interfaces, you will often want to use a resource such as a brush to paint the background of controls. These resources can be defined in a single place and shared throughout the app.

Sharing resources

In the **Solution Explorer** window, double-click on the **App.xaml** file. Add the following statement to it:

```
<Application.Resources>
  <LinearGradientBrush x:Key="rainbow">
    <GradientStop Color="Red" Offset="0" />
    <GradientStop Color="Orange" Offset="0.1" />
    <GradientStop Color="Yellow" Offset="0.3" />
    <GradientStop Color="Green" Offset="0.5" />
    <GradientStop Color="Blue" Offset="0.7" />
    <GradientStop Color="Indigo" Offset="0.9" />
    <GradientStop Color="Violet" Offset="1" />
  </LinearGradientBrush>
</Application.Resources>
```

In the **MainPage.xaml** file, modify the **Grid** element to make it look like this:

```
<Grid Background="{StaticResource rainbow}">
```

Redeploy and run the application:



Tip

A resource can be an instance of any object. To share it within an application, define it in the **App.xaml** file and give it a unique **Key**. To set an element's property to apply the resource, use **StaticResource** with the **Key**.

Replacing a control template

You can redefine how a control looks by replacing its default template.

One of the most common resources is a `Style` that can set multiple properties at once. If a style has a unique `Key`, then it must be explicitly set, like we did earlier with the linear gradient. If it doesn't have a `Key`, then it will be automatically applied based on the `TargetType`. For example, if the `TargetType` is `Button` then all `Buttons` will have the style applied.

In `App.xaml` file, add the following statements:

```
<ControlTemplate x:Key="DarkGlassButton" TargetType="Button">
    <Border BorderBrush="#FFFFFFFF" BorderThickness="1,1,1,1"
        CornerRadius="4,4,4,4">
        <Border x:Name="border" Background="#7F000000"
            BorderBrush="#FF000000" BorderThickness="1,1,1,1" CornerRadius="4,4,4,4">
            <Grid>
                <Grid.RowDefinitions>
                    <RowDefinition Height="*" />
                    <RowDefinition Height="*" />
                </Grid.RowDefinitions>
                <Border Opacity="0" HorizontalAlignment="Stretch"
                    x:Name="glow" Width="Auto" Grid.RowSpan="2" CornerRadius="4,4,4,4">
                    </Border>
                <ContentPresenter HorizontalAlignment="Center"
                    VerticalAlignment="Center" Width="Auto" Grid.RowSpan="2" Padding="4" />
                <Border HorizontalAlignment="Stretch" Margin="0,0,0,0"
                    x:Name="shine" Width="Auto" CornerRadius="4,4,0,0">
                    <Border.Background>
                        <LinearGradientBrush EndPoint="0.5,0.9"
                            StartPoint="0.5,0.03">
                            <GradientStop Color="#99FFFFFF" Offset="0" />
                            <GradientStop Color="#33FFFFFF" Offset="1" />
                        </LinearGradientBrush>
                    </Border.Background>
                </Border>
            </Grid>
        </Border>
    </Border>
</ControlTemplate>
<Style TargetType="Button">
    <Setter Property="Template" Value="{StaticResource DarkGlassButton}" />
    <Setter Property="Foreground" Value="White" />
</Style>
```

Redeploy and run the application:



Data binding

When building graphical user interfaces, you will often want to bind a property of one control to another or to some data.

Binding to elements

In the `MainWindow.xaml` file, add the following elements after the `Button` element, inside the horizontal `StackPanel`:

```
<Slider Value="50" Maximum="100" Minimum="0" Width="200" Name="slider"/>  
<TextBlock Text="{Binding ElementName=slider, Path=Value}"  
VerticalAlignment="Center" Margin="10"/>
```

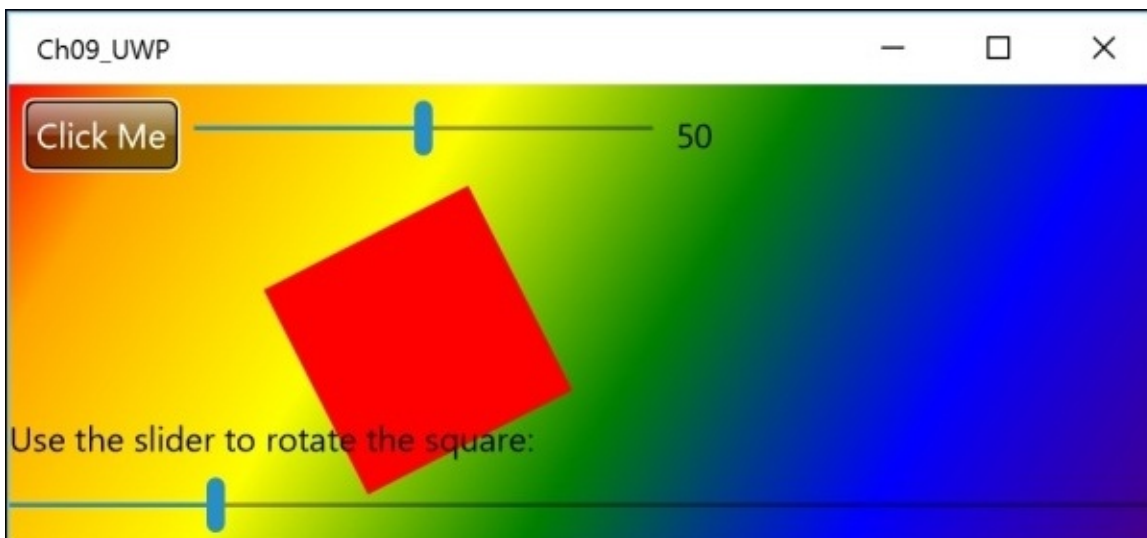
Redeploy and then run the app. Click and drag the slider, and notice that the text block always shows the current value of the slider:



Under the horizontal stack panel, add these statements:

```
<Rectangle Height="100" Width="100" Fill="Red">  
  <Rectangle.RenderTransform>  
    <RotateTransform Angle="{Binding ElementName=sliderRotation,  
Path=Value}" />  
  </Rectangle.RenderTransform>  
</Rectangle>  
<TextBlock>Use the slider to rotate the square:</TextBlock>  
<Slider Value="0" Minimum="0" Maximum="360" Name="sliderRotation"/>
```

Redeploy and run the app:



Binding to data

Add a new **Blank App (Universal Windows)** project named **Ch13_DataBinding**.

In the **Solution Explorer** window, right-click on the new project and add a new folder named **Models**.

Right-click on the **Models** folder and add a new class named `Employee`. Add the following statements to it:

```
public class Employee
{
    public int EmployeeID { get; set; }
    public string FirstName { get; set; }
    public string LastName { get; set; }
    public DateTime DOB { get; set; }
    public decimal Salary { get; set; }
}
```

Add another class named `EmployeesViewModel`:

```
public class EmployeesViewModel
{
    public HashSet<Employee> Employees { get; set; }
    public EmployeesViewModel()
    {
        Employees = new HashSet<Employee>();
        Employees.Add(new Employee { EmployeeID = 1, FirstName = "Alice",
        LastName = "Smith", DOB = new DateTime(1972, 1, 27), Salary = 34000M });
        Employees.Add(new Employee { EmployeeID = 2, FirstName = "Bob",
        LastName = "Jones", DOB = new DateTime(1965, 4, 13), Salary = 64000M });
    }
}
```

Open `MainPage.xaml`. Add the following `ListBox` element, whose items are bound to each employee instance in the `Employees` hash set of the view model:

```
<ListBox ItemsSource="{Binding Employees}">
    <ListBox.ItemTemplate>
        <DataTemplate>
            <StackPanel Orientation="Horizontal">
                <TextBox Text="{Binding EmployeeID}" />
                <TextBox Text="{Binding FirstName}" />
                <TextBox Text="{Binding LastName}" />
                <DatePicker Date="{Binding DOB}" />
                <TextBox Text="{Binding Salary}" />
            </StackPanel>
        </DataTemplate>
    </ListBox.ItemTemplate>
</ListBox>
```

Tip

Since the data won't be loaded until runtime, you won't see a preview of the layout in the design window. You can configure a UWP project with sample data for use at design time,

but that is beyond the scope of this book.

In the XAML for the Page element, insert a new event handler for the Load event:

```
Loading="Page_Loading"
```

Press *F7* to view the code.

Add the following statement to the event handler for Page_Loading. The DataContext method is inherited by all controls, so the instance of the view model can be easily bound to by everything on the page:

```
DataContext = new Models.EmployeesViewModel();
```

Deploy and run the application.

The user can click inside each box to modify the data values. Notice the date picker. This looks different and is optimized for input on different devices:



Tip

In the real world, you would load the data from a file or service. You will learn how to build services in [Chapter 14](#), *Building Web Applications and Services Using ASP.NET Core*.

Animating with storyboards

You can make your application feel more natural and organic (and fun) using storyboard animations.

Add a new **Blank App (Universal Windows)** project named **Ch13_BouncingBall**.

Open the `MainPage.xaml` file, change `Grid` into `Canvas` and add an ellipse to make a red ball. Save your changes:

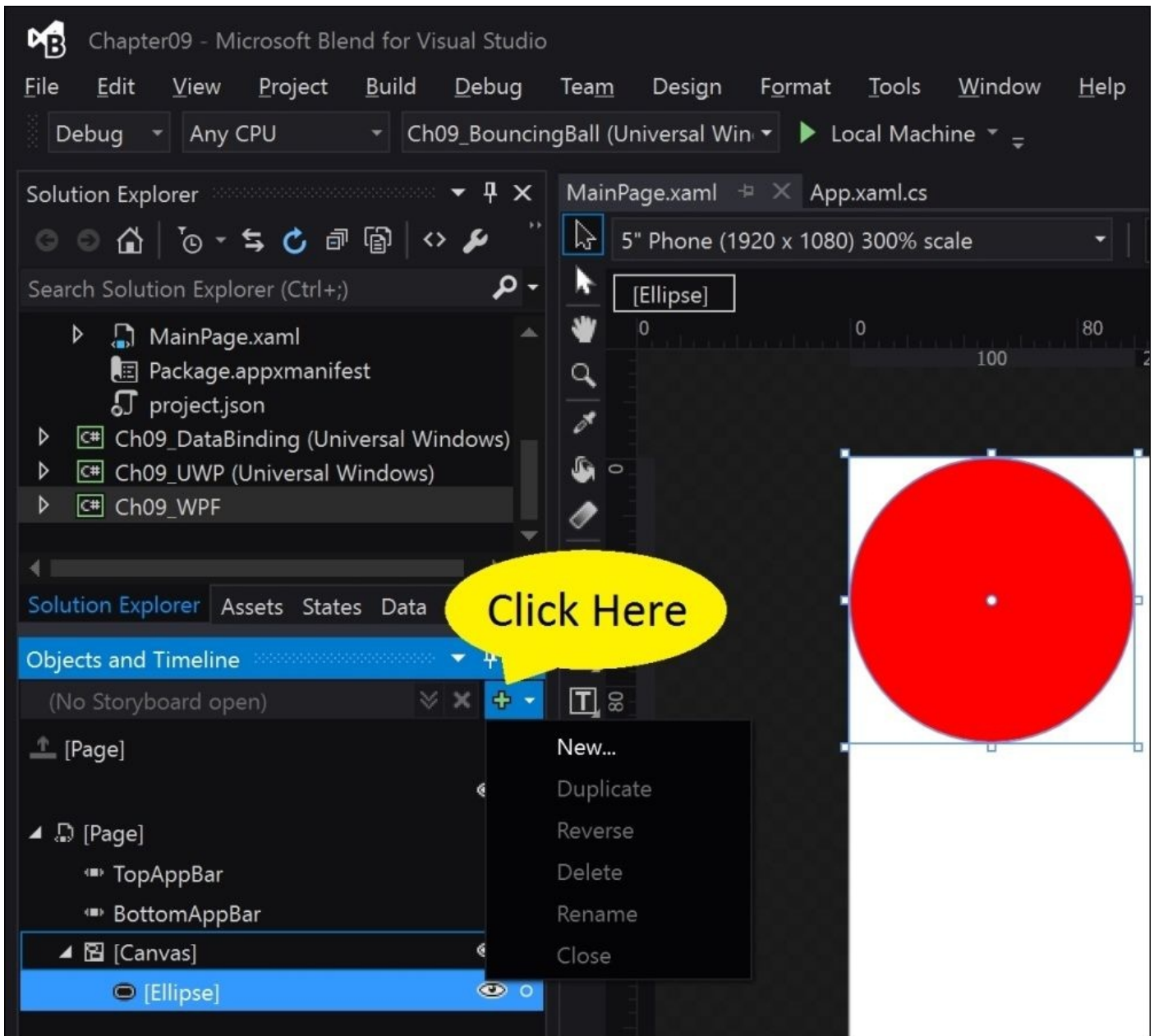
```
<Canvas Background="{ThemeResource ApplicationPageBackgroundThemeBrush}">
  <Ellipse Fill="Red" Height="100" Width="100"/>
</Canvas>
```

In the **Solution Explorer** window, right-click on the **Ch13_BouncingBall** project and choose **Design in Blend...**

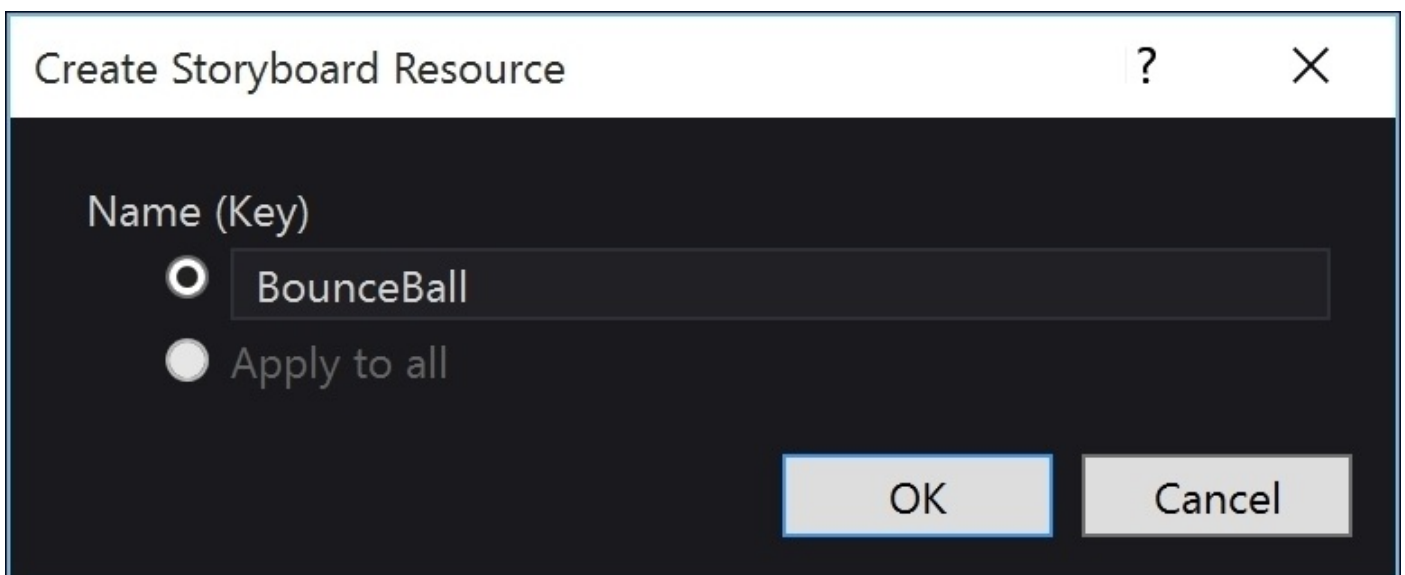
The project will open in the **Microsoft Blend for Visual Studio** tool that is used by designers, because it has better support for graphical effects and animation than Visual Studio does.

On the drawing surface, click on the ellipse to select it.

In the **Objects and Timeline** window, click on the small green + button to create a new storyboard resource:



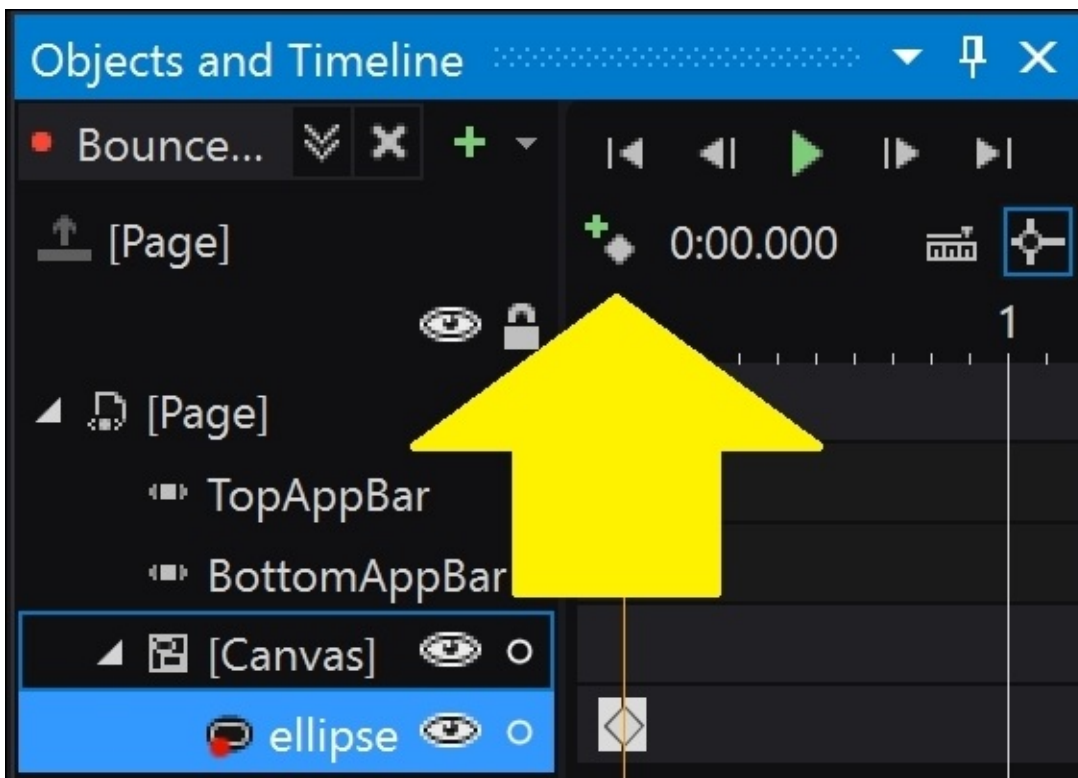
Change the name of the storyboard resource to **BounceBall** and click on **OK**:



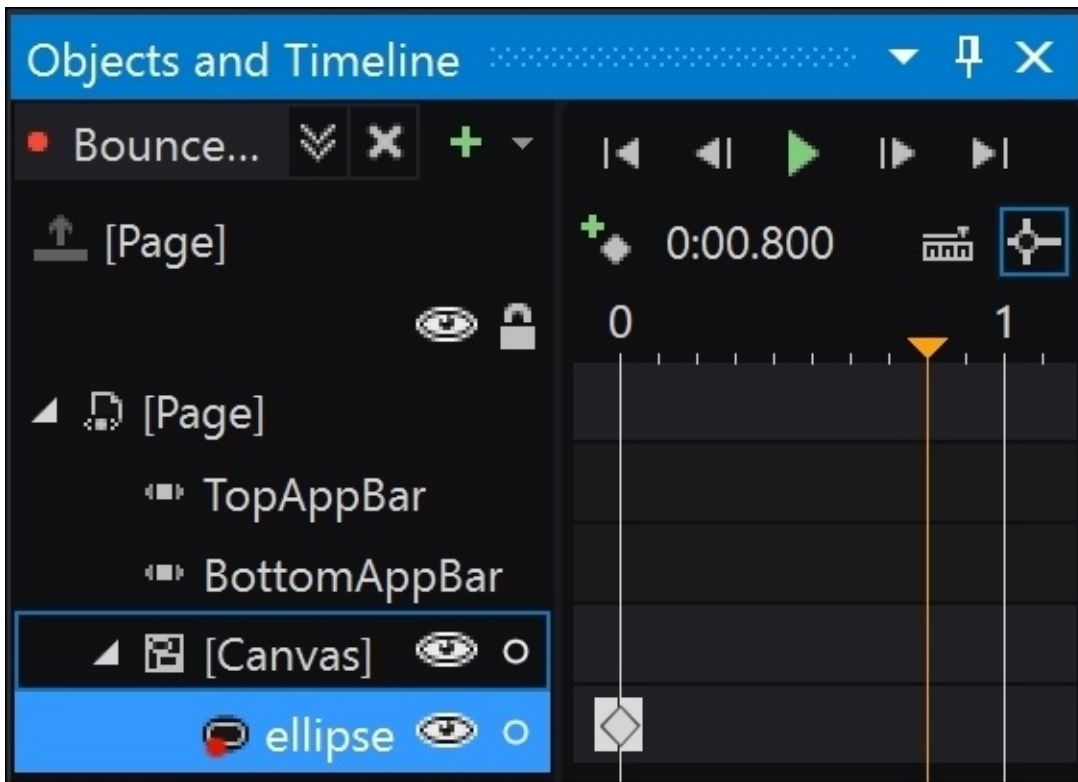
A red box appears around the drawing surface, and you will see in the top-right corner that the timeline recording is on. Later, you will click on the red dot to stop recording:

● BounceBall timeline recording is on.

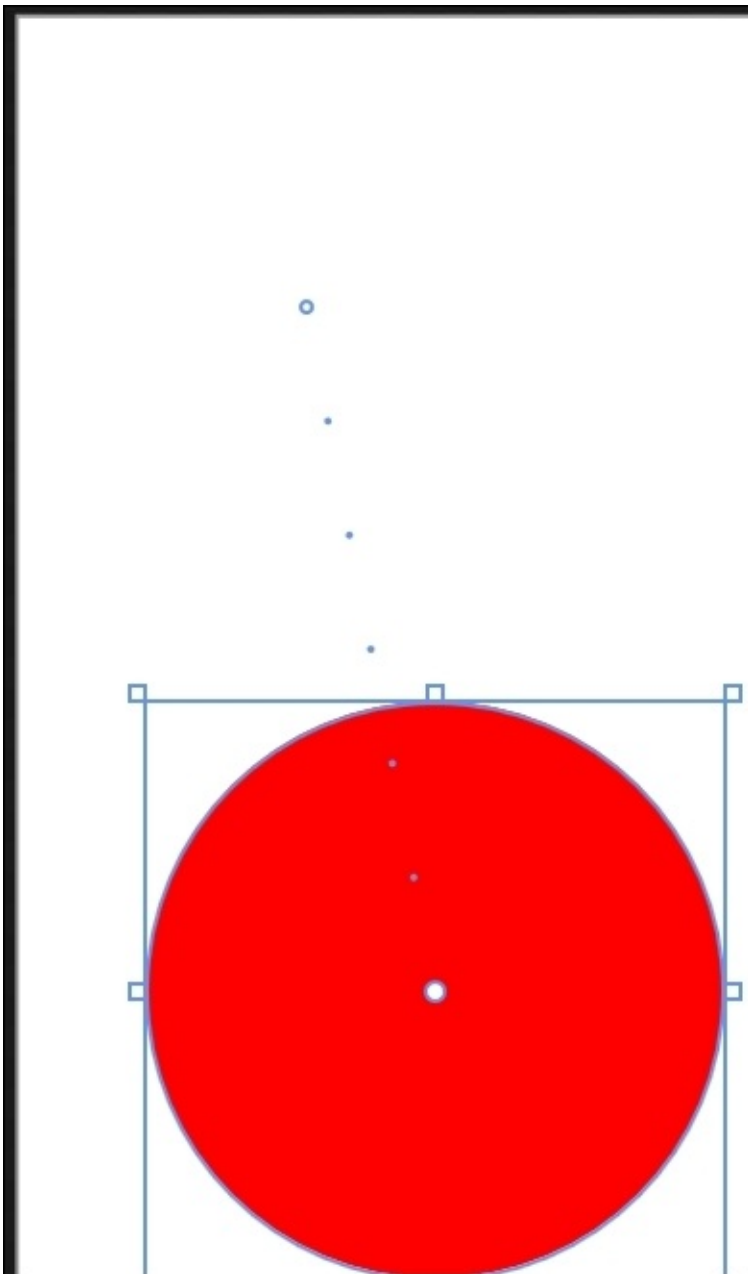
In the **Objects and Timeline** window, click on the **Record Keyframe** button (it looks like a green + symbol combined with a small diamond, and it is to the left of the current time indicator). This will record the current properties of the ball at time 0:00.000:



On the timeline, drag the down-pointing orange triangle and its vertical orange line to time position 0:00.800. This means 0.8 seconds later:



On the drawing surface, drag the ball down and a little to the right. This change will be recorded automatically:



Drag the orange triangle to time position 0:01.000. Click and drag the resize handle at the top of the ball to squash it down a little.

Drag the orange triangle to time position 0:01.200. Resize the ball to stretch it back to its original height.

Drag the orange triangle to time position 0:02.000. Click in the middle of the ball and drag it back up to near the top of the window and a little to the right.

Click the red dot to stop recording:

BounceBall timeline recording is off.

In the **Objects and Timeline** window, click on the small green triangle **Play** button.

You should see the red ball smoothly drop down. When it hits the bottom, it squashes slightly as a rubber ball would in real life, before bouncing back up to the top.

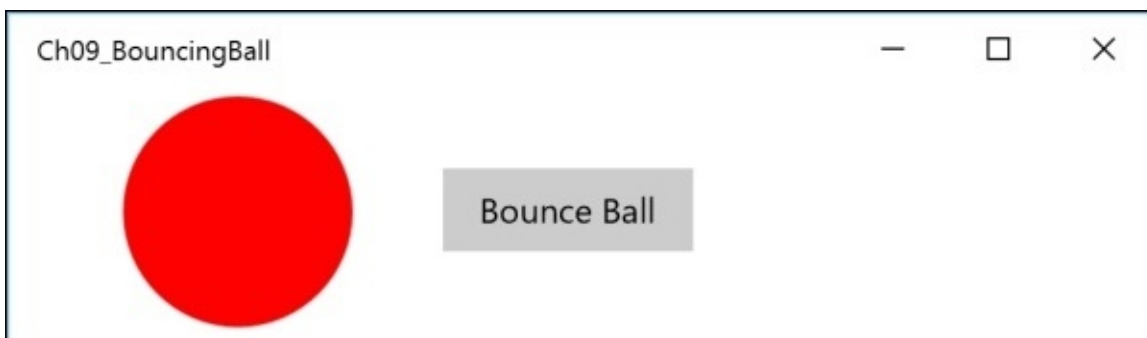
Exit from Blend. When you return to Visual Studio, it should warn you that the file has changes and prompt you to reload it. Click on **Yes**.

Notice that Blend created some XAML elements to define a storyboard named `BounceBall` that animates properties of the `Ellipse` object.

In the toolbox, choose **Button** and draw one on the canvas named **BounceBallButton**. Change its contents to **Bounce Ball**. Give it a `Click` event handler. Add the following statement to the event handler method:

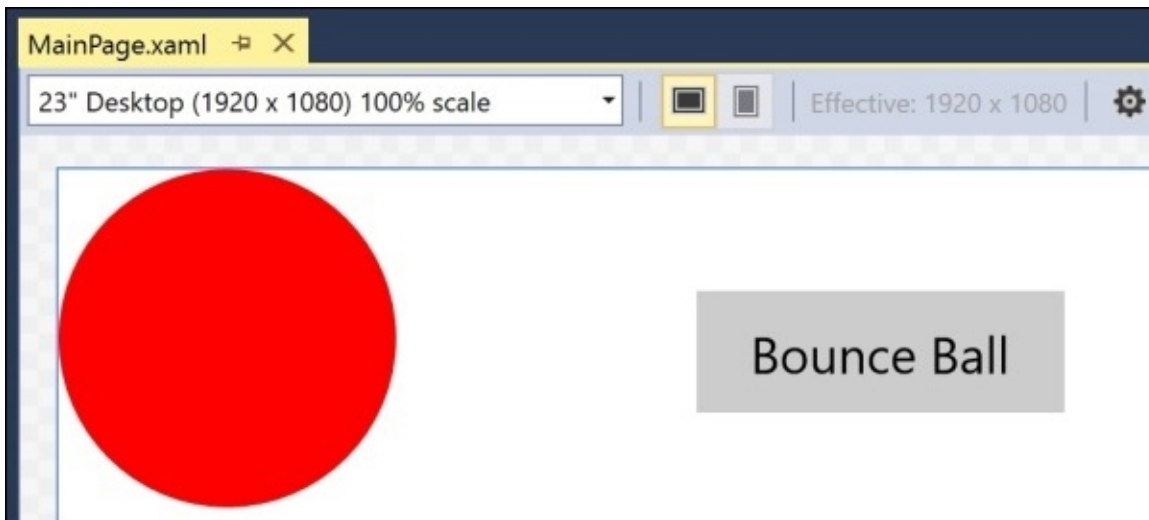
```
BounceBall.Begin();
```

Deploy and run the application. Click on the **Bounce Ball** button to run the animation:

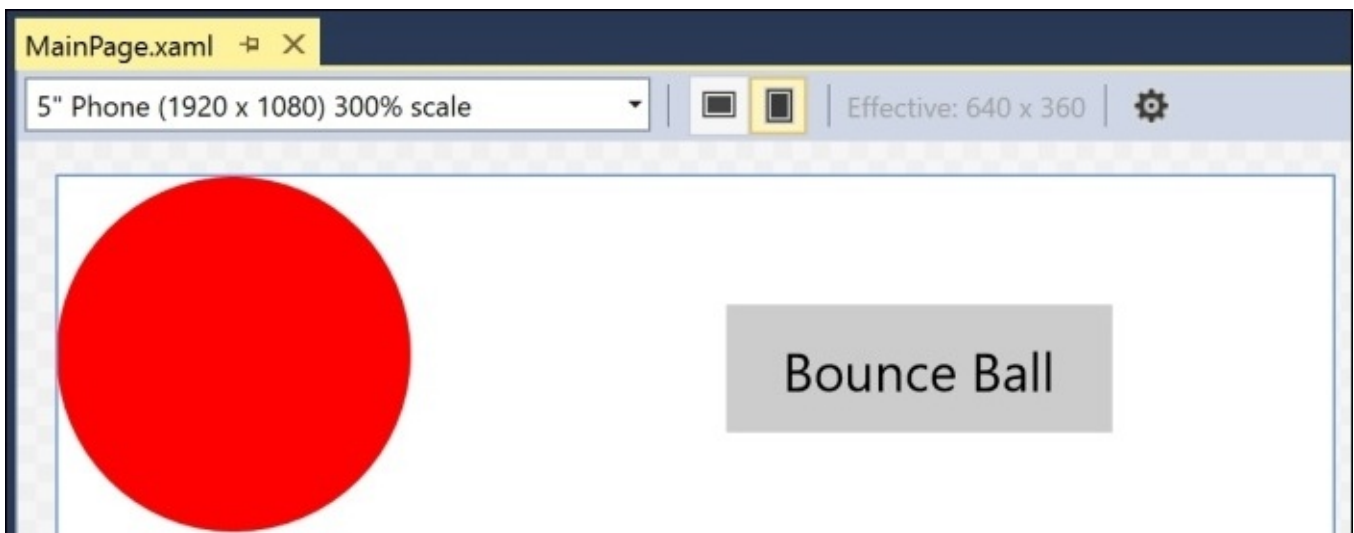


Testing in emulators

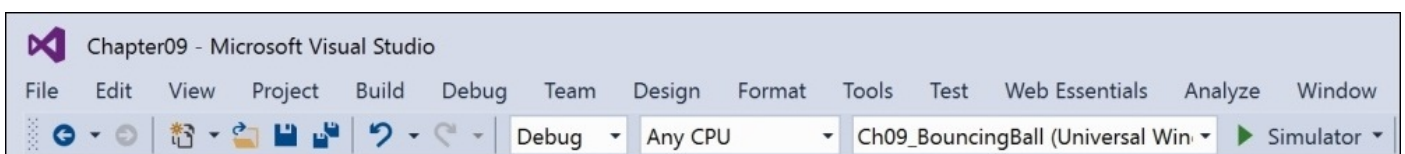
While developing a UWP app, you can quickly see what it would look like on various devices in the XAML design window. The following screenshot is showing the 23" Desktop (1920 x 1080) 100% scale emulator:



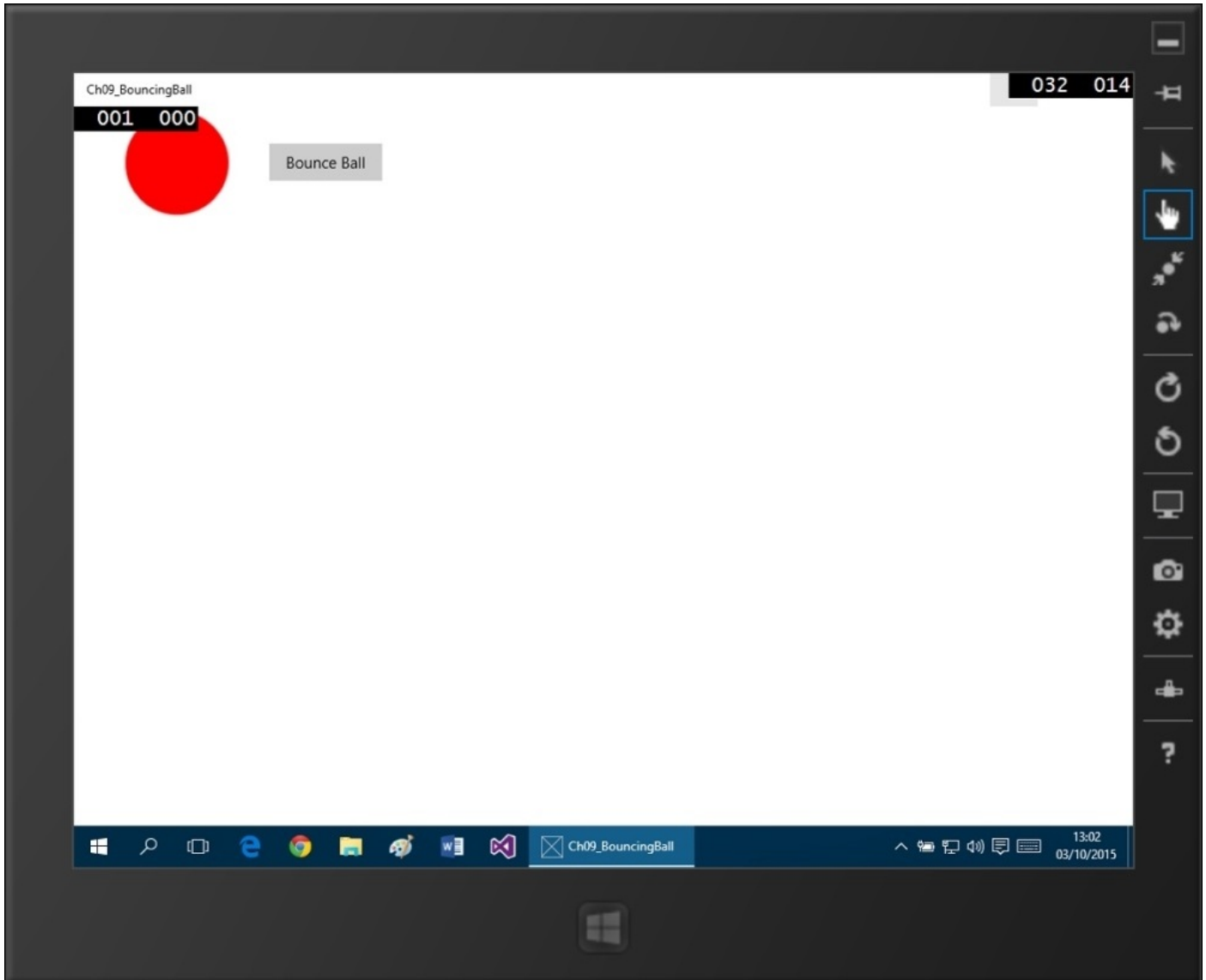
Switch to a phone option with a vertical layout. The following screenshot is showing the 5" Phone (1920 x 1080) 300% scale emulator. You can see that the right-hand edge is visible:



You can also run the app in a **Simulator** rather than on **Local Machine**. You can also choose **Remote Machine** or **Device**:



The Simulator can rotate, and change input modes and screen resolution, using the buttons in the toolbar, on the right-hand edge of the Simulator window:



Tip

Test your apps with the Simulator, and then test on all of the actual devices that your users will deploy your app to.

Practicing and exploring

Test your knowledge and understanding by answering some questions, get some hands-on practice, and explore this chapter's topics with deeper research.

Exercise 13.1 – test your knowledge

Answer the following questions:

1. Which control would you choose to allow the user to easily choose their date of birth on many different types of devices?
2. Which XAML element would you use to adapt the layout of your app to handle different device families?
3. How can you set multiple properties on an XAML element as a single group?
4. What is the difference between a control template and a data template?
5. Can XAML bindings be two way or just one way?

Exercise 13.2 – practice building a universal tip calculator

Create an app for UWP that calculates a tip for common percentages.

Exercise 13.3 – explore topics

Use the following links to read more about this chapter's topics.

- **Enable your device for development:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/apps/dn706236.aspx>
- **Guide to UWP apps:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/library/windows/apps/hh465424.aspx>
- **How-to guides for Windows 10 apps:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/library/windows/apps/xaml/mt244352.aspx>

Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to build a graphical user interface using XAML, how to share resources in a central location, how to replace a control's template, how to bind to data and controls, and how to animate properties.

In the next chapter, you will learn how to build web applications and services.

Chapter 14. Building Web Applications and Services Using ASP.NET Core

This chapter is about building web applications and services using a modern HTTP architecture on the server-side using Microsoft ASP.NET Core 1.0. You will learn about the startup configuration, routes, models, views, and controllers that make up ASP.NET Core.

This chapter will cover the following topics:

- Understanding ASP.NET Core
- ASP.NET Core startup
- ASP.NET Core controllers
- ASP.NET Core models
- ASP.NET Core views
- Taking ASP.NET Core further
- ASP.NET Core Web API

Understanding ASP.NET Core

Microsoft ASP.NET Core 1.0 is part of a suite of Microsoft technologies to build web applications and services that have evolved over the years as shown in the following bullet points:

- ASP.NET Web Forms was released in 2002 and is designed to enable non-web developers, such as those familiar with Visual Basic, to quickly create web applications. Web Forms can only be hosted on Windows, but are used in products such as Microsoft SharePoint. It should be avoided for new projects in favor of ASP.NET Core.
- ASP.NET XML Web Services was released in 2002 and enables developers to build SOAP services. It should be avoided for new projects in favor of WCF or ASP.NET Web API.
- Windows Communication Foundation (WCF) was released in 2006 and enables developers to build SOAP and REST services. SOAP is powerful but complex, so it should be avoided unless you need advanced features, such as distributed transactions and complex messaging topologies.
- ASP.NET MVC was released in 2009 and is designed to cleanly separate the concerns of web developers between the models that represent the data, the views that present that data, and the controllers that fetch the model and pass it to a view. This separation enables improved scalability and unit testing.
- ASP.NET Web API was released in 2012 and enables developers to create HTTP services that are simpler and more scalable than SOAP services.
- ASP.NET Core was released in 2016, and combines MVC and Web API running on the .NET Core. Therefore, it is cross-platform.

Tip

Best Practice

Choose ASP.NET Core to develop web applications and services, because it includes MVC and Web API, which are modern and cross-platform.

Classic ASP.NET versus modern ASP.NET Core

ASP.NET is almost 15 years old. Until now, it has been built on top of a major part of the .NET Framework, the `System.Web.dll` assembly. Over the years, it has accumulated a lot of features, many of which are not suitable for modern, cross-platform development.

ASP.NET Core is a major redesign of ASP.NET. It removes the dependency on the `System.Web.dll` assembly, and is composed of modular lightweight components.

You can develop and run ASP.NET Core applications cross-platform on Windows, Mac OS X, and Linux. The entire stack is open source, and it is designed to integrate with a variety of client-side frameworks, including AngularJS, KnockoutJS, and Bootstrap.

Client-side web development

When building web applications, a developer needs to know more than just C# and .NET. On the client (that is, in the web browser), you will use a combination of the following components of a web page:

- **HTML5:** This is used for the content and semantics of elements
- **CSS3:** This is used for the format and layout applied to elements
- **JavaScript:** This is used for the behavior of elements

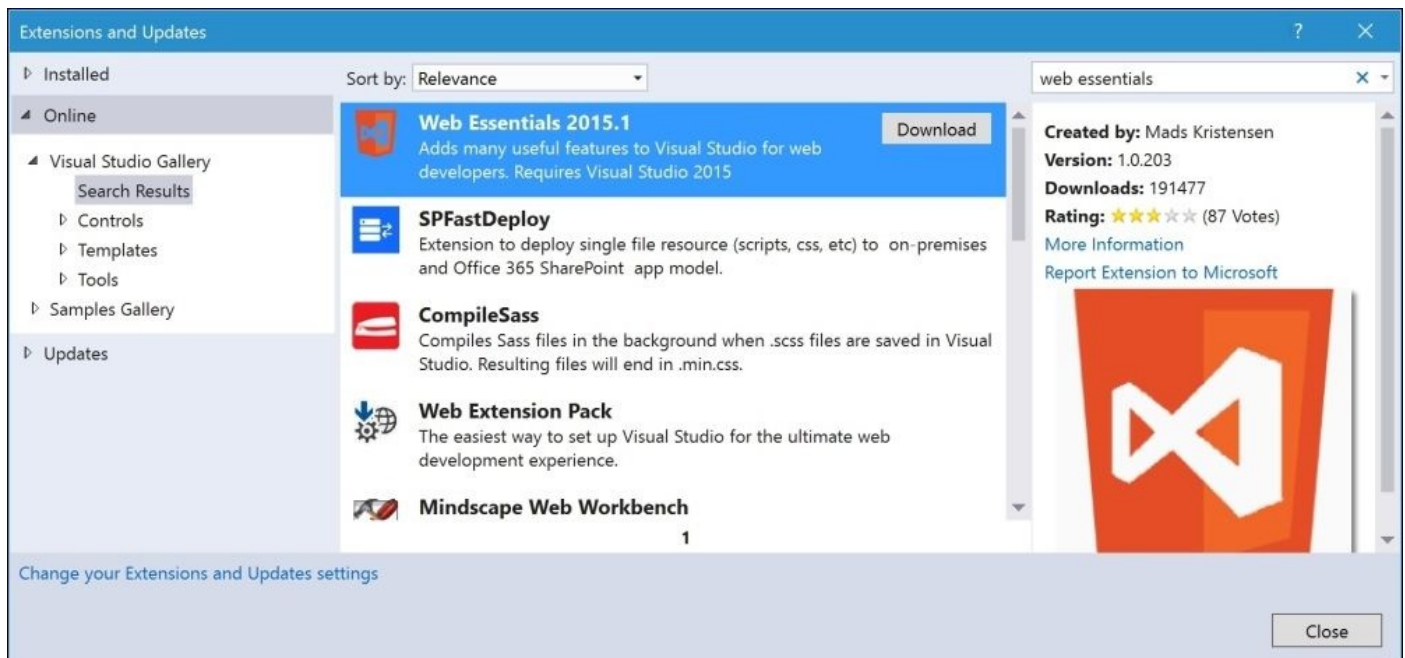
Tip

This book is about C#, so we will cover some of the basics. For more information on web browser technologies, I recommend that you refer to the book *HTML5 Web Application Development By Example* by Packt Publishing at <https://www.packtpub.com/web-development/html5-web-application-development-example-beginners-guide>.

To make it easier to work with HTML5, CSS3, and JavaScript, I recommend that developers install the free Web Essentials extension for Visual Studio.

Install Web Essentials 2015

Start Microsoft Visual Studio 2015. On the **Tools** menu, choose **Extensions and Updates**. In the left-hand list, select **Online**. In the search box, enter **web essentials**, select **Web Essentials 2015.1**, click on the **Download** button, and then follow the instructions:

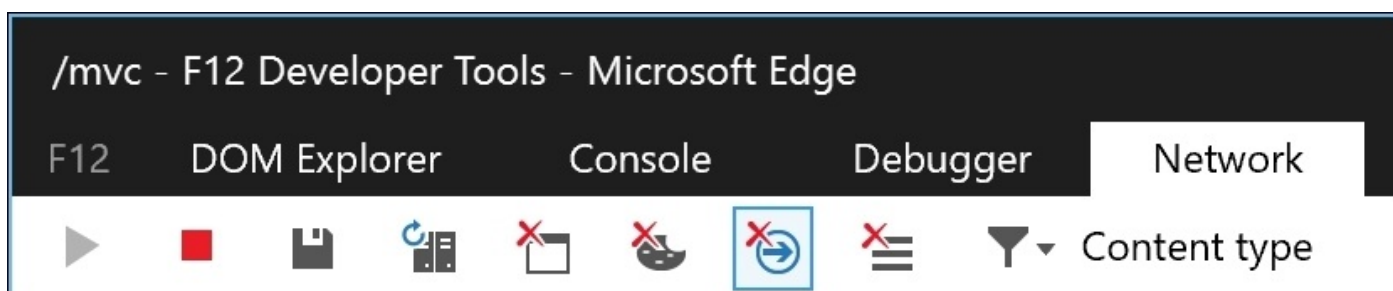


The HyperText Transfer Protocol (HTTP)

To communicate with a server, the client makes calls over the network using a protocol known as HTTP. HTTP is the technical underpinning of the “web”. So when we talk about “web” applications or “web” services, we mean they use HTTP to communicate between a client (often a web browser) and a server.

A client makes an HTTP request for a resource, such as a page identified by a URL (Uniform Resource Locator), and the server sends back an HTTP response. You can use Microsoft Edge and other browsers to record requests and responses.

Start Microsoft Edge. Press *F12* to show developer tools. Click on the **Network** tab. If the **Start profiling session** button has not been pressed, click on it to start recording, or press *Ctrl + E*:



In Microsoft Edge’s address box, enter <http://www.asp.net/mvc>.

In the **F12 Developer Tools** window, in the list of recorded requests, click on the first entry:

mvc http://www.asp.net/	HTTP	GET	200 OK	text/html
----------------------------	------	-----	-----------	-----------

On the right-hand side, you will see details about the request and the response:

Headers	Body	Parameters	Cookies	Timings
Request URL: <code>http://www.asp.net/mvc</code>				
Request Method: <code>GET</code>				
Status Code: ■ <code>200 / OK</code>				
Request Headers				
Accept: <code>text/html, application/xhtml+xml, image/jxr, */*</code>				
Accept-Encoding: <code>gzip, deflate</code>				
Accept-Language: <code>en-US, en-GB; q=0.7, en; q=0.3</code>				
Connection: <code>Keep-Alive</code>				
Cookie: <code>omniID=2ea92247_b4ba_4d8f_b19b_1739f9a94c2a; _...</code>				
Host: <code>www.asp.net</code>				
User-Agent: <code>Mozilla/5.0 (Windows NT 10.0; Win64; x64) Appl...</code>				
Response Headers				
Cache-Control: <code>private</code>				
Content-Encoding: <code>gzip</code>				
Content-Length: <code>17191</code>				
Content-Type: <code>text/html; charset=utf-8</code>				
Date: <code>Thu, 05 Nov 2015 07:53:29 GMT</code>				
Server: <code>Microsoft-IIS/8.0</code>				
Vary: <code>Accept-Encoding</code>				
X-Frame-Options: <code>SAMEORIGIN</code>				
X-Powered-By: <code>ARR/2.5</code>				

Note the following aspects:

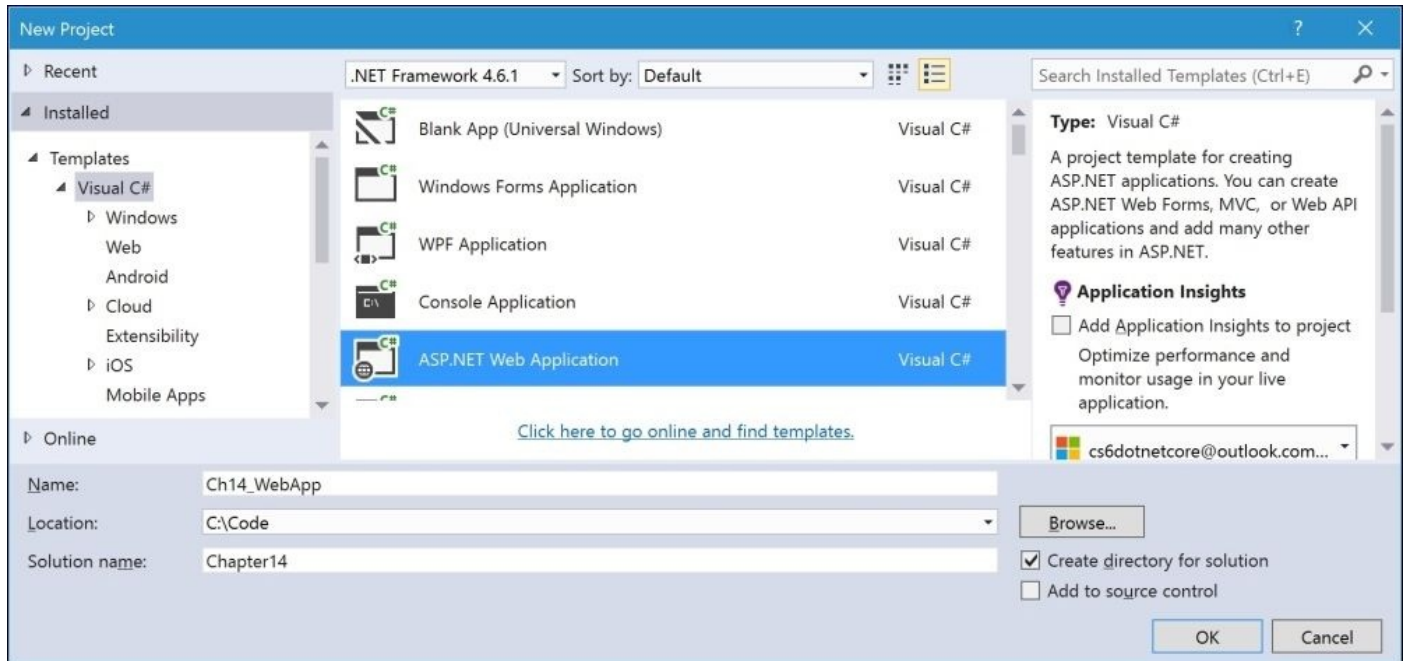
- The request method is `GET`. Other methods that HTTP defines include `POST`, `PUT`, `DELETE`, `HEAD`, and `PATCH`.
- The response status code is `200 OK`. This means the server found the resource the browser requested. Other status codes include `404 Missing`.
- The request headers include what formats the browser will accept. In this case, the browser is saying it understands `HTML`, `XHTML`, and others.
- The browser has told the server that it understands the `GZIP` and `DEFLATE` compressions algorithms.
- The browser has told the server which human languages it would prefer: `US English`, `British English`, and then any other dialect of `English`.
- I have been to this site before, so a cookie that was defined by the site is being sent to the server so that it can track me. Microsoft has named it `omniID`. Does that sound ominous to you?
- The server has sent back the response, compressed using the `GZIP` algorithm, because it knows that the client can decompress that format.

- The server is running **Internet Information Services (IIS) 8.0**.

Create a web application project

In Visual Studio, press *Ctrl + Shift + N* or choose **File | New | Project...**

In the **New Project** dialog, in the **Installed Templates** list, select **Visual C#**. In the center list, select **ASP.NET Web Application**, type the name as **Ch14_WebApp**, type the solution name as **Chapter14**, and then click on **OK**:



In the **New ASP.NET Project** dialog box, in the **ASP.NET Core 1.0 Templates** section, select the **Web Application** template.

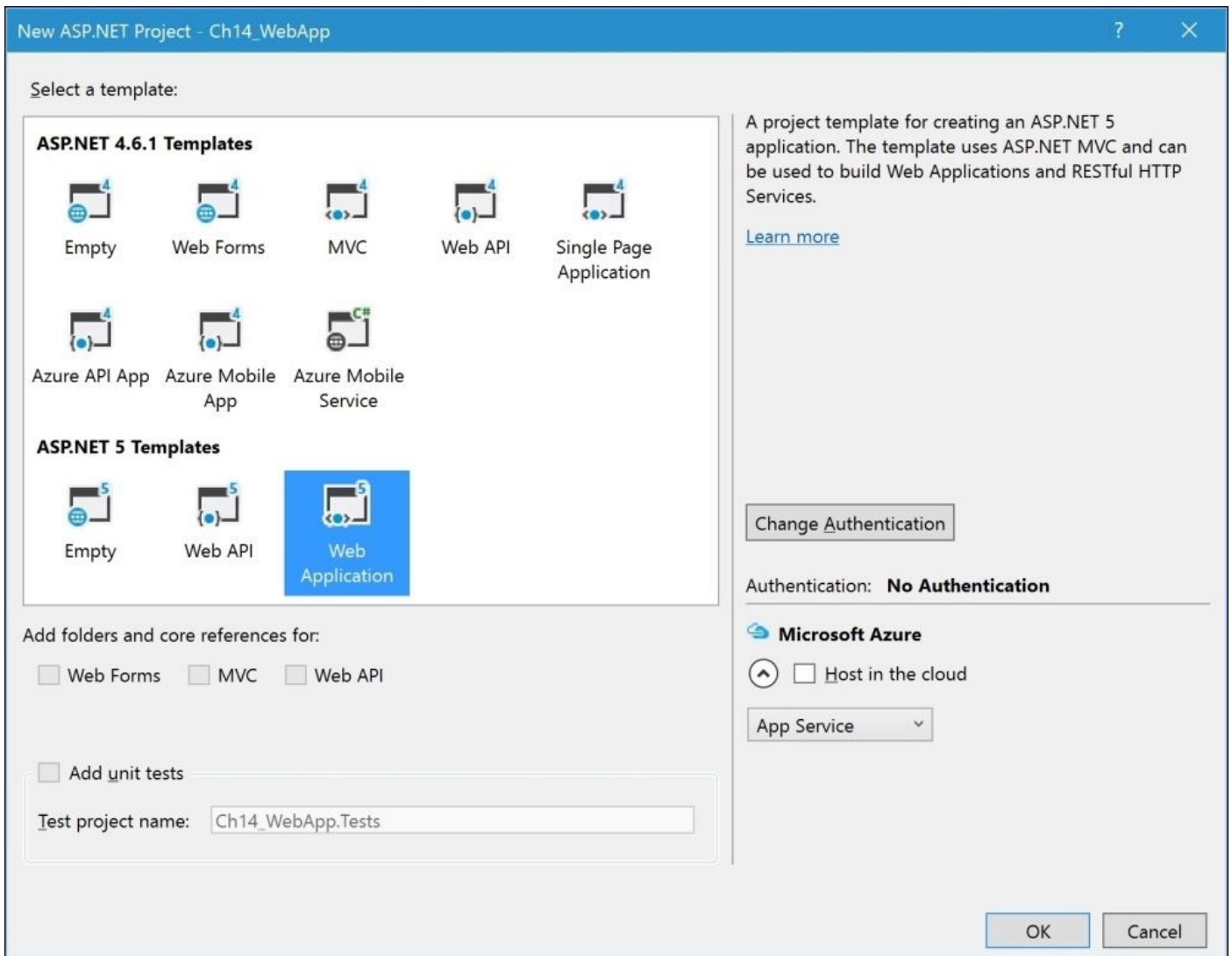
Note

At the time of writing this book, the final version of ASP.NET Core 1.0 and its Visual Studio project templates have not been released. So, the screenshots in this book show the old branding, ASP.NET 5!

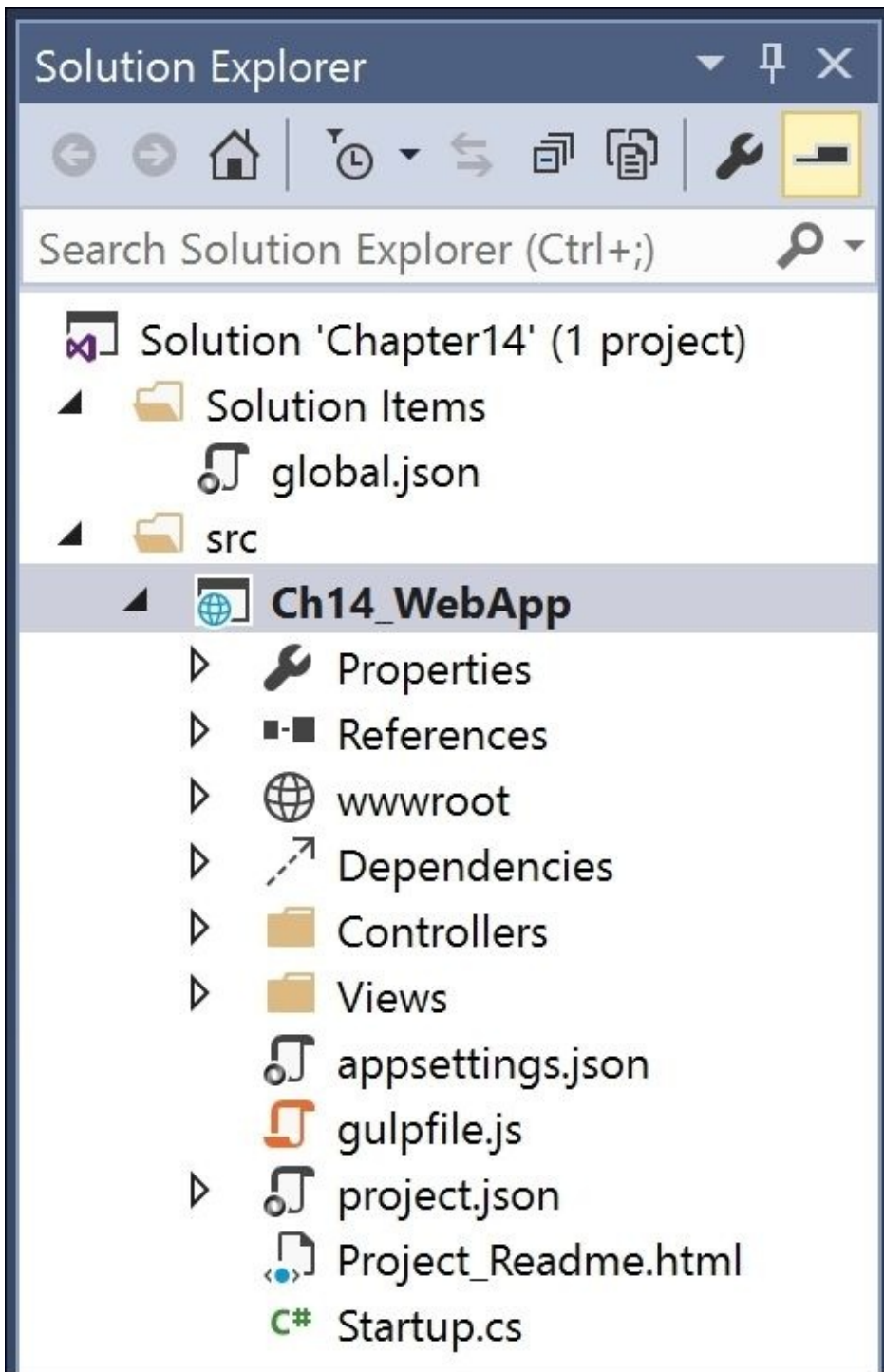
Click on the **Change Authentication** button and choose **No Authentication**. Then, click on **OK**. This tells Visual Studio to allow all users access to the application. We can change this later to secure our web application.

Uncheck the **Host in the cloud** box, because we want to run this locally. We can always deploy to the Microsoft Azure cloud later.

Click on **OK**:

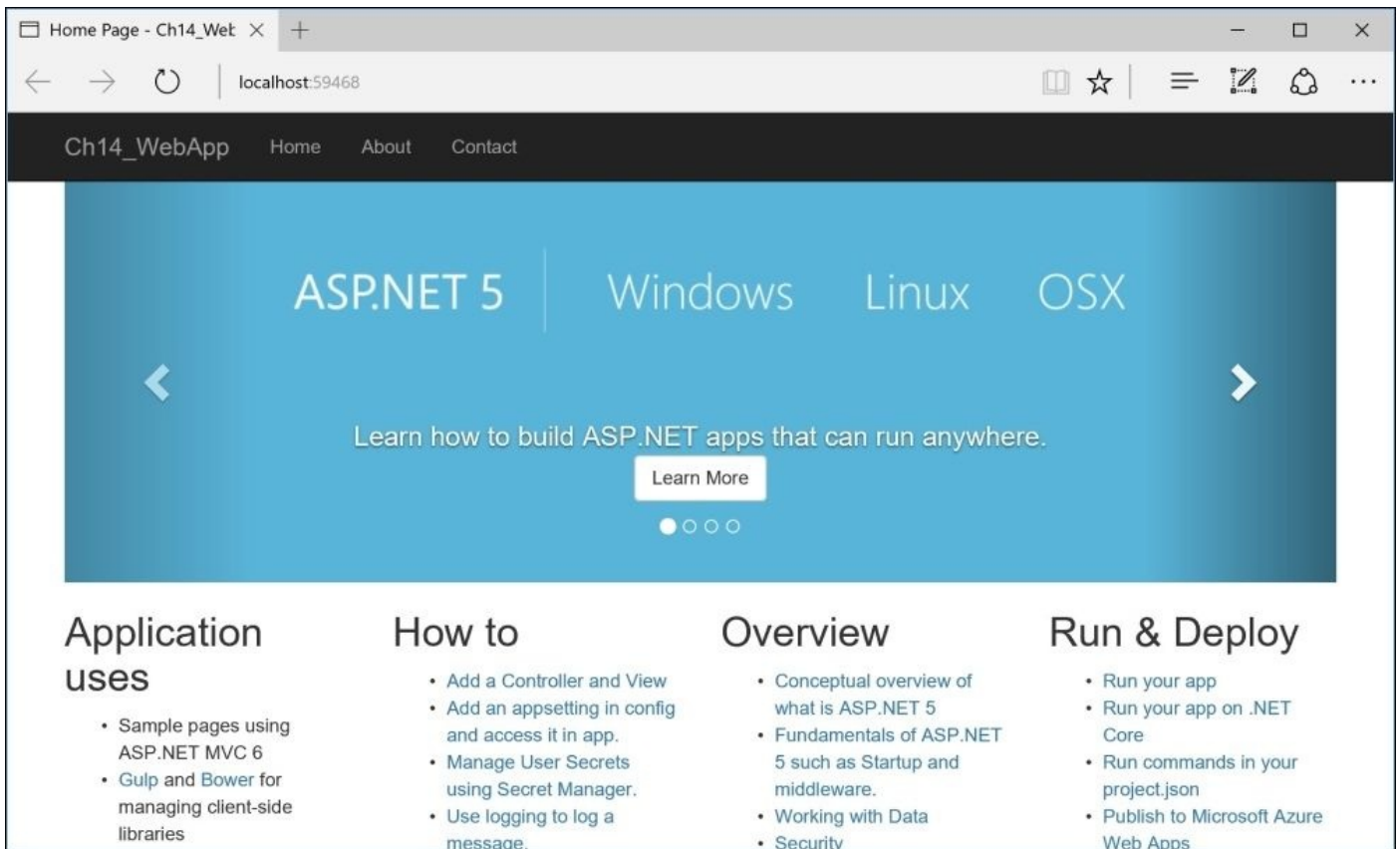


After a few seconds, your **Solution Explorer** window will look like this:

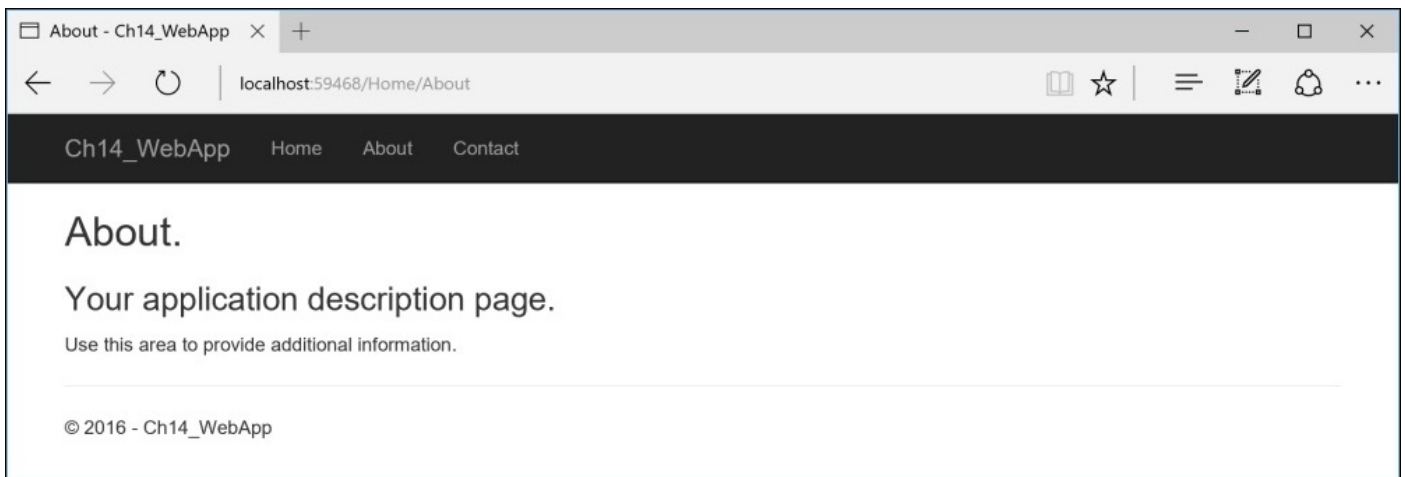


Run the application by pressing *F5*. The web application is hosted in the free version of IIS Express using a random port number for local testing.

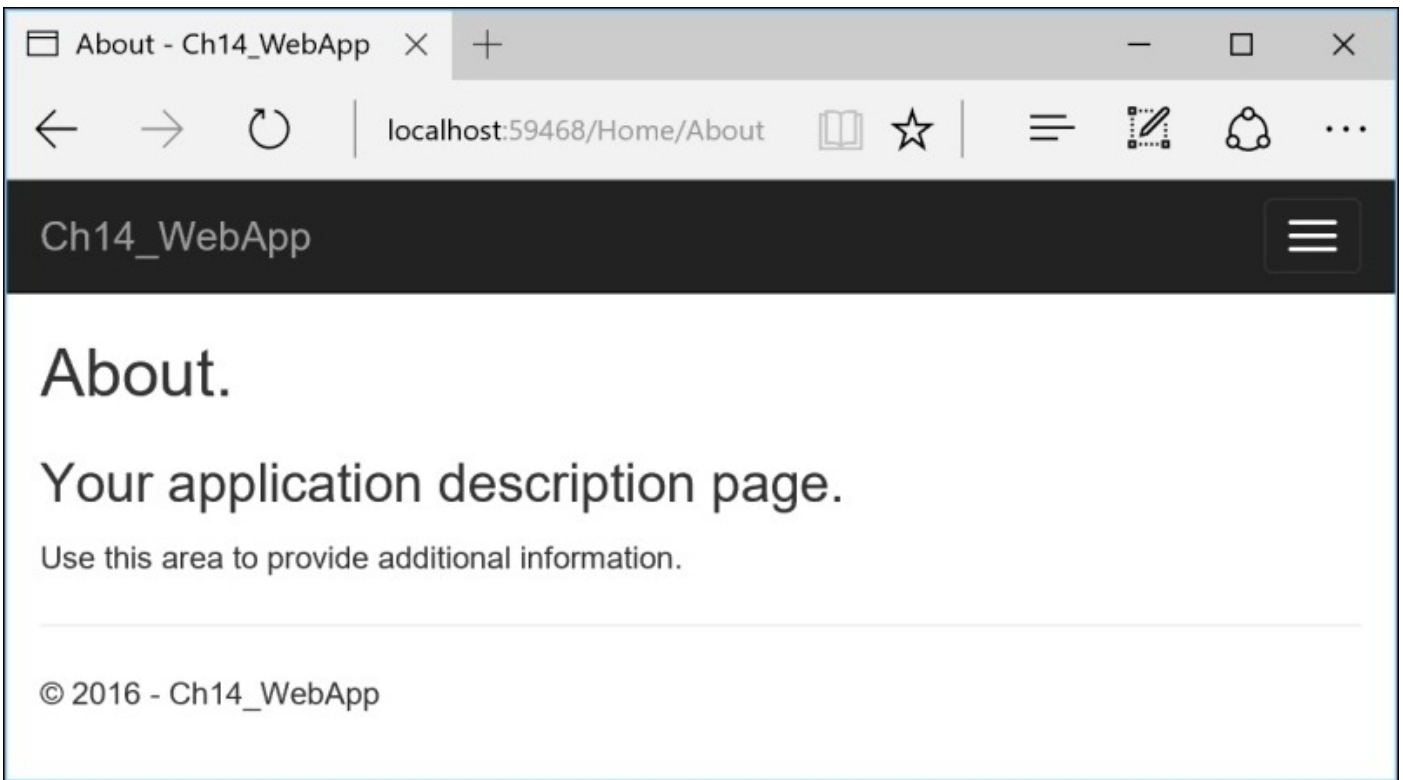
Notice that the home page has a black navigation bar with links to an **About** page and a **Contact** page. The home page has a carousel with four rotating items and four columns of links underneath:



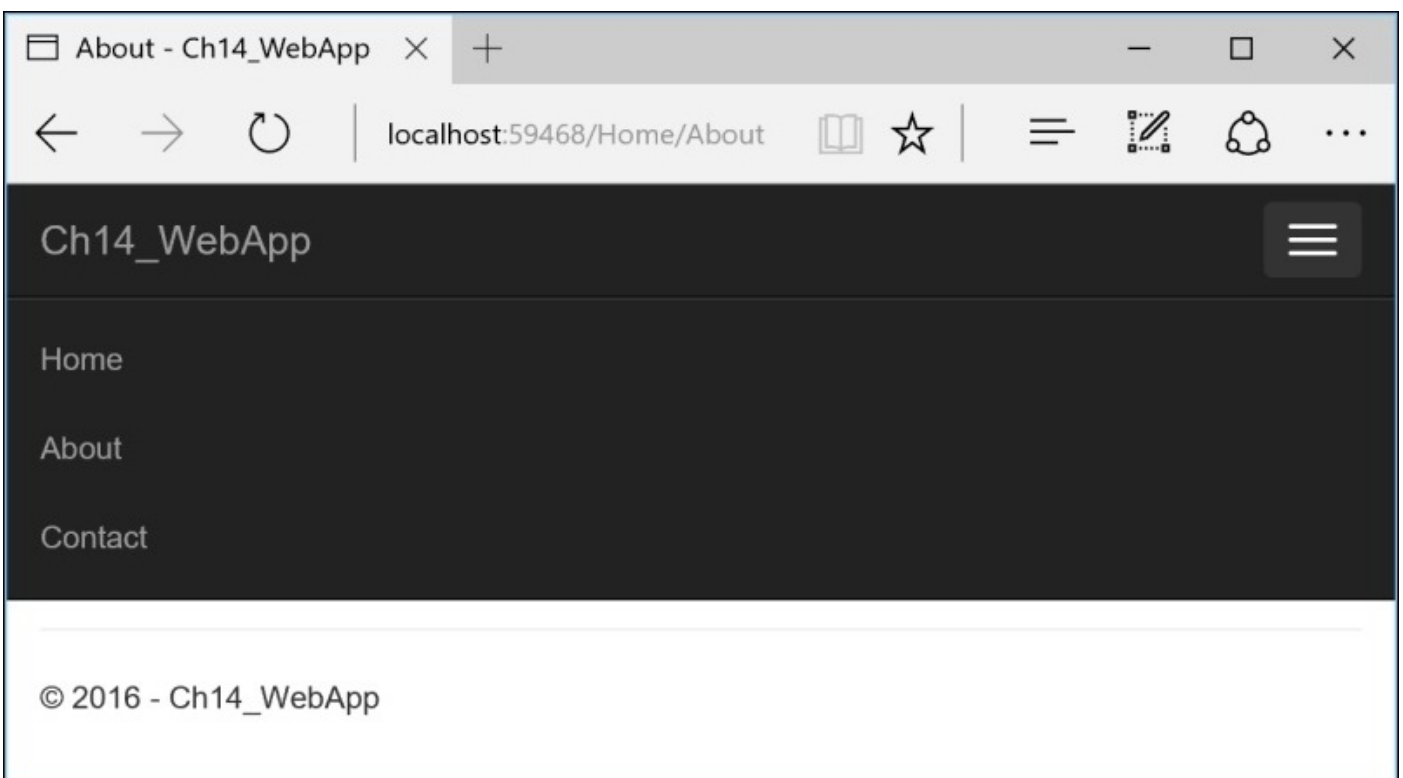
Click on the links to the **About** page and the **Contact** page, and notice the URLs that are used. To get to the **About** page, the user could enter `/Home/About` in the browser address box:



Resize the width of the browser window and notice that the navigation bar becomes a clickable “hamburger” menu (three horizontal lines):



This is an example of responsive web design. The page looks good on both desktop and mobile devices, by automatically adapting based on the current width of the window:



Exploring the parts of an ASP.NET Core web application

Let's walk through the parts that make up a modern ASP.NET Core application.

In Visual Studio, look at **Solution Explorer** for the **Ch14_WebApp** project and note the following points:

- `wwwroot`: This folder contains static content, such as stylesheets, images, scripts, and common libraries, that combine resources such as jQuery and Bootstrap
- `Dependencies`: This folder contains Bower and npm for modern package management
- `Controllers`: This folder contains C# classes that have methods (known as actions) that fetch a model and pass it to a view
- `Models`: This (optional) folder contains C# classes that represent all the data required for a request
- `Views`: This folder contains `.cshtml` files that combine HTML and C# code to enable the dynamic generation of an HTML response
- `project.json`: This file contains a list of NuGet packages (such as the Entity Framework Core) that your project requires and other project configuration
- `Startup.cs`: This file contains the Main entry point for your application and configures the services, pipeline, and routes for your application

The following screenshot shows the parts of a typical ASP.NET Core project:



ASP.NET Core startup

In the **Solution Explorer** window, double-click on the Startup.cs file.

Notice the ConfigureServices method that adds support for MVC. Later, we will add statements here to add support for the Entity Framework Core:

```
public void ConfigureServices(IServiceCollection services)
{
    // Add framework services.
    services.AddMvc();
}
```

Next, we have the Configure method.

The most important statement here is the one that calls UseMvc and maps a default route. This route is very flexible, because it would match almost any incoming URL:

```
public void Configure(IApplicationBuilder app, IHostingEnvironment env,
ILoggerFactory loggerFactory)
{
    loggerFactory.AddConsole(Configuration.GetSection("Logging"));
    loggerFactory.AddDebug();
    if (env.IsDevelopment())
    {
        app.UseBrowserLink();
        app.UseDeveloperExceptionPage();
    }
    else
    {
        app.UseExceptionHandler("/Home/Error");
    }
    app.UseIISPlatformHandler();
    app.UseStaticFiles();
    app.UseMvc(routes =>
    {
        routes.MapRoute(
            name: "default",
            template: "{controller=Home}/{action=Index}/{id?}");
    });
}
```

Understanding the default route

The default route looks at any URL entered by the user in the address bar and matches it to extract the name of a controller, the name of an action, and an optional id value (the ? symbol makes it optional). If the user hasn't entered these names, it uses defaults of Home for the controller, and Index for the action (the = assignment sets a default for a named segment).

Contents in curly brackets {} are called **segments**, and they are like a named parameter of a method. The value of these segments can be any string.

The responsibility of a route is to discover the name of a controller and an action.

Here's a table of example URLs and how MVC would work out the names. Notice that if the user does not supply a name, then the defaults **Home** and **Index** are used, as specified when the route was registered. You could change these defaults if you wanted:

URL	Controller	Action	ID
/	Home	Index	
/Muppet	Muppet	Index	
/Muppet/Kermit	Muppet	Kermit	
/Muppet/Kermit/Green	Muppet	Kermit	Green
/Products	Products	Index	
/Products/Detail	Products	Detail	
/Products/Detail/3	Products	Detail	3

ASP.NET Core controllers

Now that MVC knows the names of the controller and action, it will look for a class that implements an interface named `Controller`. To simplify the requirements, Microsoft supplies a class named `Controller` that your classes can inherit from.

The responsibilities of a controller are as follows:

- To extract parameters from the HTTP request
- To use the parameters to fetch the correct model and pass it to the correct view
- To return the results from the view to the client as an HTTP response

Defining the Home controller's actions

In the **Solution Explorer** window, expand the **Controllers** folder and double-click on the file named `HomeController.cs`:

```
public class HomeController : Controller
{
    public IActionResult Index()
    {
        return View();
    }
    public IActionResult About()
    {
        ViewData["Message"] = "Your application description page.";
        return View();
    }
    public IActionResult Contact()
    {
        ViewData["Message"] = "Your contact page.";
        return View();
    }
    public IActionResult Error()
    {
        return View();
    }
}
```

Tip

If the user enters `/`, or `/Home`, then it is the equivalent of `/Home/Index` because those were the defaults.

Note the following aspects:

- None of the action methods currently use a model
- Two of the action methods use a dictionary named `ViewData` to store a string message that can then be read inside a view
- All action methods execute a method named `View` and return the results to the client

ASP.NET Core models

In MVC, the model represents the data required for a request. For example, an HTTP GET request for `http://www.example.com/products/details/3` would mean you are asking for the details of product number 3.

The controller would need to use the ID value 3 to retrieve the record for that product and pass it to a view that can then turn the model into HTML for display in the browser.

For this initial example, we will create an Entity Data Model (EDM) to access data in the Northwind database.

Tip

Best Practice

Use a data repository (typically implemented as a service) to manage your data.

Create Entity models for Northwind

If you have not already installed the Northwind database, then follow the instructions at the beginning of [Chapter 8](#), *Working with Relational Data Using the Entity Framework*.

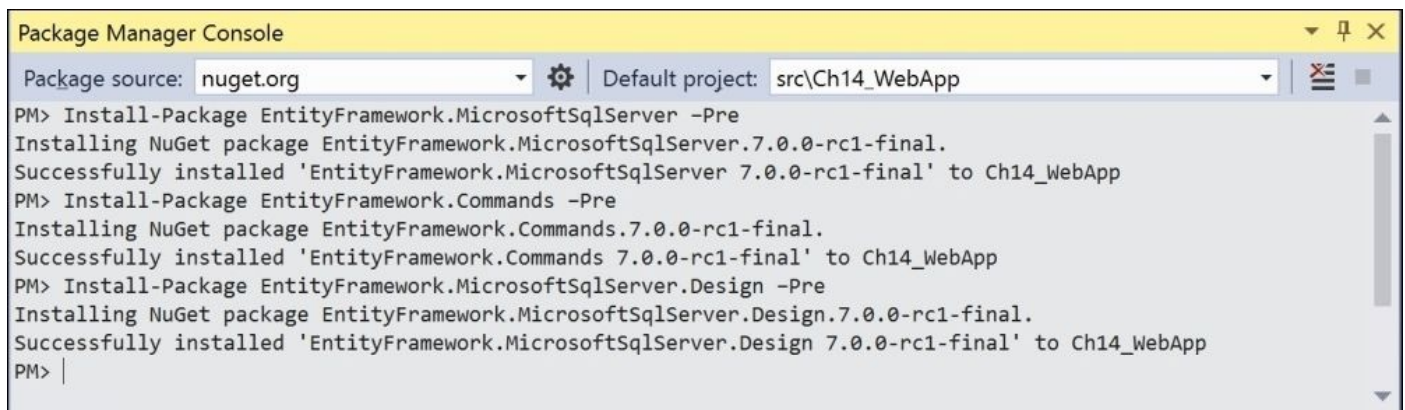
On the **Tools** menu, choose **NuGet Package Manager** and then **Package Manager Console**.

In the PM> prompt, enter the following commands:

```
Install-Package EntityFramework.MicrosoftSqlServer
Install-Package EntityFramework.Commands
Install-Package EntityFramework.MicrosoftSqlServer.Design :
```

Tip

If the preceding commands give errors, then add `-pre` to the end of each command to install the pre-release version as shown in the following screenshot.



```
Package Manager Console
Package source: nuget.org | Default project: src\Ch14_WebApp
PM> Install-Package EntityFramework.MicrosoftSqlServer -Pre
Installing NuGet package EntityFramework.MicrosoftSqlServer.7.0.0-rc1-final.
Successfully installed 'EntityFramework.MicrosoftSqlServer 7.0.0-rc1-final' to Ch14_WebApp
PM> Install-Package EntityFramework.Commands -Pre
Installing NuGet package EntityFramework.Commands.7.0.0-rc1-final.
Successfully installed 'EntityFramework.Commands 7.0.0-rc1-final' to Ch14_WebApp
PM> Install-Package EntityFramework.MicrosoftSqlServer.Design -Pre
Installing NuGet package EntityFramework.MicrosoftSqlServer.Design.7.0.0-rc1-final.
Successfully installed 'EntityFramework.MicrosoftSqlServer.Design 7.0.0-rc1-final' to Ch14_WebApp
PM> |
```

In the **Solution Explorer** window, double-click on **project.json**. Notice that three dependencies have been added for the Entity Framework Core:

```
{
  "version": "1.0.0-*",
  "compilationOptions": {
    "emitEntryPoint": true
  },

  "dependencies": {
    "EntityFramework.Commands": "7.0.0-rc1-final",
    "EntityFramework.MicrosoftSqlServer": "7.0.0-rc1-final",
    "EntityFramework.MicrosoftSqlServer.Design": "7.0.0-rc1-final",
    "Microsoft.AspNet.Diagnostics": "1.0.0-rc1-final",
```

In the **commands** section, add a new command for ef, as follows:

```
"commands": {
  "web": "Microsoft.AspNet.Server.Kestrel",
  "ef": "EntityFramework.Commands"
},
```

Save `project.json` file.

In the **Solution Explorer** window, right-click on the project and choose **Add, New Folder...**, and then enter the name of the model.

Right-click on the **Ch14_WebApp** project and choose **Open Folder in File Explorer**. Click in the address box and copy the path to the clipboard by pressing *Ctrl + C*.

Click the Windows Start button and start Command Prompt. In Command Prompt window, enter `cd`, and then right-click to paste the path to your project. Press *Enter* to change to that directory:

```
cd C:\Code\Chapter14\src\Ch14_WebApp
```

Enter the following command to tell the .NET Version Manager to use the latest version of .NET Core:

```
dnvm use 1.0.0-rc1-update1
```

Note

At the time of writing this book, .NET Core was a release candidate. By the time you follow these instructions, the final version should be available, and use the new .NET CLI so the commands `dnvm` and `dnx` will be replaced by the command `dotnet`.

Enter the following command to generate classes that represent entities for all the tables in the Northwind database in the `Models` subfolder:

```
dnx ef dbcontext scaffold "Server=(localdb)\mssqllocaldb;Database=Northwind;Trusted_Connection=True;" EntityFramework.MicrosoftSqlServer --outputDir Models
```

In the **Solution Explorer** window, expand the `Models` folder. You will see that a class has been created for each entity, and a class named `NorthwindContext` has been created to represent the whole database:



Tip

Best Practice

Create a separate class library project for your entity models. This allows easier sharing between servers and clients. We have not done this for this example to keep it simple for now.

Configure Entity Framework Core as a service

Dependency injection is central to ASP.NET Core. Services, such as the Entity Framework Core that are needed by MVC controllers, must be registered as a service during startup.

In the **Solution Explorer** window, open the `Startup.cs` file. Import the following namespaces:

```
using Ch14_WebApp.Models;
using Microsoft.Data.Entity;
```

Add the following statements to the `ConfigureServices` method:

```
var connection = @"Server=
(localdb)\mssqllocaldb;Database=Northwind;Trusted_Connection=True;";
services.AddEntityFramework()
    .AddSqlServer()
    .AddDbContext<NorthwindContext>(options =>
options.UseSqlServer(connection));
```

Since we are setting the database connection string in the ASP.NET Core startup, it does not need to be done in the `NorthwindContext` class.

In the **Solution Explorer** window, in the `Models` folder, open the `NorthwindContext.cs` file and delete the following method:

```
protected override void OnConfiguring(DbContextOptionsBuilder options)
{
    options.UseSqlServer(@"Server=
(localdb)\mssqllocaldb;Database=Northwind;Trusted_Connection=True;");
}
```

Create view models for requests

Imagine that when a user comes to our website, we want to show them a list of products and a count of the number of visitors we have had this month. All the data that we want to show in response to a request is the MVC model, sometimes called a **view model** because it is a *model* that is passed to a *view*.

In the **Solution Explorer** window, select the **Models** folder. On the **Project** menu, choose **Add Class...**, and in the dialog box, choose **Class** and name it **HomeIndexViewModel**.

Modify the class definition to make it look like this:

```
public class HomeIndexViewModel
{
    public int VisitorCount;
    public ICollection<Products> Products { get; set; }
}
```


Fetch the model in the controller

Open the HomeController class. Import the Ch14_WebApp.Models namespace.

Add a field to store a reference to a NorthwindContext instance and initialize it in a constructor:

```
private NorthwindContext db;

public HomeController(NorthwindContext injectedContext)
{
    db = injectedContext;
}
```

Modify the contents of the Index action method to make it look like this:

```
var model = new HomeIndexViewModel
{
    VisitorCount = (new Random()).Next(1, 1001),
    Products = db.Products.ToArray()
};
return View(model); // pass model to view
```

Note that we will simulate a visitor count using the Random class to generate a number between 1 and 1000.

Note

If you build the project now, you might get “CS0833 An anonymous type cannot have multiple properties with the same name” errors due to bugs in the scaffolding feature. To fix the errors, simply delete the duplicate members.

ASP.NET Core views

The responsibility of a view is to transform a model into HTML or other formats. There are multiple **view engines** that can be used to do this. The default view engine for ASP.NET MVC 3 and later is called **Razor**, and it uses the @ symbol to indicate server-side code execution.

Rendering the Home controller's views

In the **Solution Explorer** window, expand the **Views** folder. Expand the **Home** folder. Note the three files with the `.cshtml` file extension.

Tip

The `.cshtml` file extension means this is a file that mixes C# and HTML.

When the `View` method is executed in a controller action, MVC looks in the **Views** folder for a subfolder with the same name as the current controller, that is, `Home`. It then looks for a file with the same name as the current action, that is, `Index`, `About`, or `Contact`.

In the `Index.cshtml` file, notice the block of code wrapped in `@{ }`. This will execute first and can be used to store data that needs to be passed into a shared layout file:

```
@{  
    ViewData["Title"] = "Home Page";  
}
```

Note the static HTML content in several `DIV` elements that uses Bootstrap for styling.

Tip

Best Practice

Instead of defining your own styles, use a library, such as Bootstrap, that implements responsive design using standard CSS3 principles.

Sharing layouts between views

There is a file, named `_ViewStart.cshtml`, that gets executed by the `View` method. It is used to set defaults that apply to all views.

For example, it sets the `Layout` property of all views to a shared layout file:

```
@{
    Layout = "_Layout";
}
```

In the `Shared` folder, open the `_Layout.cshtml` file. Notice that the title is being read from the `ViewData` dictionary that was set earlier in the `Index.cshtml` view:

```
<title>@ViewData["Title"] - Ch14_WebApp</title>
```

Note the rendering of common styles to support Bootstrap and the two sections. During development, the fully-commented and nicely formatted versions of CSS files will be used. For staging and production, the minified versions will be used:

```
<environment names="Development">
    <link rel="stylesheet" href="~/lib/bootstrap/dist/css/bootstrap.css" />
    <link rel="stylesheet" href="~/css/site.css" />
</environment>
<environment names="Staging,Production">
    <link rel="stylesheet"
href="https://ajax.aspnetcdn.com/ajax/bootstrap/3.3.5/css/bootstrap.min.css"
asp-fallback-href="~/lib/bootstrap/dist/css/bootstrap.min.css"
asp-fallback-test-class="sr-only" asp-fallback-test-
property="position" asp-fallback-test-value="absolute" />
    <link rel="stylesheet" href="~/css/site.min.css" asp-append-
version="true" />
</environment>
```

Note the rendering of hyperlinks to allow users to click between pages using the navigation bar at the top of every page. The `<a>` elements use “tag helper” attributes to specify the controller name and action name that will execute when the link is clicked:

```
<div class="navbar-collapse collapse">
    <ul class="nav navbar-nav">
        <li><a asp-controller="Home" asp-action="Index">Home</a></li>
        <li><a asp-controller="Home" asp-action="About">About</a></li>
        <li><a asp-controller="Home" asp-action="Contact">Contact</a></li>
    </ul>
</div>
```

Note the rendering of the body:

```
@RenderBody()
```

Note the rendering of script blocks at the bottom of the page (so that it doesn't slow down the display of the page):

```
<environment names="Development">
```

```

    <script src="~/lib/jquery/dist/jquery.js"></script>
    <script src="~/lib/bootstrap/dist/js/bootstrap.js"></script>
    <script src="~/js/site.js" asp-append-version="true"></script>
</environment>
<environment names="Staging,Production">
    <script src="https://ajax.aspnetcdn.com/ajax/jquery/jquery-
2.1.4.min.js"
        asp-fallback-src="~/lib/jquery/dist/jquery.min.js"
        asp-fallback-test="window.jQuery">
    </script>
    <script
src="https://ajax.aspnetcdn.com/ajax/bootstrap/3.3.5/bootstrap.min.js"
        asp-fallback-src="~/lib/bootstrap/dist/js/bootstrap.min.js"
        asp-fallback-test="window.jQuery && window.jQuery.fn &&
window.jQuery.fn.modal">
    </script>
    <script src="~/js/site.min.js" asp-append-version="true"></script>
</environment>

```

You can add your own script blocks into an optional defined section named **scripts**:

```
@RenderSection("scripts", required: false)
```

Defining custom styles

In the `wwwroot\css` folder, open the `site.css` file.

Add a new style that will apply to an element with the newspaper ID, like this:

```
#newspaper {  
    column-count: 3;  
}
```

Notice that the `column-count` property has a purple squiggle under it. When you hover over it, you will see that only Internet Explorer 10 (or later) and Opera 11.6 (or later) currently implement this standard. Luckily, Web Essentials can fix this for us.

Click on the `column-count` property, hover your mouse over the small blue bar, click on the button to pop open a menu, and then click on **Add missing vendor specifics**.

You will see that Web Essentials has added two extra statements. They are faded out to indicate that they will automatically change when you change the value for the original `column-count` property:

```
#newspaper {  
    -moz-column-count: 3;  
    -webkit-column-count: 3;  
    column-count: 3;  
}
```

Tip

To learn more about CSS3 and responsive design, read the book *Responsive Web Design with HTML5 and CSS3 - Second Edition* by Packt Publishing at

<https://www.packtpub.com/web-development/responsive-web-design-html5-and-css3-second-edition>.

Defining a typed view

To improve the IntelliSense when writing a view, you can define the type the view can expect using a `@model` directive at the top.

Back in the `Index.cshtml` view, enter the following code as the first line of the file:

```
@model Ch14_WebApp.Models.HomeIndexViewModel
```

Now whenever we enter `@Model`, Visual Studio's code editor will know the correct type and will provide IntelliSense.

Tip

To declare the type of the model, use `@model` (with lowercase `m`). To read the model, use `@Model` (with uppercase `M`).

In `Index.cshtml`, delete all the `<div>` elements and replace them with this code:

```
<div class="row">
  <div class="col-md-12">
    <h1>Northwind</h1>
    <p class="lead">We have had @Model.VisitorCount visitors this
month.</p>
    <h2>Products</h2>
    <div id="newspaper">
      <ul>
        @foreach (var item in @Model.Products)
        {
          <li><a asp-controller="Home" asp-action="ProductDetail"
asp-route-id="@item.ProductID">@item.ProductName costs
@item.UnitPrice.Value.ToString("C")</a></li>
        }
      </ul>
    </div>
  </div>
</div>
```

Note how easy it is to mix static HTML elements, such as `` and ``, with C# code to output the list of product names.

Note the `<div>` element with the `id` attribute of `newspaper`. This will use the custom style that we defined earlier, so all the content in that element will display in three columns.

To test the web application, press `F5`. The results in Microsoft Edge will look something like this:

Northwind

We have had 366 visitors this month.

Products

- Chai costs \$18.00
- Chang costs \$19.00
- Aniseed Syrup costs \$10.00
- Chef Anton's Cajun Seasoning costs \$22.00
- Chef Anton's Gumbo Mix costs \$21.35
- Grandma's Boysenberry Spread costs \$25.00
- Gumbär Gummibärchen costs \$31.23
- Schoggi Schokolade costs \$43.90
- Rössle Sauerkraut costs \$45.60
- Thüringer Rostbratwurst costs \$123.79
- Nord-Ost Matjeshering costs \$25.89
- Gorgonzola Telino costs \$12.50
- Mascarpone Fabioli costs \$32.00
- Geitost costs \$2.50
- Tourtière costs \$7.45
- Pâté chinois costs \$24.00
- Gnocchi di nonna Alice costs \$38.00
- Ravioli Angelo costs \$19.50
- Escargots de Bourgogne costs \$13.25
- Raclette Courdavault costs \$55.00
- Camembert Pierrot costs \$34.00
- Sirop d'érable costs \$28.50

Taking ASP.NET Core further

Now that you've seen the basics of how models, views, and controllers work together to provide a web application, let's look at some common scenarios, such as passing parameters and annotating models.

Passing parameters using a route value

Back in the `HomeController` class, add the following action method. It uses something called the **default model binder** to automatically match the `id` passed in the route to the parameter named `id` in the method.

Tip

Model binders are very powerful, and the default one does a lot for you. For advanced scenarios, you can create your own by implementing the `IModelBinder` interface, but that is beyond the scope of this book.

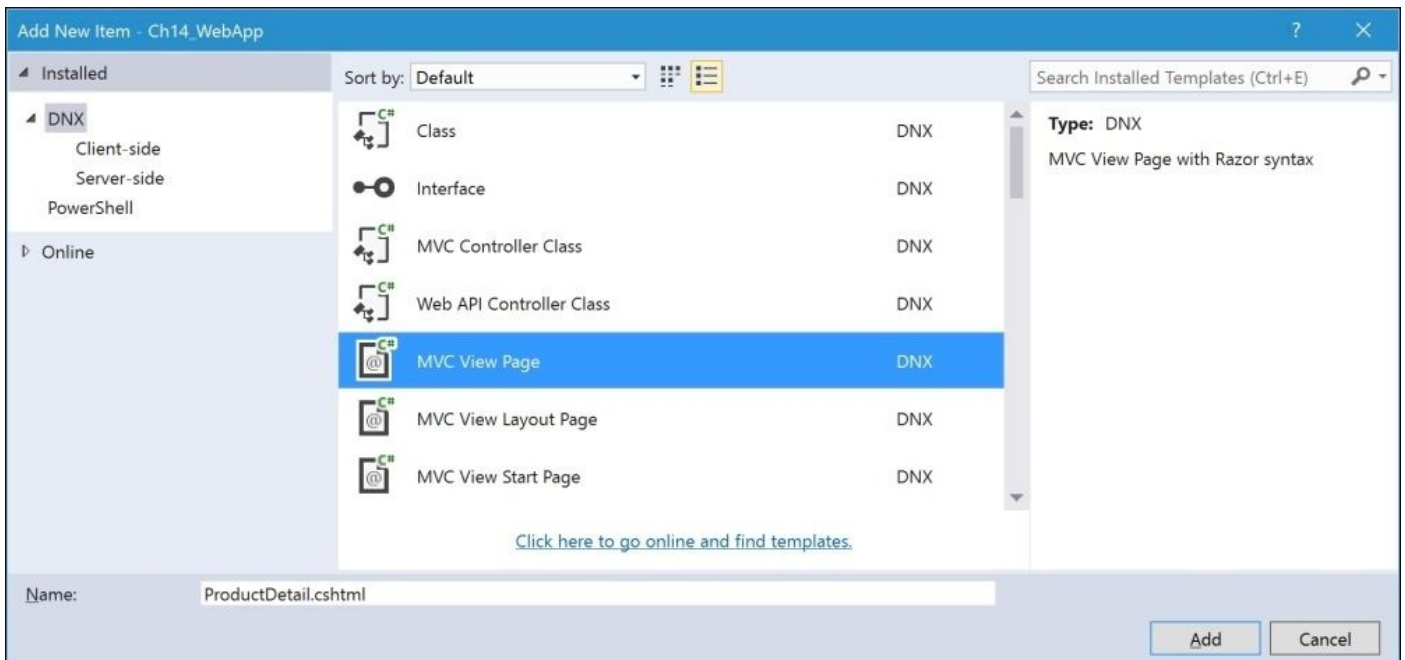
Inside the method, we check to see whether the `id` is null, and if so, it returns a 404 status code and message. Otherwise, we can connect to the database and try to retrieve a product using the `id` variable. If we find a product, we pass it to a view; otherwise, we return a different 404 status code and message:

```
public IActionResult ProductDetail(int? id)
{
    if (!id.HasValue)
    {
        return HttpNotFound("You must pass a product ID in the route, for
example, /Home/ProductDetail/21");
    }
    var model = db.Products.SingleOrDefault(p => p.ProductID == id);
    if (model == null)
    {
        return HttpNotFound($"A product with the ID of {id} was not
found.");
    }
    return View(model); // pass model to view
}
```

Now we need to create a view for this request.

Inside the **Views** folder, right-click on **Home** and choose **Add | New Item....**

Choose **MVC View Page** and name it **ProductDetail.cshtml**:



Modify the contents as shown here:

```
@model Ch14_WebApp.Models.Products
@{
    ViewData["Title"] = "Product Detail - " + Model.ProductName;
}
<h2>Product Detail</h2>
<hr />
<div>
    <dl class="dl-horizontal">
        <dt>Product ID</dt>
        <dd>@Model.ProductID</dd>
        <dt>Product Name</dt>
        <dd>@Model.ProductName</dd>
        <dt>Category ID</dt>
        <dd>@Model.CategoryID</dd>
        <dt>Unit Price</dt>
        <dd>@Model.UnitPrice.Value.ToString("C")</dd>
        <dt>Units In Stock</dt>
        <dd>@Model.UnitsInStock</dd>
    </dl>
</div>
```

Test the new action and view by pressing *F5*.

When the home page appears with the list of products, click one of them, for example, product 26. The result should look something like this:

Product Detail

Product ID	26
Product Name	Gumbär Gummibärchen
Category ID	3
Unit Price	\$31.23
Units In Stock	15

Passing parameters using a query string

In the HomeController class, import the Microsoft.Data.Entity namespace.

Add a new action method like this:

```
public IActionResult ProductsThatCostMoreThan(decimal? price)
{
    if (!price.HasValue)
    {
        return HttpNotFound("You must pass a product price in the query
string, for example, /Home/ProductsThatCostMoreThan?price=50");
    }
    var model = db.Products.Include(p => p.Category).Include(p =>
p.Supplier).Where(p => p.UnitPrice > price).ToArray();
    if (model.Count() == 0)
    {
        return HttpNotFound($"No products cost more than {price:C}.");
    }
    ViewData["MaxPrice"] = price.Value.ToString("C");
    return View(model); // pass model to view
}
```

Inside the **Views** folder, right-click on **Home** and choose **Add | New Item....**

Choose **MVC View Page** and name it **ProductsThatCostMoreThan.cshtml**.

Modify the contents like this:

```
@model IEnumerable<Ch14_WebApp.Models.Products>
@{
    ViewData["Title"] = "Products That Cost More Than " +
ViewData["MaxPrice"];
}
<h2>Products That Cost More Than @ViewData["MaxPrice"]</h2>
<table class="table">
    <tr>
        <th>
            @Html.DisplayNameFor(model => model.Category.CategoryName)
        </th>
        <th>
            @Html.DisplayNameFor(model => model.Supplier.CompanyName)
        </th>
        <th>
            @Html.DisplayNameFor(model => model.ProductName)
        </th>
        <th>
            @Html.DisplayNameFor(model => model.UnitPrice)
        </th>
        <th>
            @Html.DisplayNameFor(model => model.UnitsInStock)
        </th>
    </tr>
    @foreach (var item in Model)
    {
        <tr>
```

```

        <td>
            @Html.DisplayFor(modelItem => item.Category.CategoryName)
        </td>
        <td>
            @Html.DisplayFor(modelItem => item.Supplier.CompanyName)
        </td>
        <td>
            @Html.DisplayFor(modelItem => item.ProductName)
        </td>
        <td>
            @Html.DisplayFor(modelItem => item.UnitPrice)
        </td>
        <td>
            @Html.DisplayFor(modelItem => item.UnitsInStock)
        </td>
    </tr>
}
</table>

```

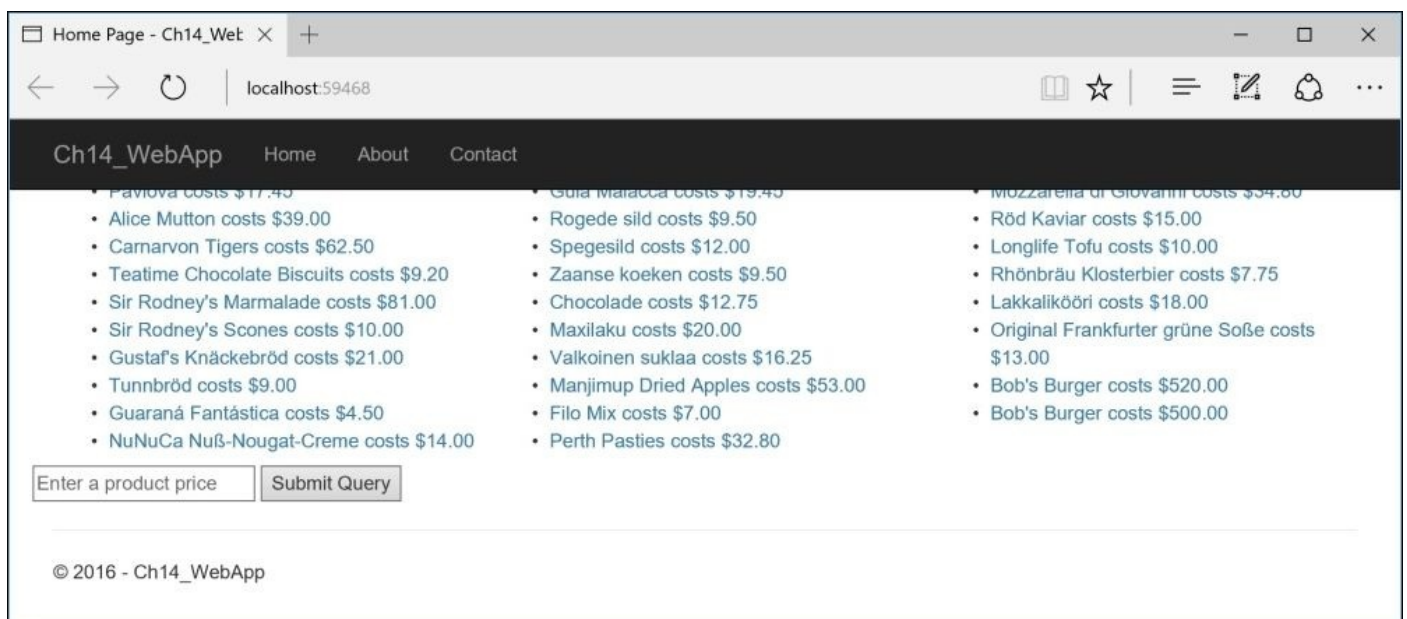
In the **Views** folder, in the **Home** folder, open `Index.cshtml` file and add the following div element at the bottom of the file. This will provide a form for the user to enter a price. The user can then click on a submit button to call the action method that shows only products that cost more than the entered price:

```

<div class="row">
    <form asp-action="ProductsThatCostMoreThan" method="get">
        <input name="price" placeholder="Enter a product price" />
        <input type="submit" />
    </form>
</div>

```

Run the web application by pressing `F5`. On the home page, scroll down and enter a price in the form. Then, click on **Submit Query**:



You will see a table of the products that cost more than the price you entered:

Products That Cost More Than \$50.00

CategoryName	CompanyName	ProductName	UnitPrice	UnitsInStock
Meat/Poultry	Tokyo Traders	Mishi Kobe Niku	97.00	29
Seafood	Pavlova, Ltd.	Carnarvon Tigers	62.50	42
Confections	Specialty Biscuits, Ltd.	Sir Rodney's Marmalade	81.00	40
Meat/Poultry	Plutzer Lebensmittelgroßmärkte AG	Thüringer Rostbratwurst	123.79	0
Beverages	Aux joyeux ecclésiastiques	Côte de Blaye	263.50	17
Produce	G'day, Mate	Manjimup Dried Apples	53.00	20

Annotating models

You might have noticed that the column headings in the table used the names of the properties by default. This means that if the property is multiple words, it won't have spaces. We can use data annotations to improve this.

In the `Models` folder, open the `Products` class. Import the `System.ComponentModel.DataAnnotations` namespace.

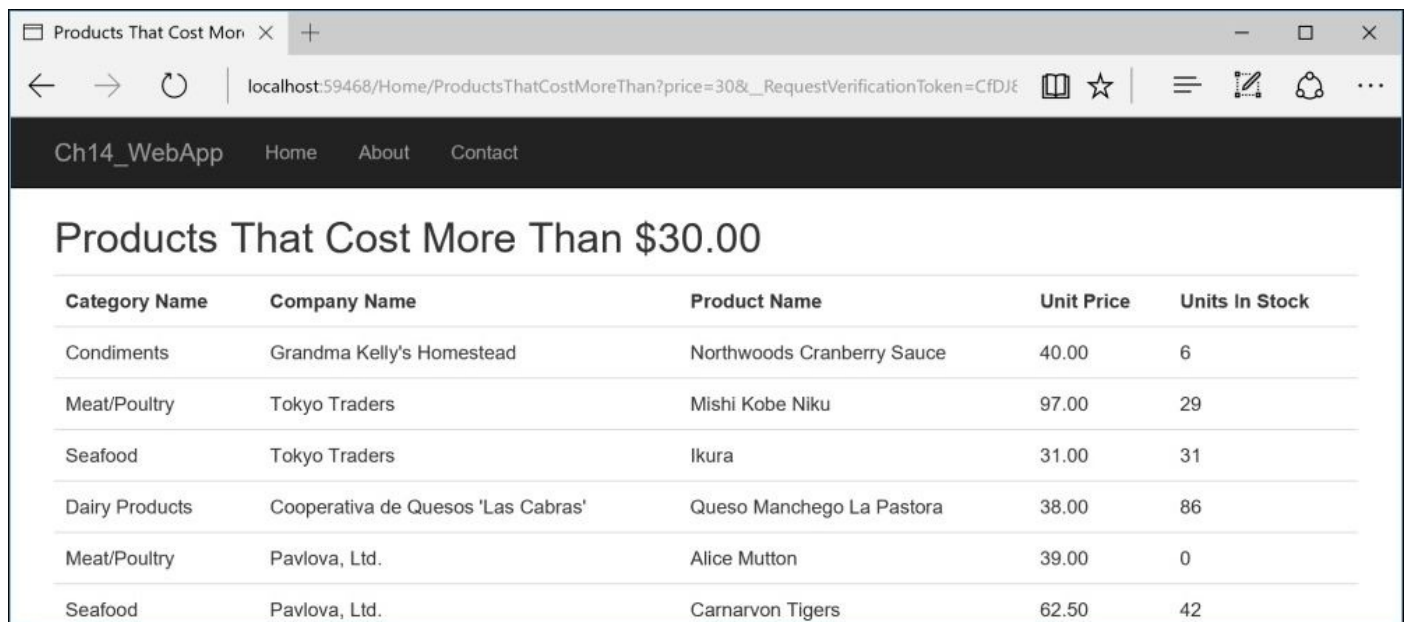
Add `[Display]` attributes before each property if you want to have a different label, for example, `Product Name`, `Unit Price`, `Units In Stock`, and so on:

```
[Display(Name = "Product Name")]  
public string ProductName { get; set; }
```

Apply the `[Display]` attribute to the properties of three other classes: `Category's Category Name`, `Customer's Company Name`, and `Supplier's Company Name`.

Start the web application by pressing `F5`.

Enter a product price and click on **Submit Query**. Notice that the column headings now reflect the display attributes and not the actual property names:



Category Name	Company Name	Product Name	Unit Price	Units In Stock
Condiments	Grandma Kelly's Homestead	Northwoods Cranberry Sauce	40.00	6
Meat/Poultry	Tokyo Traders	Mishi Kobe Niku	97.00	29
Seafood	Tokyo Traders	Ikura	31.00	31
Dairy Products	Cooperativa de Quesos 'Las Cabras'	Queso Manchego La Pastora	38.00	86
Meat/Poultry	Pavlova, Ltd.	Alice Mutton	39.00	0
Seafood	Pavlova, Ltd.	Camarvon Tigers	62.50	42

ASP.NET Core Web API

Although HTTP was originally designed to request and respond with HTML and other resources for us to look at, it is also good for building services. Roy Fielding stated, in his doctoral dissertation describing the **Representational State Transfer (REST)** architectural style, that the HTTP standard defines:

- URLs to uniquely identify resources
- Methods to perform common tasks, such as GET and DELETE
- The ability to negotiate media formats such as XML and JSON

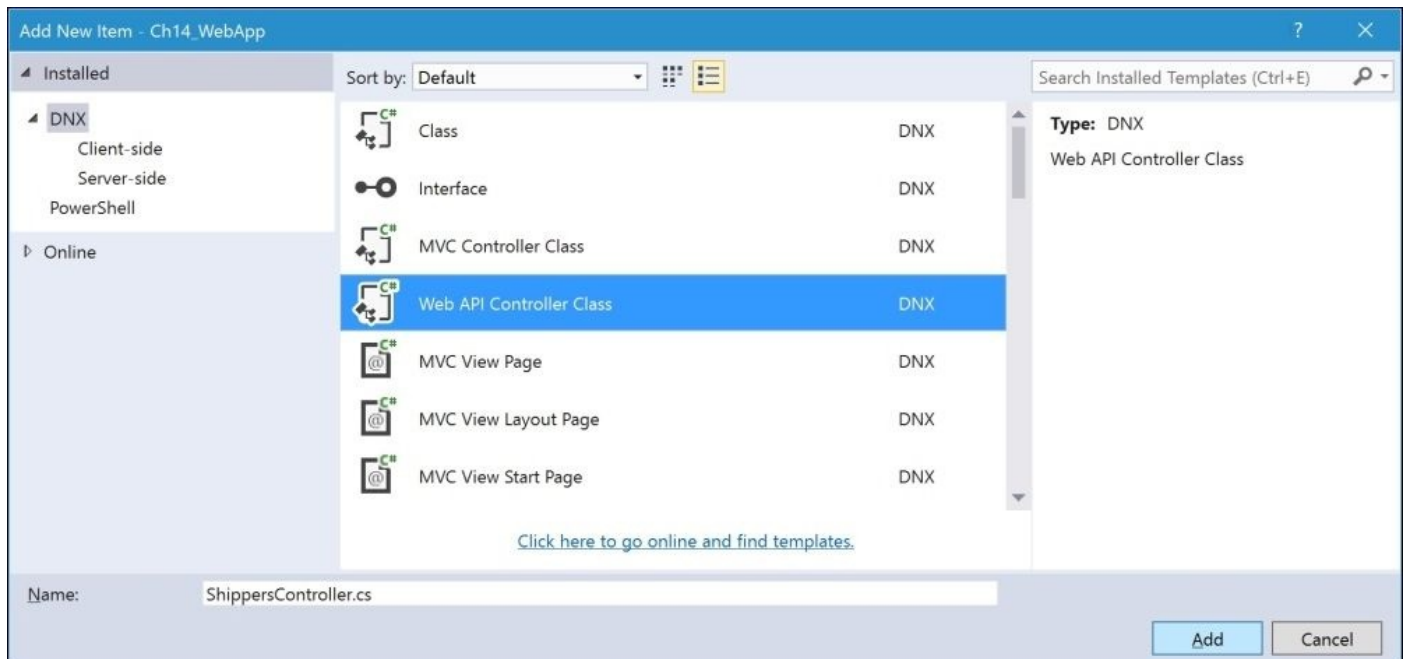
To allow the easy creation of services, ASP.NET Core has combined what used to be two types of controller.

In earlier versions of ASP.NET, you would derive from `ApiController` to create a Web API service, and then register API routes in the same route table that MVC uses.

With ASP.NET Core, you use exactly the same `Controller` base class used with MVC, except the routes are usually configured on the controller itself, using attributes, rather than in the route table.

Scaffolding an API controller

In the **Solution Explorer** window, right-click on the **Controllers** folder and choose **Add | New Item....** Choose **Web API Controller Class**, enter the name as **ShippersController**, and then click on **Add**:



API controllers do not have views. Instead, they use automatic content negotiation with the client to return XML, JSON, or X-WWW-FORMURLENCODED data formats.

In `ShippersController` class, add the following code:

```
[Route("api/[controller]")]
public class ShippersController : Controller
{
    private NorthwindContext db;
    public ShippersController(NorthwindContext injectedContext)
    {
        db = injectedContext;
    }
    // GET: api/shippers
    [HttpGet]
    public IEnumerable<Shippers> Get()
    {
        return db.Shippers.ToArray();
    }
}
```

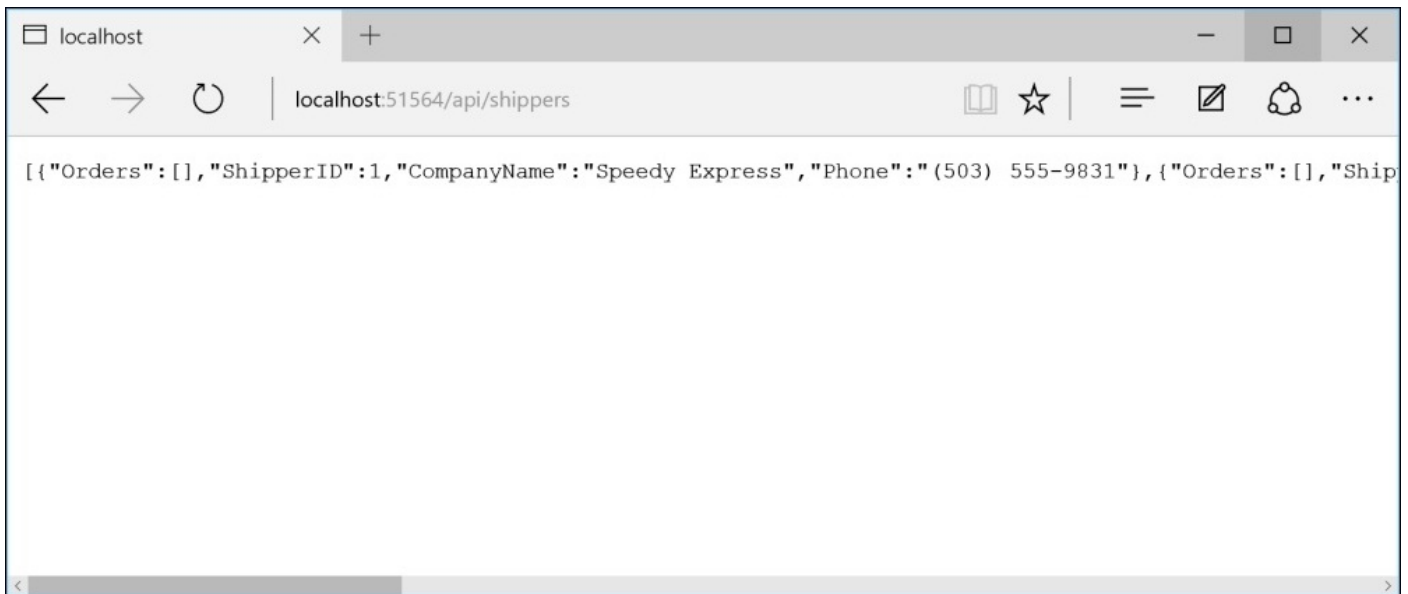
Note

If you have used older versions of ASP.NET Web API, then you know that in that technology, you could create C# methods that begin with any HTTP method (GET, POST, PUT, and so on), and the controller will automatically execute the correct one. In ASP.NET Core, this doesn't happen anymore, because we are not inheriting from `ApiController`. So you must apply an attribute such as `[HttpGet]` to explicitly map HTTP methods to C#

methods.

Press *F5* to run the application.

In the address bar, enter **api/shippers** at the end of the URL and press *Enter*. You will see this JSON response:



Note

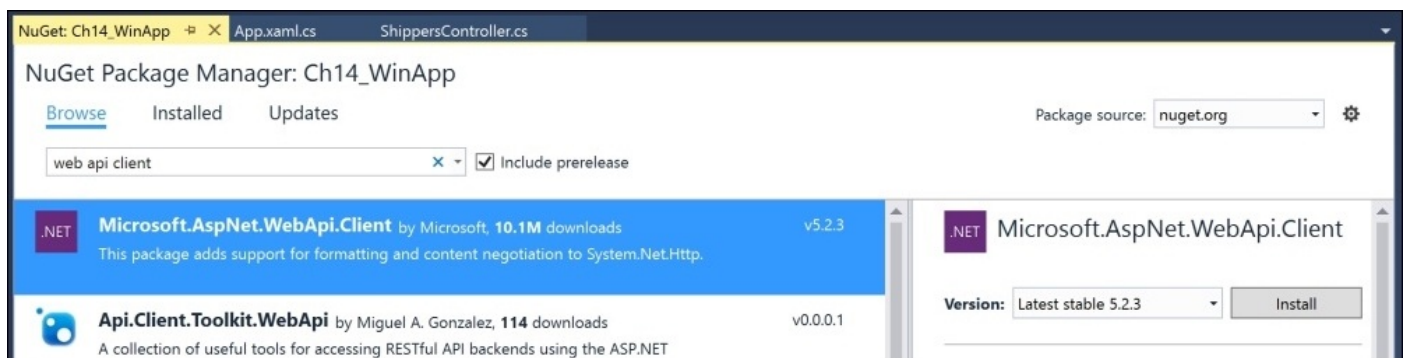
If you test with Chrome rather than Microsoft Edge, then you will get an XML response because Chrome prefers XML over JSON.

Calling a Web API service from a UWP app

Now that we have a service that allows HTTP requests to be used to manage the Shippers table, we can create a client application to call it. The client will often be an HTML page that uses JavaScript to make the calls. However, since this book is about modern C# and .NET, we will build a UWP app.

In Visual Studio, click on **File | Add | New Project....** In the **Add New Project** dialog, in the **Installed Templates** list, select **Visual C#**. In the center list, select **Blank App (Universal Windows)**, type the name as **Ch14_WinApp**, and then click on **OK**.

In **Solution Explorer** window, right-click on the new project and choose **Manage NuGet Packages....** In the search box, enter **web api client** and press *Enter*. Click on **Install:**



On the **Project** menu, choose **Add Class** and name it **Shipper**:

```
public class Shipper
{
    public int ShipperID { get; set; }
    public string CompanyName { get; set; }
    public string Phone { get; set; }
}
```

Open **MainPage.xaml** file and add the following XAML inside the existing **Grid** element:

```
<StackPanel Padding="6">
    <TextBlock FontSize="24">Shippers</TextBlock>
    <GridView ItemsSource="{Binding}">
        <GridView.ItemTemplate>
            <DataTemplate>
                <Border Margin="6" Padding="10" CornerRadius="10"
Background="LightCyan">
                    <Grid>
                        <Grid.ColumnDefinitions>
                            <ColumnDefinition Width="Auto" />
                            <ColumnDefinition Width="Auto" />
                        </Grid.ColumnDefinitions>
                        <Grid.RowDefinitions>
                            <RowDefinition />
                            <RowDefinition />
                            <RowDefinition />
                        </Grid.RowDefinitions>
```

```

        <TextBlock Text="Shipper ID" />
        <TextBlock Text="{Binding ShipperID}"
Grid.Column="1" />
        <TextBlock Text="Company Name" Grid.Row="1" />
        <TextBlock Text="{Binding CompanyName}"
Grid.Row="1" Grid.Column="1" />
        <TextBlock Text="Phone" Grid.Row="2" />
        <TextBlock Text="{Binding Phone}" Grid.Row="2"
Grid.Column="1" />
    </Grid>
</Border>
</DataTemplate>
</GridView.ItemTemplate>
</GridView>
</StackPanel>

```

This defines a GridView control bound to the DataContext class that we will set when the page loads to the response coming back from the service.

In the Page element, add an event handler for Loading function:

```
Loading="Page_Loading"
```

In the MainPage.xaml.cs file, import the following namespace:

```
using System.Net.Http;
```

Add the following statements to the Page_Loading method, and add the async keyword to the method's declaration:

```

var client = new HttpClient();
client.BaseAddress = new Uri("http://localhost:59468/");
HttpResponseMessage response = await client.GetAsync("api/shippers");
DataContext = await response.Content.ReadAsAsync<Shipper[]>();

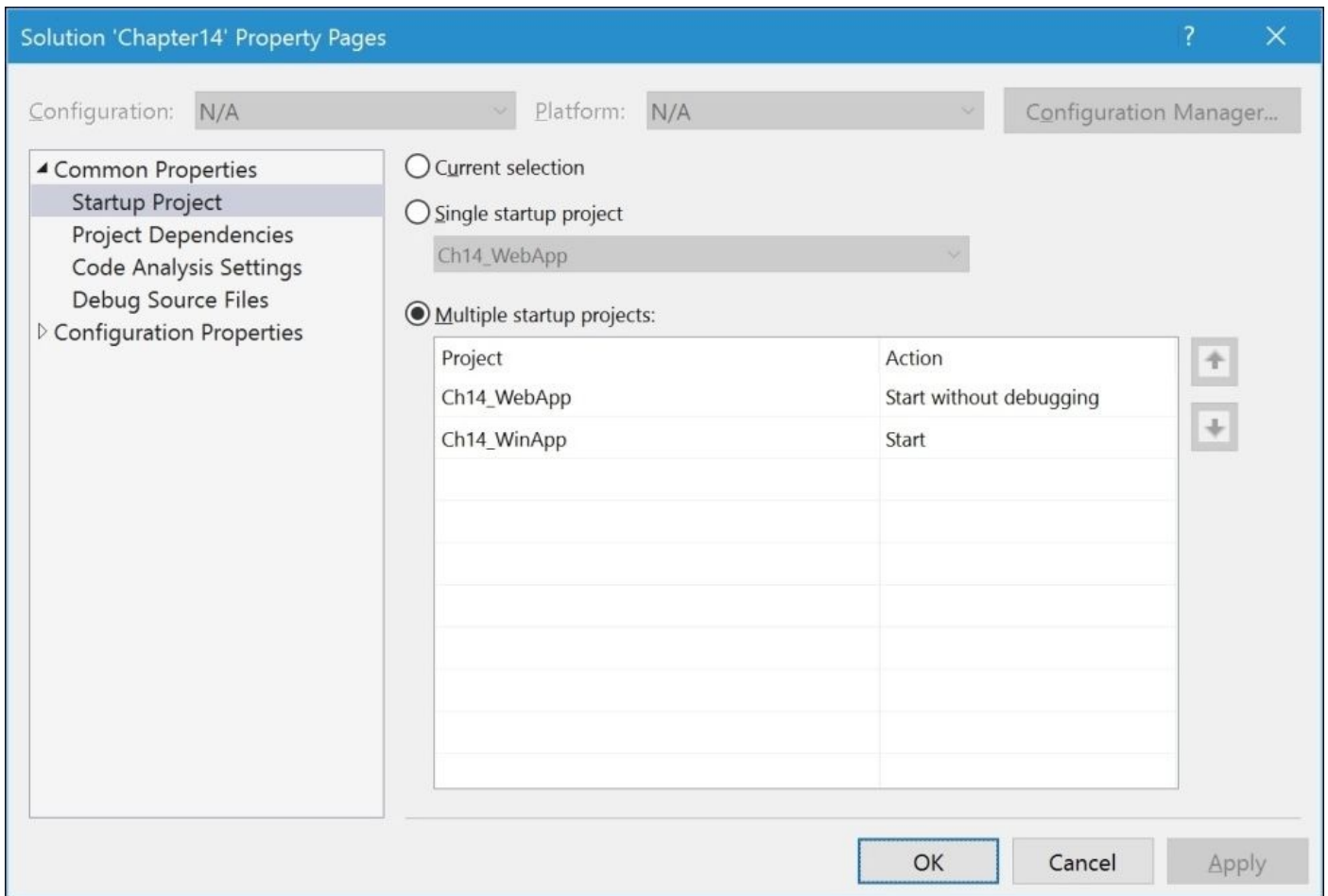
```

Note

Make sure you use the same random port number that Visual Studio allocated to your ASP.NET Core application. It is unlikely to be 59468!

On the **Build** menu, choose **Deploy Ch14_WinApp**. In the **Solution Explorer** window, right-click on the solution and choose **Properties**.

Select **Multiple startup projects**. Set the action for **Ch14_WebApp** to **Start without debugging**. Set the action for **Ch14_WinApp** to **Start**:



On the **Debug** menu, choose **Start Debugging** or press *F5*. You will see that the UWP app called the service, deserialized the JSON data, and bound it to the list box:



Practicing and exploring

Test your knowledge and understanding by answering some questions, get some hands-on practice, and explore this chapter's topics with deeper research.

Exercise 14.1 – test your knowledge

Answer the following questions:

1. What is the difference between a web browser and a web server?
2. What is the difference between a URI, a URL, and a URN?
3. What are the four most common HTTP methods?
4. What does it mean when a web server responds with status code 302?
5. What are the responsibilities of a route?
6. What are the responsibilities of a controller?
7. What are the responsibilities of a model?
8. What are the responsibilities of a view?
9. How does ASP.NET distinguish a request for MVC from a request for Web API?
10. What data formats does Web API support by default?

Exercise 14.2 – practice building a data-driven web application

Create an ASP.NET Core web application that connects to the Northwind sample database and enables the user to see a list of customers grouped by country. When the user clicks on a customer record, they then see a page showing the full contact details of that customer and a list of their orders.

Exercise 14.3 – explore topics

Use the following links to read more details about this chapter's topics:

- **Learn about ASP.NET Web Forms:** <http://www.asp.net/web-forms>
- **What is Windows Communication Foundation:** [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms731082\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms731082(v=vs.110).aspx)
- **Learn about ASP.NET MVC:** <http://www.asp.net/mvc>
- **Learn about ASP.NET Web API:** <http://www.asp.net/web-api>

Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to build an ASP.NET Core MVC web application, and an ASP.NET Core Web API service that manages data using Entity Framework Core. You also learned how to consume a REST/HTTP service using `HttpClient`.

In the next chapter, you will learn how to build an ASP.NET Core web application that can be hosted cross-platform on Windows, Linux, or Mac OS X.

Chapter 15. Taking C# Cross-Platform

This chapter is about how you can take C# cross-platform using .NET Core 1.0, ASP.NET Core 1.0, Entity Framework Core 1.0, and Visual Studio Code.

Note

You will need a computer running Mac OS X to complete this chapter if you want to follow the directions as written. You could choose to use a Linux variant such as Ubuntu 14.04 or a Docker container instead of Mac OS X, but the installation steps and some of the command-line tools will be different from what I have described in this chapter. You can read more about using .NET Core on Ubuntu 14.04 or Docker at <http://dotnet.github.io/getting-started/>.

In this chapter, we will cover the following topics:

- Understanding cross-platform development
- Installing Visual Studio Code and ASP.NET Core
- Building cross-platform web applications using ASP.NET Core
- Understanding .NET Core command-line tools

Understanding cross-platform development

Cross-platform development means being able to both write code and run the results on operating systems other than Windows.

Visual Studio Code

Visual Studio Code is an open source, cross-platform, extensible, code-focused editor with some basic IDE features based on Google's Chromium project. Microsoft and Google have worked closely together to ensure that Visual Studio Code is a decent choice for cross-platform development.

However, it has significant limitations compared to Visual Studio 2015. Luckily, you can use Visual Studio 2015 on Windows for your initial development and then open the same files in Visual Studio Code when you need to work with your code on other platforms.

.NET Core 1.0

.NET Core 1.0 is a forked open source and cross-platform implementation of .NET that is designed for modern development. It is a subset of the Windows-only .NET Framework, but it has the advantage of running cross-platform across Windows, Mac OS X, Linux operating systems, and Docker containers.

Microsoft has informally announced that .NET development is now happening first on .NET Core, with changes backported to the Windows-only .NET Framework.

ASP.NET Core 1.0

ASP.NET Core 1.0 (which includes the latest versions of MVC and Web API) can be used to develop web applications and services that run on the .NET Core for cross-platform hosts, or on the .NET Framework for hosting on Windows.

Entity Framework Core 1.0

Entity Framework Core 1.0 (EF Core) can be used cross-platform to manage relational data (stored in Microsoft SQL Server on Windows today and natively on Linux starting in 2017, MySQL, and others) and non-relational data (stored in Microsoft Azure Table storage, Redis, and others).

.NET Native

.NET Native is a runtime that compiles .NET applications to native code. You can use it to create console applications, and ASP.NET Core applications and services, all running natively on Windows, Linux, and Mac OS X.

Xamarin

Xamarin enables developers to build apps for Apple iOS and Google Android using C#. It is based on a third-party open source implementation of .NET known as Mono.

Applications built with Xamarin draw the user interface using native platform widgets, so the app looks natural on the target mobile platform.

Developers can code in either Visual Studio 2015 (which requires a paid license from Xamarin for their extensions) or using the free **Xamarin Studio**, which runs on Windows and Mac.

Tip

If you would like to learn more about Xamarin, then I recommend *Xamarin Cross-platform Application Development (Second Edition)* by Jonathan Peppers, and *Mastering Cross-Platform Development with Xamarin* by Can Bilgin, by Packt Publishing.

Cross-device Universal Windows Platform (UWP)

UWP apps are compiled using .NET Native for efficient resource usage and faster performance, but they are only supported on the Windows 10 platform. This means Windows 10 desktops, laptops, and tablets; Windows 10 Mobile phones; Xbox One; and HoloLens.

Note

Think of UWP as being cross-device rather than cross-platform.

Installing Visual Studio Code and ASP.NET Core

First, we will install Visual Studio Code on Mac OS X.

Note

If you are using Linux, you can read the directions at <https://code.visualstudio.com/Docs/?dv=linux64>.

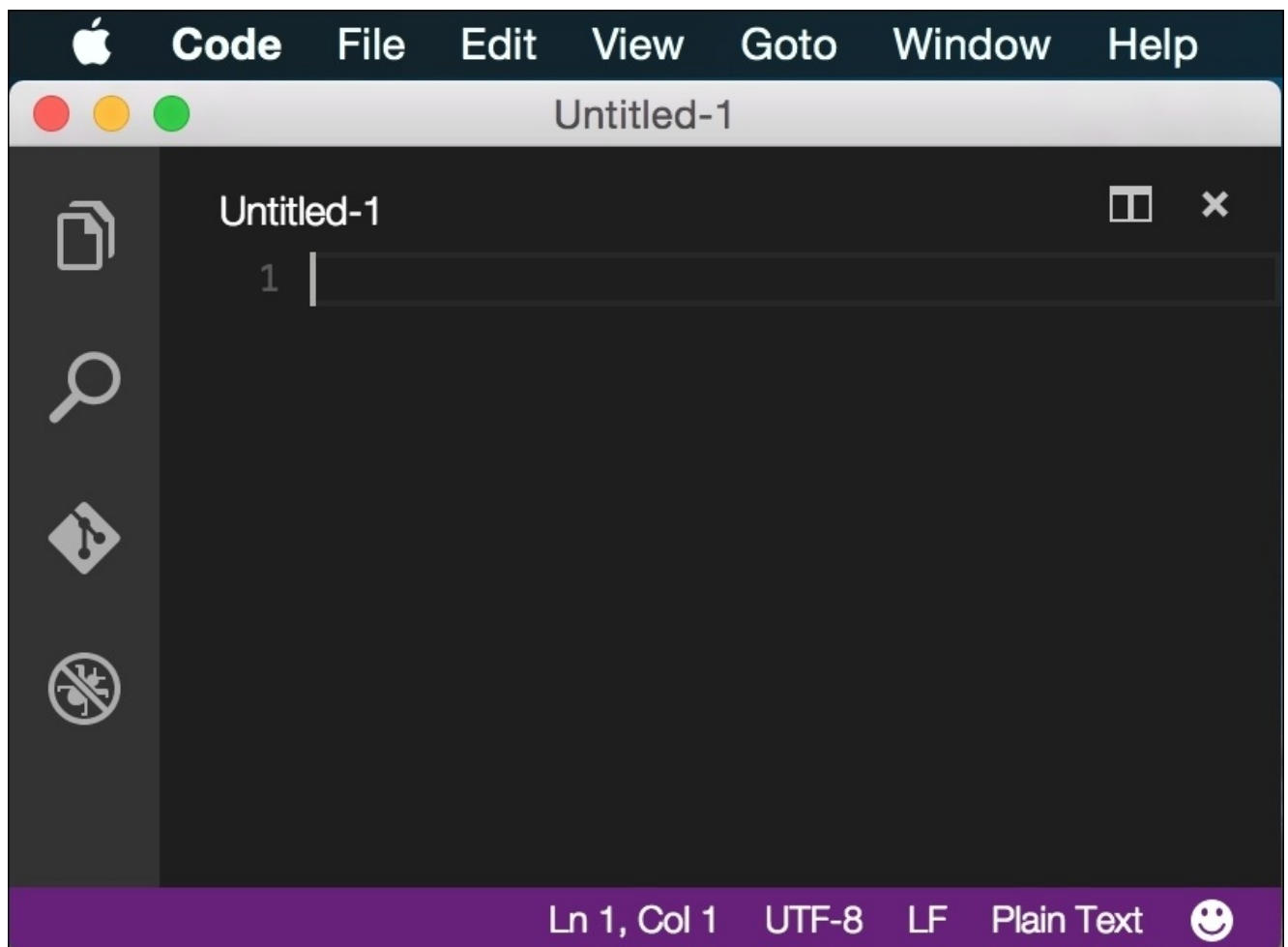
Installing Visual Studio Code

To install Visual Studio Code, you need to perform the following steps:

1. Start Safari or Chrome, go to <https://code.visualstudio.com/Docs/editor/setup>, and then click on **Download Visual Studio Code for Mac OS X**.
2. After downloading the ZIP file, double-click on it to extract the Visual Studio Code.app file. Drag the file to your Applications folder:



3. When you first run Visual Studio Code, you will see that it is a very simple editor:



If you want to add Visual Studio Code to your dock for easy access, then right-click on its icon and go to **Options | Keep in Dock**.

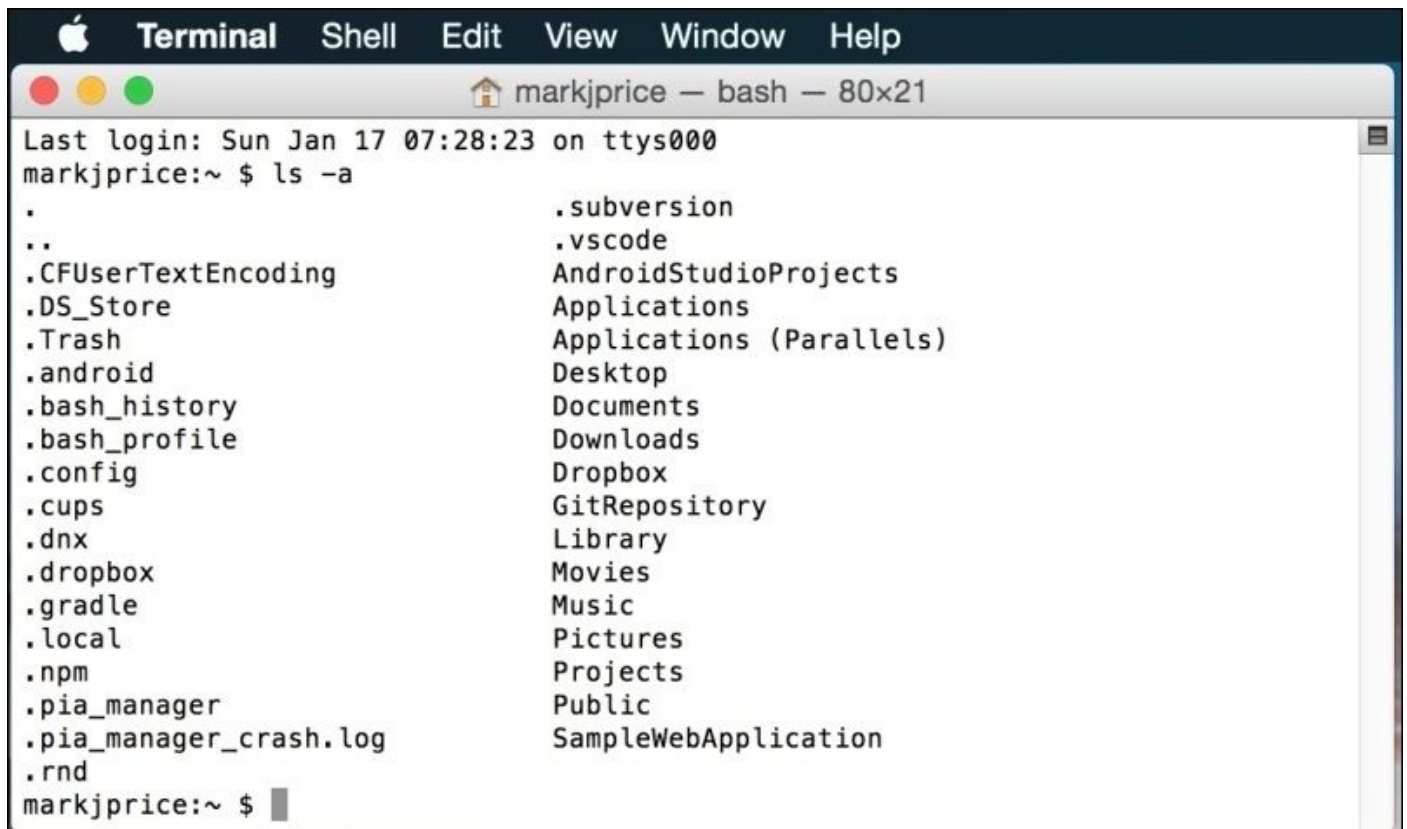
Managing development from the terminal

You will use the command line (the **Terminal** app) a lot during development on the Mac.

Start Mac OS X's **Terminal** app. Get a list of all files in your current directory by entering the following command:

```
ls -a
```

The **Terminal** output should look something like this:



```
Terminal Shell Edit View Window Help
markjprice — bash — 80x21
Last login: Sun Jan 17 07:28:23 on ttys000
markjprice:~ $ ls -a
.                .subversion
..              .vscode
.CFUserTextEncoding  AndroidStudioProjects
.DS_Store         Applications
.Trash            Applications (Parallels)
.android          Desktop
.bash_history     Documents
.bash_profile     Downloads
.config           Dropbox
.cups             GitRepository
.dnx              Library
.dropbox          Movies
.gradle           Music
.local            Pictures
.npm              Projects
.pia_manager      Public
.pia_manager_crash.log  SampleWebApplication
.rnd
markjprice:~ $
```

If you do not already have a file named `.bash_profile`, then enter the following command:

```
touch .bash_profile
```

Enter the following command to edit the file with the nano text editor:

```
nano .bash_profile
```

In the editor, add the following statements:

```
code () {
  if [[ $# = 0 ]]
  then
    open -a "Visual Studio Code"
  else
    [[ $1 = /* ]] && F="$1" || F="$PWD/${1#./}"
    open -a "Visual Studio Code" --args "$F"
  fi
}
```



```
}
```

Press *Ctrl + O* to save changes, press *Enter* to accept the filename, and then press *Ctrl + X* to exit and return to the prompt.

Tip

You could also use TextEdit to modify the `.bash_profile` file using the following command:

```
open -e .bash_profile
```

Restart the **Terminal** app or enter `source .bash_profile` to force it to be reprocessed.

From now on, you will be able to change to a directory containing any project and enter code `.` to open Visual Studio Code and start editing that project.

Installing Homebrew

The next step is to install Homebrew if you don't already have it.

Tip

Homebrew installs the stuff you need that Apple didn't already install.

Enter the following in the **Terminal** prompt:

```
ruby -e "$(curl -fsSL  
https://raw.githubusercontent.com/Homebrew/install/master/install)"
```

Now, we will use Homebrew to install ASP.NET Core and its .NET Version Manager (dnvm).

Note

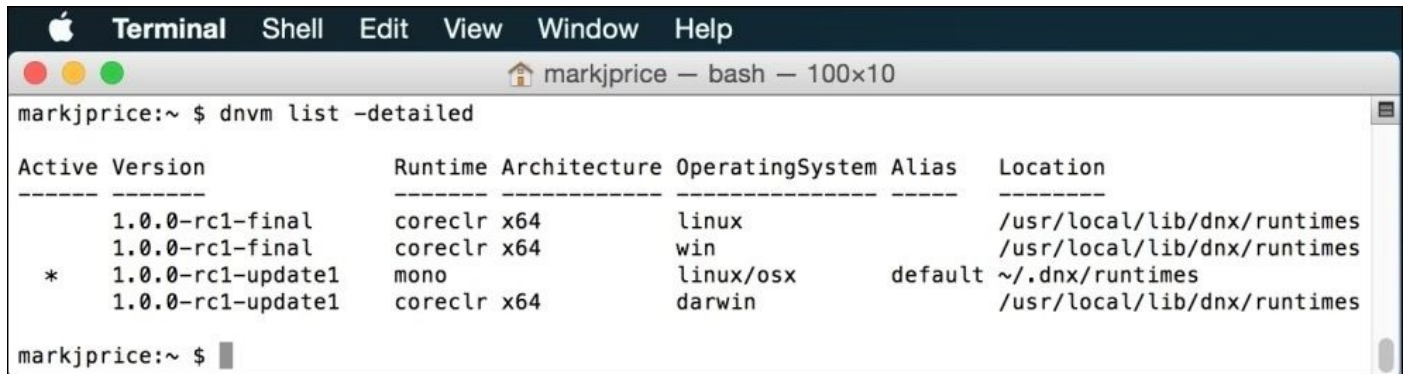
At the time of writing this book, Microsoft is in the middle of changing the command-line tools for .NET Core. When the final version is released, they plan to use a similar tool named `dotnet` instead of `dnvm`. Most of the commands will be similar to what I will show you in this chapter. You can keep yourself updated by visiting <http://cs6dotnetcore.azurewebsites.net/>.

Listing the installed versions of .NET

One of the most important commands is getting a detailed list of the installed versions. Enter the following command in the prompt:

```
dnvm list -detailed
```

You will see output like the following screenshot:



```
markjprice:~ $ dnvm list -detailed
```

Active	Version	Runtime	Architecture	OperatingSystem	Alias	Location
	1.0.0-rc1-final	coreclr	x64	linux		/usr/local/lib/dnx/runtimes
	1.0.0-rc1-final	coreclr	x64	win		/usr/local/lib/dnx/runtimes
*	1.0.0-rc1-update1	mono		linux/osx	default	~/.dnx/runtimes
	1.0.0-rc1-update1	coreclr	x64	darwin		/usr/local/lib/dnx/runtimes

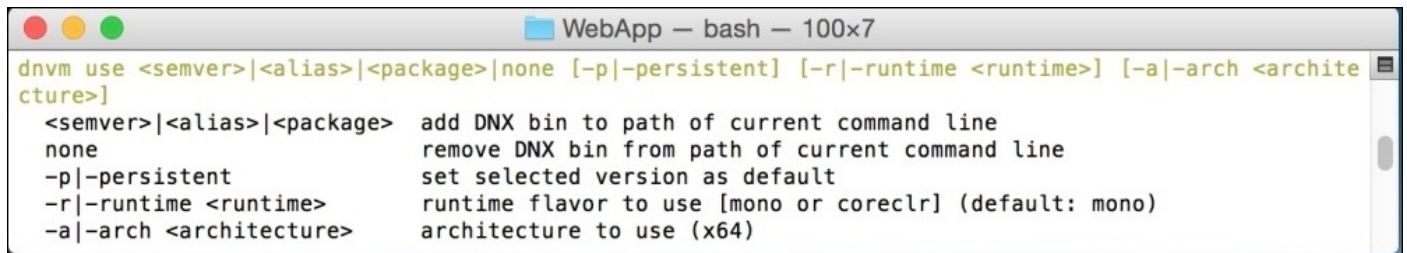
```
markjprice:~ $
```

Note

At the time of writing this book, the final version of .NET Core has not been released. All screenshots in this chapter show a release candidate version.

Switching from Mono to .NET Core

You may have noticed that the default runtime is Mono, not .NET Core. We can use the `dnvm use` command to switch the runtime to .NET Core, as you can see in this screenshot of the `dnvm use` command's parameters:

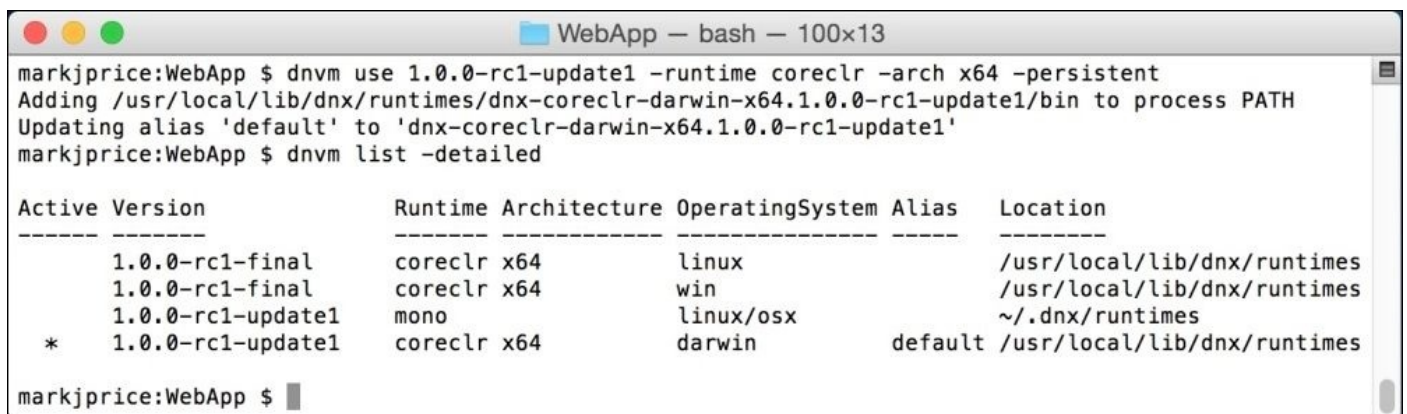


```
WebApp — bash — 100x7
dnvm use <semver>|<alias>|<package>|none [-p|-persistent] [-r|-runtime <runtime>] [-a|-arch <archite
cture>]
<semver>|<alias>|<package>  add DNX bin to path of current command line
none                        remove DNX bin from path of current command line
-p|-persistent              set selected version as default
-r|-runtime <runtime>      runtime flavor to use [mono or coreclr] (default: mono)
-a|-arch <architecture>    architecture to use (x64)
```

In the **Terminal** app, enter the following commands:

```
dnvm use 1.0.0-rc1-update1 -runtime coreclr -arch x64 -persistent
dnvm list -detailed
```

You will see that the active (and default) version has now switched to .NET Core:



```
WebApp — bash — 100x13
markjprice:WebApp $ dnvm use 1.0.0-rc1-update1 -runtime coreclr -arch x64 -persistent
Adding /usr/local/lib/dnx/runtimes/dnx-coreclr-darwin-x64.1.0.0-rc1-update1/bin to process PATH
Updating alias 'default' to 'dnx-coreclr-darwin-x64.1.0.0-rc1-update1'
markjprice:WebApp $ dnvm list -detailed

Active Version          Runtime Architecture OperatingSystem Alias  Location
-----
1.0.0-rc1-final         coreclr x64          linux          /usr/local/lib/dnx/runtimes
1.0.0-rc1-final         coreclr x64          win            /usr/local/lib/dnx/runtimes
1.0.0-rc1-update1      mono                linux/osx      ~/.dnx/runtimes
* 1.0.0-rc1-update1     coreclr x64          darwin         default /usr/local/lib/dnx/runtimes

markjprice:WebApp $
```


Building a console application

To test the installation, let's make a simple console application that outputs `Hello C# running cross-platform!`.

Creating the source files

We need to enter some commands in the **Terminal** prompt to:

- Create a new directory named `consoleApp` and change to it
- Create two files named `program.cs` and `project.json`
- Start Visual Studio Code so that we can edit the files in an IDE

Here are the commands to enter:

```
mkdir ConsoleApp
cd ConsoleApp
touch program.cs
touch project.json
code .
```


Editing the code

In Visual Studio Code, click on the `program.cs` file on the left-hand side and then enter these statements:

```
using static System.Console;

public class Program
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        WriteLine("Hello C#, running cross-platform!");
    }
}
```

When targeting the .NET Framework, a developer can rely on the fact that if the .NET Framework has been installed, then all the base class libraries would be available to them. This means the developer could compile the previous code and know it will execute, just as we did in [Chapter 1, Hello, C#! Welcome, .NET Core!](#)

When targeting .NET Core, the developer would need to specify the dependencies that their code has so that only those NuGet packages are deployed along with the developer's assembly.

You specify options such as which versions of .NET you would like to target and what dependencies your code has, in a file named `project.json`.

Tip

You can read the documentation for the `project.json` file at <https://github.com/aspnet/Home/wiki/Project.json-file>.

Click on the `project.json` file on the left-hand side and then enter these statements:

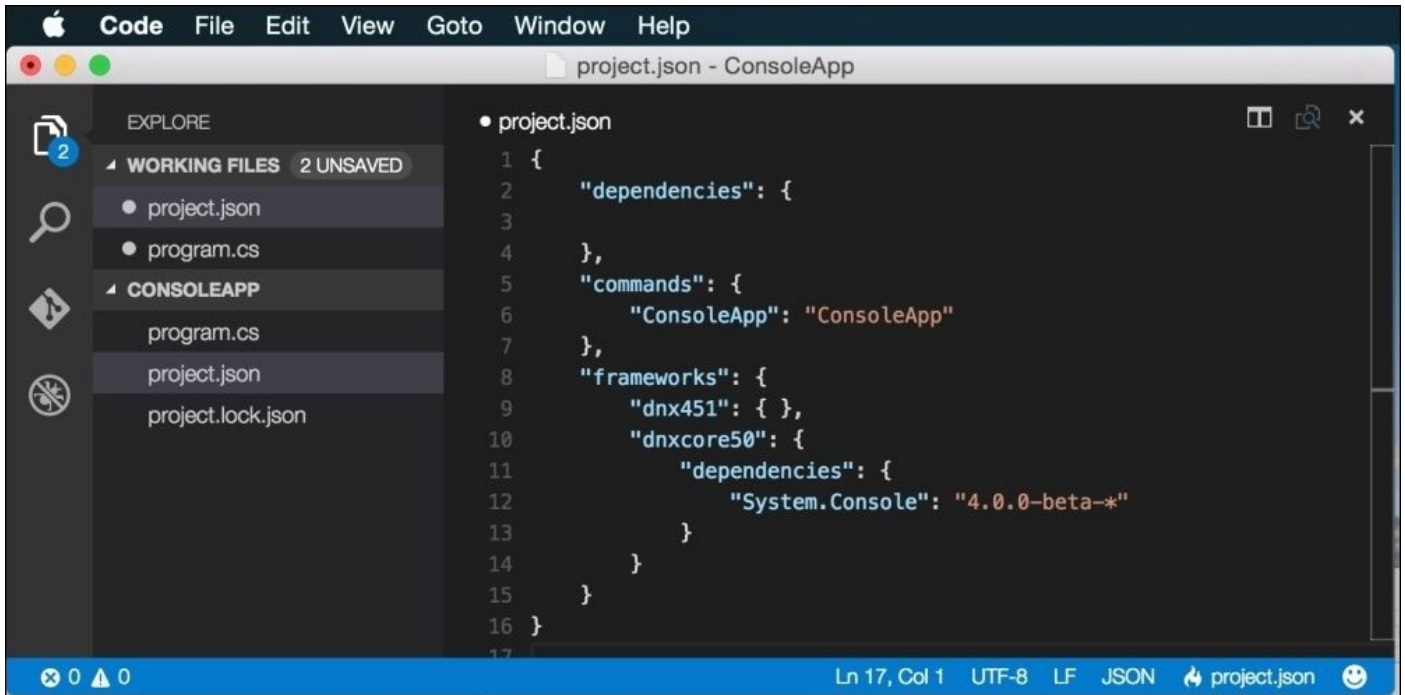
```
{
  "dependencies": {
  },
  "commands": {
    "ConsoleApp": "ConsoleApp"
  },
  "frameworks": {
    "dnx451": { },
    "dnxcore50": {
      "dependencies": {
        "System.Console": "4.0.0-beta-*"
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Note

dnx451 means .NET Framework 4.5.1, which has no dependencies, because the entire base class library would be available. **dnxcore50** means .NET Core 1.0, which must have

any dependencies explicitly listed. Both these names are likely to change in the future when Microsoft switches to the .NET Platform Standard, which is described at <https://github.com/dotnet/corefx/blob/master/Documentation/architecture/net-platform-standard.md>.

Visual Studio Code should look like the following screenshot:



Go to **File | Save All** to save the changes to both files and then quit Visual Studio Code.

Tip

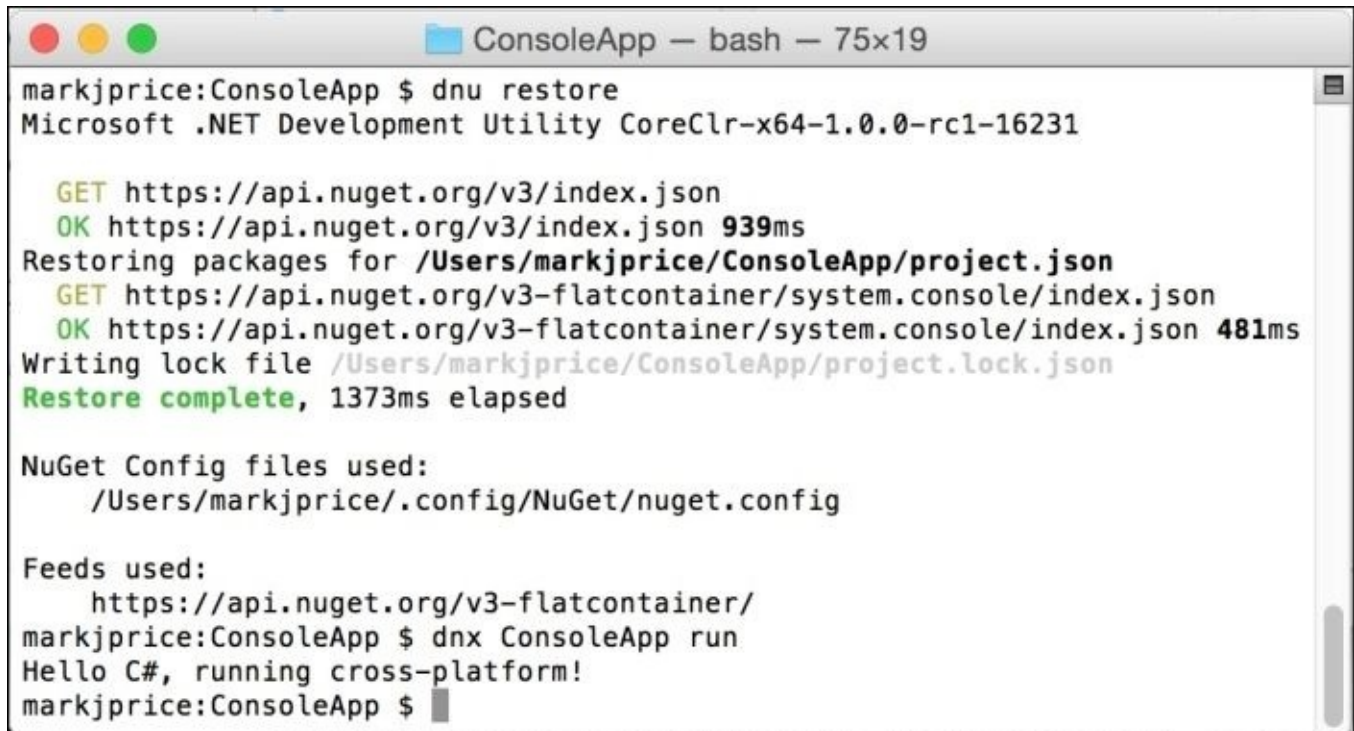
Visual Studio Code will notice that you need to download some dependency packages. Although it can issue the command for you, we will do it manually.

Downloading dependency packages and compiling

In the prompt, enter the following commands to download dependency packages and run the application:

```
dnu restore
dnx ConsoleApp run
```

You will see the following output:

A screenshot of a terminal window titled "ConsoleApp - bash - 75x19". The terminal shows the following output:

```
markjprice:ConsoleApp $ dnu restore
Microsoft .NET Development Utility CoreClr-x64-1.0.0-rc1-16231

  GET https://api.nuget.org/v3/index.json
  OK https://api.nuget.org/v3/index.json 939ms
Restoring packages for /Users/markjprice/ConsoleApp/project.json
  GET https://api.nuget.org/v3-flatcontainer/system.console/index.json
  OK https://api.nuget.org/v3-flatcontainer/system.console/index.json 481ms
Writing lock file /Users/markjprice/ConsoleApp/project.lock.json
Restore complete, 1373ms elapsed

NuGet Config files used:
  /Users/markjprice/.config/NuGet/nuget.config

Feeds used:
  https://api.nuget.org/v3-flatcontainer/
markjprice:ConsoleApp $ dnx ConsoleApp run
Hello C#, running cross-platform!
markjprice:ConsoleApp $
```


Building cross-platform web applications using ASP.NET Core

Now, let's make a simple ASP.NET Core web application.

Creating the simplest ASP.NET Core web application

You will enter some commands in the **Terminal** prompt to:

- Create a new directory named `HelloWeb` and move into it
- Create two files named `startup.cs` and `project.json`
- Start Visual Studio Code so that we can edit the files in an IDE

Here are the commands to enter:

```
cd ~
mkdir HelloWeb
cd HelloWeb
touch startup.cs
touch project.json
code .
```

In Visual Studio Code, click on the `startup.cs` file on the left-hand side and then enter these statements:

```
using Microsoft.AspNetCore.Builder;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;

namespace HelloWeb
{
    public class Startup
    {
        public void Configure(IApplicationBuilder app, ILoggerFactory
loggerFactory)
        {
            loggerFactory.AddConsole();
            app.UseIISPlatformHandler();
            app.UseStaticFiles();
            app.UseWelcomePage();
        }
    }
}
```

Click on the `project.json` file on the left-hand side and then enter the following statements to:

- Specify a version for our code
- Specify a directory name for the root of our website that will be used to store static content such as HTML, CSS, JavaScript libraries, and assets such as images and videos
- Exclude any files in the root of our website from the compilation process
- Exclude design-time files such as `.kproj` files from the deployment package
- Define a list of dependency packages for our code
- Target both the .NET Framework 4.5.1 (`dnx451`) and the .NET Core 1.0 (`dnxcross50`)
- Define a `dnx` command named `web` that will start the web application hosted in the Kestrel cross-platform web server listening on port `5004`

Here are the statements:

```
{
  "version": "1.0.0-*",
  "webroot": "wwwroot",
  "exclude": [
    "wwwroot"
  ],
  "packExclude": [
    "**.kproj",
    "**.user",
    "**.vspcc"
  ],
  "dependencies": {
    "Microsoft.AspNet.Server.Kestrel": "1.0.0-*",
    "Microsoft.AspNet.IISPlatformHandler": "1.0.0-*",
    "Microsoft.AspNet.Diagnostics": "1.0.0-*",
    "Microsoft.AspNet.Hosting": "1.0.0-*",
    "Microsoft.AspNet.StaticFiles": "1.0.0-*",
    "Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console": "1.0.0-*"
  },
  "commands": {
    "web": "Microsoft.AspNet.Server.Kestrel --server.urls
http://localhost:5004"
  },
  "frameworks": {
    "dnx451": { },
    "dnxcore50": { }
  }
}
```

Save all the changes. Visual Studio Code should look something like the following screenshot. Note the warning about unresolved dependencies. This time we will use Visual Studio Code to restore the dependency packages.

Click on **Restore**:

The screenshot shows the Visual Studio Code editor interface. The top menu bar includes 'Code', 'File', 'Edit', 'View', 'Goto', 'Window', and 'Help'. The title bar indicates the file is 'project.json - HelloWeb'. On the left, the 'EXPLORER' sidebar shows a tree view with 'WORKING FILES' containing 'project.json' and 'startup.cs', and a 'HELLOWEB' folder also containing 'project.json' and 'startup.cs'. A notification bar at the top right says 'There are unresolved dependencies from '/project.json'. Please execu...' with 'Restore' and 'Close' buttons. The main editor area displays the content of 'project.json' with line numbers 1 through 14. The JSON content is as follows:

```
1 {
2   "version": "1.0.0-*",
3   "dependencies": {
4     "Kestrel": "1.0.0-*",
5     "Microsoft.AspNet.Diagnostics": "1.0.0-*"
6   },
7   "commands": {
8     "kestrel": "Microsoft.AspNet.Hosting --server Kestrel"
9   },
10  "frameworks": {
11    "dnx451": { },
12    "dnxcross50": { }
13  }
14 }
```

The status bar at the bottom shows 'Ln 14, Col 2', 'UTF-8', 'LF', 'JSON', and the file name 'project.json'.

Note

You can also restore the dependency packages in the **Terminal** prompt by entering the `dnx restore` command, as we did earlier.

It might take a few minutes to download all the packages, so be patient!

The screenshot shows a Terminal window titled 'HelloWeb -- bash -- 86x22'. The output of the `dnx restore` command is as follows:

```
Installing runtime.osx.10.10.System.Security.Cryptography.Algorithms.4.0.0-beta-23516
Installing System.Text.Encoding.Extensions.4.0.0
Installing System.Security.Cryptography.OpenSsl.4.0.0-beta-23516
Installing System.Reflection.Emit.Lightweight.4.0.0-beta-23109
Installing System.Threading.Thread.4.0.0-beta-23516
Installing runtime.unix.System.Globalization.Extensions.4.0.1-beta-23516
Installing System.Collections.Concurrent.4.0.0
Installing System.IO.4.0.10
Installing System.Runtime.Numerics.4.0.0
Installing System.Globalization.Calendars.4.0.0
Writing lock file /Users/markjprice/HelloWeb/project.lock.json
Restore complete, 260590ms elapsed

NuGet Config files used:
  /Users/markjprice/.config/NuGet/nuget.config

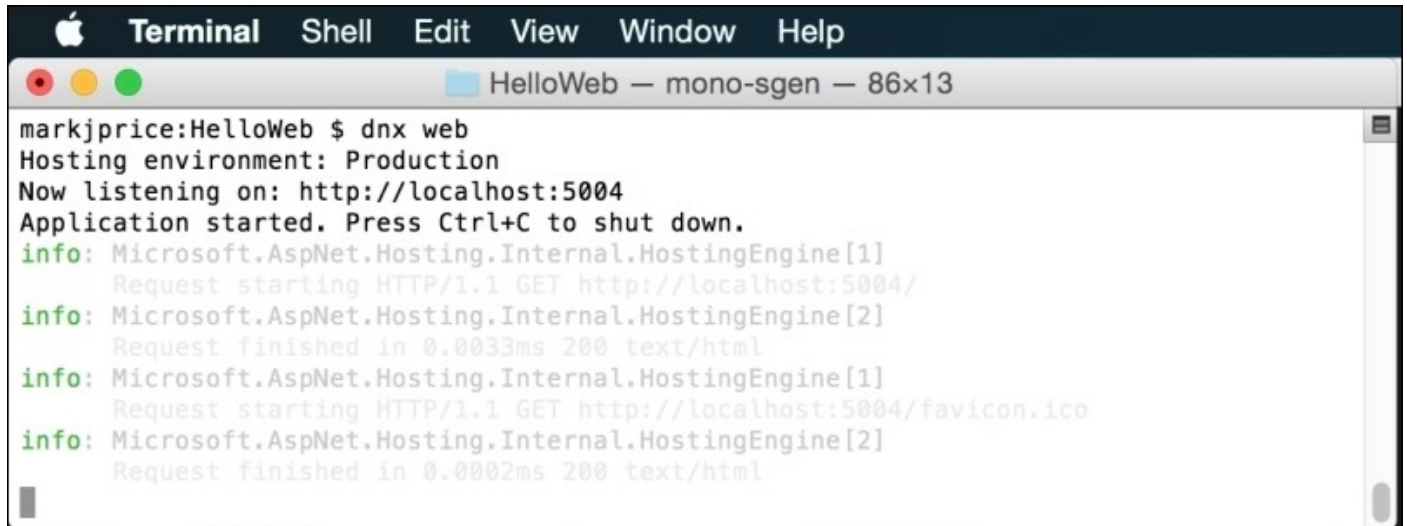
Feeds used:
  https://api.nuget.org/v3-flatcontainer/

Installed:
  179 package(s) to /Users/markjprice/.dnx/packages
markjprice:HelloWeb $
```

In the prompt, enter the following command to run the application:

dnx web

You will see the following output:

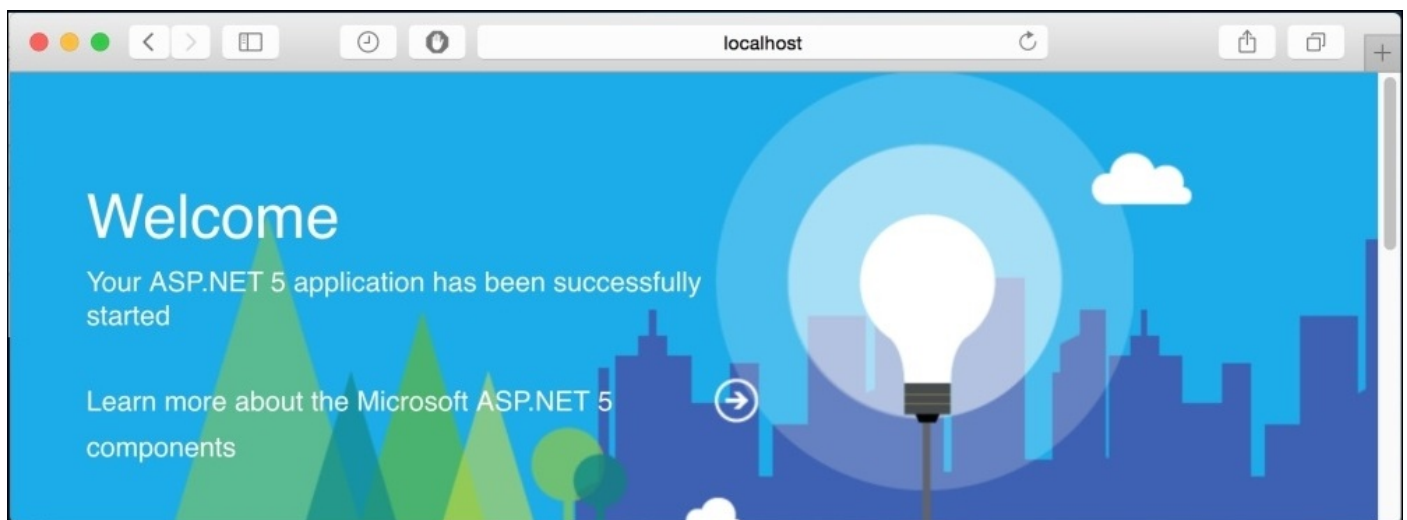


```
markjprice>HelloWeb $ dnx web
Hosting environment: Production
Now listening on: http://localhost:5004
Application started. Press Ctrl+C to shut down.
info: Microsoft.AspNet.Hosting.Internal.HostingEngine[1]
      Request starting HTTP/1.1 GET http://localhost:5004/
info: Microsoft.AspNet.Hosting.Internal.HostingEngine[2]
      Request finished in 0.0033ms 200 text/html
info: Microsoft.AspNet.Hosting.Internal.HostingEngine[1]
      Request starting HTTP/1.1 GET http://localhost:5004/favicon.ico
info: Microsoft.AspNet.Hosting.Internal.HostingEngine[2]
      Request finished in 0.0002ms 200 text/html
```

Run your favorite Mac OS X web browser and enter this URL in the address bar and press **Enter**:

`http://localhost:5004/`

You should see the following page:



Installing Yeoman and related tools

As you have seen earlier in this book, Visual Studio 2015 has many project templates that make it easy to get started with projects, from console applications to web applications and services.

A command-line tool named **Yeoman** can be used to provide a similar scaffolding feature. To use Yeoman, we first need to install the **Node Package Manager (npm)** from <http://nodejs.org/>, and you will see the following home page:



In the **Terminal** prompt, enter the following commands to install Yeoman, Bower, Grunt, Gulp, and the ASP.NET Core generator:

```
npm install -g yo bower grunt-cli gulp
npm install -g generator-aspnet
```

Note

If you get a permission error, then prefix the commands with `sudo` to execute them using the super user account. The `-g` flag installs the tools globally, so you can run them from any directory.

Scaffolding projects using Yeoman

Enter the following commands in the **Terminal** prompt to create a new directory for a project and create a scaffolded project template inside it:

```
cd ~  
yo aspnet
```

When Yeoman runs, you will see the the output as shown in the following screenshot.

Choose **Web Application Basic [without Membership and Authorization]** and press *Enter*. Then, enter the name webApp. Yeoman will now create a set of files for a basic web application project:

```
Terminal Shell Edit View Window Help
markjprice — bash — 80x52
markjprice:~ $ yo aspnet

  [---(o)---]
  [---U---]
  [---A---]
  [---~---]
  [---I---]
  [---Y---]

  Welcome to the
  marvellous ASP.NET 5
  generator!

? What type of application do you want to create? Web Application Basic [without
? What's the name of your ASP.NET application? WebApp
create WebApp/gulpfile.js
create WebApp/Dockerfile
create WebApp/.bowerrc
create WebApp/.gitignore
create WebApp/bower.json
create WebApp/appsettings.json
create WebApp/package.json
create WebApp/project.json
create WebApp/README.md
create WebApp/Startup.cs
create WebApp/Controllers/HomeController.cs
create WebApp/Views/_ViewImports.cshtml
create WebApp/Views/_ViewStart.cshtml
create WebApp/Views/Home/About.cshtml
create WebApp/Views/Home/Contact.cshtml
create WebApp/Views/Home/Index.cshtml
create WebApp/Views/Shared/_Layout.cshtml
create WebApp/Views/Shared/Error.cshtml
create WebApp/wwwroot/css/site.css
create WebApp/wwwroot/css/site.min.css
create WebApp/wwwroot/favicon.ico
create WebApp/wwwroot/images/ASP-NET-Banners-01.png
create WebApp/wwwroot/images/ASP-NET-Banners-02.png
create WebApp/wwwroot/images/Banner-01-Azure.png
create WebApp/wwwroot/images/Banner-02-VS.png
create WebApp/wwwroot/js/site.js
create WebApp/wwwroot/js/site.min.js
create WebApp/wwwroot/web.config

Your project is now created, you can use the following commands to get going
cd "WebApp"
dnu restore
dnu build (optional, build will also happen when it's run)
dnx web

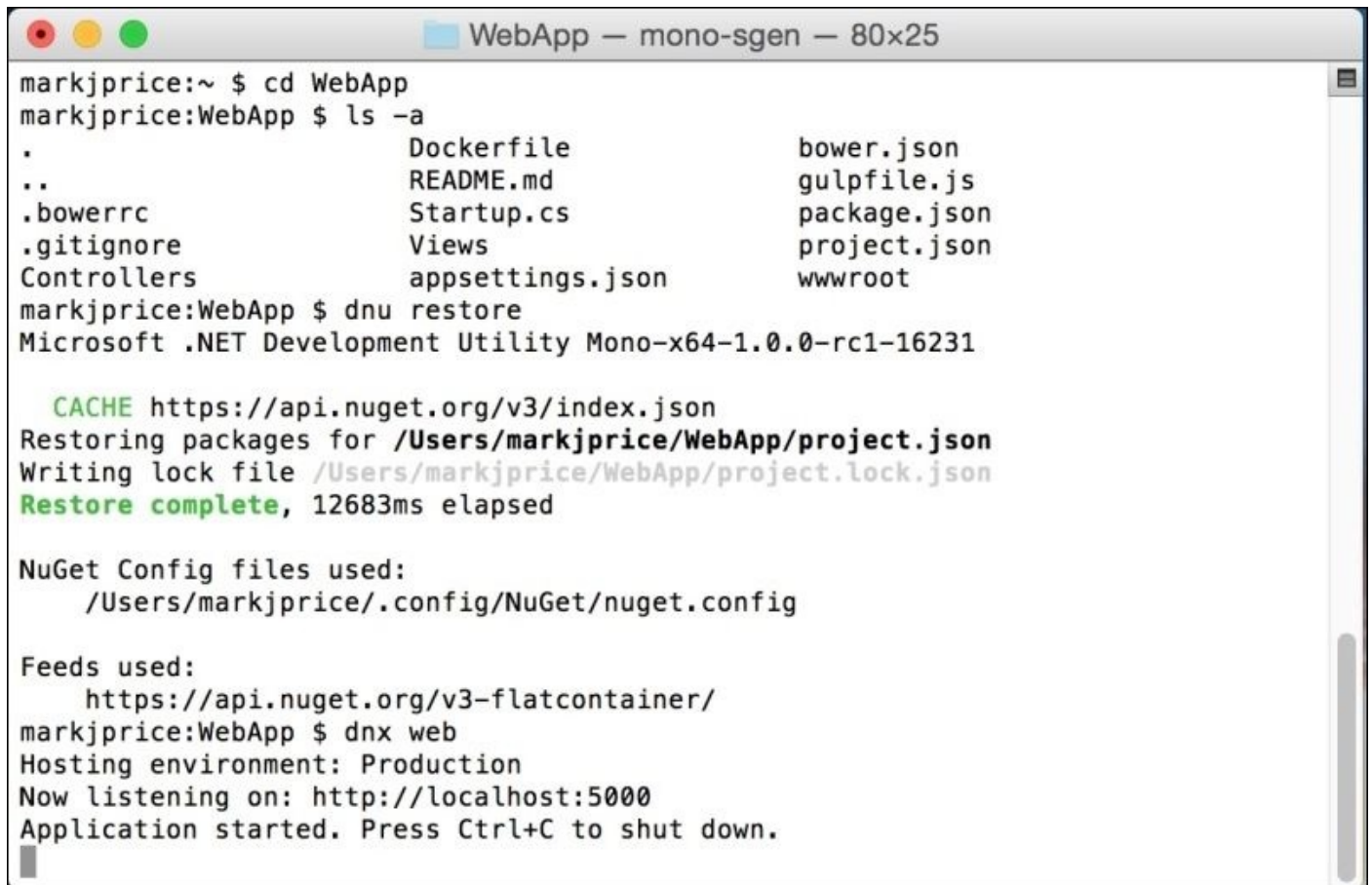
markjprice:~ $
```

In the **Terminal** prompt, enter the following commands to change to the new directory that Yeoman created for you. Then, see a listing of all the files, restore dependent packages, and finally execute the Kestrel web server and start it listening on port 5000.

```
cd WebApp
ls -a
dnu restore
dnx web
```

As you enter the preceding commands, you will see output as shown in the following

screenshot:



```
WebApp — mono-sgen — 80x25
markjprice:~ $ cd WebApp
markjprice:WebApp $ ls -a
.                Dockerfile         /bower.json
..               README.md           gulpfile.js
.bowerrc         Startup.cs         package.json
.gitignore       Views              project.json
Controllers      appsettings.json  wwwroot
markjprice:WebApp $ dnu restore
Microsoft .NET Development Utility Mono-x64-1.0.0-rc1-16231

  CACHE https://api.nuget.org/v3/index.json
Restoring packages for /Users/markjprice/WebApp/project.json
Writing lock file /Users/markjprice/WebApp/project.lock.json
Restore complete, 12683ms elapsed

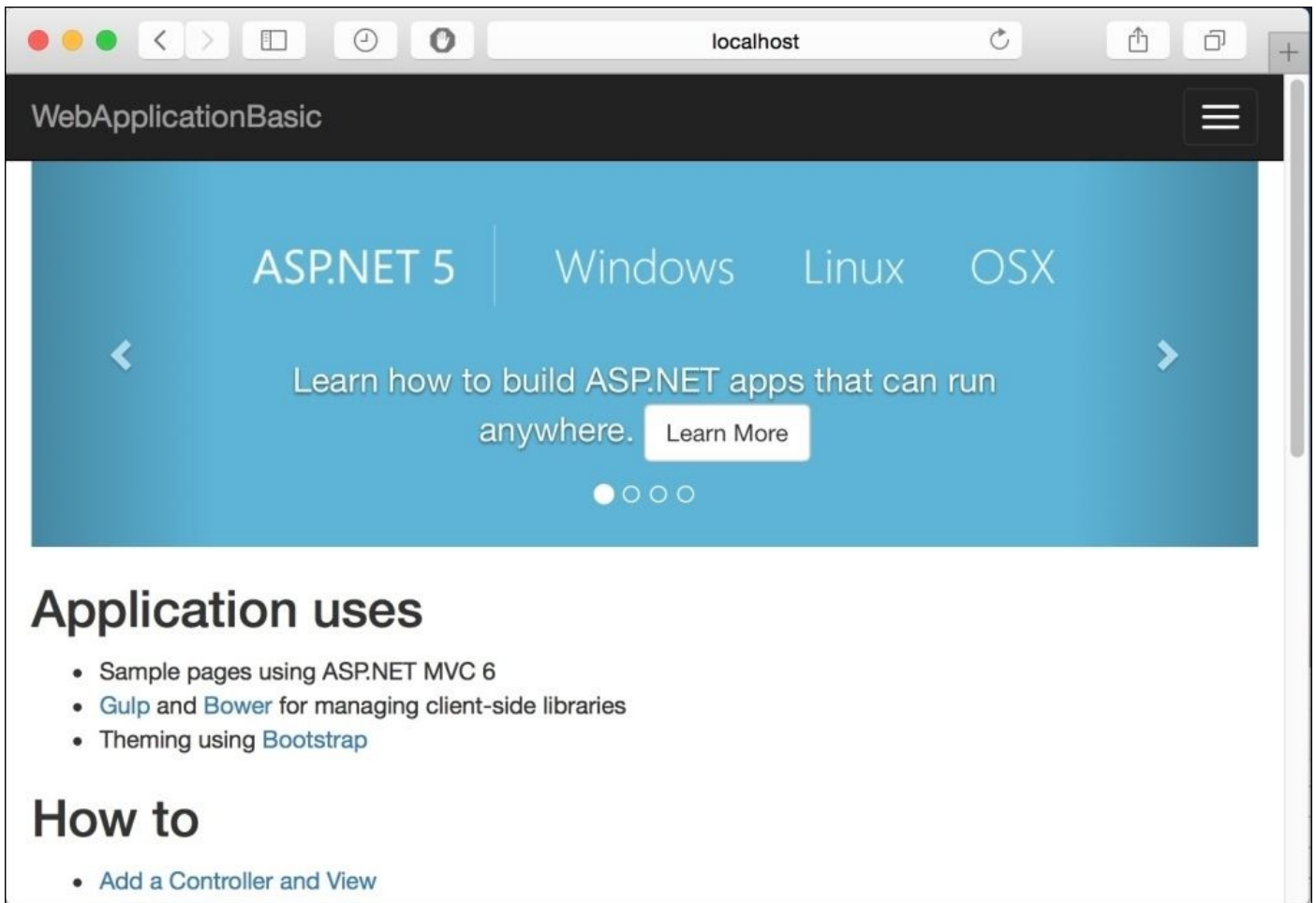
NuGet Config files used:
  /Users/markjprice/.config/NuGet/nuget.config

Feeds used:
  https://api.nuget.org/v3-flatcontainer/
markjprice:WebApp $ dnx web
Hosting environment: Production
Now listening on: http://localhost:5000
Application started. Press Ctrl+C to shut down.
```

Note

If you get an error message about being unable to resolve project that is most likely because you have executed the `dnx restore` command in a directory without a `project.json` file.

Start a web browser and go to `http://localhost:5000/`:



By default, every request from the browser is logged to the **Terminal** window.

Note that the first request is to `http://localhost:5000/`, which caused the `Index` action method of `HomeController` to return the results of a view named `/Views/Home/Index.cshtml`:

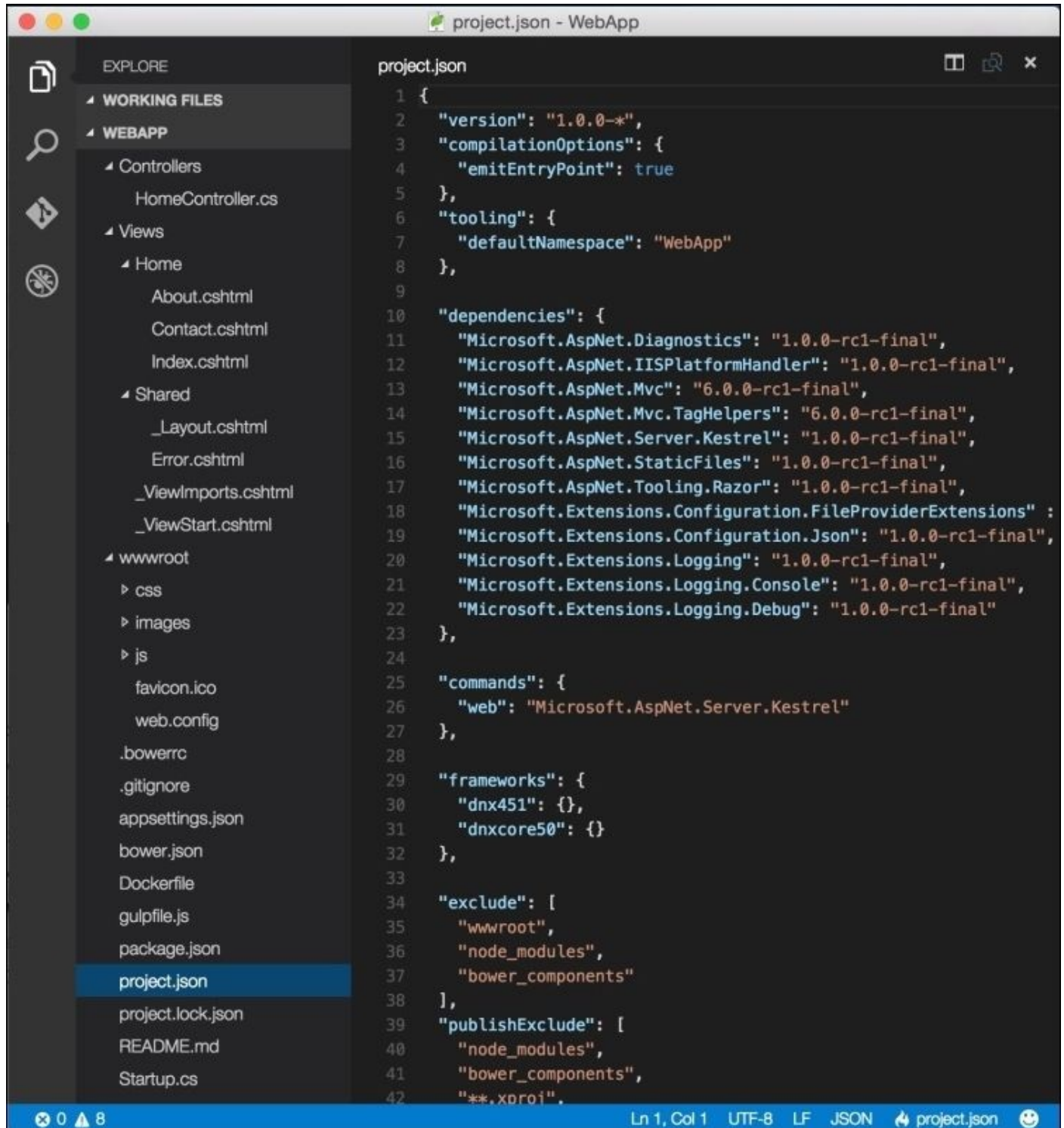

```
Terminal Shell Edit View Window Help
WebApp — mono-sgen — 80x25
Application started. Press Ctrl+C to shut down.
info: Microsoft.AspNet.Hosting.Internal.HostingEngine[1]
  Request starting HTTP/1.1 GET http://localhost:5000/
info: Microsoft.AspNet.Mvc.Controllers.ControllerActionInvoker[1]
  Executing action method WebApp.Controllers.HomeController.Index with argum
  ents () - ModelState is Valid'
info: Microsoft.AspNet.Mvc.ViewFeatures.ViewResultExecutor[1]
  Executing ViewResult, running view at path /Views/Home/Index.cshtml.
info: Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection.DataProtectionServices[0]
  User profile is available. Using '/Users/markjprice/.local/share/ASP.NET/D
  ataProtection-Keys' as key repository; keys will not be encrypted at rest.
info: Microsoft.AspNet.Mvc.Infrastructure.MvcRouteHandler[2]
  Executed action WebApp.Controllers.HomeController.Index in 0.1287ms
info: Microsoft.AspNet.Hosting.Internal.HostingEngine[2]
  Request finished in 0.1498ms 200 text/html; charset=utf-8
info: Microsoft.AspNet.Hosting.Internal.HostingEngine[1]
  Request starting HTTP/1.1 GET http://localhost:5000/js/site.min.js?v=47DEQ
  pj8HBSa-_TImW-5JCeuQeRkm5NMpJWZG3hSuFU
info: Microsoft.AspNet.Hosting.Internal.HostingEngine[1]
  Request starting HTTP/1.1 GET http://localhost:5000/css/site.min.css?v=fWl
  4ANA-NFkhHw0bbQyy6JuCQUnqmVC95jr8HpuYLF
info: Microsoft.AspNet.StaticFiles.StaticFileMiddleware[2]
  Sending file. Request path: '/js/site.min.js'. Physical path: '/Users/mark
  jprice/WebApp/wwwroot/js/site.min.js'
info: Microsoft.AspNet.StaticFiles.StaticFileMiddleware[2]
```

Close the web browser, and in **Terminal**, press *Ctrl + C* to stop the Kestrel web server.

Editing projects using Visual Studio Code

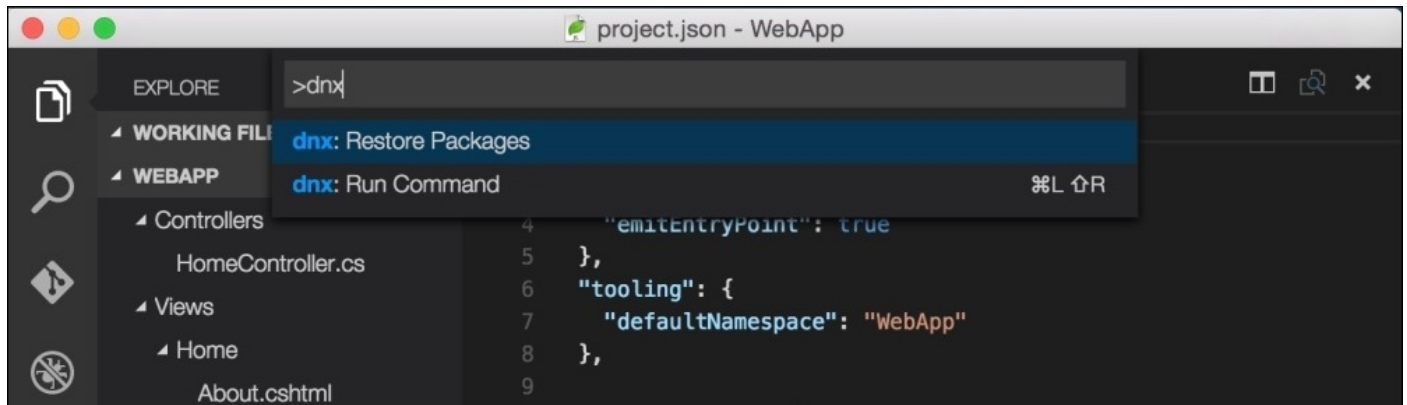
You could open this project using Visual Studio 2015 if you have Windows, which provides a better developer experience, but we will use Visual Studio Code.

In **Terminal**, enter code `.` to start Visual Studio Code and load this project. Browse the files to see how it all fits together, as shown in the following screenshot. The same C# code that you learned in [Chapter 14, Building Web Applications and Services Using ASP.NET Core](#), applies here.

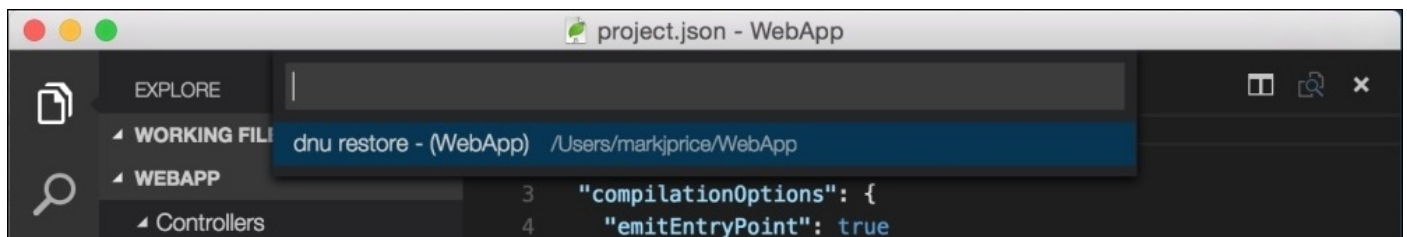


Instead of having to run **Terminal**, you can execute commands directly inside Visual Studio Code.

Press *Command* + *Shift* + *P*. Then, in the > prompt, type `dnx`, and you will see that a drop-down command list filters to show two commands related to `dnx`:



Press *Enter* to see the actual command (`dnu restore`), and then press *Enter* again to execute it in the directory shown:



The **Terminal** prompt will become active, and you will see the results of running the command.

Tip

In 2016, Microsoft SQL Server only runs on Windows, but in 2017, it will be available for Linux. If you need a RDBMS that is completely cross-platform today, then you should use SQLite. For more information, visit <https://github.com/aspnet/Microsoft.Data.Sqlite>.

Understanding the .NET Core command-line tools

There are two sets of command-line interface tools that you can use to manage .NET Core.

Understanding the DNX tools

The .NET Version Manager, .NET Execution Environment, and .NET Development Utilities (dnvm, dnx, and dnu) were used by Microsoft during the initial development of the .NET Core between 2013 and 2015. They are installed as part of Visual Studio 2015.

The .NET Version Manager (dnvm) is used to install various versions of the .NET Execution Environment (dnx).

A dnx is a software development kit (SDK) and runtime environment that has everything you need to build and run .NET applications, including a host process, CLR, and managed entry-point discovery. There are three common dnxes: the .NET Framework, the .NET Core, and Mono.

The .NET Development Utilities (dnu) tool provides functions to help with ASP.NET Core development. The most common function is to use dnu to install and manage library packages in our application by using its restore feature.

Understanding the CLI tools

The .NET CLI (dotnet) is a “driver” that will be used by the final release of the .NET Core. It provides a simplified layer on top of other underlying tools. The .NET CLI must be installed separately.

Common DNX commands

To install the latest version of the .NET Execution Environment and make it temporarily active, use the following command:

```
dnvm install latest
```

To install a specific version of a dnx and make it temporarily active, use the following command:

```
dnvm install latest -runtime coreclr -arch x64
```

To install a version and make it permanently active by modifying the PATH variable use upgrade instead of install:

```
dnvm upgrade latest -runtime coreclr -arch x64
```

To switch to a different version, use the following command:

```
dnvm use 1.0.0-rc1-update1 -runtime coreclr -arch x64
```

Common CLI commands

First, we must install the .NET CLI.

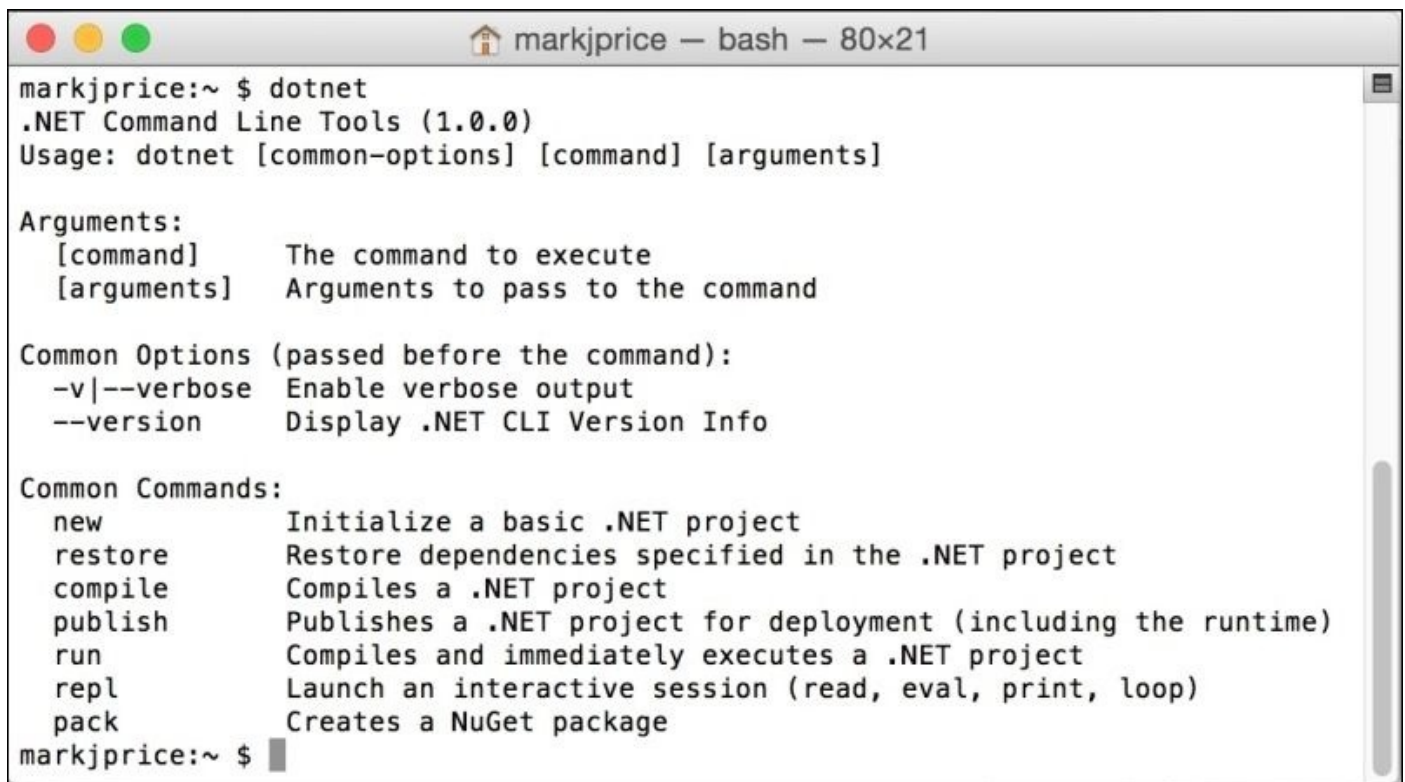
Start Safari or Chrome and go to <https://github.com/dotnet/cli>.

Scroll down the page to find **Installers** and click on the link to download the **PKG** file for Mac OS X. Open the package and install it.

In the **Terminal** prompt, enter the following command:

```
dotnet
```

You should see the following output:

A screenshot of a macOS Terminal window. The title bar shows 'markjprice — bash — 80x21'. The terminal content shows the command 'dotnet' being executed, resulting in the following output:

```
markjprice:~ $ dotnet
.NET Command Line Tools (1.0.0)
Usage: dotnet [common-options] [command] [arguments]

Arguments:
  [command]      The command to execute
  [arguments]    Arguments to pass to the command

Common Options (passed before the command):
  -v|--verbose  Enable verbose output
  --version     Display .NET CLI Version Info

Common Commands:
  new           Initialize a basic .NET project
  restore       Restore dependencies specified in the .NET project
  compile       Compiles a .NET project
  publish       Publishes a .NET project for deployment (including the runtime)
  run           Compiles and immediately executes a .NET project
  repl          Launch an interactive session (read, eval, print, loop)
  pack          Creates a NuGet package
markjprice:~ $
```

Enter the following commands in the **Terminal** prompt to create a new directory, change to it, create a new console application in the directory, and then list the files it created:

```
mkdir ConsoleApp2
cd ConsoleApp2
dotnet new
ls
```

You should see that the dotnet tool has created three new files for you: `NuGet.Config`, `Program.cs`, and `project.json`.

In the **Terminal** prompt, enter the following command to start Visual Studio Code:

```
code .
```

In Visual Studio Code, click on `Program.cs` on the left-hand side and modify the `writeLine` statement like this:

```
Console.WriteLine("Hello C#, Welcome .NET Core!");
```

Save changes and quit Visual Studio Code.

In the **Terminal** prompt, enter the following commands:

```
dotnet restore  
dotnet run
```

After a few seconds, all the dependency packages will be downloaded, and your application will run, showing the following output:

A terminal window titled "ConsoleApp2 - bash - 80x5" showing the output of the dotnet run command. The output indicates that 67 packages were installed and the application successfully ran, displaying the message "Hello C#, Welcome .NET Core!".

```
Installed:  
 67 package(s) to /Users/markjprice/.dnx/packages  
markjprice:ConsoleApp2 $ dotnet run  
Hello C#, Welcome .NET Core!  
markjprice:ConsoleApp2 $
```

To compile the source code into an assembly containing IL code, enter the following command, as shown in the following screenshot:

```
dotnet build
```

If you navigate into the subdirectories, you will note that a `\bin\Debug\dnxcore50\` directory has been created with a Unix executable named `ConsoleApp2` in it.

A terminal window titled "ConsoleApp2 - bash - 80x11" showing the output of the dotnet build command. The output shows that compilation succeeded with 0 warnings and 0 errors, and the time elapsed was 00:00:02.1423081.

```
markjprice:ConsoleApp2 $ dotnet build  
Compiling ConsoleApp2 for DNXCore,Version=v5.0  
  
Compilation succeeded.  
 0 Warning(s)  
 0 Error(s)  
  
Time elapsed 00:00:02.1423081  
  
markjprice:ConsoleApp2 $
```

Tip

Debug is the configuration name. The framework name is `dnxcore50`. This will change in the release version of the .NET Core.

Practicing and exploring

Test your knowledge and understanding by answering some questions, get some hands-on practice, and explore this chapter's topics with deeper research.

Exercise 15.1 – test your knowledge

Answer the following questions:

1. What platforms are supported by .NET Core and ASP.NET Core?
2. What command downloads dependent packages for a project?
3. What file does project directory require in order to restore packages?
4. What command will show the currently installed versions of .NET?
5. What command will switch to a different version of .NET?

Exercise 15.2 – practice transferring an existing ASP.NET application

Take the ASP.NET Core application that we created in [Chapter 14](#), *Building Web Applications and Services Using ASP.NET Core*, restore its packages, and host it in the Kestrel web server.

What happens? Why?

Note

The project uses a database connection string that attempts to connect to a Microsoft SQL Server LocalDb instance, but Mac OS X does not support this. So, an unhandled exception is thrown causing the **Terminal** window to crash! We would need to change the database connection string to point to a Windows Server or Linux running the full (or Express) version of Microsoft SQL Server instead. Alternatively, we could use the Microsoft Azure SQL Database instead.

Exercise 15.3 – explore topics

Use the following links to read more about this chapter's topics:

- **Requirements for Visual Studio Code:** <https://code.visualstudio.com/Docs/supporting/requirements>
- **Visual Studio Code for Mac developers:** <https://channel9.msdn.com/Series/Visual-Studio-Code-for-Mac-Developers>
- **.NET Core Roadmap:** <https://github.com/dotnet/core/blob/master/roadmap.md>
- **Project.json file:** <https://github.com/aspnet/Home/wiki/Project.json-file>
- **Microsoft .NET Native:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/vstudio/dotnetnative.aspx>
- **Compiling Apps with .NET Native:** <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/dn584397.aspx>
- **ASP.NET Core Documentation:** <http://docs.asp.net/en/latest/>

Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to build an ASP.NET Core application that can be hosted cross-platform on Windows, Linux, a Docker container, and Mac OS X.

Tip

If this chapter stoked your interest and you want more details, then check out Packt Publishing's web site at <http://www.packtpub.com/> because the most likely book I write next will be a deeper dive into ASP.NET Core and Entity Framework Core using Visual Studio Code.

In the next chapter, you will learn how to build a complete web application and service for a Quiz app.

Chapter 16. Building a Quiz

This chapter is about designing and building a quiz application that helps students learn the C# language, .NET Core, and related topics.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Designing the quiz application
- Building the quiz solution
- Running the quiz
- Hosting ASP.NET Core web apps in Microsoft Azure

Designing the quiz application

The first decision for designing the quiz that we need to make is on which platform to implement the quiz. We want this quiz to be usable for as many students as possible, wherever and whenever.

Choosing the platform

A web application that uses responsive design to support mobile devices as well as desktops would be a good choice. To provide maximum scalability and flexibility for the choice of host, we want a platform that will run on Windows or Linux, either the full operating system, or a Docker container.

The application will therefore use the following:

- ASP.NET Core 1.0 for its server-side processing
- Entity Framework Core 1.0 for data storage
- HTML5 and CSS3 for a user experience that adapts to different devices

Tip

Since this is only a sample project and will have a small amount of data, we will use an in-memory database to remove data storage costs. In the real world, you will have to pay for storage of quizzes and their questions.

Deciding the functional requirements

The application will maintain multiple quizzes about various topics. To simplify the design, the questions will always be multiple choices, where the quiz taker picks one answer from four possibilities.

At the end, the quiz taker will be told how many questions they got right out of the total, and they will be given a list of their answers to compare against the correct answers.

Separating concerns

We will follow best practice and create a solution with multiple projects, each of which has responsibilities as described in the following bullets:

- **Ch16_QuizModels:** This is a **Class Library (Package)** for the entity classes, that represents a quiz and a question with no dependency on a data access library.
- **Ch16_QuizRepository:** This is a **Class Library (Package)** with a dependency on the Entity Framework Core 1.0, to enable data access and storage of the entities. We will use the new in-memory database, but we will design the repository to support easy swapping of alternatives such as Microsoft SQL Server and Microsoft Azure DocumentDB.
- **Ch16_QuizWebApp:** This is a **ASP.NET Core 1.0 Web Application**, with view models that represent a user's current answers, and a list of questions stored in the session state.

Building the quiz solution

Start Microsoft Visual Studio 2015. In Visual Studio, press *Ctrl + Shift + N*, or navigate to **File | New | Project...**

In the **New Project** dialog, in the **Installed Templates** list, select **Visual C#**. In the list at the center, select **Class Library (Package)** and enter the name **Ch16_QuizModels**. Change the location to `C:\Code`, enter the solution name **Chapter16**, and then click on **OK**.

Defining the entity models

Right-click on **Class1.cs** file and choose **Rename**, and enter a name for the quiz. Open the file and modify the code to look like this:

```
using System.Collections.Generic;

namespace Packt.QuizWebApp
{
    public class Quiz
    {
        public string QuizID { get; set; } // e.g. CSHARP
        public string Title { get; set; } // e.g. C# and OOP
        public string Description { get; set; }

        // one-to-many relationship with a collection of Questions
        public virtual ICollection<Question> Questions { get; set; }

        // constructor to instantiate an empty collection
        public Quiz()
        {
            Questions = new HashSet<Question>();
        }
    }
}
```

Note

We have not defined the **Question** class yet, so you will not see it appear in IntelliSense and you will not be able to compile the project.

On the **Project** menu, choose **Add Class...** and name it **Question**. Modify the code to look like this:

```
namespace Packt.QuizWebApp
{
    public class Question
    {
        public int QuestionID { get; set; } // identity
        public string QuestionText { get; set; }
        public string AnswerA { get; set; }
        public string AnswerB { get; set; }
        public string AnswerC { get; set; }
        public string AnswerD { get; set; }
        public string CorrectAnswer { get; set; } // e.g. B
        // the other side of the one-to-many relationship
        public virtual Quiz Quiz { get; set; }
    }
}
```

You should now be able to build this project with no errors, by pressing F6.

Creating the data repository

Add a new **Class Library (Package)** project named **Ch16_QuizRepository**. Add a reference to the **Ch16_QuizModels** project.

From the **Tools** menu, choose **NuGet Package Manager**, and then choose **Package Manager Console**.

In the **Package Manager Console**, ensure that the package source is set to **nuget.org** and the default project is set to **Ch16_QuizRepository**, and then enter the following command at the prompt:

```
install-package entityframework.inmemory
```

Note

By the time you read this book, the final release version should be available, so the preceding command will work. If you get an error with the preceding line of code, add the `-pre` flag at its end to install the pre-release version.

Right-click on **Class1.cs** and choose **Rename**. Enter the name **QuizContext**. Modify the code to look like this:

```
using Microsoft.Data.Entity;
using Microsoft.Data.Entity.Infrastructure;

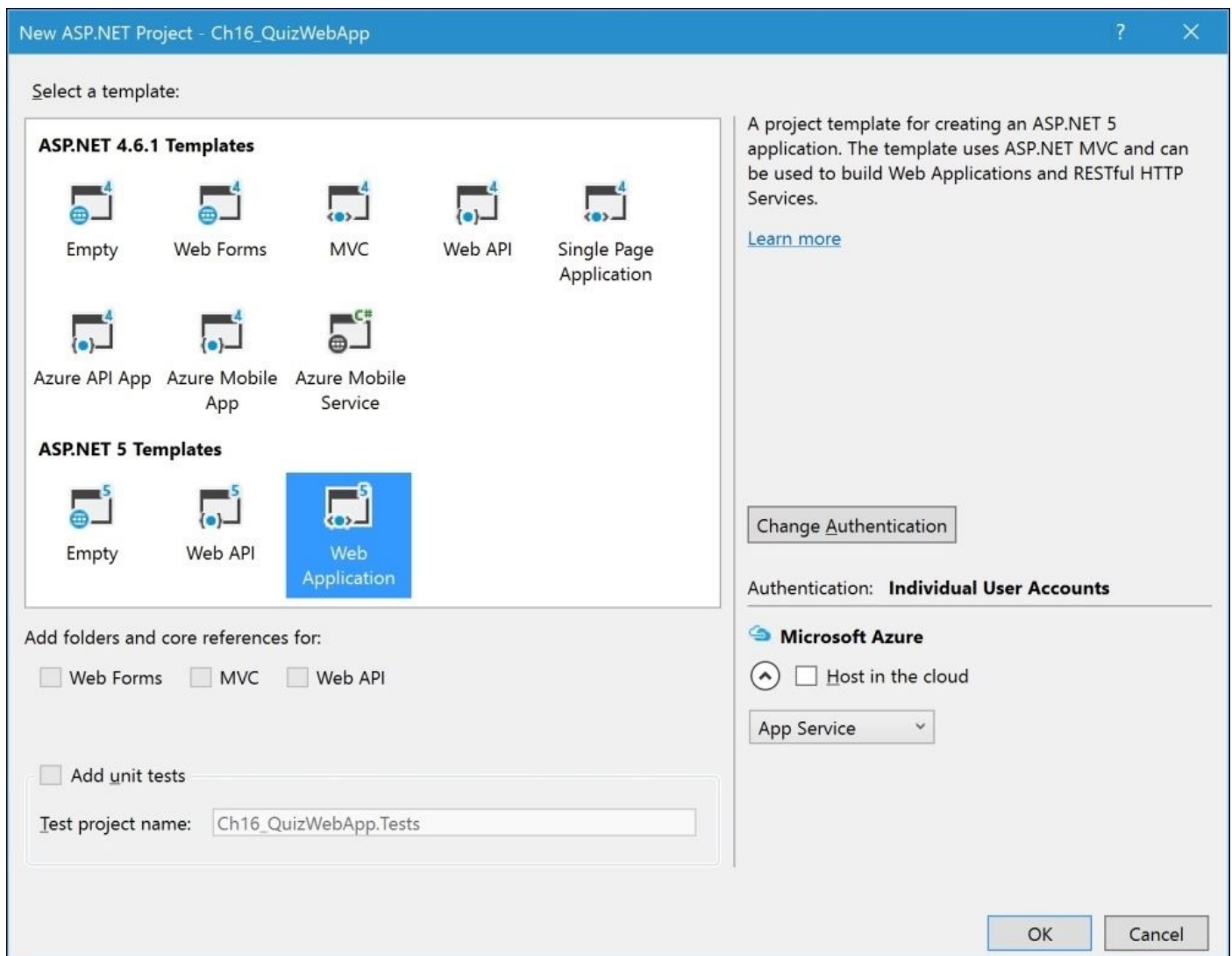
namespace Packt.QuizWebApp
{
    public class QuizContext : DbContext
    {
        public DbSet<Quiz> Quizzes { get; set; }
        public DbSet<Question> Questions { get; set; }

        // Best practice is to allow the options to be
        // passed into a constructor so that we remove any
        // assumptions about where the data is stored: in-memory,
        // SQL Server, and so on.
        public QuizContext(DbContextOptions options) : base(options) { }
        protected override void OnModelCreating(ModelBuilder modelBuilder)
        {
            modelBuilder.Entity<Quiz>().HasMany<Question>().WithOne(q =>
q.Quiz);
            base.OnModelCreating(modelBuilder);
        }
    }
}
```

You should now be able to build this project with no errors, by pressing F6.

Creating the web application

Add a new **ASP.NET Web Application** project named **Ch16_QuizWebApp**. Choose the **ASP.NET Core 1.0 Templates – Web Application** template, leave the authentication as **Individual User Accounts**, clear the **Host in the cloud** checkbox, and click on **OK**:



Note

At the time of writing, the final version of ASP.NET Core 1.0 had not been released, so the screenshots in this book show the old branding: ASP.NET 5.

In the **Solution Explorer** window, right-click on the **Ch16_QuizWebApp** project and choose **Set as StartUp Project**.

Add references to the **Ch16_QuizModels** and **Ch16_QuizRepository** projects.

From the **Tools** menu, choose **NuGet Package Manager**, and then choose **Package Manager Console**. In the **Package Manager Console** window, ensure that the package source is set to **nuget.org** and the default project is set to **Ch16_QuizWebApp**. Next, enter the following commands at the prompt:

```
install-package microsoft.netcore.portable.compatibility
install-package newtonsoft.json
install-package microsoft.aspnet.session
install-package microsoft.extensions.caching.memory
install-package entityframework.inmemory
```

Note

By the time you read this book, the final release versions of the ASP.NET Core NuGet packages should be available, so the preceding commands will work. If you get an error with any of the preceding lines, add the `-pre` flag to the end to install the pre-release version.

Defining view models

View models are all the data required by a view. We need to define two view models—one for the view that displays a question, and another for the view that displays the list of answers at the end of a quiz.

In the **Solution Explorer** window, in the **ViewModels** folder, add a folder named **Home**.

Right-click on the **Home** folder, choose **Add Class...**, name it **QuestionViewModel**, and modify the code to define a class that represents all the data required when viewing a question:

```
using Packt.QuizWebApp;

namespace Ch16_QuizWebApp.ViewModels.Home
{
    public class QuestionViewModel
    {
        public Question Question { get; set; }
        public string Answer { get; set; }
        public int Number { get; set; }
        public int Total { get; set; }
    }
}
```

Right-click on the **Home** folder, choose **Add Class...**, name it **FinishViewModel**, and modify the code to define a class that represents all the data required when viewing the results of a quiz:

```
using Packt.QuizWebApp;
using System.Collections.Generic;

namespace Ch16_QuizWebApp.ViewModels.Home
{
    public class FinishViewModel
    {
        public Quiz Quiz { get; set; }
        public Dictionary<int, string> Answers { get; set; }
        public int CorrectAnswers { get; set; }
    }
}
```

Adding sample quiz questions

We need some sample quiz questions. We will store them in a JSON file and deserialize them into the in-memory database provided by the Entity Framework Core.

Right-click on the **wwwroot** directory of the **Ch16_QuizWebApp** project and navigate to **Add | New Item...** or press *Ctrl + Shift + A*.

Choose a **JSON File**, name it **samplequestions.json**, and click on **OK**.

Modify the file as shown in the following block of code. Note that any string can be used as a `$id` and `$ref` in order to define references between objects. I chose to use Q1, Q2, and so on, to identify quizzes, and Q1.1, Q1.2, and so on, to identify questions that belong to quizzes:

```
{
  "$values": [
    {
      "$id": "Q1",
      "QuizID": "CSHARP",
      "Title": "C# and OOP",
      "Description": "Questions about the C# language and object-oriented programming.",
      "Questions": {
        "$values": [
          {
            "$id": "Q1.1",
            "QuestionID": 0,
            "QuestionText": "Which modifier would you apply to a type's member to allow only code within that type access to it?",
            "AnswerA": "internal",
            "AnswerB": "protected",
            "AnswerC": "private",
            "AnswerD": "public",
            "CorrectAnswer": "C",
            "Quiz": {
              "$ref": "Q1"
            }
          },
          {
            "$id": "Q1.2",
            "QuestionID": 0,
            "QuestionText": "Which keyword would you apply to a type's field to prevent its value from changing after an instance of the type has been created?",
            "AnswerA": "const",
            "AnswerB": "readonly",
            "AnswerC": "static",
            "AnswerD": "protected",
            "CorrectAnswer": "B",
            "Quiz": {
              "$ref": "Q1"
            }
          }
        ]
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

```

    ]
  },
  {
    "$id": "Q2",
    "QuizID": "FILEIO",
    "Title": "File I/O",
    "Description": "Questions about the file input/output features of the
.NET Framework including serialization.",
    "Questions": {
      "$values": [
        {
          "$id": "Q2.1",
          "QuestionID": 0,
          "QuestionText": "What are the requirements for a type to be
serialized by using the BinaryFormatter?",
          "AnswerA": "Apply [Serializable] to the type.",
          "AnswerB": "Apply [Serializable] to the type and make all
fields public.",
          "AnswerC": "Ensure the type is public with a parameterless
constructor.",
          "AnswerD": "Ensure the type is public with a parameterless
constructor and make any fields you want to include public.",
          "CorrectAnswer": "A",
          "Quiz": {
            "$ref": "Q2"
          }
        }
      ]
    }
  }
]
}

```

Tip

Add at least five questions for each quiz. The preceding code is trimmed to save space.

Right-click on the **Models** folder and choose **Add Class...**, name it **QuizConfig**, and modify the code to enable the Entity Framework Core in-memory database. Populate it with the deserialized sample quiz questions, as follows:

```

using Packt.QuizWebApp;
using Microsoft.AspNet.Builder;
using Microsoft.Data.Entity;
using Newtonsoft.Json;
using System.IO;
using System.Collections.Generic;

namespace Ch16_QuizWebApp.Models
{
    public static class QuizConfig
    {
        public static void UseSampleQuestions(this IApplicationBuilder app,
string path)
        {

```


Configuring session state

Open the Startup.cs file and add the following statements to the end of the ConfigureServices method, after the call to the AddMvc method:

```
services.AddCaching();
services.AddSession(options =>
{
    options.CookieName = ".Packt.QuizWebApp";
    options.IdleTimeout = TimeSpan.FromMinutes(10);
});
```

Add the following statements to the end of the Configure method, before and after the call to the UseMvc method, to use the session state and to populate the sample questions:

app.UseSession(); // must be added before MVC

```
app.UseMvc(routes =>
{
    routes.MapRoute(
        name: "default",
        template: "{controller=Home}/{action=Index}/{id?}");
});
```

app.UseSampleQuestions(env.MapPath("")); // pass the path to the wwwroot directory

Adding custom controller actions

Open the **Controllers** folder and the `HomeController` class, and modify the code as follows:

- Define a custom `JsonSerializerSettings` class that handles circular references correctly for the quiz-questions relationship
- Define pairs of methods to set and get the current user's quiz and the user's questions from their user session stored as JSON
- A constructor that sets the database context to use an in-memory database
- Index action that passes all the quizzes to a home page view
- The `TakeQuiz` action that shows a summary of the chosen quiz ready, for the user to start it
- The `Question GET` action that shows a specified question
- The `Question POST` action that stores the user's selected answer and then redirects to the next question
- The `Finish` action that shows the results
- The `Error` action that shows the default error page

Here is the code:

```
using Packt.QuizWebApp;
using Microsoft.Data.Entity;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Microsoft.AspNet.Mvc;
using Microsoft.AspNet.Http;
using Newtonsoft.Json;

namespace Ch16_QuizWebApp.Controllers
{
    public class HomeController : Controller
    {
        private QuizContext db;

        public JsonSerializerSettings settings = new JsonSerializerSettings
            { PreserveReferencesHandling = PreserveReferencesHandling.All
        };
    };

    #region Helper methods to store state in Session
    public void SetQuiz(Quiz input)
    {
        string json = JsonConvert.SerializeObject(input,
            Formatting.None, settings);
        HttpContext.Session.SetString("usersquiz", json);
    }

    public Quiz GetQuiz()
    {
        string json = HttpContext.Session.GetString("usersquiz");
        return JsonConvert.DeserializeObject<Quiz>(json, settings);
    }
}
```

```

    }

    public void SetAnswers(Dictionary<int, string> input)
    {
        string json = JsonConvert.SerializeObject(input, settings);
        HttpContext.Session.SetString("usersanswers", json);
    }

    public Dictionary<int, string> GetAnswers()
    {
        string json = HttpContext.Session.GetString("usersanswers");
        return JsonConvert.DeserializeObject<Dictionary<int, string>>
(json, settings);
    }
#endregion

    public HomeController()
    {
        var optionsBuilder = new DbContextOptionsBuilder<QuizContext>
();
        optionsBuilder.UseInMemoryDatabase();
        db = new QuizContext(optionsBuilder.Options);
    }

    // make the method asynchronous to improve scalability
    public async Task<IActionResult> Index()
    {
        var model = await db.Quizzes.ToListAsync();
        ViewData["Title"] = "Home";
        return View(model);
    }

    public IActionResult TakeQuiz(string id)
    {
        Quiz model = db.Quizzes.Where(q => q.QuizID == id).Include(q =>
q.Questions).FirstOrDefault();
        if (model == null)
        {
            return HttpNotFound($"A quiz with the ID of {id} was not
found.");
        }
        SetQuiz(model);
        SetAnswers(new Dictionary<int, string>());
        ViewData["Title"] = "Take Quiz";
        return View(model);
    }

    public IActionResult Question(int? id)
    {
        if (!id.HasValue)
        {
            return HttpNotFound("You must pass an id of a question.");
        }
        var quiz = GetQuiz();
        var answers = GetAnswers();
        var model = new ViewModels.Home.QuestionViewModel

```

```

        {
            Question = quiz.Questions.Skip(id.Value -
1).Take(1).FirstOrDefault(),
            Answer = answers.ContainsKey(id.Value - 1) ?
answers[id.Value - 1] : string.Empty,
            Number = id.Value,
            Total = quiz.Questions.Count()
        };
        ViewData["Title"] = $"Question {model.Number} of
{model.Total}";
        return View(model);
    }

    [HttpPost]
    public IActionResult Question(int? id, string submit, string
answer)
    {
        if (!id.HasValue)
        {
            return HttpNotFound("You must pass an id of a question.");
        }
        var answers = GetAnswers();
        answers[id.Value - 1] = answer;
        SetAnswers(answers);
        if (submit == "Previous")
        {
            id--;
        }
        else if (submit == "Next")
        {
            id++;
        }
        else if (submit == "Finish")
        {
            return RedirectToAction("Finish");
        }
        else
        {
            return RedirectToAction("Index");
        }
        return RedirectToAction("Question", new { id = id });
    }

    public IActionResult Finish()
    {
        var quiz = GetQuiz();
        var model = new ViewModels.Home.FinishViewModel
        {
            Quiz = quiz,
            Answers = GetAnswers()
        };
        for (int i = 0; i < model.Quiz.Questions.Count; i++)
        {
            if (model.Quiz.Questions.ToList()[i].CorrectAnswer ==
model.Answers[i]) model.CorrectAnswers++;
        }
    }

```

```
        ViewData["Title"] = "End of Quiz";
        return View(model);
    }

    public IActionResult Error()
    {
        return View();
    }
}
```

Adding custom views

In the **Views** folder, in the **Home** folder, rename the **About.cshtml** file to **TakeQuiz.cshtml**, and then modify the view as follows:

```
@model Packt.QuizWebApp.Quiz
@{
    ViewBag.Title = $"{Model.Title} Quiz";
}
<div class="jumbotron">
    <h2>@Model.Title Quiz</h2>
    <p>@Model.Description</p>
    <p>This quiz has @Model.Questions.Count questions.</p>
    <p>
        <a class="btn btn-success" href="@Url.Action("Question", new { id =
1 })">Start &raquo;</a>
    </p>
</div>
```

In the **Views** folder, go in the **Home** folder, rename the **Contact.cshtml** file to **Question.cshtml**, and then modify the view as follows:

```
@model Ch16_QuizWebApp.ViewModels.Home.QuestionViewModel
@{
    ViewBag.Title = "Question " + Model.Number;
}
<div class="jumbotron">
    <h2>Question @Model.Number</h2>
    <p>
        @Model.Question.QuestionText
    </p>
    <form action="@Url.Action("Question", new { id = Model.Number })"
method="post" class="form-inline">
        <div class="row">
            <div class="col-md-5 alert alert-info">
                <input type="radio" class="radio radio-inline"
name="answer" id="ARadio" value="A"
                @if (Model.Answer == "A") { @: checked="checked"
                } />
                <label for="ARadio">@Model.Question.AnswerA</label>
            </div>
            <div class="col-md-1"></div>
            <div class="col-md-5 alert alert-info">
                <input type="radio" class="radio" name="answer" id="BRadio"
value="B"
                @if (Model.Answer == "B") { @: checked="checked"
                } />
                <label for="BRadio">@Model.Question.AnswerB</label>
            </div>
        </div>
        <div class="row">
            <div class="col-md-5 alert alert-info">
                <input type="radio" class="radio" name="answer" id="CRadio"
value="C"
                @if (Model.Answer == "C") { @: checked="checked"
```

```

        } />
        <label for="CRadio">@Model.Question.AnswerC</label>
    </div>
    <div class="col-md-1"></div>
    <div class="col-md-5 alert alert-info">
        <input type="radio" class="radio" name="answer" id="DRadio"
value="D"
        @if (Model.Answer == "D") { @: checked="checked"
} />
        <label for="DRadio">@Model.Question.AnswerD</label>
    </div>
</div>
<div class="row">
    <div class="col-md-4">
        <input name="submit" type="submit" value="End Quiz"
class="btn btn-warning" />
    </div>
    <div class="col-md-4">
        @if (Model.Number > 1)
        {
            @:<input name="submit" type="submit" value="Previous"
class="btn btn-default" />
        }
    </div>
    <div class="col-md-4">
        @if (Model.Number == Model.Total)
        {
            @:<input name="submit" type="submit" value="Finish"
class="btn btn-default" />
        }
        else
        {
            @:<input name="submit" type="submit" value="Next"
class="btn btn-success" />
        }
    </div>
</div>
</form>
</div>

```

In the **Views** folder, go in the **Home** folder, copy and paste the **Index.cshtml** file, rename the copy to **Finish.cshtml**, and then modify the view as follows:

```

@model Ch16_QuizWebApp.ViewModels.Home.FinishViewModel
@{
    ViewBag.Title = "Finish";
}
<div class="jumbotron">
    <h2>Finish</h2>
    <p>
        You scored @Model.CorrectAnswers out of @Model.Quiz.Questions.Count
    </p>
</div>
<div class="row">
    <table class="table">

```

```

        <tr>
            <th>Question</th>
            <th>Correct Answer</th>
            <th>Your Answer</th>
        </tr>
        @for (int i = 0; i < Model.Quiz.Questions.Count; i++)
        {
            <tr>
                <td>
                    @Html.DisplayFor(modelItem =>
Model.Quiz.Questions.ToList()[i].QuestionText)
                </td>
                <td>
                    @Html.DisplayFor(modelItem =>
Model.Quiz.Questions.ToList()[i].CorrectAnswer)
                </td>
                <td>
                    @Html.DisplayFor(modelItem => Model.Answers[i])
                </td>
            </tr>
        }
    </table>
</div>

```

In the **Views** folder, go in the **Home** folder, open the **Index.cshtml** file, and modify the view as follows:

```

@model IEnumerable<Packt.QuizWebApp.Quiz>
<div class="jumbotron">
    <h1>Quiz Web App</h1>
    <p class="lead">Quiz Web App is a web application built using C# and
ASP.NET Core as an example for the Packt Publishing book "C# 6 and .NET
Core 1.0".</p>
    <p><a href="http://packtpub.com/" class="btn btn-primary btn-lg">Learn
more about the C# 6 and .NET Core 1.0 book &raquo;</a></p>
</div>
@{
    var x = 0;
}
<div class="row">
    @foreach (var item in Model)
    {
        x++;
        <div class="col-md-6 col-sm-12">
            <h2>@item.Title</h2>
            <p>@item.Description</p>
            <p>
                <a class="btn btn-default" href="@Url.Action("TakeQuiz",
new { id = item.QuizID })">Take the @item.Title quiz &raquo;</a>
            </p>
        </div>
        if (x % 2 == 0)
        {
            @:</div><div class="row">
        }
    }
}

```

</div>

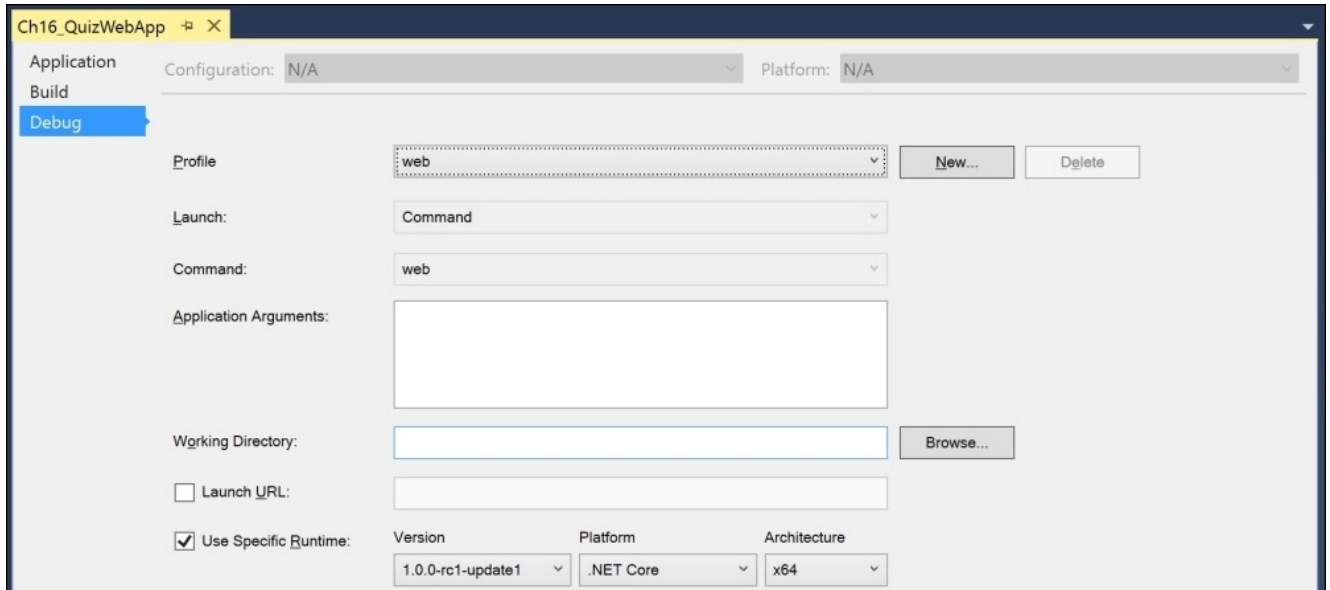
Running the quiz

Before we can run the quiz, we need to configure it to use the cross-platform Kestrel web server, and host it on .NET Core.

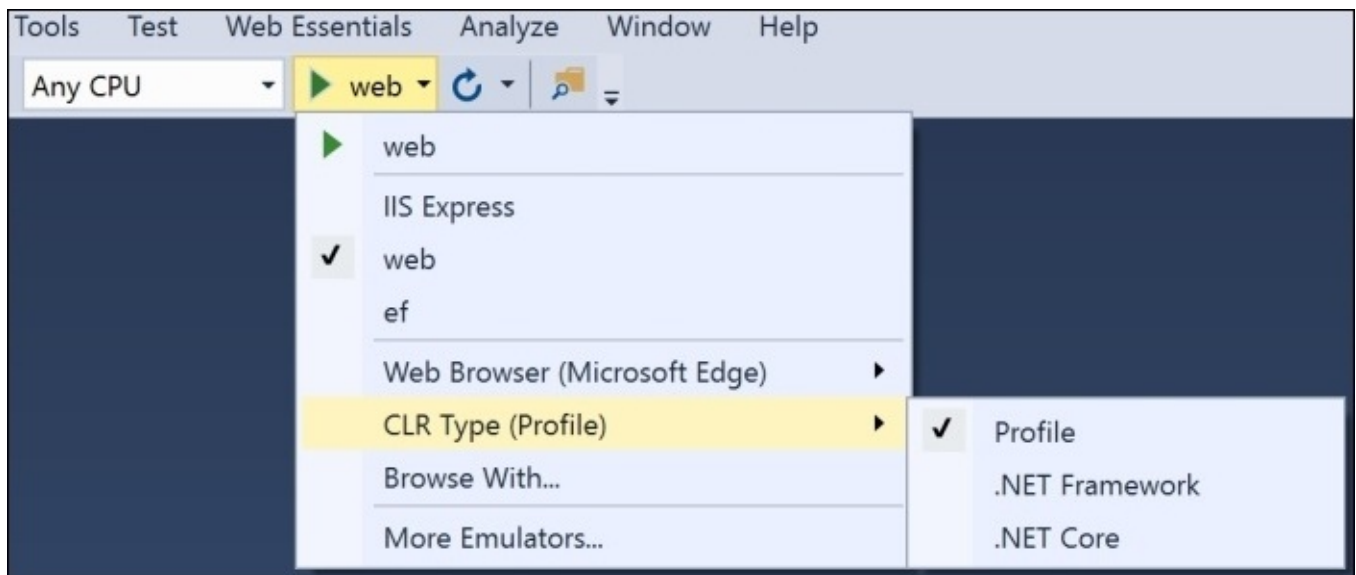
Configuring the project to use Kestrel and .NET Core

In the **Solution Explorer** window, in the **Ch16_QuizWebApp** project, double-click on **Properties**, click on the **Debug** tab, and set the following options:

- Set the profile to **web** (the Kestrel cross-platform web server)
- Check the box for **Use Specific Runtime** and choose the latest version
- Set the platform to **.NET Core**
- Set the architecture to **x64**, as shown in the following screenshot:



Save your changes, and then in the Visual Studio toolbar, choose the **web** profile:



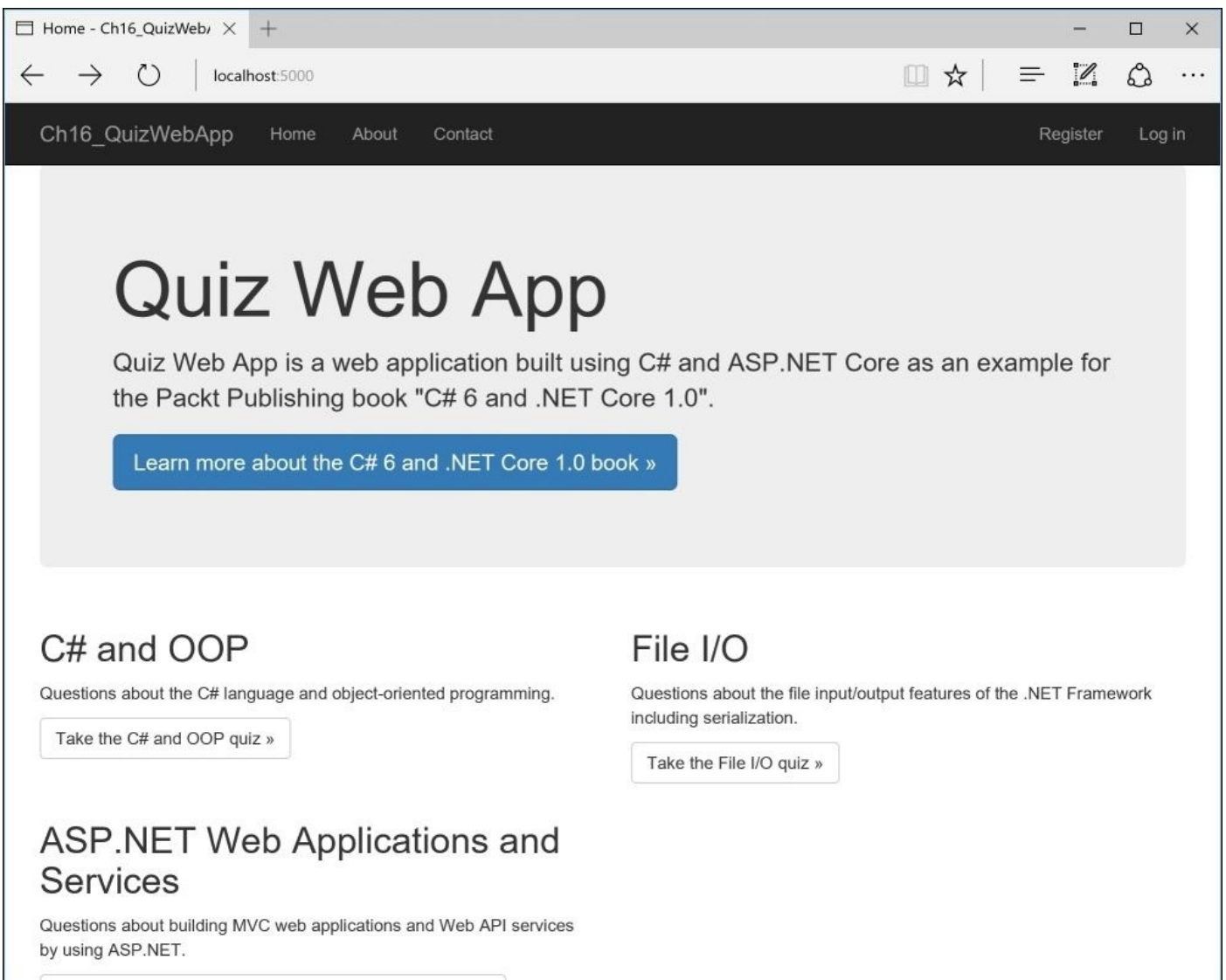
Start the application by pressing **F5**. Note that the Kestrel web server has started and is hosted on the CoreCLR for 64-bit CPUs:

```
C:\Users\markjprice\dnx\runtimes\dnx-coreclr-win-x64.1.0.0-rc1-update1\...
info: Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection.DataProtectionServices[0]
      User profile is available. Using 'C:\Users\markjprice\AppData\Local\ASP.NET\DataProtection-Keys' as key repository and Windows DPAPI to encrypt keys at rest.
Hosting environment: Development
Now listening on: http://localhost:5000
Application started. Press Ctrl+C to shut down.
```

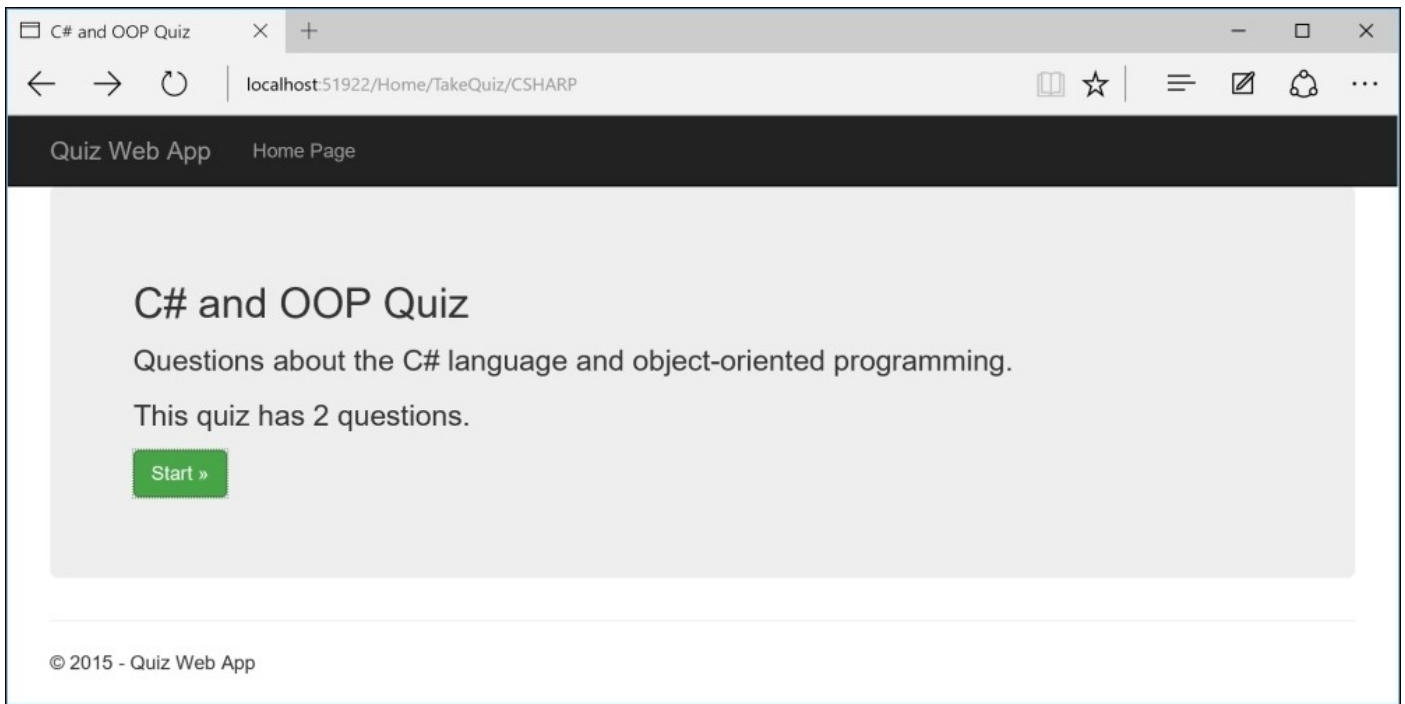
Start Microsoft Edge and enter the following into the address box:

`http://localhost:5000/`

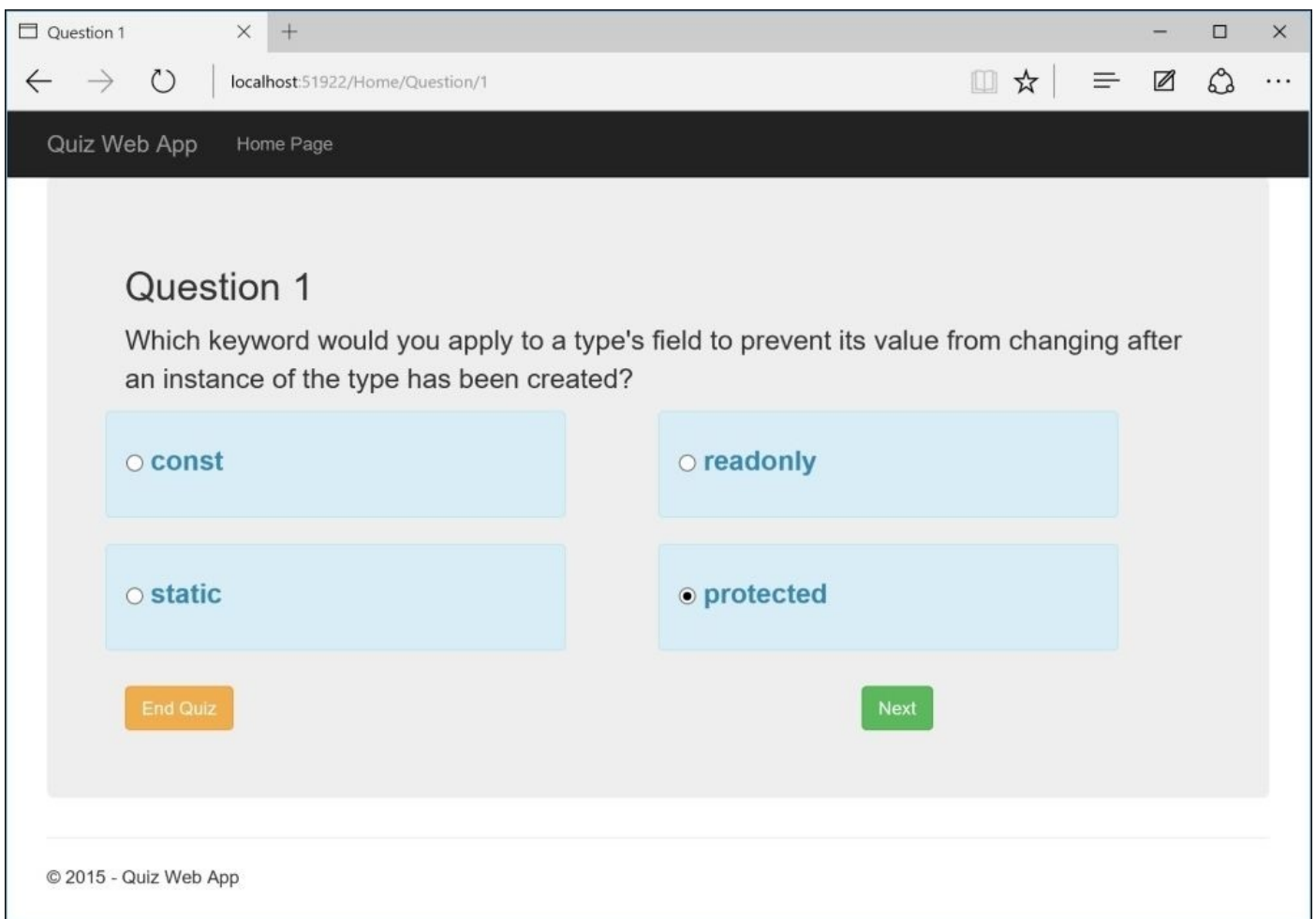
Note that when the browser's width is too small, the list of quizzes on the home page uses a vertical layout instead of two quizzes side by side, as you can see from the following screenshot:



Click on the **Take the C# and OOP quiz** button:

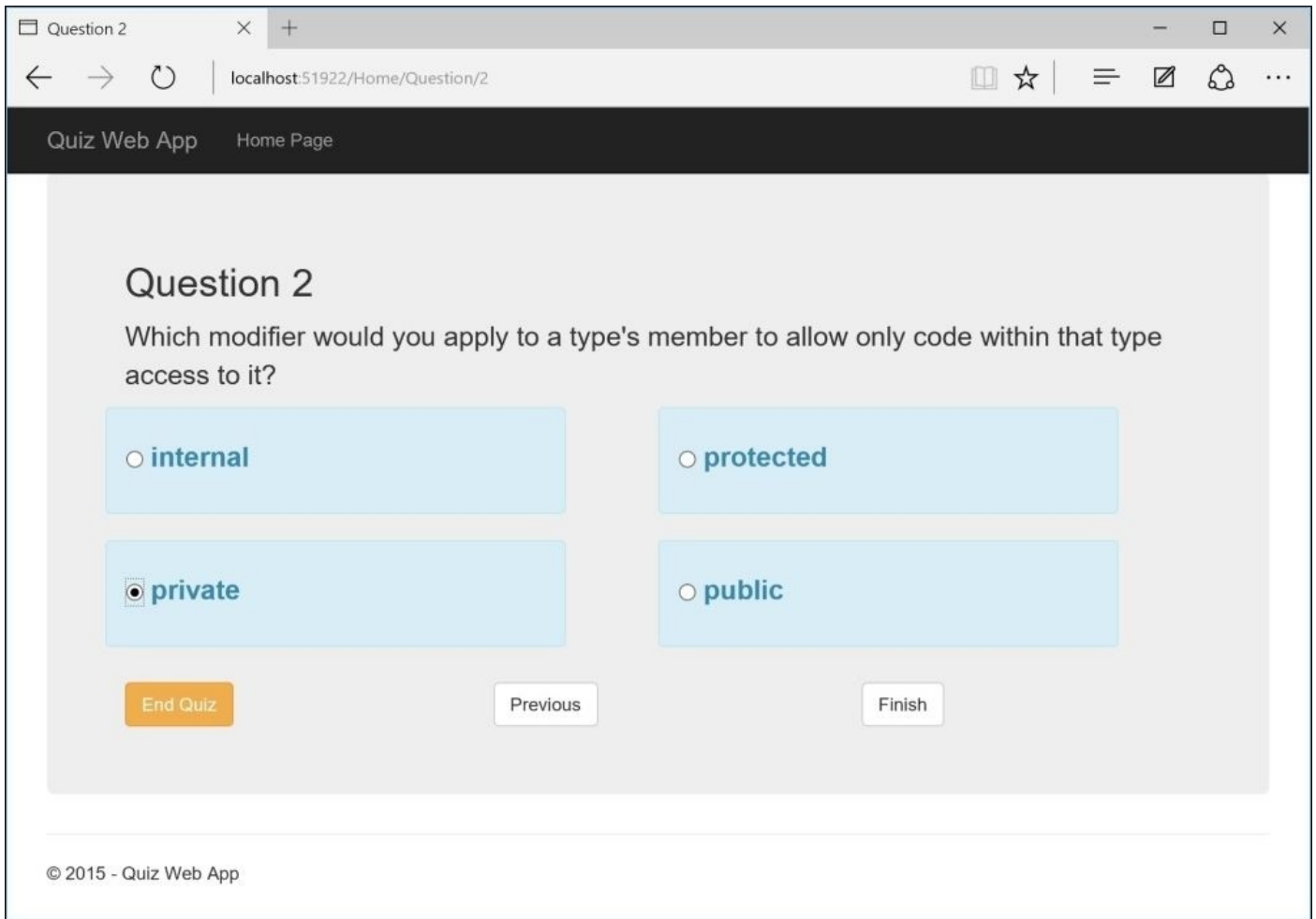


Click on **Start**, answer the first question, and then click on **Next**:

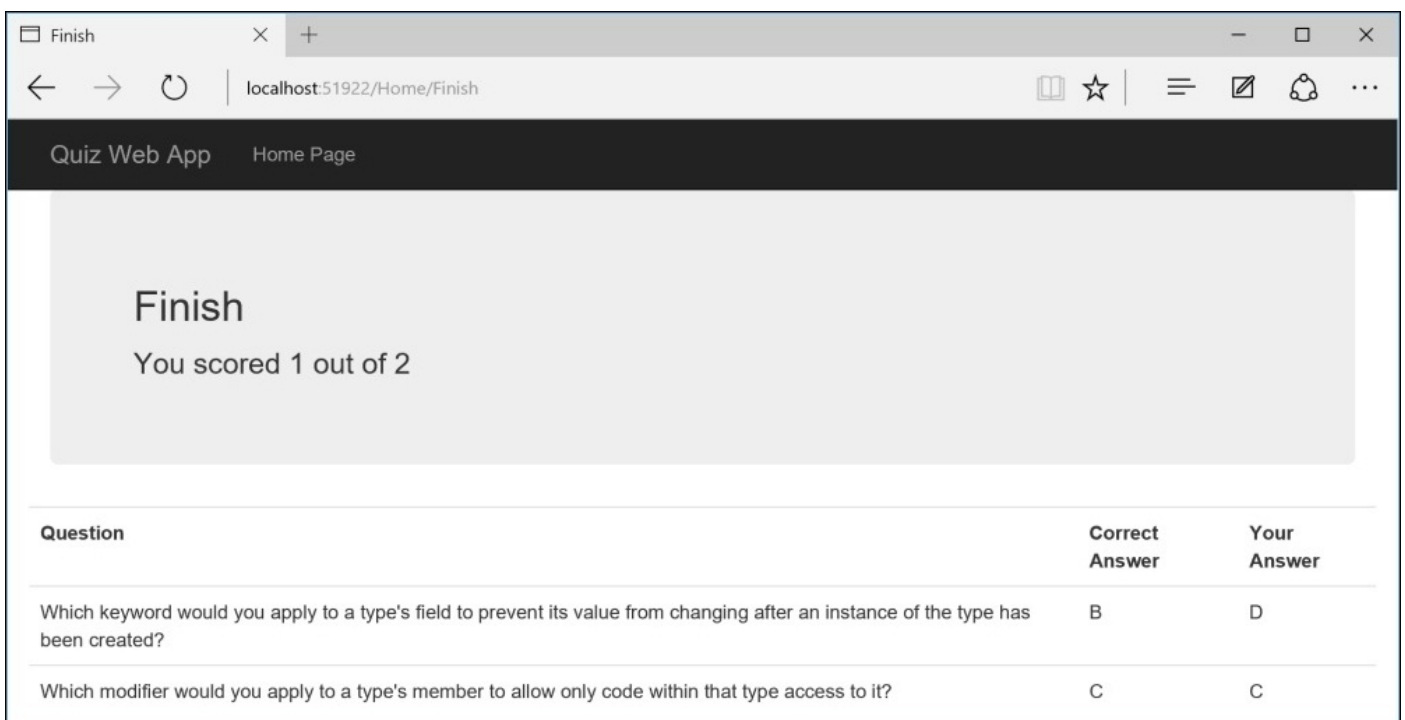


Answer the second question and click on the **Previous** button. Note that it remembers

your answer to the first question. Click on **Next**, answer all the questions, and then click on **Finish**:



On the **Finish** page, click on **Home Page** in the navigation bar:



Hosting ASP.NET Core web apps in Microsoft Azure

First, you need to register an account with Microsoft Azure.

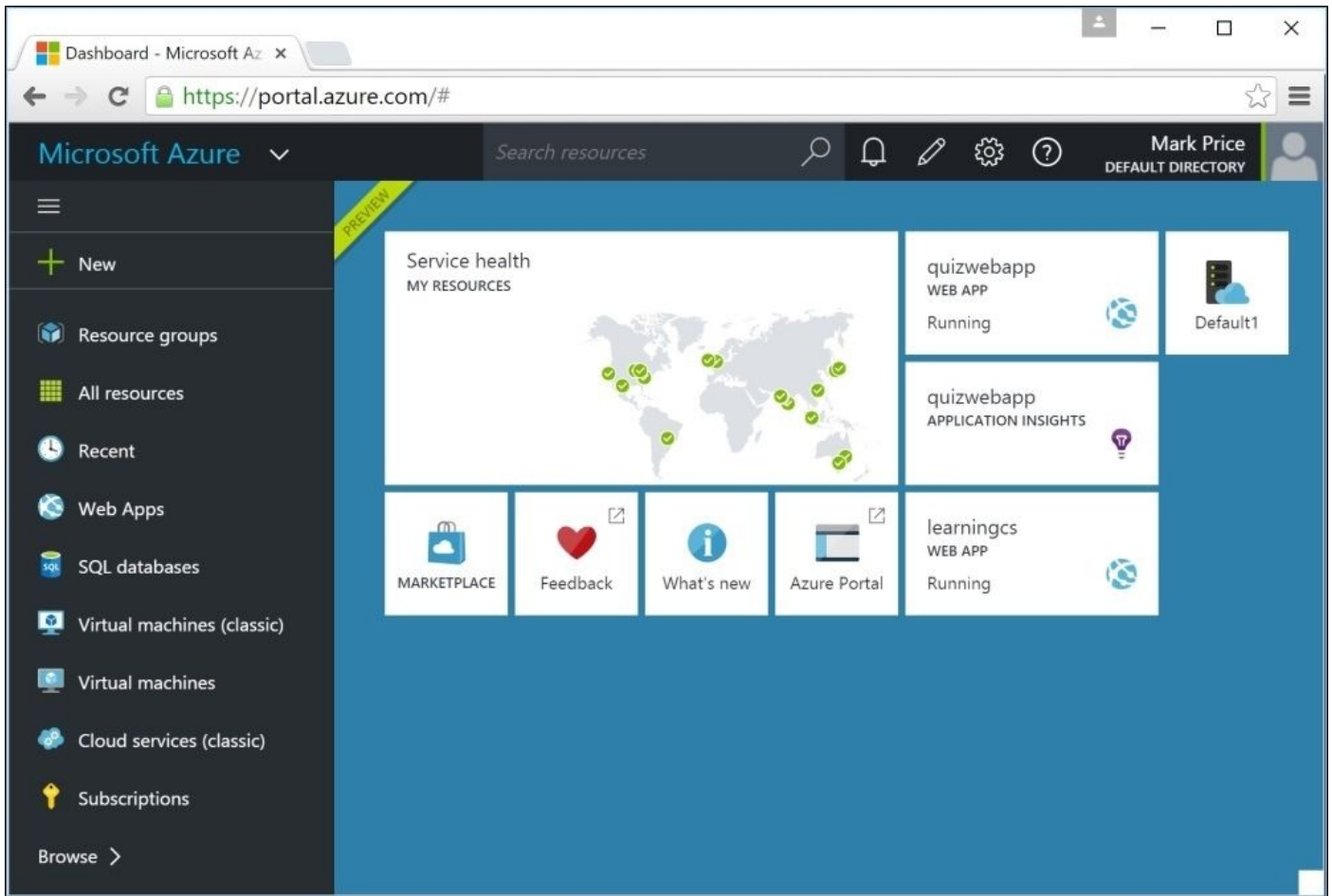
Register an Azure account

Go to <http://portal.azure.com/> and register an account to get a free trial. You will be able to continue after the end of the free trial because we will only use the free features of Azure.

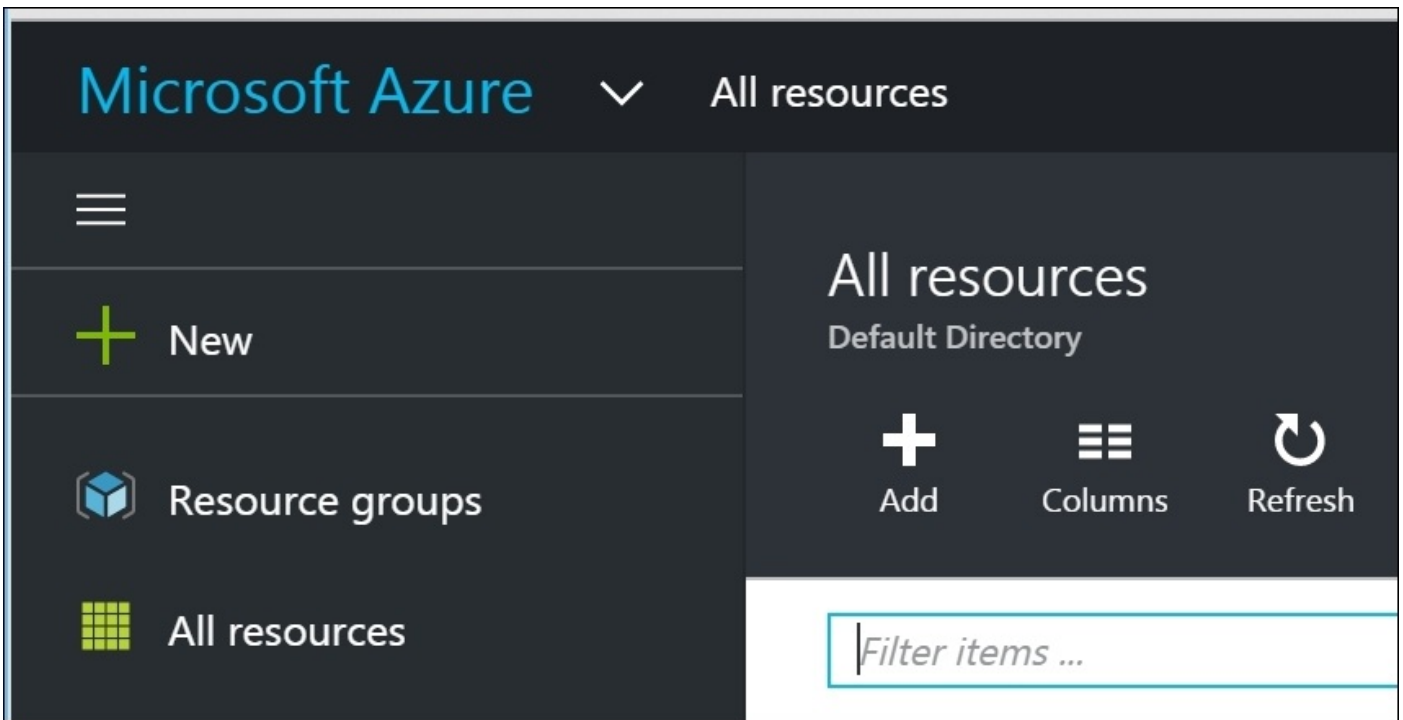
You can use any Microsoft account, for example, Hotmail, MSN, or Live account. For this book, I registered a new account named `cs6dotnetcore@outlook.com`.

Create an Azure web app

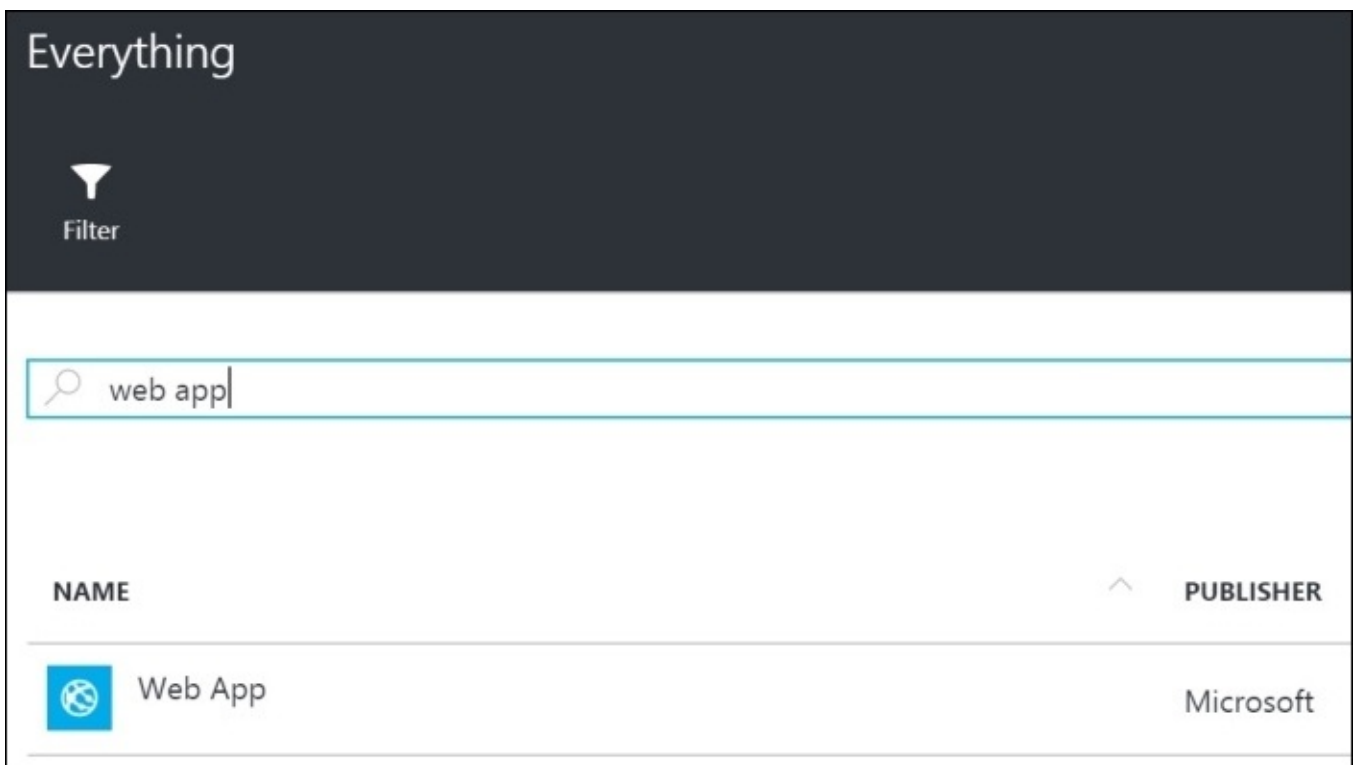
Go to the Azure portal (<https://portal.azure.com/>), where you will see the Azure dashboard:



Click on **All resources** and then click on the + **Add** button:



In the **Search Everything** box, enter **web app** and press *Enter*. Click on **Web App** and then click on **Create**:



In the **Web App** blade, enter a globally unique name for your web app:

Web App

* Web app
quizwebapp ✓
.azurewebsites.net

* Subscription
Pay-As-You-Go ▼

* Resource Group
Default-Web-NorthEurope >
[Create New](#)

* App Service plan/Location
Default1(North Europe) >

Pin to dashboard

[Create](#)

Note

I entered quizwebapp, so this name is now taken. No one else will be able to have a Web App with that name. You will need to choose something different.

Leave the other options as their defaults and click on **Create**. You will be taken back to the Azure dashboard where you will see a new tile telling you that your Web App is being deployed. This process normally takes a few minutes. Once it is running, click on it:

The screenshot shows the Azure portal interface for a web application named "quizwebapp". At the top, there is a dark navigation bar with the app name and "Web app" label. Below this is a row of action buttons: Settings, Tools, Browse, Stop, Swap, Restart, Delete, Get publish..., and More commands... The main content area is titled "Essentials" and displays the following configuration details:

Resource group	URL
Default-Web-NorthEurope	http://quizwebapp.azurewebsites.net
Status	App Service plan/pricing tier
Running	Default1 (Free)
Location	FTP/Deployment username
North Europe	No FTP/deployment user set
Subscription name	FTP hostname
Pay-As-You-Go	ftp://waws-prod-db3-033.ftp.azurewebsite...
Subscription id	FTPS hostname
d03d9c59-44a5-46df-9cd4-ad4f083a976e	ftps://waws-prod-db3-033.ftp.azurewebsit...

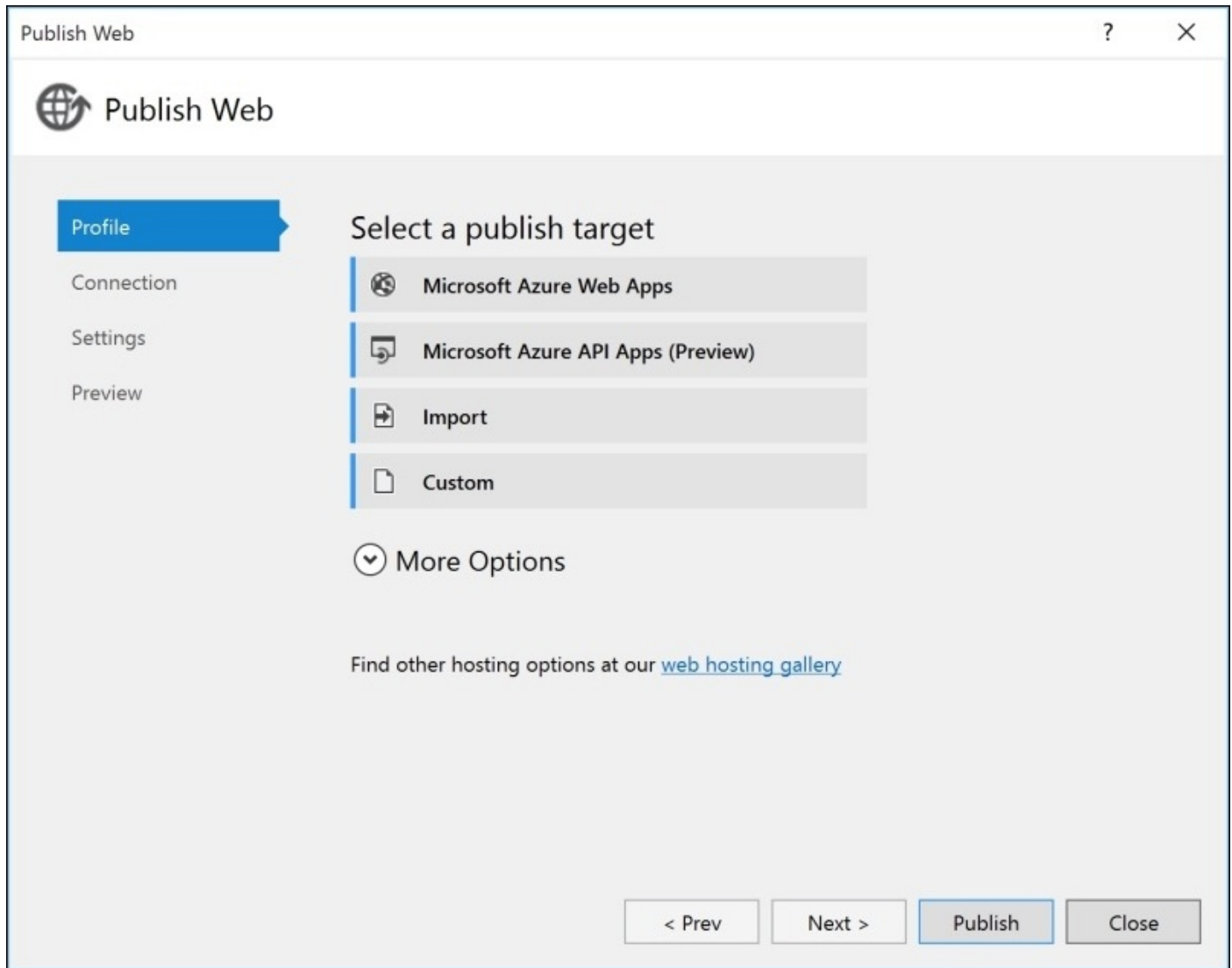
At the bottom right of the Essentials section, there is a button labeled "All settings" with a right-pointing arrow.

Click on the **URL** to open a browser and show the example web page. You are now ready to deploy any ASP.NET web application project (both ASP.NET 4.6 and ASP.NET Core) to your Web App in Azure.

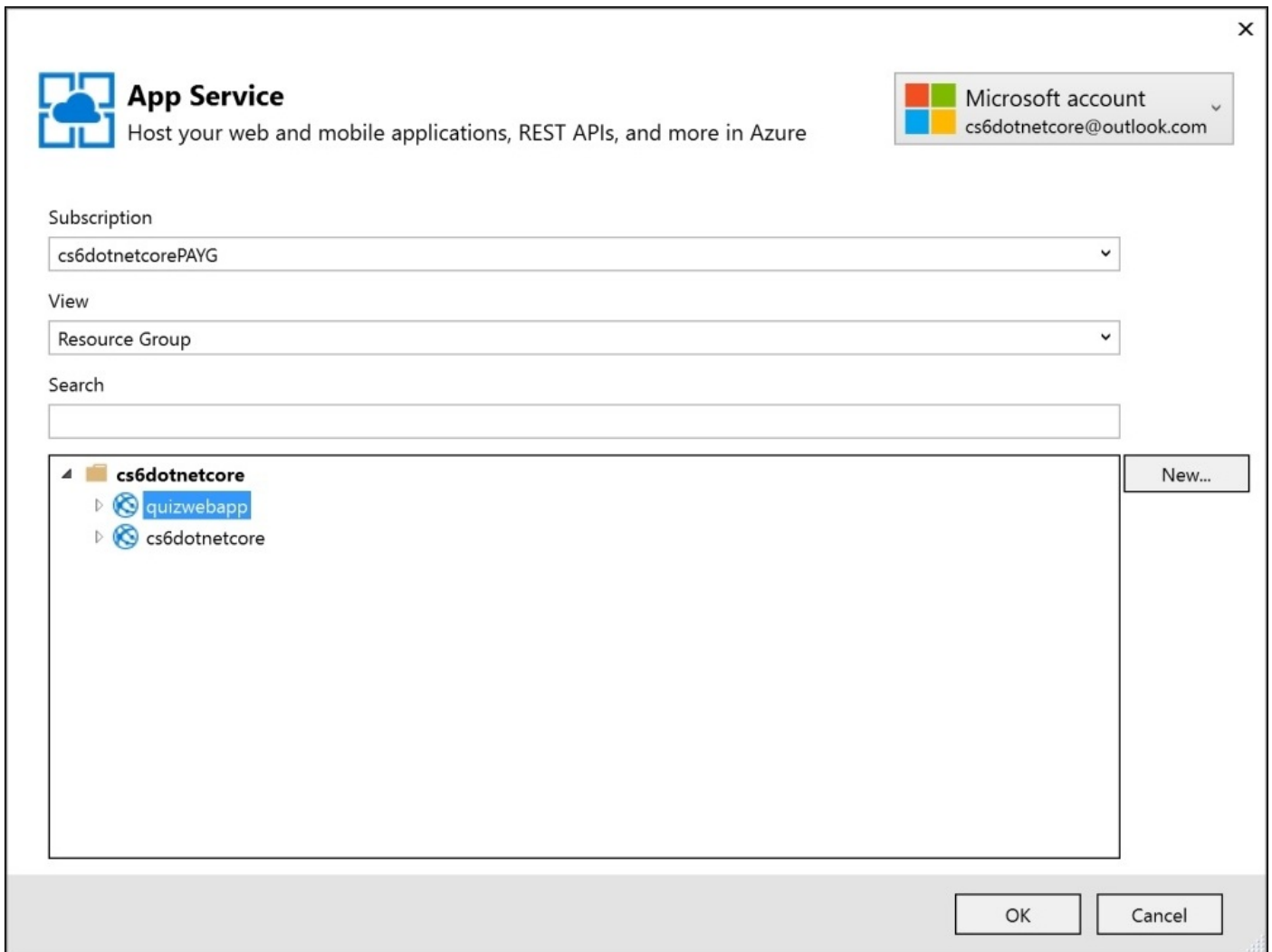
Publishing an ASP.NET web application to the Web App

In the **Solution Explorer** window, right-click on the **Ch16_QuizWebApp** project and choose **Publish...**

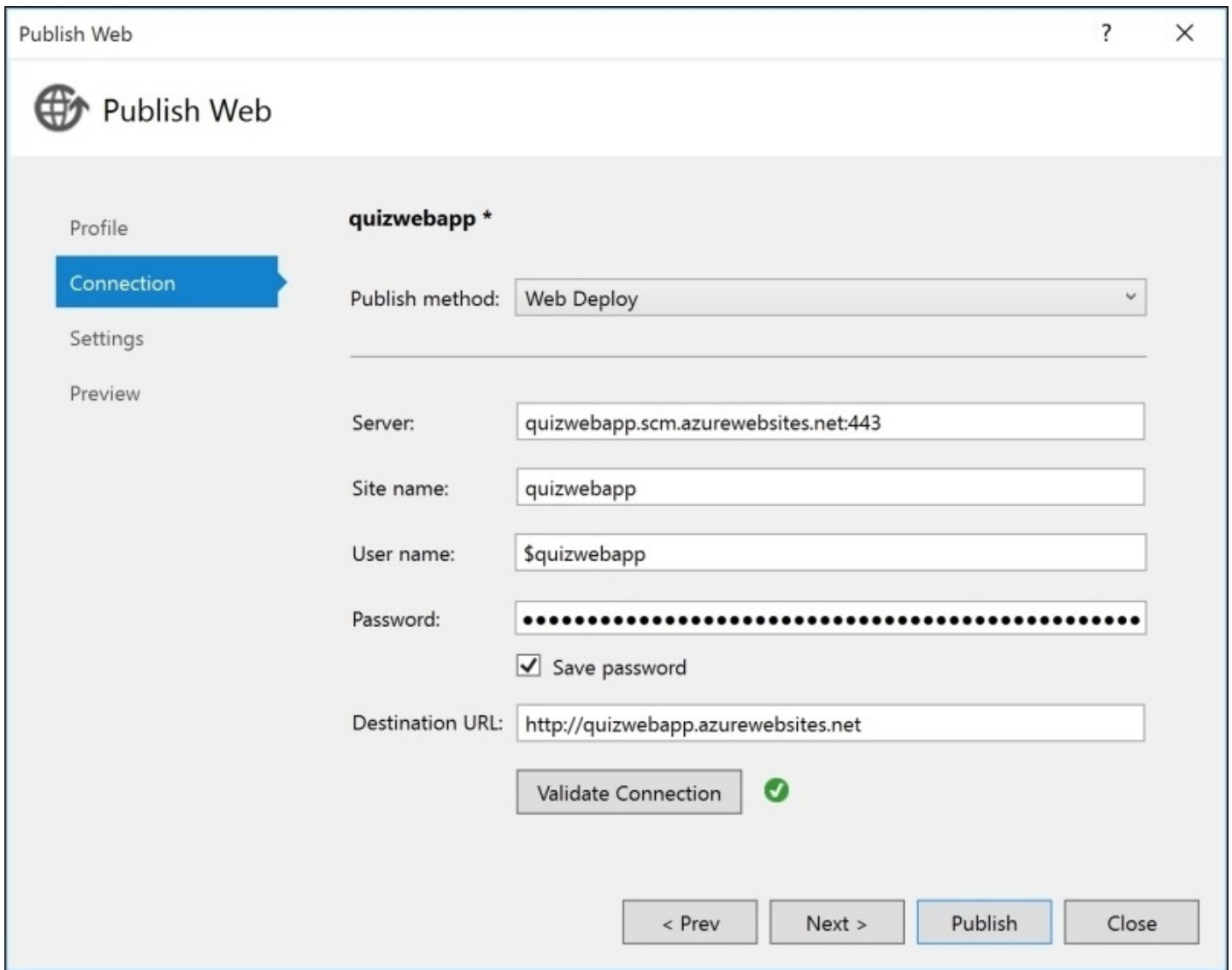
Select **Microsoft Azure Web Apps** as the publish target:



In the **App Service** dialog, choose the account that you previously registered, and choose the web app name that you created earlier:



Visual Studio will download a **publishing profile** that you can use to easily deploy the web application to Azure. Click on **Validate Connection** and wait for the green tick mark, and then click on **Publish**:



Visual Studio will rebuild and deploy your application, and then start a browser to show that it has succeeded:

quizwebapp.azurewebsi × +

← → ↻ | quizwebapp.azurewebsites.net | 📖 ☆ | ☰ ✍️ 🔔 ⋮

Quiz Web App ☰

Quiz Web App

Quiz Web App is a web application built using C# and ASP.NET MVC as an example for the Packt Publishing book C# and the .NET Framework.

[Learn more about Packt's C# and the .NET Framework book »](#)

C# and OOP

Questions about the C# language and object-oriented programming.

[Take the C# and OOP quiz »](#)

ASP.NET Web Applications and Services

Questions about building MVC web applications and Web API services by using ASP.NET.

[Take the ASP.NET Web Applications and Services quiz »](#)

Practicing and exploring

Test your knowledge and understanding by answering some questions, get some hands-on practice, and explore with deeper research into the topics covered in this chapter.

Exercise 16.1 – test your knowledge

Answer the following questions:

1. How many web apps can you host in Microsoft Azure for free?
2. Does Microsoft Azure only support Windows as a host operating system?
3. What options does Microsoft Azure offer for data storage?

Exercise 16.2 – practice by extending the quiz web app

How would you improve this quiz app? Here are some suggestions:

- Use Visual Studio's scaffolding feature to allow an administrator to add, edit, and delete quizzes and questions
- Allow more complex types of questions, for example, multiple correct answers to a question
- Create an Ubuntu or Docker virtual machine in Microsoft Azure and deploy the quiz application to that platform

Exercise 16.3 – explore topics

Use the following links to read more about the topics covered in this chapter:

- **Installing ASP.NET Core 1.0 on Linux:** <https://docs.asp.net/en/latest/getting-started/installing-on-linux.html>
- **Microsoft Azure: Cloud and Computing Services:** <https://azure.microsoft.com/en-us/>

Summary

In this chapter, we created a quiz app using ASP.NET Core and Entity Framework Core hosted in Microsoft Azure. It could easily be deployed to a Microsoft Windows Nano Server, Microsoft Azure Service Fabric, a Linux virtual machine, or a Docker container, to minimize costs and maximize scalability. It can be deployed to alternative cloud hosts or on-premise servers.

Hopefully this book, and the C# language and .NET features we've covered, will inspire you to think about how you can use C# and .NET to build well-architected and modern applications that run cross-platform on Windows, Mac OS X, Docker, and Linux.

With C# and .NET in your arsenal of tools and technologies, you can conquer the universe of cross-platform development and build any type of application that you need.

Appendix A. Answers to the Test Your Knowledge Questions

This appendix has the answers to the questions in the *Test Your Knowledge* section at the end of each chapter.

Chapter 1 – Hello, C#! Welcome, .NET Core!

1. Why can a programmer use different languages to write applications that run on .NET?

Multiple languages are supported on .NET because each one has a compiler that translates the source code into IL (intermediate language) code. This IL code is then compiled to native CPU instructions at runtime by the CLR.

2. What do you type at the Command Prompt to compile C#?
 - For .NET Framework, we type `csc sourcecode.cs`
 - For .NET Core using .NET CLI in a folder with a `project.json` file, we type `dotnet build`

3. What is the Visual Studio 2015 keyboard shortcut to save, compile, and run an application without attaching the debugger?

Ctrl + F5

4. What is the Visual Studio 2015 keyboard shortcut to view the **Error List**?

Ctrl + W, E

5. What does `ildasm.exe` do?

The IL Disassembler (`ildasm.exe`) tool reveals the manifest, metadata, embedded resources, and IL code inside a compiled .NET assembly.

6. Is the .NET Core better than the .NET Framework?

It depends on what you need. The .NET Core is a slimmed down, cross-platform version of the more full-featured, mature .NET Framework.

7. How is .NET Native different from .NET Core?

.NET Native is an ahead-of-time compiler that can produce native code assemblies that have better performance and reduced memory footprint, and it has its .NET assemblies statically linked, which removes its dependency on CoreCLR.

8. What does the .NET Portability Analyzer do?

It scans an assembly and produces a report that lists any features the assembly uses that are not supported on your chosen target platform. For any missing features, it can make a recommendation to use an alternative.

9. What is the difference between Git and GitHub?

Git is a source code management platform. GitHub is a popular web service that implements Git.

10. What is the name of the entry point method of a .NET application and how should it

be declared?

```
public static void Main()
```

Its name is Main and the preceding code is how it is declared. An optional string array for command-line arguments and a return type of `int` are recommended, but they are not required.

Chapter 2 – Speaking C#

What type would you choose for the following “numbers”?

1. A person’s telephone number
string
2. A person’s height
float or double
3. A person’s age
int for performance or byte (0 to 255) for size
4. A person’s salary
decimal
5. A book’s ISBN
string
6. A book’s price
decimal
7. A book’s shipping weight
float or double
8. A country’s population
uint (0 to about 4 billion)
9. The number of stars in the universe
ulong (0 to about 18 quadrillion) or System.Numerics.BigInteger (allows an arbitrarily large integer)
10. The number of employees in each of the small or medium businesses in the UK (up to about 50,000 employees per business)

Since there are hundreds of thousands of small or medium businesses, we need to take memory size as the determining factor so choose ushort because it only takes 2 bytes compared to an int, which takes 4 bytes.

Chapter 3 – Controlling the Flow, Converting Types, and Handling Exceptions

1. What happens when you divide an `int` value by 0?

A `DivideByZeroException` is thrown when dividing an integer or decimal.

2. What happens when you divide a `double` value by 0?

The `double` contains a special value of `Infinity`. Instances of floating-point numbers can have special values: `NaN` (not a number), `PositiveInfinity`, and `NegativeInfinity`.

3. What happens when you overflow an `int` value that is set to a value beyond its range?

It will loop unless you wrap the statement in a checked block in which case an `OverflowException` will be thrown.

4. What is the difference between `x = y++;` and `x = ++y;`?

In `x = y++;`, `y` will be assigned to `x` and then `y` will be incremented, and in `x = ++y;`, `y` will be incremented and then the result will be assigned to `x`.

5. What is the difference between `break`, `continue`, and `return` when used inside a loop statement?

The `break` statement will end the whole loop and continue executing after the loop, the `continue` statement will end the current iteration of the loop and continue executing at the start of the loop block for the next iteration, and the `return` statement will end the current method call and continue executing after the method call.

6. What are the three parts of a `for` statement and which of them are required?

The three parts of a `for` statement are the initializer, condition, and incremter. The condition is required to be an expression that return `true` or `false`, but the other two are optional.

7. What is the difference between the `=` and `==` operators?

The `=` operator is the assignment operator for assigning values to variables, and the `==` operator is the equality check operator that returns `true` or `false`.

Exercise 3.2

What will happen if this code executes?

```
int max = 500;
for (byte i = 0; i < max; i++)
{
    WriteLine(i);
}
```

The code will loop nonstop because the value of `i` can only be between 0 and 255, so once it gets incremented beyond 255, it goes back to 0 and therefore will always be less than `max` (500).

To prevent it from looping nonstop, you can add a checked statement around the code. This would cause an exception to be thrown after 255, like this:

```
254
255
System.OverflowException says Arithmetic operation resulted in an overflow.
```


Chapter 4 – Using Common .NET Types

1. Does every assembly that you create have a reference to the `microsoft.dll` assembly?

No. Although by default every assembly will have an automatic reference to the `microsoft.dll` assembly, there is a compiler flag that can prevent this. For details, visit:

<https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/fa13yay7.aspx>

2. What is the maximum number of characters that can be stored in a `string` variable?

The maximum size of a `string` variable is 2 GB or about 1 billion characters because each `char` variable uses 2 bytes due to the internal use of Unicode (UTF-16) encoding for characters.

3. When and why should you use the `SecureString` type?

The `string` type leaves text data in memory for too long and it's too visible. The `SecureString` type encrypts the text and ensures that the memory is released immediately. WPF's `PasswordBox` control stores the password as a `SecureString` variable, and when starting a new process, the `Password` parameter must be a `SecureString` variable. For more discussion, visit:

<http://stackoverflow.com/questions/141203/when-would-i-need-a-securestring-in-net>

4. When should you use a `LinkedList<T>` variable?

Each item in a linked list has a reference to its previous and next siblings as well as the list itself so should be used when items need to be inserted and removed from positions in the list without actually moving the items in memory.

5. When should you use a `SortedDictionary` variable rather than a `SortedList` variable?

The `SortedList` class uses less memory than `SortedDictionary`, `SortedDictionary` has faster insertion and removal operations for unsorted data. If the list is populated all at once from sorted data, `SortedList` is faster than `SortedDictionary`. For more discussion, visit:

<http://stackoverflow.com/questions/935621/whats-the-difference-between-sortedlist-and-sorteddictionary>

6. Why should you *not* use the official standard for e-mail addresses to create a regular expression to validate a user's e-mail address?

The effort is not worth the pain for you or your users. Validating an e-mail address using official specification doesn't check whether that address actually exists or whether the person entering the address is its owner. For more discussion, visit:

<http://davidcel.is/posts/stop-validating-email-addresses-with-regex/>

<http://stackoverflow.com/questions/201323/using-a-regular-expression-to-validate->

[an-email-address](#)

Chapter 5 – Using Specialized .NET Types

1. What is the difference between pressing *F5*, *Ctrl + F5*, *Shift + F5*, and *Ctrl + Shift + F5*?

F5 saves, compiles, runs, and attaches the debugger, *Ctrl + F5* saves, compiles, and runs the debugger, *Shift + F5* stops the debugger, and *Ctrl + Shift + F5* restarts the debugger.

2. What is the ISO culture code for Welsh?

cy-GB

For a complete list of culture codes, visit:

<http://timtrott.co.uk/culture-codes/>

3. What information can you find out about a Process variable?

The Process class has many properties including: `ExitCode`, `ExitTime`, `Id`, `MachineName`, `PagedMemorySize64`, `ProcessorAffinity`, `StandardInput`, `StandardOutput`, `StartTime`, `Threads`, `TotalProcessorTime`, and so on. You can find more information about **Process Properties** at [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/System.Diagnostics.Process_properties\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/System.Diagnostics.Process_properties(v=vs.110).aspx).

4. Can your applications write to the security event log in Windows?

No. The security event log is for use only by the operating system. You can find more information about the security event log at [https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa363658\(v=vs.85\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/windows/desktop/aa363658(v=vs.85).aspx).

5. How accurate is the Stopwatch class?

The Stopwatch class can be accurate to within a nanosecond (a billionth of a second) but you shouldn't rely on that. You can improve accuracy by setting processor affinity as shown in the article at

<http://www.codeproject.com/Articles/61964/Performance-Tests-Precise-Run-Time-Measurements-wi>.

6. What is the difference between localization, globalization, and internationalization?

Localization is about changing the user interface to a specific language, for example, French; whereas globalization is about writing code so that the language and region are taken into account when formatting numbers and dates and when sorting text. Finally, internationalization is a combination of both.

Chapter 6 – Building Your Own Types with Object-Oriented Programming

1. What are the four access modifiers and what do they do?

- `private`: This modifier makes a member only visible inside the class
- `internal`: This modifier makes a member only visible inside the class or within the same assembly
- `protected`: This modifier makes a member only visible inside the class or derived classes
- `public`: This modifier makes a member visible everywhere

2. What is the difference between the `static`, `const`, and `readonly` keywords?

- `static`: This keyword makes the member shared by all instances and accessed through the type
- `const`: This keyword makes a field a fixed literal value that should never change
- `readonly`: This keyword makes a field that can only be assigned at runtime using a constructor

3. How many parameters can a method have?

A method with 16383 parameters can be compiled, ran, and called. Any more than that and an unstated exception is thrown at runtime. IL has predefined opcodes to load up to four parameters and a special opcode to load up to 16-bits (65,536) parameters. A best practice is to limit your methods to three or four parameters. You can combine multiple parameters into a new class to encapsulate them into a single parameter. You can find more information on this at

<http://stackoverflow.com/questions/12658883/what-is-the-maximum-number-of-parameters-that-a-c-sharp-method-can-be-defined-as>.

4. What does a constructor do?

A constructor allocates memory and initializes field values.

5. Why do you need to apply the `[Flags]` attribute to an enum type when you want to store combined values?

If you don't apply the `[Flags]` attribute to an enum type when you want to store combined values, then a stored enum value that is a combination will return as the stored integer value instead of a comma-separated list of text values.

6. What is a delegate?

A delegate is a type-safe method reference. It can be used to execute any method with a matching signature.

7. What is an event?

An event is a field that is a delegate having the event keyword applied. The keyword

ensures that only += and -= are used; this safely combines multiple delegates without replacing any existing event handlers.

8. Why is the `partial` keyword useful?

You can use the `partial` keyword to split the definition of a type over multiple files.

Chapter 7 – Implementing Interfaces and Inheriting Classes

1. How is a base class and a derived class related?

A derived class (or subclass) is a class that inherits from a base class (or superclass).

2. What is the difference between the `is` and `as` operators?

The `is` operator returns `true` if an object can be cast to the type. The `as` operator returns a reference if an object can be cast to the type; otherwise, it returns `null`.

3. Which keyword is used to prevent a class from being derived from, or a method from being overridden?

`sealed`

Find more information on the `sealed` keyword at <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/88c54tsw.aspx>.

4. Which keyword is used to prevent a class from being instantiated with the `new` keyword or force a method to be overridden?

`abstract`

Find more information on the `abstract` keyword at <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/sf985hc5.aspx>.

5. Which keyword is used to allow a member to be overridden?

`virtual`

Find more information on the `virtual` keyword at <https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/9fkccyh4.aspx>.

6. What's the deal with polymorphism?

Polymorphism is a fancy academic OOP concept that rarely has an impact on real-world code.

7. What are the signatures of the constructors that all exceptions should have?

The following are the signatures of the constructors that all exceptions should have:

- A constructor with no parameters
- A constructor with a `string` parameter usually named `message`
- A constructor with a `string` parameter, usually named `message`, and an `Exception` parameter usually named `innerException`

8. What is an extension method and how do you define one?

An extension method is a compiler trick that makes a static method of a static class appear to be one of the members of a type. You define which type you want to extend by prefixing the type with `this`.

Chapter 8 – Working with Relational Data Using the Entity Framework

1. Which .NET data provider would you use to work with Microsoft Access .MDB database files?

.NET Framework Data Provider for OLE DB.

2. Which .NET data provider would you use to work with Microsoft SQL Server 2012 Express Edition?

.NET Framework Data Provider for SQL Server.

3. What must you do with a `DbConnection` variable before executing a `DbCommand`?
Ensure that its state is open by calling the `Open()` method.

4. When would you use the `CommandBehavior.SequentialAccess` property?

This option provides a way for a `DbDataReader` class to handle rows that contain columns with BLOBs (binary large objects), such as videos and images, by not loading the entire row at once and instead loading one column at a time, allowing skipping of columns, and reading the BLOB data as a stream.

5. ADO.NET instead of Entity Framework?

You would use classic ADO.NET instead of Entity Framework when you need the best performance, when most data access must use stored procedures, and when maintaining legacy code written using classic ADO.NET.

6. When defining a `DbContext` class, what type would you use for the property that represents a table, for example, the `Products` property of a Northwind context?

`DbSet<T>`, where `T` is the entity type, for example, `Product`.

7. What are the EF conventions for primary keys?

The property named `ID` or `ClassNameID` is assumed to be the primary key. If the type of that property is any of the following, then the property is also marked as being an `IDENTITY` column: `tinyint`, `smallint`, `int`, `bigint`, `guid`.

8. When would you use an annotation attribute in an entity class?

You would use an annotation attribute in an entity class when the conventions cannot work out the correct mapping between the classes and tables. For example, if a class name does not match a table name or a property name does not match a column name.

9. Why might you choose fluent API in preference to annotation attributes?

You might choose fluent API in preference to annotation attributes when the conventions cannot work out the correct mapping between the classes and tables, and you do not want to use annotation attributes because you want to keep your entity

classes clean and free from extraneous code.

10. What is the difference between Database-First and Code-First in EF6?

Database-First creates a design-time file with the EDMX that contains XML files that define the conceptual, storage, and mappings between the two. These XML files must be kept synchronized with future changes to the classes and tables. Code-First does not need a design-time EDMX file. Instead, a combination of conventions, annotation attributes, and fluent API is used to define the conceptual storage and mappings between the two. Code-First is more difficult to learn in the short term but it is more manageable in the long term which is why Entity Framework Core 1.0 drops support for design-time EDMX files.

Chapter 9 – Querying and Manipulating Data with LINQ

1. What are the two requirements to use LINQ?

You must import the `System.Linq` namespace to make the LINQ extension methods available and reference a LINQ provider assembly for the type of data that you want to work with.

2. Which LINQ extension method would you use to return a subset of properties from a type?

The `Select` method allows projection (selection) of properties.

3. Which LINQ extension method would you use to filter results?

The `Where` method allows filtering by supplying a delegate (or lambda expression) that returns a `Boolean` to indicate whether the value should be included in the results.

4. List five LINQ extension methods that perform aggregation.

`Max`, `Min`, `Count`, `Average`, `Sum`, and `Aggregate`.

5. What is the difference between the `Select` and `SelectMany` extension methods?

`Select` returns exactly what you specify to return. `SelectMany` checks that the items you have selected are themselves `IEnumerable<T>` and then breaks them down into smaller parts. For example, if the type you select is a string value (which is `IEnumerable<char>`), `SelectMany` will break each string value returned into their individual `char` values.

Chapter 10 – Working with Files, Streams, and Serialization

1. What is the difference between using the `File` class and the `FileInfo` class?

The `File` class has static methods so it cannot be instantiated. It is best used for one-off tasks such as copying a file. The `FileInfo` class requires the instantiation of an object that represents a file. It is best used when you need to perform multiple operations on the same file.

2. What is the difference between the `ReadByte` method and the `Read` method of a stream?

The `ReadByte` method returns a single byte each time it is called and the `Read` method fills a temporary array with bytes up to a specified length. It is generally best to use `Read` to process blocks of bytes at once.

3. When would you use the `StringReader`, the `TextReader`, and the `StreamReader` classes?

- `StringReader` is used for efficiently reading from a string stored in memory
- `TextReader` is an abstract class that `StringReader` and `StreamReader` both inherit from for their shared functionality
- `StreamReader` is used for reading strings from a stream that can be any type of text file, including XML and JSON

4. What does the `DeflateStream` type do?

`DeflateStream` implements the same compression algorithm as GZIP but without a cyclical redundancy check, so although it produces smaller compressed files, it cannot perform integrity checks when decompressing.

5. How many bytes per character does the UTF-8 encoding use?

It depends on the character. Most Western alphabet characters are stored using a single byte. Other characters may need two or more bytes.

6. What is an object graph?

An object graph is any instance of classes in memory that reference each other, thereby forming a set of related objects. For example, a `Customer` object may have a property that references a set of `Order` instances.

7. What is the best serialization format to choose for minimizing space requirements?

JavaScript Object Notation (JSON).

8. What is the best serialization format to choose for cross-platform compatibility?

eXtensible Markup Language (XML), although JSON is almost as good these days.

9. Which Microsoft technology uses the `DataContractSerializer` class by default?

Windows Communication Foundation (WCF) for creating SOAP services.

10. Is it possible to create your own custom runtime serializers?

Yes. Create a class that implements the interface `System.Runtime.Serialization.IFormatter`. For details, visit:

[https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.runtime.serialization.iformatter\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.runtime.serialization.iformatter(v=vs.110).aspx)

Chapter 11 – Protecting Your Data and Applications

1. Of the encryption algorithms provided by the .NET Framework, which is the best choice for symmetric encryption?

The AES algorithm is the best choice for symmetric encryption.

2. Of the encryption algorithms provided by the .NET Framework, which is the best choice for asymmetric encryption?

The RSA algorithm is the best choice for asymmetric encryption.

3. For encryption algorithms, is it better to have a larger or smaller block size?

For encryption algorithms, it is better to have a smaller block size.

Chapter 12 – Improving Performance and Scalability with Multitasking

1. By convention, what suffix should be applied to a method that returns a `Task` or a `Task<T>`?

`Async`, for example, `OpenAsync` for a method named `Open`.

2. To use the `await` keyword inside a method, which keyword must be applied to the method declaration?

The `async` keyword must be applied to the method declaration.

3. How do you create a child task?

Call the `Task.Factory.StartNew` method with the `TaskCreationOptions.AttachToParent` option to create a child task.

4. Why should you avoid the `lock` keyword?

The `lock` keyword does not allow you to specify a timeout; this can cause deadlocks. Use `Monitor.Enter` with a `TimeSpan` and `Monitor.Exit` instead.

5. When should you use the `Interlocked` class?

If you have integers and floats that are shared between multiple threads, you should use the `Interlocked` class.

Chapter 13 – Building Universal Windows Platform Apps Using XAML

1. Which control would you choose to allow the user to easily choose their date of birth on many different types of device?

The `DatePicker` control will allow the user to easily choose their date of birth on many different types of device.

2. Which XAML element would you use to adapt the layout of your app to handle different device families?

The `VisualStateManager` element is used to adapt the layout of your app to handle different device families.

3. How can you set multiple properties on an XAML element as a single group?

We can set multiple properties on an XAML element as a single group by defining a style with setters.

4. What is the difference between a control template and a data template?

Control templates are used to define the look and feel of the external parts of a control, such as a button or list box. Data templates are used to define the look and feel of the internal content of a button or the items with a list box.

5. Can XAML bindings be two-way bindings or just one-way bindings?

XAML bindings can be two-way, one-way, or one-time.

Chapter 14 – Building Web Applications and Services Using ASP.NET Core

1. What is the difference between a web browser and a web server?

A web browser makes HTTP requests for resources and a web server sends HTTP responses back containing a mix of HTML, CSS, JavaScript, and other media formats, which the browser then displays to the end user.

2. What is the difference between a URI, a URL, and a URN?

Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) is the more general term instead of URL or URN. A Uniform Resource Locator (URL) is a type of URI that species a location of a resource. A Uniform Resource Name (URN) is intended to serve as persistent, location-independent identifier.

3. What are the four most common HTTP methods?

The GET, POST, PUT, and DELETE are the most common HTTP methods.

4. What does it mean when a web server responds with status code 302?

The web server is indicating a temporary redirect. This means that the web server found the resource but it is at a different location. A response header is used to tell the web browser about the new location. Note that status code 301 is similar but represents a permanent redirect.

5. What are the responsibilities of a route?

At the minimum, a route must provide the name of a controller and an action. It can also provide additional parameter values defined in segments.

6. What are the responsibilities of a controller?

A controller (and one of its actions) must examine the request and decide which model needs to be passed to which view and then return the response to the client.

7. What are the responsibilities of a model?

A model represents all the data required for a particular request.

8. What are the responsibilities of a view?

A view converts a model into another format, typically HTML, but it could be any media type, for example, JPEG, DOCX, JSON, XML, and so on.

9. How does ASP.NET distinguish a request for MVC from a request for Web API?

Multiple entries are added to the route table. By convention, Web API controllers should use attributes to register routes that look for URLs that begin with `api/`. If a URL doesn't begin with `api/` then it should match other routes registered by MVC.

10. What data formats does Web API support by default?

x-www-formurlencoded, JSON, and XML.

Chapter 15 – Taking C# Cross-Platform

1. Which platforms are supported by .NET Core and ASP.NET Core?

Windows, Mac OS X, Docker, and Linux are the platforms supported by .NET Core and ASP.NET Core.

2. What command downloads dependent packages for a project?

The `dnv restore` or `dotnet restore` commands download dependent packages for a project.

3. What file does project directory require in order to restore packages?

The `project.json` file is required in project directory in order to restore packages.

4. What command will show the currently installed versions of .NET?

The `dnvm list -detailed` command will show the currently installed versions of .NET.

5. What command will switch to a different version of .NET?

The `dnvm use [parameters]` command will switch to a different version of .NET.

Chapter 16 – Building a Quiz

1. How many web apps can you host in Microsoft Azure for free?

10

2. Does Microsoft Azure only support Windows as a host operating system?

No. You can create Virtual Machines to host Linux, Docker, and other operating systems.

3. What options does Microsoft Azure offer for data storage?

The following options are what Microsoft Azure offers for data storage:

- Azure Storage: For schema-less entities, blobs, and files
- Azure Redis for distributed caching and general entity storage
- Azure DocumentDb for schema-less JSON entities
- Azure SQL Database for relational data
- Azure Data Lake for hybrid storage and analysis

Appendix B. Creating a Virtual Machine for Your Development Environment

This appendix shows you how to set up a virtual machine hosted in Microsoft Azure to use as a development environment.

The most popular, client, non-Microsoft operating system is Apple's Mac OS X, so that's what I will use in these instructions.

You can use any operating system, such as Ubuntu 14.04, that has the ability to make a connection to a virtual machine using Microsoft's Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP).

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Signing up for a Microsoft account
- Creating a Microsoft Azure subscription
- Creating a virtual machine
- Connecting a virtual machine using remote desktop
- Supporting other platforms

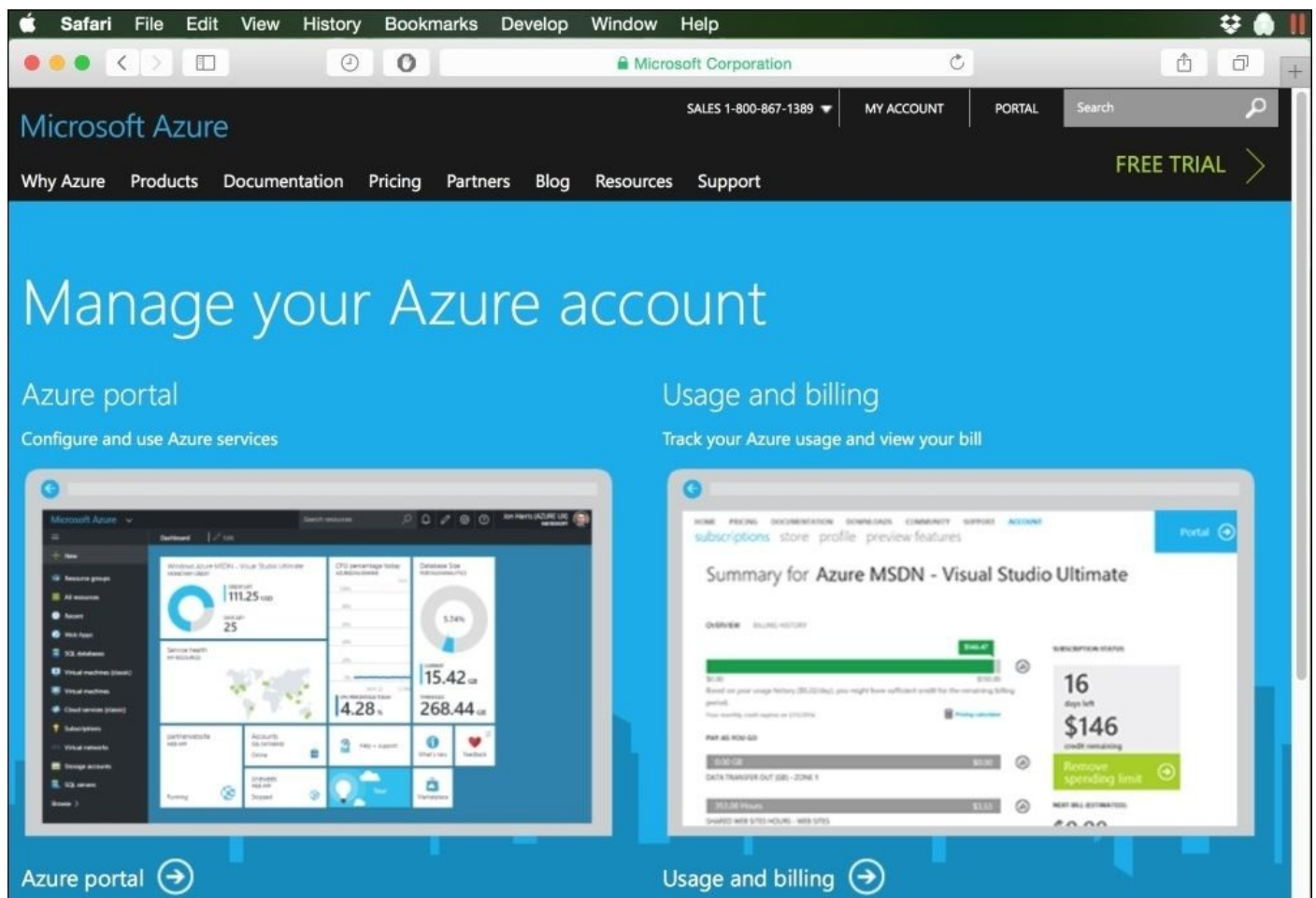
Signing up for a Microsoft account

If you already have a Microsoft account, for example, a Hotmail, MSN, Live, or Passport account, then you can choose to use that. Even if you do, you might choose to create a new account just for experimenting with Microsoft Azure.

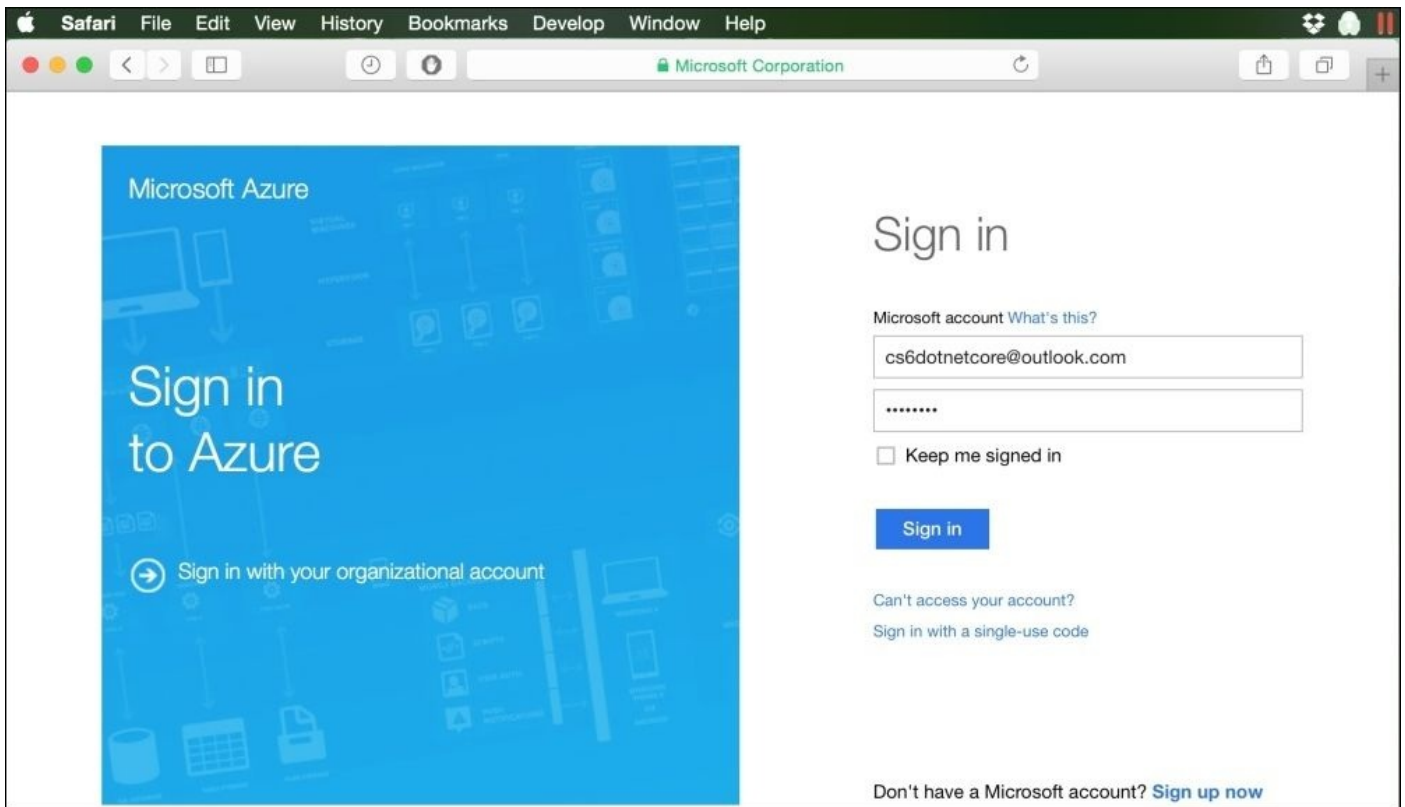
You can sign up for a Microsoft account at <https://signup.live.com/>.

Creating a Microsoft Azure subscription

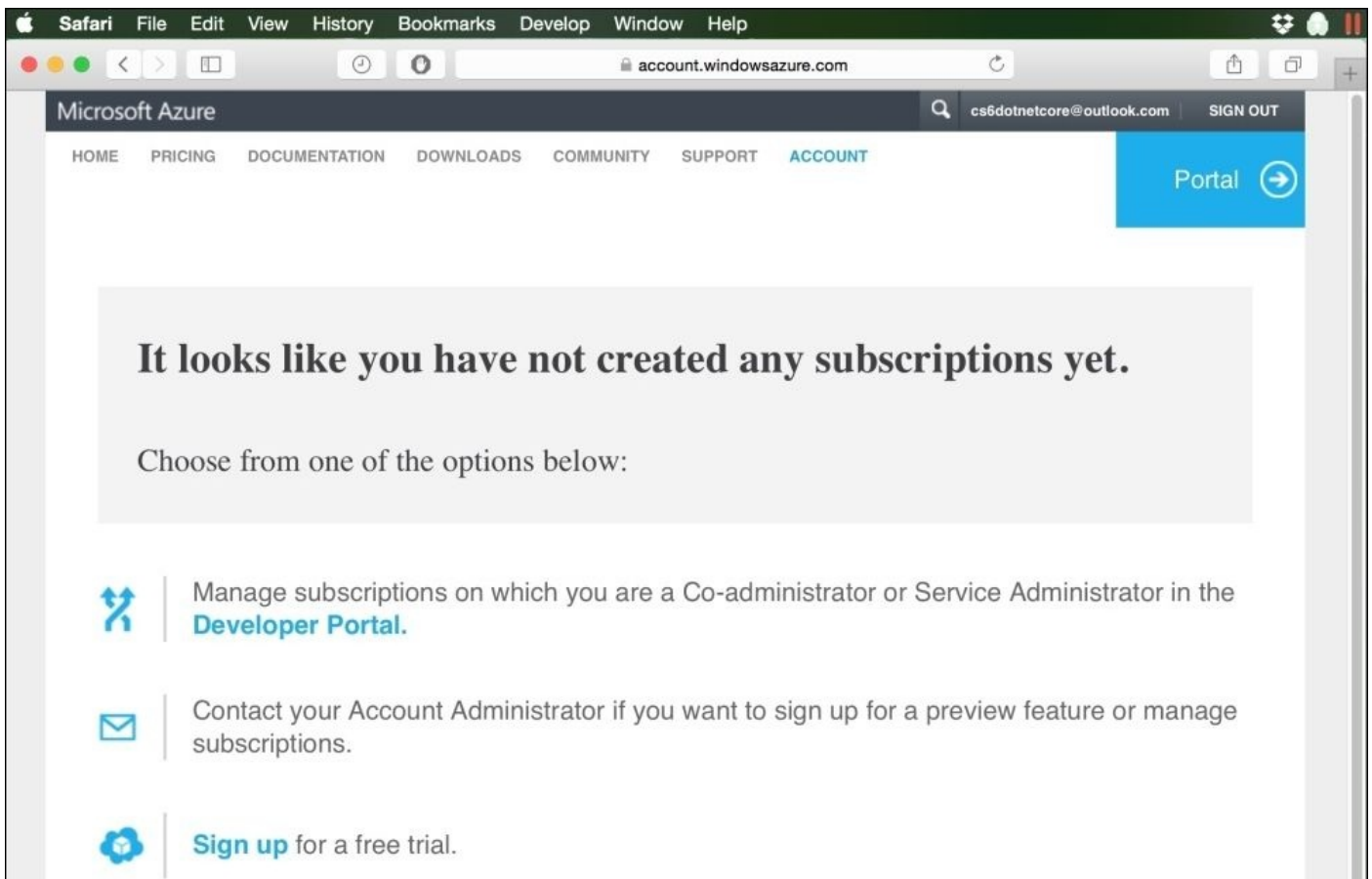
You can sign in to a Microsoft Azure account at <https://azure.microsoft.com/en-us/account/>, you will see the the Manage your Azure account page as shown in the following screenshot:



Click on **Usage and billing** and then sign in with your Microsoft account.



Once you have signed in, you need to create an Azure subscription. Click on **Sign up for a free trial** at the bottom of this page.



Enter your details in the **About you** section and complete the **Verification by phone** section.

Sign up
Free Trial
Learn more ▾

Microsoft Azure cs6dotnetcore@outlook.com ▾

- About you**

FIRST NAME	LAST NAME	COUNTRY/REGION ?
Mark	Price	United Kingdom ▾
CONTACT EMAIL ?	COMPANY/SCHOOL	WORK PHONE
cs6dotnetcore@outlook.com	- Optional -	0752 9999999
- Verification by phone ?**

Send text message Call me

United Kingdom (+44) ▾

0752 9999999 Send text message

| Verify code
- Verification by card ?**

This information is collected only to verify your identity. You will not be charged unless you explicitly upgrade to a paid offer.
- Agreement**



I agree to the [subscription agreement, offer details, and privacy statement.](#)



Microsoft may use my email and phone to provide special Microsoft Azure offers.

Sign up →

You will also need to verify your identity using your credit or debit card.



You can then click on the **Sign up** button.

2 | Verification by phone  COMPLETE 

3 | Verification by card  COMPLETE 

4 | Agreement

- I agree to the [subscription agreement](#), [offer details](#), and [privacy statement](#).
- Microsoft may use my email and phone to provide special Microsoft Azure offers.

[Sign up](#)   We are creating your subscription. Do not close or refresh your browser.


It will take a few minutes to get things ready for you.

Microsoft Azure cs6dotnetcore@outlook.com | SIGN OUT

Welcome to Microsoft Azure!

Your subscription - Free Trial

Just a moment while we get things ready.

This typically takes up to 4 minutes. We'll send you an email when we're done. 

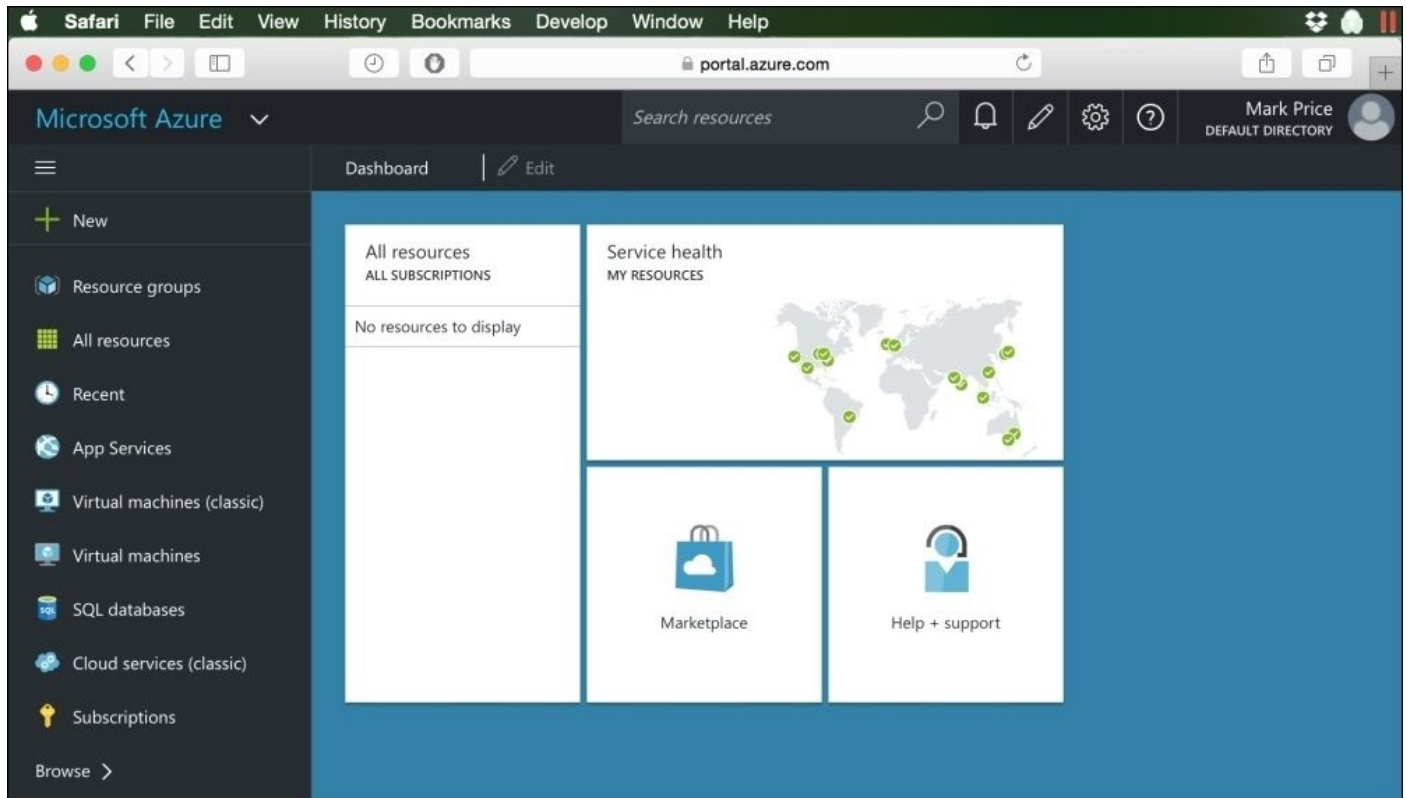
Finally, your subscription will be ready for you to use, as shown in the following screenshot:

Your subscription is ready for you!

[Start managing my service >](#)

Managing your Microsoft Azure account

Click on **Start managing my service** or use your browser to navigate to <https://portal.azure.com/>.

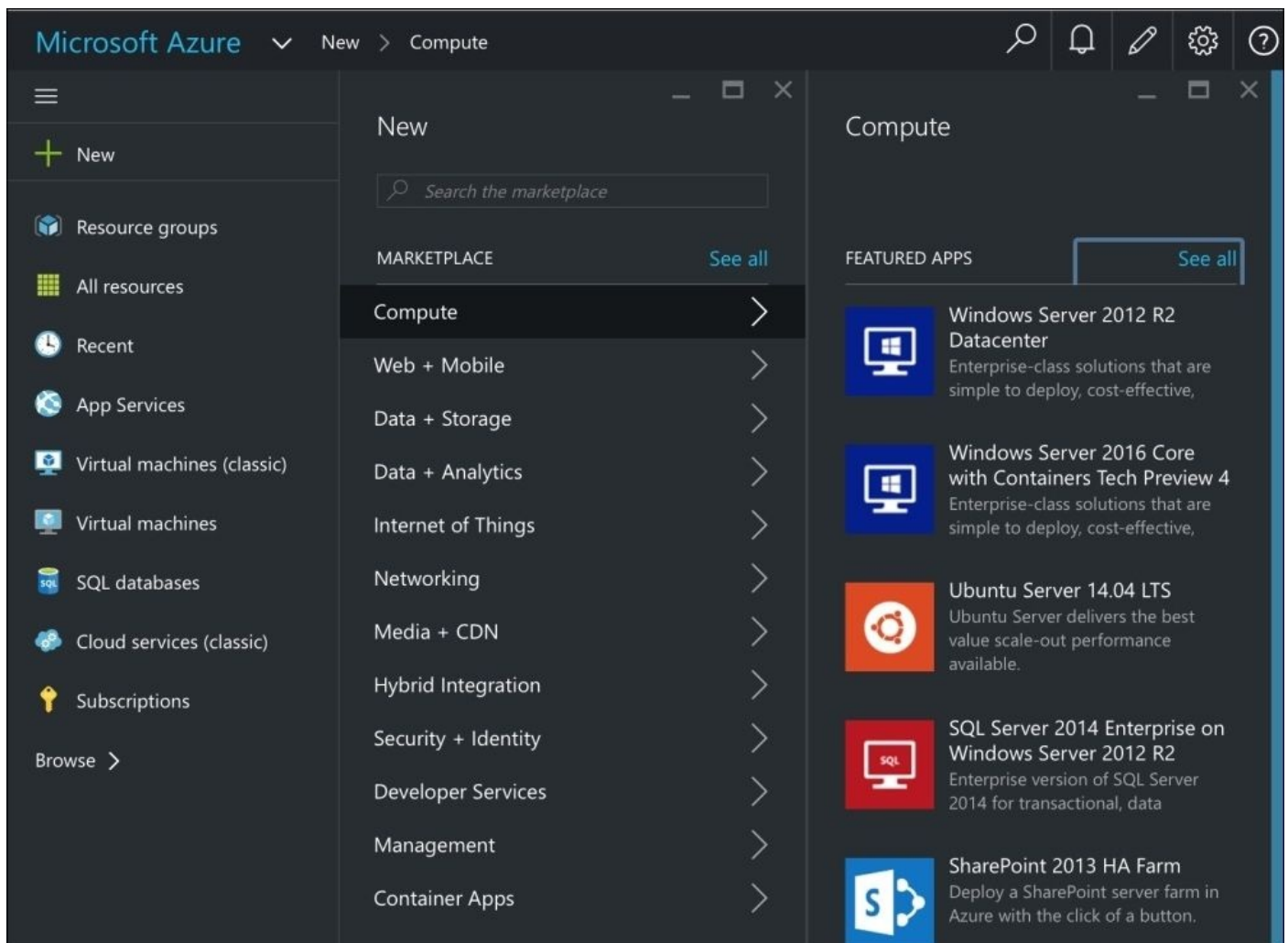


This is the modern Microsoft Azure portal with a customizable dashboard that allows you to manage all your resources that are hosted in Azure. Tiles can be added to the dashboard, resized and rearranged, and can be removed by clicking on the **Edit** button.

Creating a virtual machine

On the left-hand side of the Azure Portal's **Dashboard**, click on the + **New** option and then click on **Compute** to see a list of common operating systems that you can choose to hosted on a virtual machine in Azure.

Click inside the **Search the marketplace** box to search for, and select, the **Visual Studio Community 2015 with Update 1 on Microsoft Windows Server 2012 R2** option, as shown in the following screenshot.



Note

Microsoft does not offer Windows 10 as an operating system for hosting in Microsoft Azure unless you are an MSDN subscriber. Unfortunately, that means you will not be able to complete the hands-on practical exercises in [Chapter 13, Building Universal Windows Platform Apps Using XAML](#), but you will be able to complete all the other chapters.

Ensure that **Resource Manager** is selected as the deployment model and then click on the **Create** button.



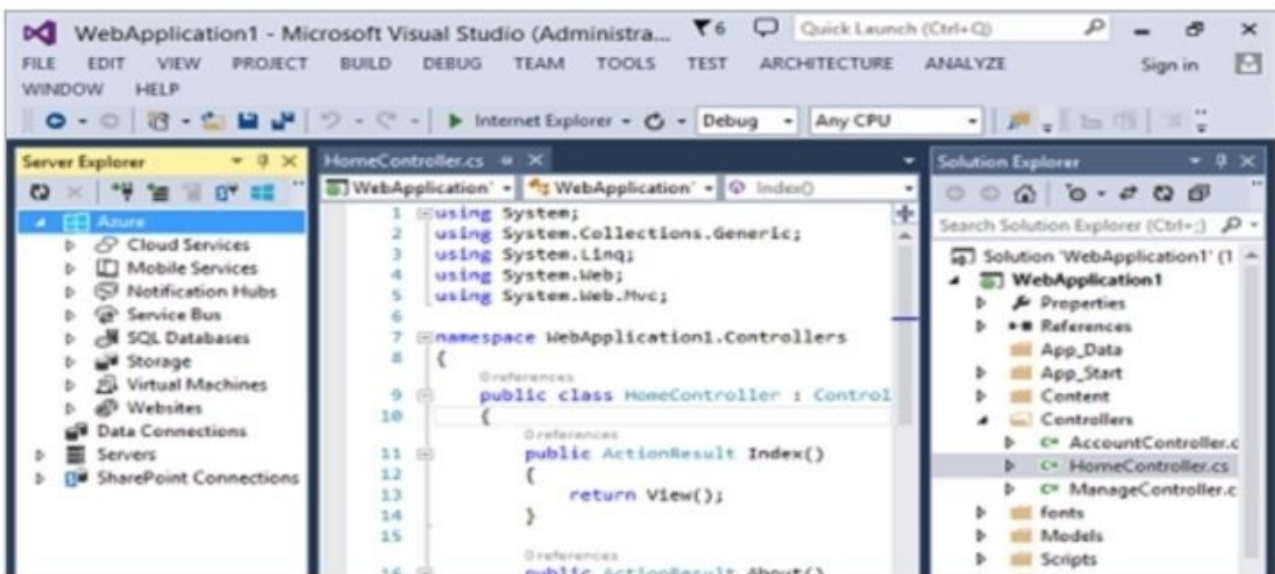
Visual Studio Community 2015 Update 1 with Azure SD...

Microsoft

Visual Studio Community 2015 Update 1 is our free, full featured and extensible IDE for non-enterprise application development. This image contains Windows Server 2012 R2 with Visual Studio Community 2015 Update 1. It allows you to easily and quickly set up a development environment in Azure to build and test applications using Visual Studio.

Legal Terms

By clicking the Create button, I acknowledge that I am getting this software from Microsoft and that the [legal terms](#) of Microsoft apply to it. Microsoft does not provide rights for third-party software. Also see the [privacy statement](#) from Microsoft.



Select a deployment model ⓘ

Resource Manager

Create

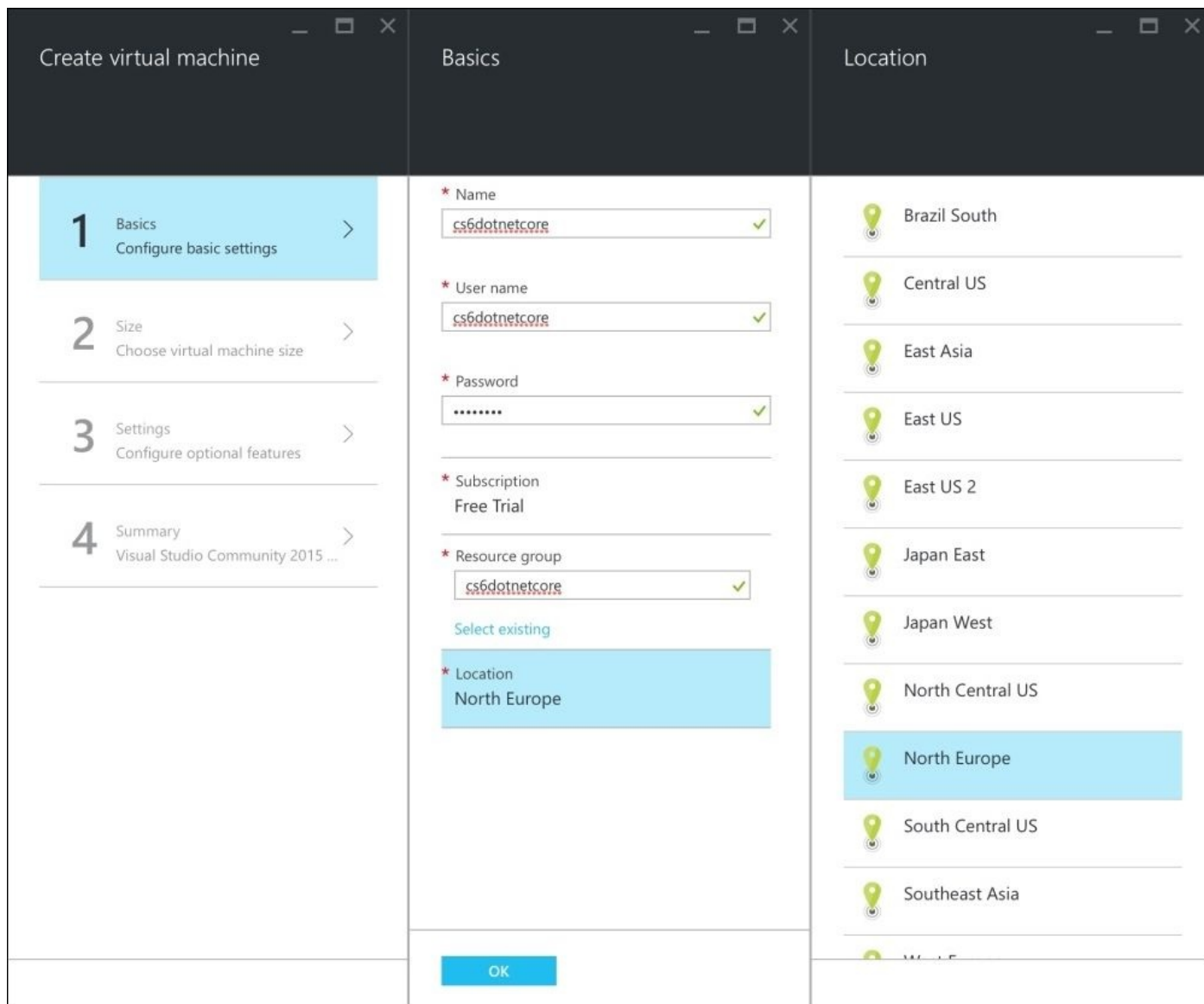
Tip

Microsoft Azure has two deployment models—the old **Azure Service Management**

(ASM) and the new **Azure Resource Manager (ARM)**. You can read more about the differences at <https://azure.microsoft.com/en-gb/documentation/articles/resource-manager-deployment-model/>.

Complete the **Basics** blade. You will need to choose the following:

- A machine name (make a note because you will need this later)
- A username and password to log in with (you will need this later)
- A resource group (to manage the virtual machine and other resources)
- A data center location



Click on **OK** on the **Basics** blade.

Complete the **Size** blade by choosing the capabilities of your virtual machine and then click on **Select**.

Note

The prices shown are estimates of monthly cost, including license fees for the software such as the Windows operating system. You will only be charged per minute of compute

time. An average month has 43,200 minutes, so for a virtual machine and its software costing £117.26 per month, you would be charged about five pence for twenty minutes' use once your free trial has expired.

Create virtual machine

Choose a size
Browse the available sizes and their features

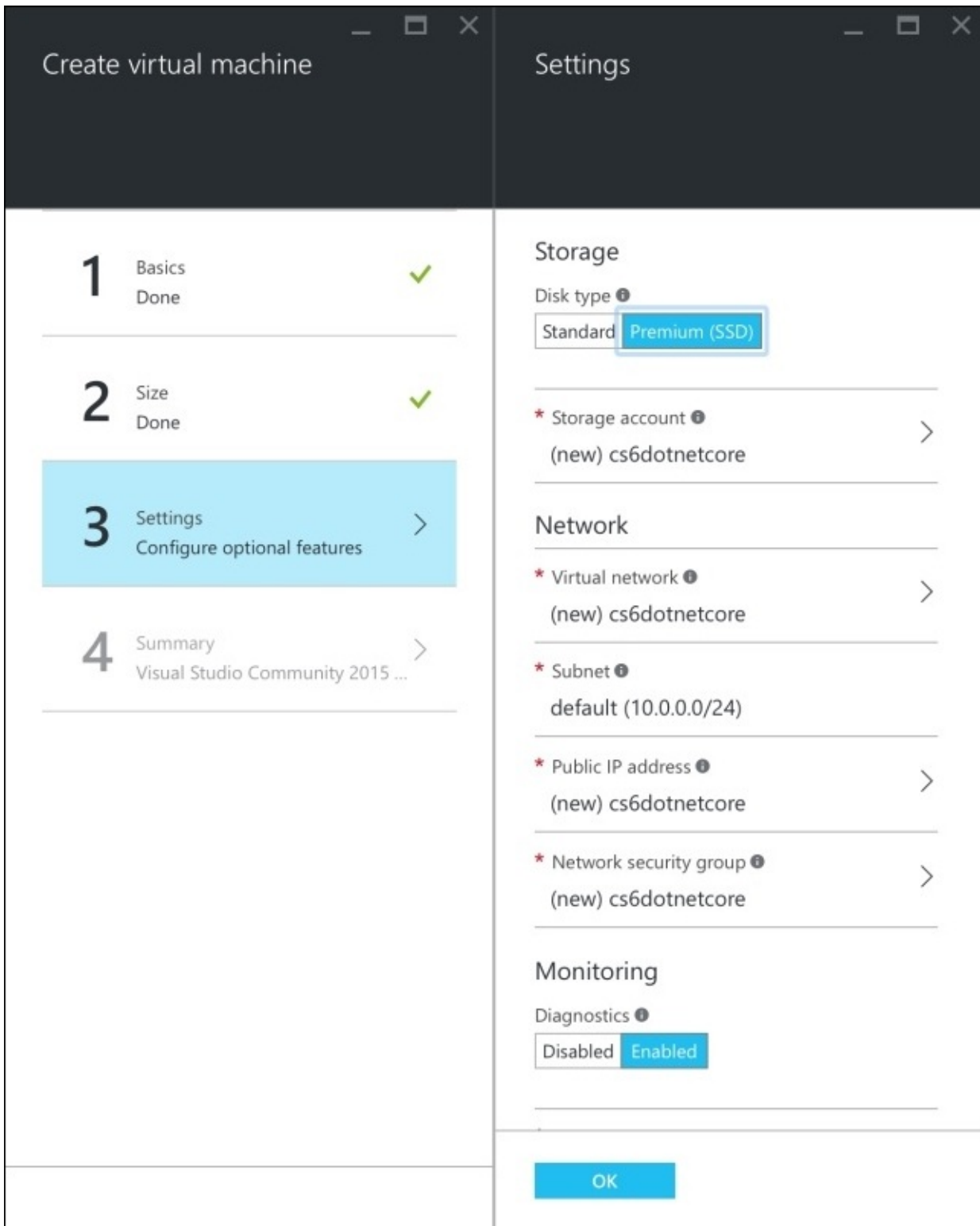
Prices presented below are estimated retail prices that include both Azure infrastructure and applicable third-party software costs. Prices do not reflect applicable discounts for your subscription and may include currency conversions.

★ Recommended | View all

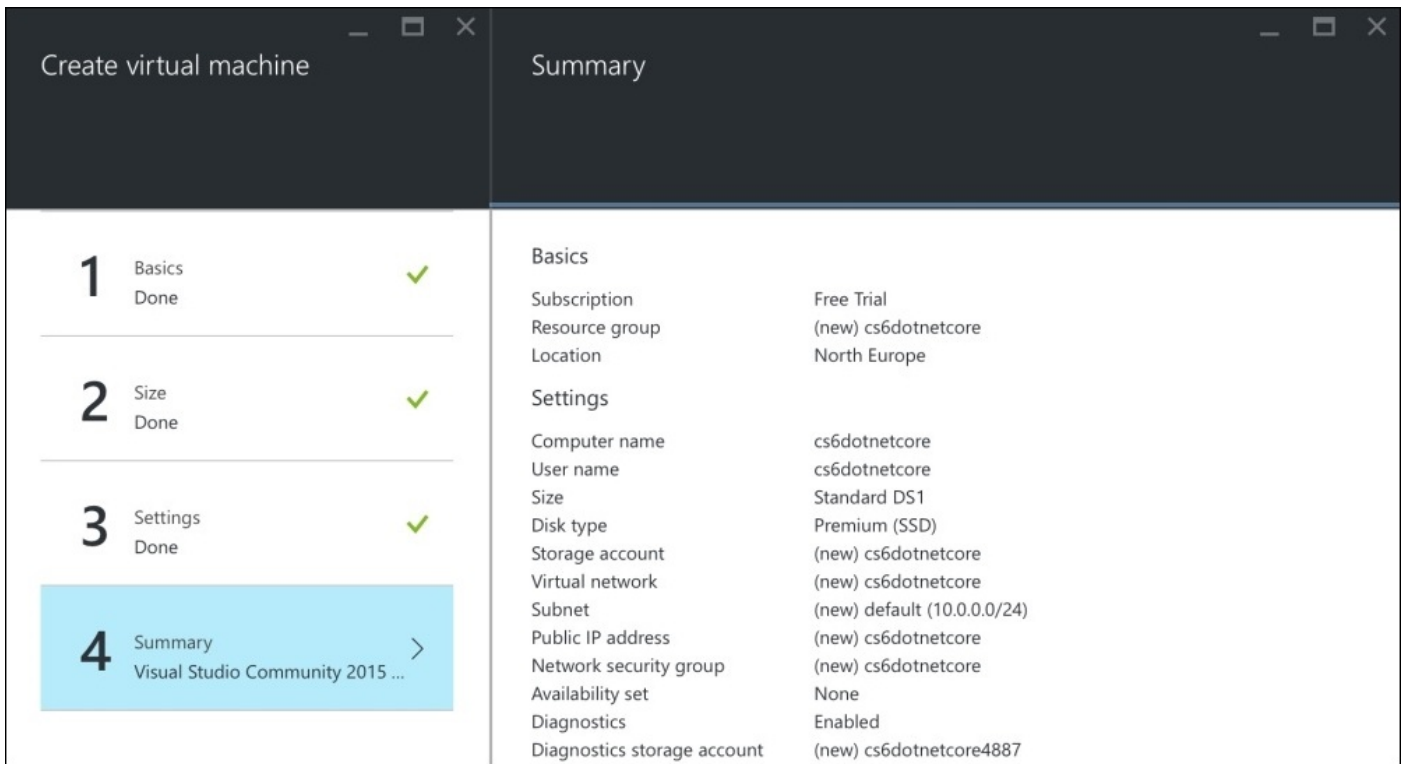
DS1 Standard	DS2 Standard ★	DS3 Standard
1 Core	2 Cores	4 Cores
3.5 GB	7 GB	14 GB
2 Data disks	4 Data disks	8 Data disks
3200 Max IOPS	6400 Max IOPS	12800 Max IOPS
7 GB Local SSD	14 GB Local SSD	28 GB Local SSD
Load balancing	Load balancing	Load balancing
Auto scale	Auto scale	Auto scale
Premium disk supp...	Premium disk supp...	Premium disk supp...
58.63 GBP/MONTH (ESTIMATED)	117.26 GBP/MONTH (ESTIMATED)	234.53 GBP/MONTH (ESTIMATED)
DS4 Standard	DS11 Standard	DS12 Standard
8 Cores	2 Cores	4 Cores
28 GB	14 GB	28 GB
16 Data disks	4 Data disks	8 Data disks
25600 Max IOPS	6400 Max IOPS	12800 Max IOPS

Select

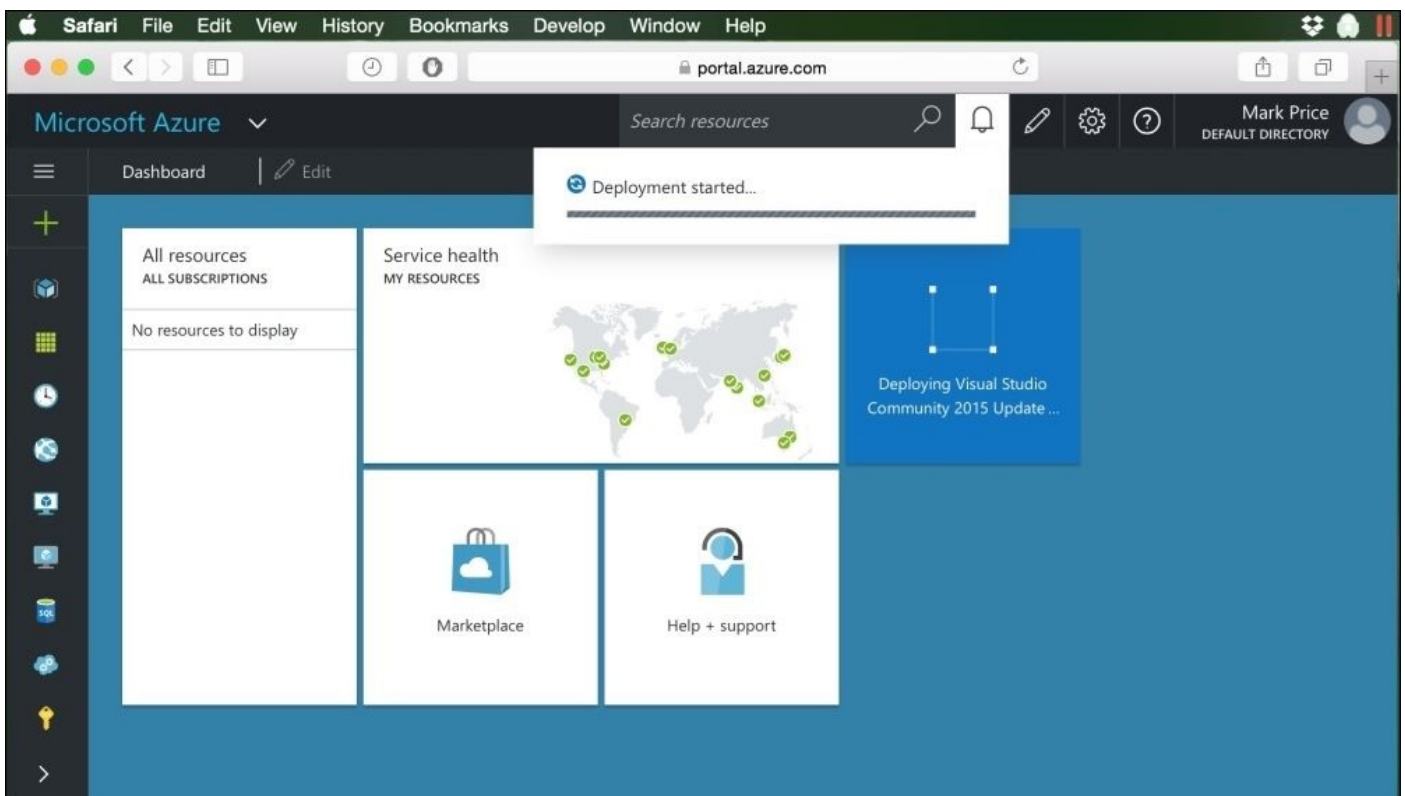
In the **Settings** blade, you can choose storage, network, and monitoring options. The defaults are usually sufficient.



On the **Summary** blade, select **Create** to start deployment.

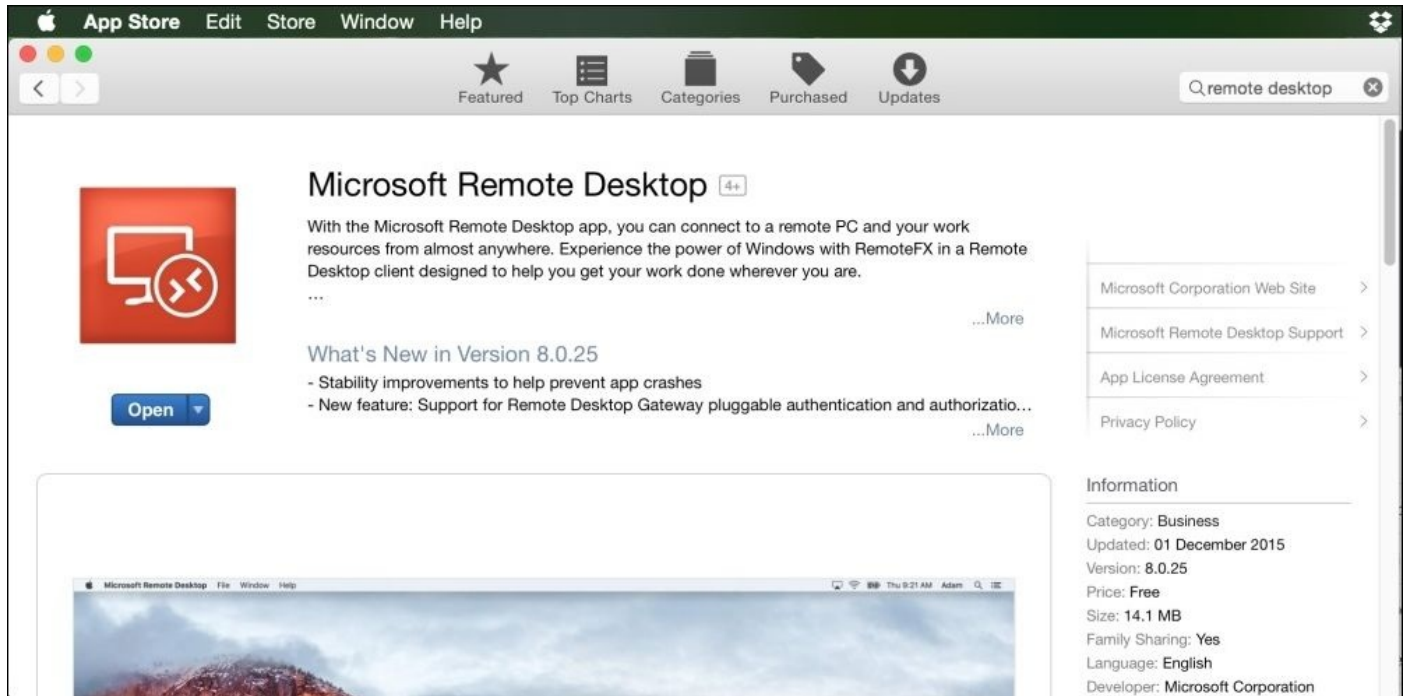


After a few minutes, your **Dashboard** will show the new virtual machine.



Connecting to your virtual machine using remote desktop

To connect to a Microsoft Azure virtual machine, you can install Microsoft Remote Desktop from the Apple Mac OS X App Store.



Tip

Any remote desktop software that supports Microsoft's RDP will work from any operating system.

On the **Dashboard** window, click on **All resources**, and then click on the virtual machine you created earlier.

Microsoft Azure All resources

All resources
Default Directory

Filter items ...

NAME	TYPE	RESOURCE GROUP	LOCATION
cs6dotnetcore	Virtual machine	cs6dotnetcore	North Europe
cs6dotnetcore	Network security gr...	cs6dotnetcore	North Europe
cs6dotnetcore	Public IP address	cs6dotnetcore	North Europe
cs6dotnetcore	Virtual network	cs6dotnetcore	North Europe
cs6dotnetcore	Storage account	cs6dotnetcore	North Europe
cs6dotnetcore4887	Storage account	cs6dotnetcore	North Europe
cs6dotnetcore640	Network interface	cs6dotnetcore	North Europe

If your virtual machine does not have **Running** as the status, then click on **Start**.
Wait for the virtual machine to start. Click on **Connect** to download an RDP file.

cs6dotnetcore
Virtual machine

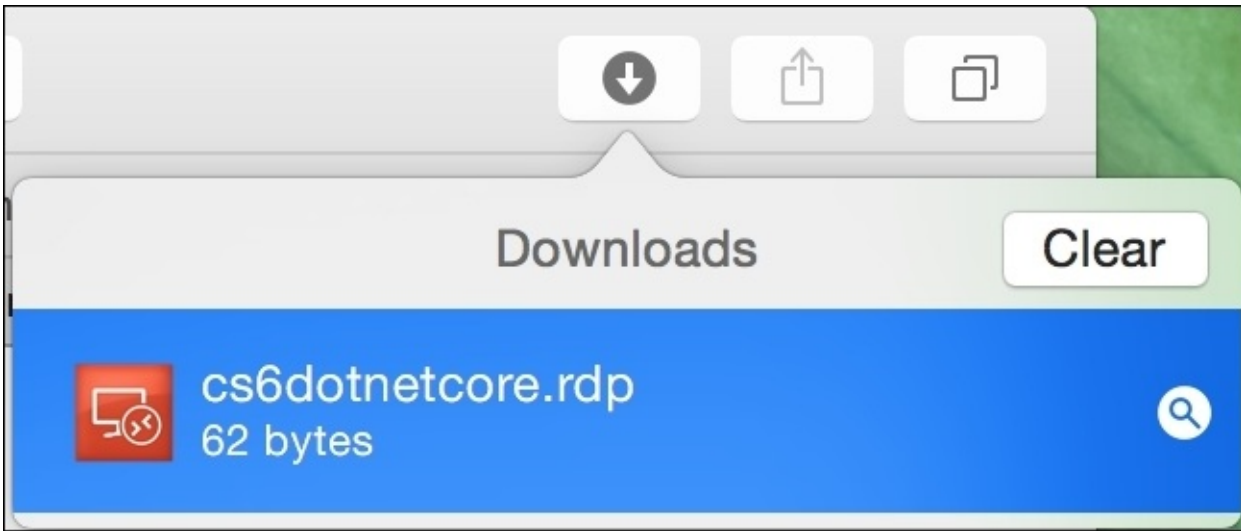
Settings Connect Start Restart Stop Delete

Essentials ^

Resource group	Computer name
cs6dotnetcore	cs6dotnetcore
Status	Size
Running	Standard DS1 (1 core, 3.5 GB memory)
Location	Operating system
North Europe	Windows
Subscription name	Public IP address/DNS name label
Free Trial	40.127.188.238/<none>
Subscription ID	Virtual network/subnet
54259439-aeec-4fa2-9479-fe2028eb4eaf	cs6dotnetcore/default

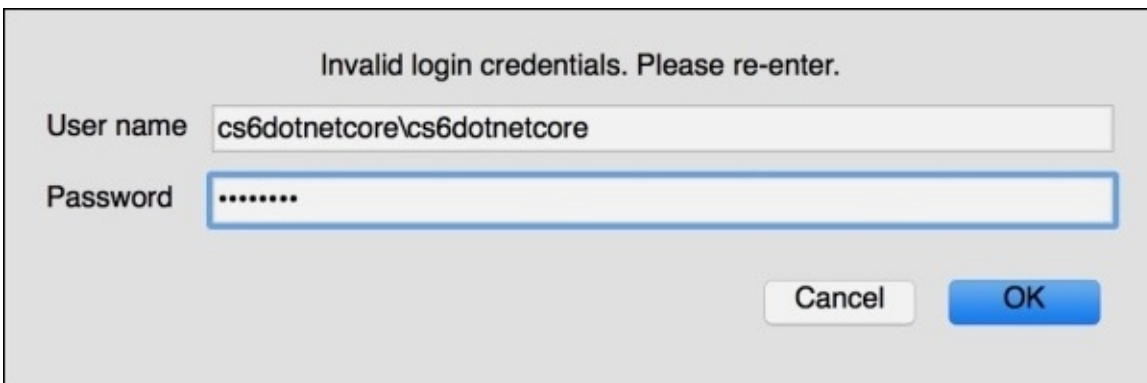
All settings →

Double-click on the RDP file to connect to the virtual machine.



Click on **Continue** to accept the certificate.

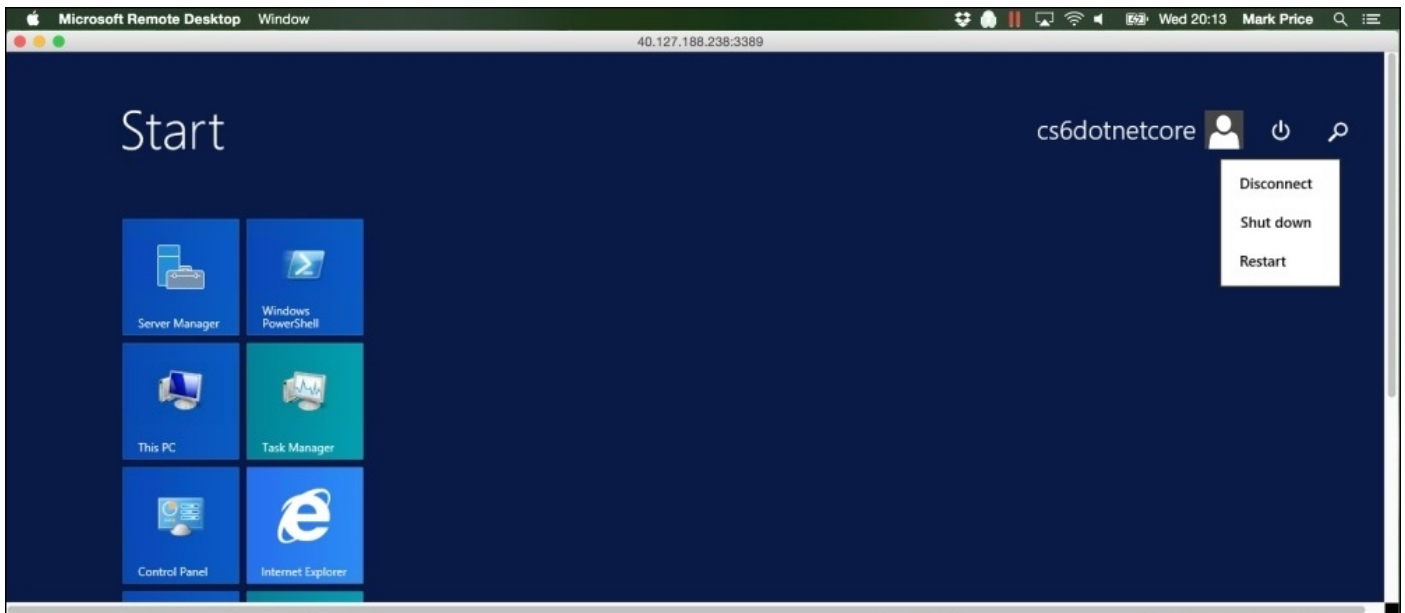
Log in by entering the user name `machinename\username` and the password, which you chose when creating the virtual machine earlier, and then click on **OK**.



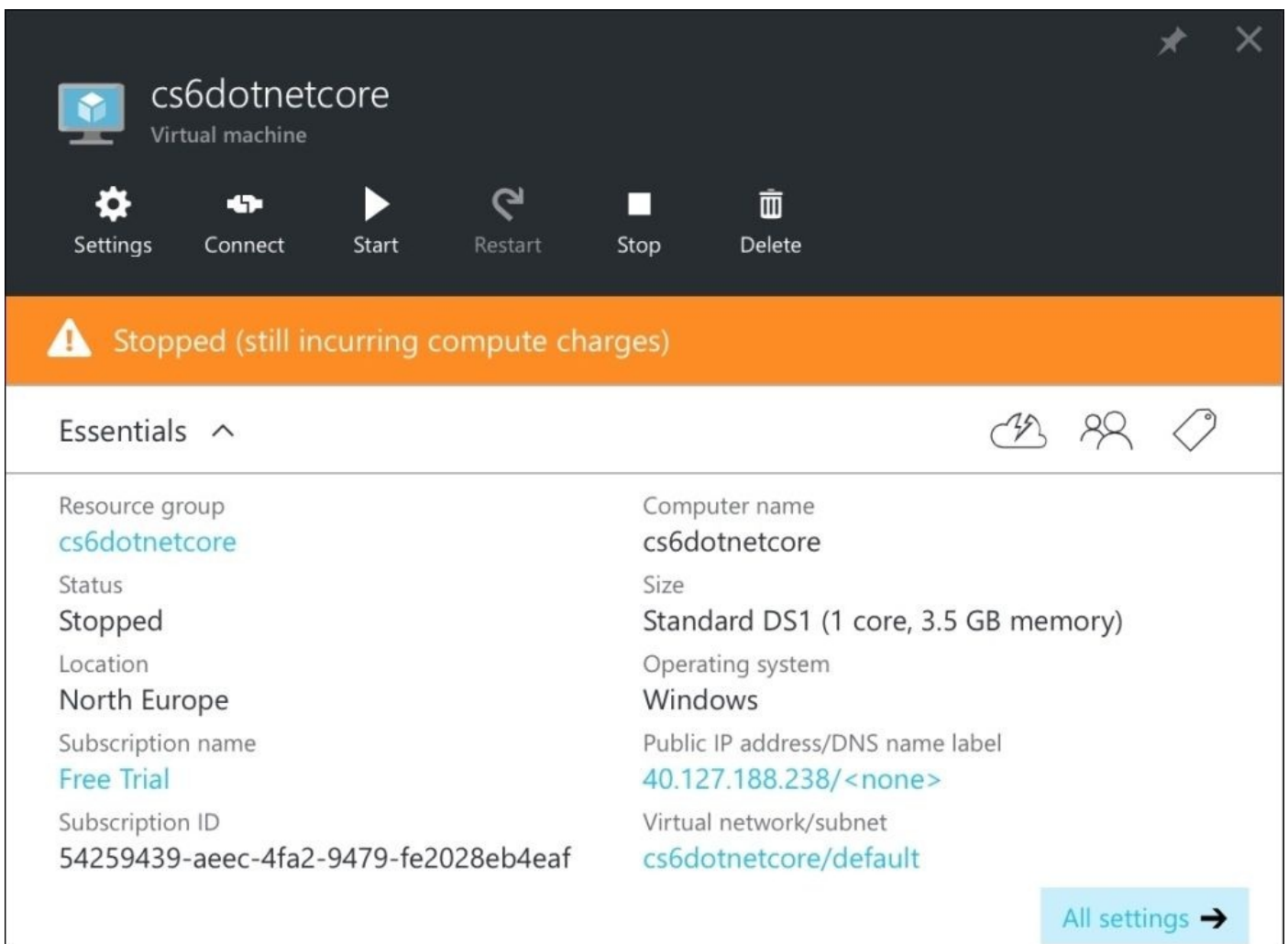
After logging in, you will have a window into the virtual machine. Click on the Windows Start button and start typing `vis` to find and run Visual Studio 2015.

When you are finished, the start screen will display a power button that allows the remote desktop window to disconnect or shut down.

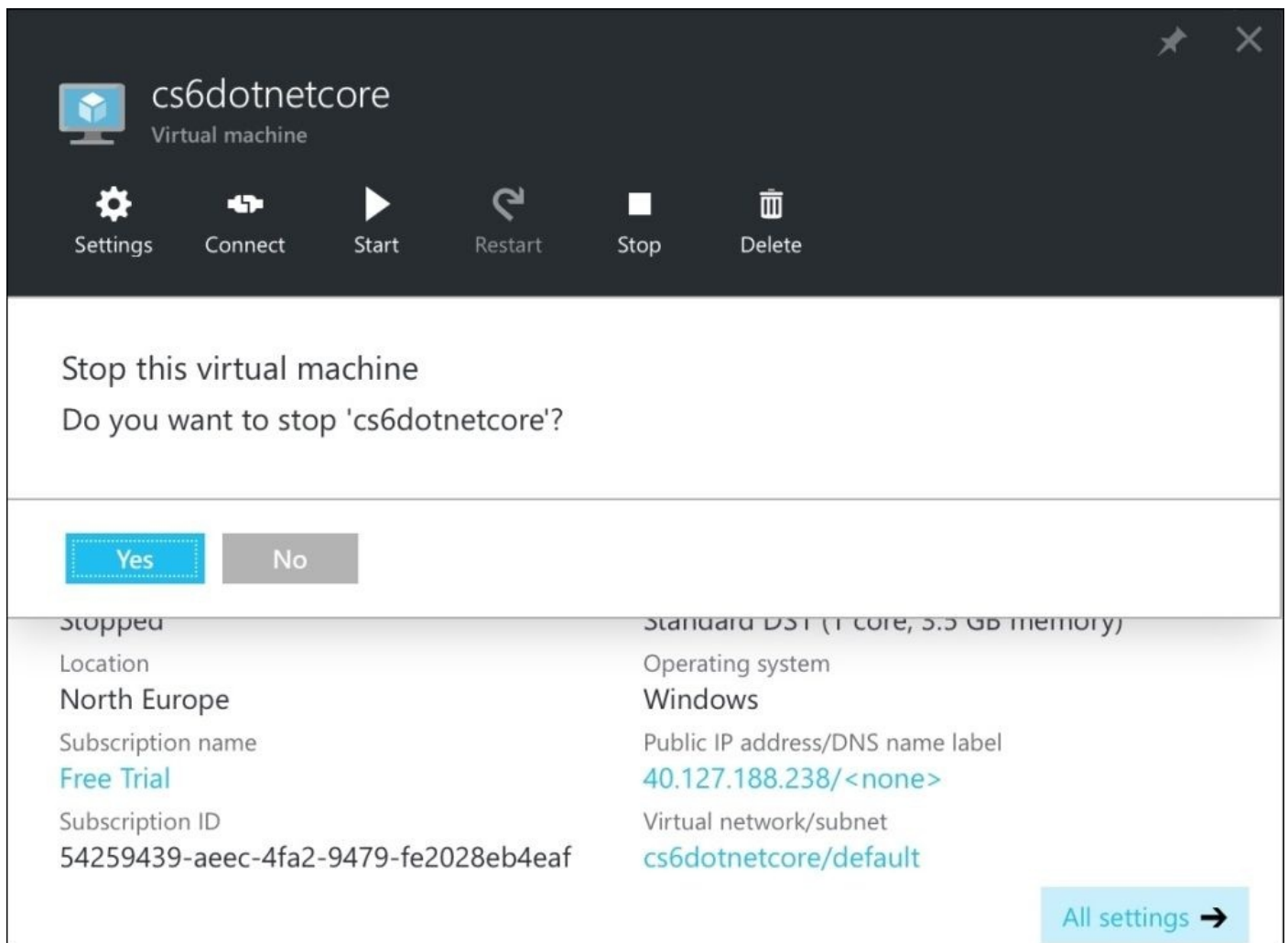
Click on the power button and then click on **Shut down**.



After the remote desktop window closes, return to the Azure portal. Note the orange warning that states that even though the virtual machine is shut down, it is still incurring charges because it is still using some resources.



Click on **Stop** and then click on **Yes** to stop the virtual machine fully.

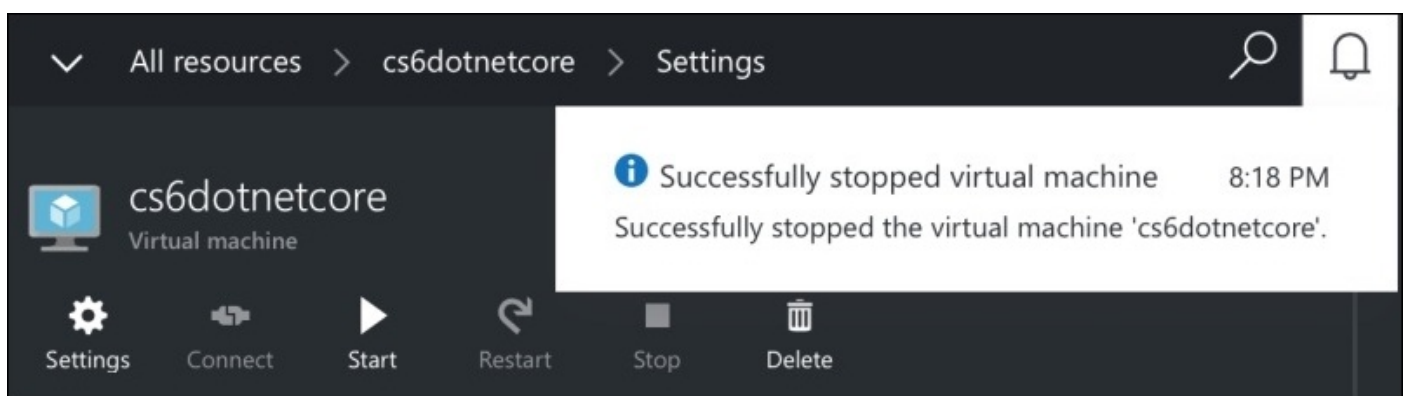


The screenshot shows the Azure portal interface for a virtual machine named 'cs6dotnetcore'. At the top, there is a navigation bar with icons for Settings, Connect, Start, Restart, Stop, and Delete. Below this, a dialog box prompts the user to 'Stop this virtual machine' and asks 'Do you want to stop 'cs6dotnetcore'?'. There are two buttons: 'Yes' (highlighted in blue) and 'No'. Below the dialog, the virtual machine's details are displayed in a table format:

Stopped	Standard_DS1 (1 Core, 3.5 GB memory)
Location	Operating system
North Europe	Windows
Subscription name	Public IP address/DNS name label
Free Trial	40.127.188.238/<none>
Subscription ID	Virtual network/subnet
54259439-aeec-4fa2-9479-fe2028eb4eaf	cs6dotnetcore/default

An 'All settings' button with a right-pointing arrow is located at the bottom right of the details section.

Wait for the virtual machine to stop.



The screenshot shows the Azure portal 'Settings' page for the virtual machine 'cs6dotnetcore'. The navigation bar at the top shows 'All resources > cs6dotnetcore > Settings'. A notification banner is displayed, stating: 'Successfully stopped virtual machine 8:18 PM' and 'Successfully stopped the virtual machine 'cs6dotnetcore''. Below the notification, the virtual machine's status is shown as 'Stopped' in the navigation bar.

Once the virtual machine is stopped, it will have **Stopped (deallocated)** as the status. This means that you are not being charged for this virtual machine.



cs6dotnetcore

Virtual machine



Settings



Connect



Start



Restart



Stop



Delete

Essentials ^



Resource group
[cs6dotnetcore](#)

Status
Stopped (deallocated)

Location
North Europe

Subscription name
[Free Trial](#)

Subscription ID
54259439-aeec-4fa2-9479-fe2028eb4eaf

Computer name
cs6dotnetcore

Size
Standard DS1 (1 core, 3.5 GB memory)

Operating system
Windows

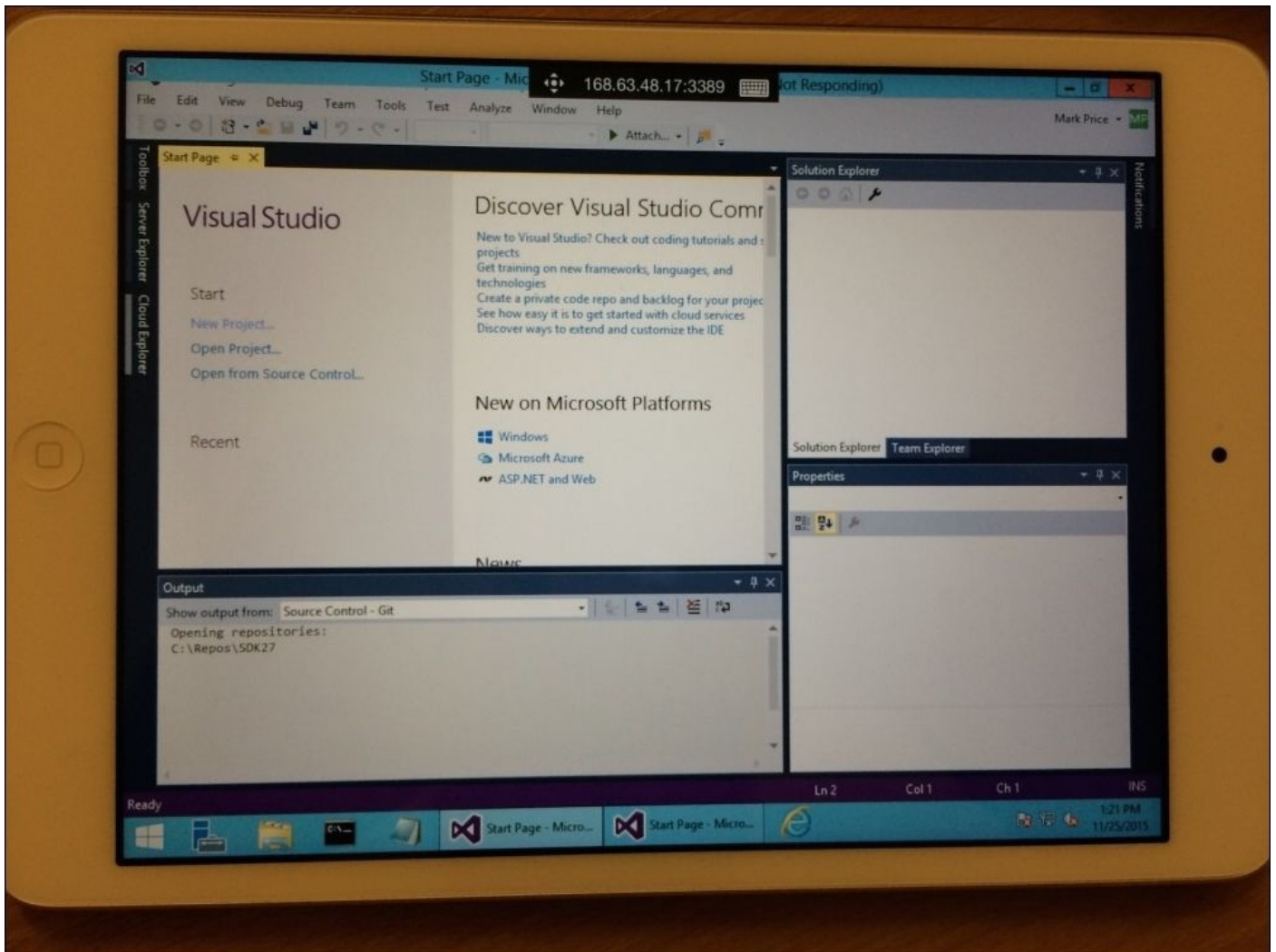
Public IP address/DNS name label
-

Virtual network/subnet
[cs6dotnetcore/default](#)

[All settings](#) →

Supporting other platforms

There are Microsoft RDP clients for multiple operating systems, including iOS for iPad. It's pretty cool being able to run the full version of Visual Studio 2015 on an iPad mini!



Summary

In this appendix, you learned how to use remote software on almost any operating system to connect to a virtual machine running Windows Server and Visual Studio 2015 hosted in Microsoft Azure.

Index

A

- abstraction
 - about / [Talking about OOP](#)
- access
 - controlling, with indexers / [Controlling access with properties and indexers](#)
 - controlling, with properties / [Controlling access with properties and indexers](#)
 - synchronizing, to shared resources / [Synchronizing access to shared resources](#)
- access modifier keywords
 - private (default) / [Defining fields](#)
 - internal / [Defining fields](#)
 - protected / [Defining fields](#)
 - internal protected / [Defining fields](#)
 - public / [Defining fields](#)
- access modifiers (C# programming guide)
 - reference link / [Exercise 6.3 – explore topics](#)
- ADO.NET
 - using / [Using ADO.NET](#)
 - about / [Using ADO.NET](#)
- ADO.NET Entity Framework
 - about / [Using ADO.NET](#)
- Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)
 - about / [Encrypting and decrypting data](#)
- AES
 - used, for encrypting data symmetrically / [Encrypting symmetrically with AES](#)
- AesManaged
 - about / [Encrypting and decrypting data](#)
- aggregation
 - about / [Talking about OOP](#)
- alternative C# IDEs
 - using / [Using alternative C# IDEs](#)
 - MonoDevelop / [Using alternative C# IDEs](#)
 - JetBrains Project Rider / [Using alternative C# IDEs](#)
 - Microsoft Visual Studio Code / [Using alternative C# IDEs](#)
- app
 - creating, for UWP / [Creating an app for the Universal Windows Platform](#)
- application
 - debugging / [Debugging an application](#)
 - unit testing / [Unit testing an application](#)
 - internationalizing / [Internationalizing an application](#)
 - globalizing / [Globalizing an application](#)
 - localizing / [Localizing an application](#)

- compiling / [Downloading dependency packages and compiling](#)
- arguments
 - reading / [Reading arguments and working with arrays](#)
- arithmetic operators
 - about / [Experimenting with arithmetic operators](#)
- array
 - multiple values, storing in / [Storing multiple values in an array](#)
- arrays
 - working with / [Reading arguments and working with arrays](#)
- ASP.NET Core
 - about / [Understanding ASP.NET Core](#)
 - client-side web development / [Client-side web development](#)
 - scenarios / [Taking ASP.NET Core further](#)
 - parameters, passing with route value / [Passing parameters using a route value](#)
 - parameters, passing with query string / [Passing parameters using a query string](#)
 - models, annotating / [Annotating models](#)
 - installing / [Installing Visual Studio Code and ASP.NET Core](#), [Installing ASP.NET Core and the .NET Version Manager](#)
 - used, for building cross-platform web apps / [Building cross-platform web applications using ASP.NET Core](#)
- ASP.NET Core 1.0
 - about / [ASP.NET Core 1.0](#)
- ASP.NET Core application
 - exploring / [Exploring the parts of an ASP.NET Core web application](#)
- ASP.NET Core controllers
 - about / [ASP.NET Core controllers](#)
 - responsibilities / [ASP.NET Core controllers](#)
 - Home controller's actions, defining / [Defining the Home controller's actions](#)
- ASP.NET Core models
 - about / [ASP.NET Core models](#)
 - Entity models, creating for Northwind / [Create Entity models for Northwind](#)
 - Entity Framework Core, configuring as service / [Configure Entity Framework Core as a service](#)
 - view models, creating for requests / [Create view models for requests](#)
 - model, fetching in controller / [Fetch the model in the controller](#)
- ASP.NET Core startup
 - about / [ASP.NET Core startup](#)
 - default route / [Understanding the default route](#)
- ASP.NET Core views
 - about / [ASP.NET Core views](#)
 - Home controller's views, rendering / [Rendering the Home controller's views](#)
 - layouts, sharing between views / [Sharing layouts between views](#)
 - custom styles, defining / [Defining custom styles](#)
 - typed view, defining / [Defining a typed view](#)

- ASP.NET Core web API
 - about / [ASP.NET Core Web API](#)
 - API controller, scaffolding / [Scaffolding an API controller](#)
 - Web API service, calling from UWP app / [Calling a Web API service from a UWP app](#)
- ASP.NET Core web apps
 - hosting, in Microsoft Azure / [Hosting ASP.NET Core web apps in Microsoft Azure](#)
- ASP.NET MVC
 - about / [Understanding ASP.NET Core](#)
- ASP.NET Web API
 - about / [Understanding ASP.NET Core](#)
- ASP.NET web application
 - publishing, to web app / [Publishing an ASP.NET web application to the Web App](#)
- ASP.NET Web Forms
 - about / [Understanding ASP.NET Core](#)
- ASP.NET XML Web Services
 - about / [Understanding ASP.NET Core](#)
- assemblies
 - using / [Using assemblies and namespaces](#)
 - about / [Assemblies](#)
 - referencing / [Referencing an assembly](#)
 - browsing / [Browsing assemblies and namespaces](#)
- assemblies, and namespaces
 - relating / [Relating assemblies and namespaces](#)
- Assemblies and the Global Assembly Cache (C# and Visual Basic)
 - reference link / [Exercise 4.3 – explore topics](#)
- assembly references
 - example / [An example of assembly references](#)
- asymmetric
 - about / [Keys and key sizes](#)
- async keyword
 - about / [The async and await keywords](#)
- authentication
 - about / [Understanding the vocabulary of protection, Authenticating and authorizing users](#)
- authorization
 - about / [Understanding the vocabulary of protection, Authorizing with Windows](#)
- await, in catch blocks
 - about / [await in catch blocks](#)
- await keyword
 - about / [The async and await keywords](#)
- Azure account

- registering / [Register an Azure account](#)
- Azure portal
 - reference / [Register an Azure account](#)
- Azure Resource Manager (ARM) / [Creating a virtual machine](#)
- Azure Service Management (ASM) / [Creating a virtual machine](#)
- Azure web app
 - creating / [Create an Azure web app](#)

B

- Banker's Rounding / [Rounding numbers](#)
- base class
 - about / [Talking about OOP](#)
- Base Class Libraries (BCL)
 - about / [Using assemblies and namespaces, Base Class Libraries and CoreFX](#)
- binary number system / [Storing numbers](#)
- blocks
 - about / [Blocks, IVs and block sizes](#)
- block sizes
 - about / [IVs and block sizes](#)
- bool (C# Reference)
 - reference link / [Exercise 2.3 – explore topics](#)
- Boolean operators
 - about / [Comparison and Boolean operators](#)
- Booleans
 - storing / [Storing Booleans](#)
- break mode / [Setting a breakpoint](#)
- breakpoint
 - setting / [Setting a breakpoint](#)
 - customizing / [Customizing breakpoints](#)
- bridge
 - about / [Choosing a .NET data provider](#)
- byte arrays
 - strings, encoding as / [Encoding strings as byte arrays](#)

C

- C#
 - basics / [Understanding C# basics](#)
 - keywords / [The C# vocabulary](#)
- C# Interactive
 - experimenting with / [Experimenting with C# Interactive](#)
- C# Keywords
 - reference link / [Exercise 2.3 – explore topics](#)
- C# keywords
 - relating, to .NET types / [Relating C# keywords to .NET types](#)
- C# Operators
 - reference link / [Exercise 2.3 – explore topics](#)
- casting
 - from numbers to numbers / [Casting from numbers to numbers](#)
- Casting and Type Conversions (C# Programming Guide)
 - reference link / [Exercise 3.5 – explore topics](#)
- casting exceptions
 - hiding / [Handling casting exceptions](#)
- char (C# Reference)
 - reference link / [Exercise 2.3 – explore topics](#)
- Checked and Unchecked (C# Reference)
 - reference link / [Exercise 3.5 – explore topics](#)
- checked statement
 - about / [The checked statement](#)
- child tasks
 - about / [Nested and child tasks](#)
- class
 - defining / [Defining a class](#)
 - instantiating / [Instantiating a class](#)
- classes
 - splitting, partial used / [Splitting classes using partial](#)
 - inheriting from / [Inheriting from classes](#)
 - extending / [Extending classes](#)
- Classes (C# Programming Guide)
 - reference link / [Exercise 7.3 – explore topics](#)
- classic ASP.NET
 - versus modern ASP.NET Core / [Classic ASP.NET versus modern ASP.NET Core](#)
- class libraries
 - building / [Building class libraries](#)
 - creating, for sharing code / [Creating a class library to share code](#)
- Cleaning Up Unmanaged Resources
 - reference link / [Exercise 7.3 – explore topics](#)

- client-server applications
 - scalability, improving for / [Improving scalability for client-server applications](#)
- client-side web development, ASP.NET Core
 - HTML5 / [Client-side web development](#)
 - CSS3 / [Client-side web development](#)
 - JavaScript / [Client-side web development](#)
- CLI tools
 - about / [Understanding the CLI tools](#)
- Cloud9
 - about / [Using alternative C# IDEs](#)
 - URL / [Using alternative C# IDEs](#)
- code
 - decompiling, ILDASM used / [Decompiling code using ILDASM](#)
 - writing / [Writing the code](#)
 - autoformatting / [Autoformatting code](#)
 - simplifying, by removing explicit delegate instantiation / [Simplifying the code by removing the explicit delegate instantiation](#)
 - simplifying, XAML used / [Simplifying code using XAML](#)
- code, compiling with Developer Command Prompt
 - about / [Writing and compiling code using the Developer Command Prompt, Compiling code using the Developer Command Prompt](#)
 - code, writing with Notepad / [Writing code using Notepad](#)
 - compiler errors, fixing / [Fixing compiler errors](#)
- code, compiling with Microsoft Visual Studio 2015
 - about / [Writing and compiling code using Microsoft Visual Studio 2015, Compiling code using Visual Studio](#)
 - mistakes, fixing with error list / [Fixing mistakes with the error list](#)
- code, writing with Microsoft Visual Studio 2015
 - about / [Writing code using Visual Studio 2015](#)
- collections
 - about / [Storing data with collections, Understanding collections](#)
 - data, storing with / [Storing data with collections](#)
 - lists / [Lists](#)
 - dictionaries / [Dictionaries](#)
 - stacks / [Stacks](#)
 - queues / [Queues](#)
 - sorting / [Sorting collections](#)
 - old collections, avoiding / [Avoiding old collections](#)
 - specialized collections, using / [Using specialized collections](#)
 - used, for storing multiple values / [Storing multiple values using collections](#)
- Collections (C# and Visual Basic)
 - reference link / [Exercise 4.3 – explore topics](#)
- COM Interop
 - used, for automating Microsoft Excel / [Automating Microsoft Excel using COM](#)

[Interop](#)

- command-line tools, .NET Core
 - .NET Version Manager / [Managing .NET Core development with Command Line Tools](#)
 - .NET Execution Environment / [Managing .NET Core development with Command Line Tools](#)
 - .NET Development Utilities / [Managing .NET Core development with Command Line Tools](#)
 - .NET CLI / [Managing .NET Core development with Command Line Tools](#)
- Command Line Tools
 - .NET Core development, managing with / [Managing .NET Core development with Command Line Tools](#)
 - used, for creating .NET Core application / [Creating a .NET Core application using Command Line Tools](#)
- commands
 - executing / [Executing commands and reading result sets](#)
- common CLI commands
 - about / [Common CLI commands](#)
- common DNX commands
 - about / [Common DNX commands](#)
- Common Language Runtimes (CLR)
 - about / [Using assemblies and namespaces](#)
- Community Edition
 - about / [Using Visual Studio 2015 on Windows 10](#)
- comparer
 - defining / [Defining a separate comparer](#)
- comparison operators
 - about / [Comparison and Boolean operators](#)
- compile-time check
 - about / [The unchecked statement](#)
- compiled assemblies
 - disassembling / [Disassembling compiled assemblies](#)
- compiler symbols
 - configuring, for .NET Framework / [Configuring compiler symbols for .NET Framework](#)
 - defining, for .NET Core / [Defining compiler symbols for .NET Core](#)
 - checking / [Checking compiler symbols](#)
- Component Object Model (COM) Interop / [Interoperating with unmanaged code](#)
- Composite Formatting
 - reference link / [Exercise 2.3 – explore topics](#)
- composition
 - about / [Talking about OOP](#)
- configuration
 - connection string, loading from / [Loading a connection string from](#)

[configuration](#)

- connection string
 - loading, from configuration / [Loading a connection string from configuration](#)
- console, in C# 6
 - usage, simplifying of / [Simplifying the usage of the console in C# 6](#)
- console application
 - building / [Building a console application](#)
 - source files, creating / [Creating the source files](#)
 - code, editing / [Editing the code](#)
- console applications
 - building / [Building console applications](#)
- Console Class
 - reference link / [Exercise 2.3 – explore topics](#)
- constants
 - about / [Defining a class](#)
 - reasons, for avoiding / [Making a field constant](#)
- constructors
 - about / [Defining a class](#)
 - fields, initializing with / [Initializing fields with constructors](#)
- constructors (C# programming guide)
 - reference link / [Exercise 6.3 – explore topics](#)
- content
 - string, checking for / [Checking a string for content](#)
- continuation tasks / [Waiting for tasks](#)
- controls
 - reference link / [Choosing common controls](#)
- control template
 - replacing / [Replacing a control template](#)
- convert type
 - using / [Using the Convert type](#)
- CoreCLR
 - about / [Understanding the .NET Core platform](#), [Using assemblies and namespaces](#)
- CoreFX
 - about / [Understanding the .NET Core platform](#), [Using assemblies and namespaces](#), [Base Class Libraries and CoreFX](#)
- cross-device Universal Windows Platform (UWP)
 - about / [Cross-device Universal Windows Platform \(UWP\)](#)
- cross-platform development
 - about / [Understanding cross-platform development](#)
 - Visual Studio Code / [Visual Studio Code](#)
 - .NET Core 1.0 / [.NET Core 1.0](#)
 - ASP.NET Core 1.0 / [ASP.NET Core 1.0](#)
 - Entity Framework Core 1.0 (EF Core) / [Entity Framework Core 1.0](#)

- .NET Native / [.NET Native](#)
- Xamarin / [Xamarin](#)
- cross-device Universal Windows Platform (UWP) / [Cross-device Universal Windows Platform \(UWP\)](#)
- cross-platform web apps
 - building, ASP.NET Core used / [Building cross-platform web applications using ASP.NET Core](#)
- cryptographic service provider (CSP)
 - about / [Encrypting and decrypting data](#)
- Custom Date and Time Format Strings
 - reference link / [Exercise 2.3 – explore topics](#)
- Custom Numeric Format Strings
 - reference link / [Exercise 2.3 – explore topics](#)

D

- data
 - storing, with collections / [Storing data with collections](#)
 - storing, with fields / [Storing data with fields](#)
 - manipulating, with Entity Data Models / [Manipulating data with Entity Data Models](#)
 - encrypting / [Encrypting and decrypting data](#)
 - decrypting / [Encrypting and decrypting data](#)
 - encrypting, symmetrically with AES / [Encrypting symmetrically with AES](#)
 - hashing / [Hashing data](#)
 - hashing, with SHA256 / [Hashing with SHA256](#)
 - signing / [Signing data](#)
 - signing, with SHA256 / [Signing with SHA256 and RSA](#)
 - signing, with RSA / [Signing with SHA256 and RSA](#)
- data binding
 - about / [Data binding](#)
 - to elements / [Binding to elements](#)
 - to data / [Binding to data](#)
- Data Encryption Standard (DES)
 - about / [Encrypting and decrypting data](#)
- Debug and Trace
 - monitoring with / [Monitoring with Debug and Trace](#)
- debugging
 - about / [Debugging and diagnostics](#)
- debugging toolbar
 - about / [The debugging toolbar](#)
- debugging tools
 - about / [Debugging an application](#)
- debugging windows
 - about / [Debugging windows](#)
- decimal (C# Reference)
 - reference link / [Exercise 2.3 – explore topics](#)
- decimal number system / [Storing numbers](#)
- decryption
 - about / [Understanding the vocabulary of protection](#)
- default model binder / [Passing parameters using a route value](#)
- default trace listener
 - writing to / [Writing to the default trace listener](#)
- delegates
 - used, for calling methods / [Calling methods using delegates](#)
- delegates (C# programming guide)
 - reference link / [Exercise 6.3 – explore topics](#)
- dependency packages

- downloading / [Downloading dependency packages and compiling](#)
- DESCryptoServiceProvider
 - about / [Encrypting and decrypting data](#)
- deserialization
 - about / [Serializing object graphs](#)
- design pattern
 - about / [Design patterns](#)
- Design Patterns
 - reference link / [Exercise 3.5 – explore topics](#)
- Destructors (C# Programming Guide)
 - reference link / [Exercise 7.3 – explore topics](#)
- Developer Command Prompt for VS2015 / [Writing and compiling code using the Developer Command Prompt](#)
- development environment
 - setting up / [Setting up your development environment](#)
- diagnostics
 - about / [Debugging and diagnostics](#)
- dictionaries
 - about / [Dictionaries](#)
 - working with / [Working with dictionaries](#)
- Dictionary<TKey, TValue> Class
 - reference link / [Exercise 4.3 – explore topics](#)
- directories
 - managing / [Managing directories](#)
- disposal
 - simplifying, with using statement / [Simplifying disposal with the using statement](#)
- Dispose method
 - about / [Ensuring that dispose is called](#)
- DLL (dynamic link library) / [Referencing an assembly](#)
- dnx451
 - about / [Editing the code](#)
- dnxcore50
 - about / [Editing the code](#)
- DNX tools
 - about / [Understanding the DNX tools](#)
- do-while statement
 - about / [The do-while statement](#)
- Docker
 - about / [Using alternative C# IDEs](#)
- double, and decimal
 - comparing / [Comparing double and decimal](#)
- double-precision floating point / [Storing numbers](#)
- DuckDuckGo

- about / [StackOverflow](#)
- URL / [StackOverflow](#)
- dynamic type / [The dynamic type](#)

E

- EF annotation attributes
 - about / [EF annotation attributes](#)
- EF Code First conventions
 - about / [EF Code First conventions](#)
- efficiency
 - measuring, of processing strings / [Measuring the efficiency of processing strings](#)
- efficiency of types, evaluating
 - functionality / [Evaluating the efficiency of types](#)
 - memory size / [Evaluating the efficiency of types](#)
 - performance / [Evaluating the efficiency of types](#)
 - future needs / [Evaluating the efficiency of types](#)
- EF Fluent API
 - about / [EF Fluent API](#)
- emulators
 - testing in / [Testing in emulators](#)
- encapsulation
 - about / [Talking about OOP](#)
- encoding
 - ASCII / [Encoding text](#)
 - UTF-8 / [Encoding text](#)
 - UTF-16 / [Encoding text](#)
 - ANSI/ISO encodings / [Encoding text](#)
- encryption
 - about / [Understanding the vocabulary of protection](#)
- entities
 - inserting / [Inserting entities](#)
 - updating / [Updating entities](#)
 - lazy loading / [Lazy loading entities](#)
 - eager loading / [Eager loading entities](#)
 - explicit loading / [Explicit loading entities](#)
 - filtering, with Where extension method / [Filtering entities with Where](#)
 - sorting, with OrderBy / [Sorting sequences with OrderBy](#)
 - sorting by multiple properties, with ThenBy method / [Sorting by multiple properties with the ThenBy method](#)
 - projecting, with Select statement / [Projecting entities with Select statement](#)
- Entity Data Model
 - querying / [Querying an Entity Data Model](#)
- Entity Data Models
 - data, manipulating with / [Manipulating data with Entity Data Models](#)
- Entity Framework (EF)
 - about / [Using Entity Framework 6](#)
- Entity Framework 6

- using / [Using Entity Framework 6](#)
- Entity Framework 6 model
 - building / [Building an Entity Framework 6 model](#)
- Entity Framework 6.1.3 (EF6)
 - about / [Using Entity Framework 6](#)
- Entity Framework Code First models
 - about / [Entity Framework Code First models](#)
- Entity Framework Core
 - using / [Using Entity Framework Core](#)
- Entity Framework Core 1.0 (EF Core)
 - about / [Using Entity Framework 6](#), [Entity Framework Core 1.0](#)
 - pros / [Using Entity Framework 6](#)
 - cons / [Using Entity Framework 6](#)
- enumerable class
 - sequence, extending with / [Extending sequences with the Enumerable class](#)
- enum keyword
 - used, for storing value / [Storing a value using the enum keyword](#)
- events
 - about / [Defining a class](#)
 - raising / [Raising and handling events](#)
 - handling / [Raising and handling events](#)
 - defining / [Defining events](#)
- events (C# programming guide)
 - reference link / [Exercise 6.3 – explore topics](#)
- exception
 - inheriting from / [Inheriting from the Exception class](#)
- Exception Handling Statements (C# Reference)
 - reference link / [Exercise 3.5 – explore topics](#)
- exceptions
 - handling / [Handling exceptions](#)
 - all exceptions, catching / [Catching all exceptions](#)
 - specific exceptions, catching / [Catching specific exceptions](#)
- explicit casting / [Explicit casting](#)
- explicit transaction
 - defining / [Defining an explicit transaction](#)
- eXtensible Markup Language (XML)
 - about / [Serializing object graphs](#)
- extension methods / [Extending types when you can't inherit](#)
 - used, for reusing functionality / [Using extension methods to reuse functionality](#)

F

- fields
 - about / [Defining a class](#)
 - specialized fields / [Defining a class](#)
 - data, storing with / [Storing data with fields](#)
 - defining / [Defining fields](#)
 - static, making / [Making a field static](#)
 - constant, making / [Making a field constant](#)
 - read only, making / [Making a field read only](#)
 - initializing, with constructors / [Initializing fields with constructors](#)
- fields (C# programming guide)
 - reference link / [Exercise 6.3 – explore topics](#)
- file information
 - obtaining / [Getting file information](#)
- files
 - managing / [Managing files](#)
 - text, encoding in / [Encoding and decoding text in files](#)
 - text, decoding in / [Encoding and decoding text in files](#)
- filesystem
 - managing / [Managing the filesystem](#)
- finalizer
 - about / [Releasing unmanaged resources](#)
- finally statement
 - about / [The finally statement](#)
- FizzBuzz
 - about / [Exercise 3.3 – practice loops and operators](#)
 - references / [Exercise 3.3 – practice loops and operators](#)
- flags
 - about / [Storing a value using the enum keyword](#)
- Floating-Point Types Table (C# Reference)
 - reference link / [Exercise 2.3 – explore topics](#)
- foreach statement
 - about / [The foreach statement](#)
 - working / [How does the foreach statement actually work?](#)
- for statement
 - about / [The for statement](#)
- framework design guidelines
 - reference link / [Exercise 6.3 – explore topics](#)
- functionality
 - static methods, used for reusing / [Using static methods to reuse functionality](#)
 - extension methods, used for reusing / [Using extension methods to reuse functionality](#)
- function streams

- about / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
- CryptoStream class / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
- GZipStream class / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
- DeflateStream class / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
- AuthenticatedStream class / [Reading and writing with streams](#)

G

- garbage collection
 - about / [Google](#)
- garbage collector (GC) / [Monitoring performance and memory use](#)
- generics
 - about / [Working with lists](#)
- Git
 - about / [Managing source code with GitHub](#)
- GitHub
 - source code, managing with / [Managing source code with GitHub](#)
- GitHub repository
 - cloning / [Cloning a GitHub repository](#)
 - managing / [Managing a GitHub repository](#)
- Global Assembly Cache (GAC)
 - about / [Assemblies](#)
- globalization
 - about / [Internationalizing an application](#)
- Google
 - about / [Google](#)
- Google Advanced Search
 - reference link / [Exercise 3.5 – explore topics](#)
- grok
 - reference link / [Polymorphism](#)
- grouping
 - about / [Joining and grouping](#)
- GUI
 - creating, that blocks / [Creating a GUI that blocks](#)
 - creating, that doesn't block / [Creating a GUI that doesn't block](#)
- GZIP
 - about / [Compressing streams](#)

H

- hash algorithm, selecting factors
 - collision resistance / [Hashing data](#)
 - preimage resistance / [Hashing data](#)
- hashes
 - about / [Understanding the vocabulary of protection](#)
- hashing algorithms
 - MD5 / [Hashing data](#)
 - SHA1 / [Hashing data](#)
 - SHA256 / [Hashing data](#)
 - SHA384 / [Hashing data](#)
 - SHA512 / [Hashing data](#)
- heap memory
 - about / [Managing memory with reference and value types](#)
- helper classes, streams
 - StreamReader / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
 - StreamWriter / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
 - XmlReader / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
 - XmlWriter / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
 - BinaryReader / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
 - BinaryWriter / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
- help section
 - about / [Looking for help](#)
 - Microsoft Developer Network (MSDN) / [MSDN](#)
 - Go to definition / [Getting the definition of code](#)
 - StackOverflow / [StackOverflow](#)
 - Google / [Google](#)
- Homebrew
 - installing / [Installing Homebrew](#)
- HTML5 Web Application Development By Example
 - reference link / [Client-side web development](#)
- HTTP
 - about / [The HyperText Transfer Protocol \(HTTP\)](#)
 - aspects / [The HyperText Transfer Protocol \(HTTP\)](#)

I

- IComparable<T> Interface
 - reference link / [Exercise 7.3 – explore topics](#)
- IDisposable Interface
 - reference link / [Exercise 7.3 – explore topics](#)
- if-else statement / [The if-else statement](#)
- ILDASM
 - used, for decompiling code / [Decompiling code using ILDASM](#)
- ILSpy
 - about / [Disassembling compiled assemblies](#)
- implicit casting / [Implicit casting](#)
- implicit transaction
 - about / [Transactions](#)
- indexers
 - about / [Defining a class](#)
 - access, controlling with / [Controlling access with properties and indexers](#)
 - defining / [Defining indexers](#)
- indexers (C# programming guide)
 - reference link / [Exercise 6.3 – explore topics](#)
- inheritance
 - about / [Talking about OOP](#)
 - preventing / [Preventing inheritance and overriding](#)
- Inheritance (C# Programming Guide)
 - reference link / [Exercise 7.3 – explore topics](#)
- inheritance hierarchies
 - casting within / [Casting within inheritance hierarchies](#)
- initialization vector (IV)
 - about / [IVs and block sizes](#)
 - generating / [Generating keys and IVs](#)
- input
 - obtaining, from user / [Getting input from the user](#)
- installed versions
 - listing, of .NET / [Listing the installed versions of .NET](#)
- installing
 - .NET Portability Analyzer / [Installing the .NET Portability Analyzer](#)
 - .NET Command Line Tools / [Installing the .NET Command Line Tools](#)
 - Web Essentials 2015 / [Install Web Essentials 2015](#)
 - Visual Studio Code / [Installing Visual Studio Code and ASP.NET Core, Installing Visual Studio Code](#)
 - ASP.NET Core / [Installing Visual Studio Code and ASP.NET Core, Installing ASP.NET Core and the .NET Version Manager](#)
 - Homebrew / [Installing Homebrew](#)
 - .NET Version Manager / [Installing ASP.NET Core and the .NET Version](#)

[Manager](#)

- Yeoman / [Installing Yeoman and related tools](#)
- Integral Types Table (C# Reference)
 - reference link / [Exercise 2.3 – explore topics](#)
- Interactive Development Environment (IDE)
 - about / [Setting up your development environment](#)
- interfaces
 - implementing / [Implementing interfaces](#)
 - IComparable / [Common interfaces](#)
 - IComparer / [Common interfaces](#)
 - IDisposable / [Common interfaces](#)
 - IFormattable / [Common interfaces](#)
 - IFormatter / [Common interfaces](#)
- Interfaces (C# Programming Guide)
 - reference link / [Exercise 7.3 – explore topics](#)
- intermediate language (IL) / [Using assemblies and namespaces](#)
- internationalization
 - about / [Internationalizing an application](#)
- International Standards Organization (ISO) codes
 - about / [Internationalizing an application](#)
- Internet Information Services (IIS) 8.0 / [The HyperText Transfer Protocol \(HTTP\)](#)
- intersect
 - about / [Sets, Working with sets](#)
- isolation level
 - ReadUncommitted / [Transactions](#)
 - ReadCommitted / [Transactions](#)
 - RepeatableRead / [Transactions](#)
 - Serializable / [Transactions](#)
 - Snapshot / [Transactions](#)
- iteration statements
 - about / [Iteration statements](#)
 - while statement / [The while statement](#)
 - do-while statement / [The do-while statement](#)
 - for statement / [The for statement](#)
 - foreach statement / [The foreach statement](#)
- Iteration Statements (C# Reference)
 - reference link / [Exercise 3.5 – explore topics](#)

J

- JavaScript Object Notation (JSON)
 - about / [Serializing object graphs](#)
- JetBrains Project Rider
 - about / [Using alternative C# IDEs](#)
 - URL / [Using alternative C# IDEs](#)
- joining
 - about / [Joining and grouping](#)
- JSON
 - object graphs, serializing with / [Serializing with JSON](#)

K

- key
 - about / [Keys and key sizes](#)
- keys
 - generating / [Generating keys and IVs](#)
- key sizes
 - about / [Keys and key sizes](#)
- keywords / [Writing code using Visual Studio 2015](#)

L

- lambda expression
 - targeting / [Targeting a lambda expression](#)
 - about / [Targeting a lambda expression](#)
- language compilers
 - about / [Using assemblies and namespaces](#)
- languages features in C# 6 and VB 14
 - reference link / [Exercise 2.3 – explore topics](#)
- length
 - obtaining, of string / [Getting the length of a string](#)
- LINQ
 - extension methods / [Writing LINQ queries](#)
 - providers / [Writing LINQ queries](#)
 - lambda expressions / [Writing LINQ queries](#)
 - query comprehension syntax / [Writing LINQ queries](#)
- LINQ extension methods
 - creating / [Creating your own LINQ extension methods](#)
- LINQ queries
 - writing / [Writing LINQ queries](#)
- LINQ query comprehension syntax
 - about / [Sweetening the syntax with syntactic sugar](#)
- LINQ to XML
 - working with / [Working with LINQ to XML](#)
 - used, for generating XML / [Generating XML using LINQ to XML](#)
 - used, for reading XML / [Reading XML by using LINQ to XML](#)
- Linux
 - about / [Using alternative C# IDEs](#)
- List<T> Class
 - reference link / [Exercise 4.3 – explore topics](#)
- lists
 - about / [Lists](#)
 - working with / [Working with lists](#)
- loading patterns
 - about / [Loading patterns with EF](#)
 - lazy loading / [Loading patterns with EF](#)
 - eager loading / [Loading patterns with EF](#)
 - explicit loading / [Loading patterns with EF](#)
- local accounts
 - managing / [Managing local accounts](#)
- localization
 - about / [Internationalizing an application](#)
- local variables
 - about / [Local variables](#)

- type, inferring of / [Inferring the type of a local variable](#)
- lock statement
 - about / [Understanding the lock statement](#)

M

- members
 - hiding / [Hiding members](#)
 - overriding / [Overriding members](#)
- memory
 - managing, with reference type / [Managing memory with reference and value types](#)
 - managing, with value type / [Managing memory with reference and value types](#)
- memory use
 - monitoring / [Monitoring performance and memory use](#)
- method parameters (C# reference)
 - reference link / [Exercise 6.3 – explore topics](#)
- methods
 - about / [Verbs are methods](#), [Defining a class](#)
 - counting / [Counting types and methods](#)
 - specialized methods / [Defining a class](#)
 - calling / [Writing and calling methods](#)
 - writing / [Writing and calling methods](#)
 - overloading / [Overloading methods](#)
 - simplifying, with operators / [Simplifying methods with operators](#)
 - calling, delegates used / [Calling methods using delegates](#)
- methods (C# programming guide)
 - reference link / [Exercise 6.3 – explore topics](#)
- Microsoft account
 - signing up for / [Signing up for a Microsoft account](#)
 - URL / [Signing up for a Microsoft account](#)
- Microsoft Azure
 - ASP.NET Core web apps, hosting in / [Hosting ASP.NET Core web apps in Microsoft Azure](#)
- Microsoft Azure account
 - URL / [Creating a Microsoft Azure subscription](#)
 - managing / [Managing your Microsoft Azure account](#)
- Microsoft Azure subscription
 - creating / [Creating a Microsoft Azure subscription](#)
- Microsoft Core Library
 - referencing / [Referencing Microsoft Core Library](#)
- Microsoft Core Library (mscorlib) / [Disassembling compiled assemblies](#)
- Microsoft Excel
 - automating, COM Interop used / [Automating Microsoft Excel using COM Interop](#)
- Microsoft SQL Server LocalDb
 - connecting to / [Connecting to Microsoft SQL Server LocalDb](#)
- Microsoft Visual Studio 2015

- installing / [Installing Microsoft Visual Studio 2015](#)
- default installation, selecting / [Choosing the default installation](#)
- custom installation, selecting / [Choosing the custom installation](#)
- installation, completing / [Completing the installation](#)
- Microsoft Visual Studio Code
 - about / [Using alternative C# IDEs](#)
 - URL / [Using alternative C# IDEs](#)
- modern ASP.NET Core
 - versus classic ASP.NET / [Classic ASP.NET versus modern ASP.NET Core](#)
- Mono
 - about / [Understanding the Mono project](#)
- Mono, to .NET Core
 - switching from / [Switching from Mono to .NET Core](#)
- MonoDevelop
 - about / [Using alternative C# IDEs](#)
 - URL / [Using alternative C# IDEs](#)
- Mono project
 - about / [Understanding the Mono project](#)
 - reference link / [Understanding the Mono project](#)
- multiple actions
 - running, asynchronously / [Running multiple actions synchronously](#)
- multiple threads
 - using, with parallel LINQ (PLINQ) / [Using multiple threads with Parallel LINQ](#)
 - resource, accessing from / [Accessing a resource from multiple threads](#)
- multiple values
 - storing, in array / [Storing multiple values in an array](#)
 - storing, collections used / [Storing multiple values using collections](#)
- mutually exclusive lock
 - applying, to resource / [Applying a mutually exclusive lock to a resource](#)

N

- .NET
 - streamlining / [Streamlining .NET](#)
 - future / [The future of .NET](#)
 - about / [Comparing .NET Framework with .NET Core](#)
 - installed versions, listing of / [Listing the installed versions of .NET](#)
- .NET Blog
 - reference link / [Exercise 4.3 – explore topics](#)
- .NET CLI
 - about / [Managing .NET Core development with Command Line Tools](#)
- .NET Command Line Tools
 - installing / [Installing the .NET Command Line Tools](#)
- .NET Core
 - about / [Understanding .NET Framework, .NET Core, and .NET Native, Understanding the .NET Core platform](#)
 - targeting / [Targeting the .NET Core](#)
 - used, for creating projects / [Creating new projects for the .NET Core](#)
 - .NET Framework, comparing with / [Comparing .NET Framework with .NET Core](#)
 - compiler symbols, defining for / [Defining compiler symbols for .NET Core](#)
- .NET Core 1.0
 - about / [.NET Core 1.0](#)
- .NET Core application
 - creating, Command Line Tools used / [Creating a .NET Core application using Command Line Tools](#)
 - creating, Visual Studio 2015 used / [Creating a .NET Core application using Visual Studio 2015](#)
- .NET Core command-line tools
 - about / [Understanding the .NET Core command-line tools](#)
 - DNX tools / [Understanding the DNX tools](#)
 - CLI tools / [Understanding the CLI tools](#)
- .NET Core development
 - managing, with Command Line Tools / [Managing .NET Core development with Command Line Tools](#)
- .NET data provider
 - selecting / [Choosing a .NET data provider](#)
- .NET Development Utilities
 - about / [Managing .NET Core development with Command Line Tools](#)
- .NET Execution Environment
 - about / [Managing .NET Core development with Command Line Tools](#)
- .NET Framework
 - about / [Understanding .NET Framework, .NET Core, and .NET Native, Understanding .NET Framework platform](#)

- comparing, with .NET Core / [Comparing .NET Framework with .NET Core](#)
 - compiler symbols, configuring for / [Configuring compiler symbols for .NET Framework](#)
- .NET Framework class library
 - reference link / [Exercise 6.3 – explore topics](#)
- .NET Native
 - about / [Understanding .NET Framework, .NET Core, and .NET Native, .NET Native](#)
- .NET Native compiler
 - about / [Understanding the .NET Native platform](#)
- .NET Portability Analyzer
 - about / [Understanding the .NET Portability Analyzer](#)
 - installing / [Installing the .NET Portability Analyzer](#)
 - configuring / [Configuring the .NET Portability Analyzer](#)
 - solution, analyzing / [Analyzing a solution](#)
 - reference link / [Analyzing a solution](#)
- .NET technologies
 - comparing / [Comparing .NET technologies](#)
- .NET types
 - C# keywords, relating to / [Relating C# keywords to .NET types](#)
 - extending / [Inheriting and extending .NET types](#)
 - inheriting / [Inheriting and extending .NET types](#)
- .NET Version Manager
 - about / [Managing .NET Core development with Command Line Tools](#)
 - installing / [Installing ASP.NET Core and the .NET Version Manager](#)
- named and optional arguments (C# programming guide)
 - reference link / [Exercise 6.3 – explore topics](#)
- named arguments
 - about / [Optional parameters and named arguments](#)
- named method
 - targeting / [Targeting a named method](#)
- Namespace Keywords (C# Reference)
 - reference link / [Exercise 3.5 – explore topics](#)
- namespaces
 - about / [Writing code using Visual Studio 2015, Namespaces](#)
 - importing / [Importing a namespace, Importing a namespace](#)
 - using / [Using assemblies and namespaces](#)
 - browsing / [Browsing assemblies and namespaces](#)
- namespaces, for collections
 - System.Collections / [Storing data with collections](#)
 - System.Collections.Generic / [Storing data with collections](#)
- native
 - about / [Choosing a .NET data provider](#)
- nested tasks

- about / [Nested and child tasks](#)
- New Technology LAN Manager (NTLM) / [Authenticating with Windows](#)
- Newtonsoft's JSON.NET
 - reference link / [Serializing with JSON](#)
- Node Package Manager (npm)
 - reference link / [Installing Yeoman and related tools](#)
- Northwind.sql file
 - download link / [The Northwind sample database](#)
- Northwind sample database
 - about / [The Northwind sample database](#)
- nouns
 - about / [Nouns are types, fields, and variables](#)
- Nullable Types (C# Programming Guide)
 - reference link / [Exercise 2.3 – explore topics](#)
- numbers
 - storing / [Storing numbers](#)
 - rounding / [Rounding numbers](#)

O

- object
 - about / [Talking about OOP](#)
- object-relational mapping (ORM)
 - about / [Using Entity Framework 6](#)
- Object Browser
 - about / [Browsing assemblies and namespaces](#)
- object graphs
 - serializing / [Serializing object graphs](#)
 - serializing, with XML / [Serializing with XML](#)
 - deserializing, with XML / [Deserializing with XML](#)
 - serializing, with JSON / [Serializing with JSON](#)
 - serializing, with other formats / [Serializing with other formats](#)
 - serializing, with runtime serializers / [Serializing with runtime serializers](#)
- objects
 - comparing, when sorting / [Comparing objects when sorting](#)
- object type / [The object type](#)
- old collections
 - avoiding / [Avoiding old collections](#)
- OOP
 - about / [Talking about OOP](#)
- operations
 - atomic, making / [Making operations atomic](#)
- operator (C# reference)
 - reference link / [Exercise 6.3 – explore topics](#)
- operators
 - about / [Operating on variables, Defining a class](#)
 - unary operators / [Experimenting with unary operators](#)
 - arithmetic operators / [Experimenting with arithmetic operators](#)
 - comparison operators / [Comparison and Boolean operators](#)
 - Boolean operators / [Comparison and Boolean operators](#)
 - methods, simplifying with / [Simplifying methods with operators](#)
- optional parameters
 - about / [Optional parameters and named arguments](#)
- OrderBy
 - entities, sorting with / [Sorting sequences with OrderBy](#)
- output
 - displaying, to user / [Displaying output to the user](#)
- overflow
 - checking for / [Checking for overflow](#)
- overloading
 - about / [Verbs are methods](#)
- overriding

- preventing / [Preventing inheritance and overriding](#)

P

- P/Invoke
 - Win32 API, accessing with / [Accessing the Win32 API with P/Invoke](#)
- parallel LINQ (PLINQ)
 - about / [Using multiple threads with Parallel LINQ](#)
 - multiple threads, using with / [Using multiple threads with Parallel LINQ](#)
- partial
 - used, for splitting classes / [Splitting classes using partial](#)
- password-based key derivation function (PBKDF2)
 - about / [Generating keys and IVs](#)
- paths
 - managing / [Managing paths](#)
- pattern matching
 - with regular expressions / [Validating input with regular expressions](#)
- patterns & practices group, Microsoft
 - about / [Design patterns](#)
 - reference link / [Exercise 3.5 – explore topics](#)
- performance
 - monitoring / [Monitoring performance and resource usage](#), [Monitoring performance and memory use](#)
- Platform Invoke (P/Invoke)
 - about / [Interoperating with unmanaged code](#)
- platforms
 - supporting / [Supporting other platforms](#)
- POCO (Plain Old CLR Object) / [Building an Entity Framework 6 model](#)
- polymorphism
 - about / [Talking about OOP, Polymorphism](#)
- Polymorphism (C# Programming Guide)
 - reference link / [Exercise 7.3 – explore topics](#)
- processes
 - about / [Understanding processes and threads](#)
- processing strings
 - efficiency, measuring of / [Measuring the efficiency of processing strings](#)
- Process type, members
 - VirtualMemorySize64 / [Monitoring performance and memory use](#)
 - WorkingSet64 / [Monitoring performance and memory use](#)
- project
 - configuring, to use Kestrel / [Configuring the project to use Kestrel and .NET Core](#)
 - configuring, to use .NET Core / [Configuring the project to use Kestrel and .NET Core](#)
- project.json file
 - reference link, for documentation / [Editing the code](#)

- projection
 - about / [Projecting entities with Select statement](#)
- projects
 - creating, .NET Core used / [Creating new projects for the .NET Core](#)
 - scaffolding, Yeoman used / [Scaffolding projects using Yeoman](#)
 - editing, Visual Studio Code used / [Editing projects using Visual Studio Code](#)
- properties
 - about / [Defining a class](#)
 - access, controlling with / [Controlling access with properties and indexers](#)
- properties (C# programming guide)
 - reference link / [Exercise 6.3 – explore topics](#)

Q

- Queue<T> Class
 - reference link / [Exercise 4.3 – explore topics](#)
- queues
 - about / [Queues](#)
- quiz
 - running / [Running the quiz](#)
- quiz application, designing
 - about / [Designing the quiz application](#)
 - platform, selecting / [Choosing the platform](#)
 - functional requirements, deciding / [Deciding the functional requirements](#)
 - separating concerns / [Separating concerns](#)
- quiz solution
 - building / [Building the quiz solution](#)
 - entity models, defining / [Defining the entity models](#)
 - data repository, creating / [Creating the data repository](#)
 - web application, creating / [Creating the web application](#)
 - view models, defining / [Defining view models](#)
 - sample quiz questions. adding / [Adding sample quiz questions](#)
 - session state, configuring / [Configuring session state](#)
 - custom controller actions, adding / [Adding custom controller actions](#)
 - custom views, adding / [Adding custom views](#)

R

- Razor / [ASP.NET Core views](#)
- RC2CryptoServiceProvider
 - about / [Encrypting and decrypting data](#)
- read-only fields
 - about / [Defining a class](#)
- read-only properties
 - defining / [Defining read-only properties](#)
- real numbers / [Storing numbers](#)
 - storing / [Storing real numbers](#)
- reference type
 - memory, managing with / [Managing memory with reference and value types](#)
- Reference Types (C# Reference)
 - reference link / [Exercise 7.3 – explore topics](#)
- reflection
 - about / [Counting types and methods](#)
- Regex Class
 - reference link / [Exercise 4.3 – explore topics](#)
- RegExr
 - reference link / [Exercise 4.3 – explore topics](#)
- Regular Expression Language
 - reference link / [Exercise 4.3 – explore topics](#)
- regular expressions
 - about / [Validating input with regular expressions](#)
 - syntax / [The syntax of a regular expression](#)
 - examples / [Examples of regular expressions](#)
 - best practice / [Examples of regular expressions](#)
- Relational Database Management System (RDBMS)
 - about / [Relational Database Management Systems](#)
 - connecting to / [Connecting to the database](#)
- remote desktop
 - used, for connecting virtual machine / [Connecting to your virtual machine using remote desktop](#)
- REPL (read-eval-print loop) / [Experimenting with C# Interactive](#)
- Representational State Transfer (REST) / [ASP.NET Core Web API](#)
- resource
 - accessing, from multiple threads / [Accessing a resource from multiple threads](#)
 - mutually exclusive lock, applying to / [Applying a mutually exclusive lock to a resource](#)
- resources
 - using / [Using resources and templates](#)
 - sharing / [Sharing resources](#)
- resource usage

- monitoring / [Monitoring performance and resource usage](#)
- result sets
 - reading / [Executing commands and reading result sets](#)
- RijndaelManaged
 - about / [Encrypting and decrypting data](#)
- Roslyn
 - about / [Using assemblies and namespaces](#)
- RSA
 - data, signing with / [Signing with SHA256 and RSA](#)
- RSACryptoServiceProvider
 - about / [Encrypting and decrypting data](#)
- runtime serializers
 - object graphs, serializing with / [Serializing with runtime serializers](#)

S

- salts
 - about / [Salts](#)
- scalability
 - improving, for client-server applications / [Improving scalability for client-server applications](#)
- Search Strings Using Regular Expressions
 - reference link / [Exercise 4.3 – explore topics](#)
- Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) / [The if-else statement](#)
- segments
 - about / [Understanding the default route](#)
- selection statements
 - about / [Selection statements](#)
 - if-else statement / [The if-else statement](#)
 - switch-case statement / [The switch-case statement](#)
- Selection Statements (C# Reference)
 - reference link / [Exercise 3.5 – explore topics](#)
- Select statement
 - entities, projecting with / [Projecting entities with Select statement](#)
- sequence
 - about / [Extending sequences with the Enumerable class](#)
 - extending, with enumerable class / [Extending sequences with the Enumerable class](#)
- serialization
 - about / [Serializing object graphs](#)
- Server Explorer window / [Other useful windows](#)
- sets
 - about / [Sets, Working with sets](#)
 - working with / [Working with sets](#)
- settable properties
 - defining / [Defining settable properties](#)
- SHA256
 - data, hashing with / [Hashing with SHA256](#)
 - data, signing with / [Signing with SHA256 and RSA](#)
- shared resources
 - access, synchronizing to / [Synchronizing access to shared resources](#)
- signatures
 - about / [Understanding the vocabulary of protection](#)
- simplest ASP.NET Core application
 - creating / [Creating the simplest ASP.NET Core web application](#)
- single-precision floating point / [Storing numbers](#)
- sizes of numbers, in memory / [Sizes of numbers in memory](#)
- Solution Explorer window / [Other useful windows](#)

- SortedDictionary<TKey, TValue> Class
 - reference link / [Exercise 4.3 – explore topics](#)
- SortedList<TKey, TValue> Class
 - reference link / [Exercise 4.3 – explore topics](#)
- source code
 - managing, with GitHub / [Managing source code with GitHub](#)
- specialized collections
 - using / [Using specialized collections](#)
- specialized fields
 - constants / [Defining a class](#)
 - read-only fields / [Defining a class](#)
 - events / [Defining a class](#)
- specialized methods
 - constructors / [Defining a class](#)
 - properties / [Defining a class](#)
 - indexers / [Defining a class](#)
 - operators / [Defining a class](#)
- SQLite
 - reference link / [Editing projects using Visual Studio Code](#)
- SQL statements
 - loading / [Logging SQL statements](#)
- Stack<T> Class
 - reference link / [Exercise 4.3 – explore topics](#)
- stack memory
 - about / [Managing memory with reference and value types](#)
- StackOverflow
 - about / [StackOverflow](#)
 - reference link / [Exercise 3.5 – explore topics](#)
- stacks
 - about / [Stacks](#)
- Standard Numeric Format Strings
 - reference link / [Exercise 2.3 – explore topics](#)
- statements
 - about / [Statements](#)
- statically typed
 - about / [Working with lists](#)
- static methods
 - used, for reusing functionality / [Using static methods to reuse functionality](#)
- Stopwatch type, members
 - Restart method / [Monitoring performance and memory use](#)
 - Stop method / [Monitoring performance and memory use](#)
 - Elapsed property / [Monitoring performance and memory use](#)
 - ElapsedMilliseconds property / [Monitoring performance and memory use](#)
- storage streams

- about / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
- FileStream / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
- MemoryStream / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
- NetworkStream / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
- storyboards
 - animating with / [Animating with storyboards](#)
- Stream class, members
 - CanRead / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
 - CanWrite / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
 - Length / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
 - Position / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
 - Close() / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
 - Flush() / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
 - Read() / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
 - ReadByte() / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
 - Seek() / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
 - Write() / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
 - WriteByte() / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
- streams
 - about / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
 - reading / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
 - writing / [Reading and writing with streams](#)
 - compressing / [Compressing streams](#)
- string
 - type, converting to / [Converting from any type to a string](#)
 - converting, to number / [Parsing from strings to numbers or dates and times](#)
 - converting, to dates / [Parsing from strings to numbers or dates and times](#)
 - converting, to times / [Parsing from strings to numbers or dates and times](#)
 - length, obtaining of / [Getting the length of a string](#)
 - characters, obtaining of / [Getting the characters of a string](#)
 - splitting / [Splitting a string](#)
 - part, obtaining of / [Extracting part of a string](#)
 - checking, for content / [Checking a string for content](#)
 - building, efficiently / [Building strings efficiently](#)
- string (C# Reference)
 - reference link / [Exercise 2.3 – explore topics](#)
- StringBuilder Class
 - reference link / [Exercise 4.3 – explore topics](#)
- String Class
 - reference link / [Exercise 4.3 – explore topics](#)
- string members
 - TrimEnd / [Other string members](#)
 - Trim / [Other string members](#)
 - TrimStart / [Other string members](#)

- ToUpper / [Other string members](#)
- ToLower / [Other string members](#)
- Insert / [Other string members](#)
- Remove / [Other string members](#)
- Replace / [Other string members](#)
- String.Concat / [Other string members](#)
- String.Join / [Other string members](#)
- String.IsNullOrEmpty / [Other string members](#)
- String.Empty / [Other string members](#)
- strings
 - encoding, as byte arrays / [Encoding strings as byte arrays](#)
- strongly typed
 - about / [Working with lists](#)
- struct keyword
 - defining / [Defining a type using the struct keyword](#)
- Structs (C# Programming Guide)
 - reference link / [Exercise 7.3 – explore topics](#)
- Structured Query Language (SQL) / [Writing LINQ queries](#)
- subclass
 - about / [Talking about OOP](#)
- super class
 - about / [Talking about OOP](#)
- switch-case statement / [The switch-case statement](#)
- symmetric
 - about / [Keys and key sizes](#)
- synchronization types
 - ReaderWriterLock / [Applying other types of synchronization](#)
 - ReaderWriterLockSlim / [Applying other types of synchronization](#)
 - Mutex / [Applying other types of synchronization](#)
 - Semaphore / [Applying other types of synchronization](#)
 - SemaphoreSlim / [Applying other types of synchronization](#)
 - AutoResetEvent / [Applying other types of synchronization](#)
 - ManualResetEvent / [Applying other types of synchronization](#)
- syntactic sugar
 - about / [Sweetening the syntax with syntactic sugar](#)

T

- tasks
 - running, asynchronously / [Running tasks asynchronously](#)
 - multiple actions, running asynchronously / [Running multiple actions asynchronously using tasks](#)
 - writing for / [Waiting for tasks](#)
 - continuing with / [Continuing with another task](#)
- Team Explorer window / [Other useful windows](#)
 - using / [Using the Team Explorer window](#)
- templates
 - using / [Using resources and templates](#)
- text
 - storing / [Storing text](#), [Storing and manipulating text](#)
 - manipulating / [Storing and manipulating text](#)
 - writing to / [Writing to text and XML streams](#)
 - encoding / [Encoding text](#)
 - encoding, in files / [Encoding and decoding text in files](#)
 - decoding, in files / [Encoding and decoding text in files](#)
- ThenBy method
 - entities, sorting by multiple properties / [Sorting by multiple properties with the ThenBy method](#)
- threads
 - about / [Understanding processes and threads](#)
- trace levels
 - switching / [Switching trace levels](#)
- trace listener
 - about / [Monitoring with Debug and Trace](#)
- trace listeners
 - configuring / [Configuring trace listeners](#)
- transactions
 - about / [Transactions](#)
- try-catch statement
 - about / [The try-catch statement](#)
- type
 - inferring, of local variable / [Inferring the type of a local variable](#)
 - converting, to string / [Converting from any type to a string](#)
- types
 - about / [Writing code using Visual Studio 2015](#)
 - counting / [Counting types and methods](#)
 - casting / [Casting and converting between types](#)
 - converting between / [Casting and converting between types](#)
 - efficiency, evaluating of / [Evaluating the efficiency of types](#)
 - documenting / [Documenting your types](#)

- extending / [Extending types when you can't inherit](#)
- types, with Async methods
 - about / [Other types with Async methods](#)

U

- unary operators
 - about / [Experimenting with unary operators](#)
- unchecked statement
 - about / [The unchecked statement](#)
- Unicode
 - about / [Encoding text](#)
- union
 - about / [Working with sets](#)
- unit of code
 - creating / [Creating a unit of code that needs testing](#)
- unit test project
 - creating / [Creating a unit test project](#)
- unit tests
 - running / [Running unit tests](#)
- unmanaged code
 - interoperating with / [Interoperating with unmanaged code](#)
- unmanaged resources
 - about / [The finally statement](#)
 - releasing / [Releasing unmanaged resources](#)
- user
 - output, displaying to / [Displaying output to the user](#)
 - input, obtaining from / [Getting input from the user](#)
- users
 - authenticating / [Authenticating and authorizing users](#)
 - authorizing / [Authenticating and authorizing users](#)
 - authenticating, with Windows / [Authenticating with Windows](#)
 - authorizing, with Windows / [Authorizing with Windows](#)
- using statement
 - disposal, simplifying with / [Simplifying disposal with the using statement](#)
- UWP
 - about / [Understanding the UWP](#)
 - app's layout, adapting / [Adapting your app's layout](#)
 - advantage, taking of unique device capabilities / [Taking advantage of unique device capabilities](#)
 - app, creating for / [Creating an app for the Universal Windows Platform](#)
- UWP portability
 - analyzing / [Analyzing UWP portability](#)

V

- value
 - storing, enum keyword used / [Storing a value using the enum keyword](#)
- value type
 - nullable, making / [Making a value type nullable](#)
 - memory, managing with / [Managing memory with reference and value types](#)
- Value Types (C# Reference)
 - reference link / [Exercise 7.3 – explore topics](#)
- var (C# Reference)
 - reference link / [Exercise 2.3 – explore topics](#)
- variables
 - declaring / [Declaring variables](#)
 - naming / [Naming variables](#)
- verbs
 - about / [Verbs are methods](#)
- view engines / [ASP.NET Core views](#)
- view model / [Create view models for requests](#)
- virtual machine
 - creating / [Creating a virtual machine](#)
 - connecting, remote desktop used / [Connecting to your virtual machine using remote desktop](#)
- Visual Studio
 - signing in to / [Signing in to Visual Studio](#)
 - registration link / [Signing in to Visual Studio](#)
 - development settings, selecting / [Choosing development settings](#)
 - extensions, updating / [Updating extensions and products](#)
 - products, updating / [Updating extensions and products](#)
 - older versions, using / [Using older versions of Visual Studio](#)
- Visual Studio 2015
 - using, on Windows 10 / [Using Visual Studio 2015 on Windows 10](#)
 - used, for creating .NET Core application / [Creating a .NET Core application using Visual Studio 2015](#)
- Visual Studio Code
 - about / [Visual Studio Code](#)
 - installing / [Installing Visual Studio Code and ASP.NET Core, Installing Visual Studio Code](#)
 - reference link, for installation instructions / [Installing Visual Studio Code and ASP.NET Core](#)
 - used, for editing projects / [Editing projects using Visual Studio Code](#)
- Visual Studio Code, for Mac OS X
 - download link / [Installing Visual Studio Code](#)
 - development, managing from terminal / [Managing development from the terminal](#)

- Visual Studio Dev Essentials
 - about / [Using Visual Studio 2015 on Windows 10](#)
- Visual Studio Team Services
 - about / [Managing source code with GitHub](#)

W

- web app
 - ASP.NET web application, publishing to / [Publishing an ASP.NET web application to the Web App](#)
- web application project
 - creating / [Create a web application project](#)
- Web Essentials 2015
 - installing / [Install Web Essentials 2015](#)
- Where extension method
 - entities, filtering with / [Filtering entities with Where](#)
- while statement
 - about / [The while statement](#)
- whole numbers
 - storing / [Storing whole numbers](#)
- Win32 API
 - accessing, with P/Invoke / [Accessing the Win32 API with P/Invoke](#)
- Windows
 - users, authenticating with / [Authenticating with Windows](#)
 - users, authorizing with / [Authorizing with Windows](#)
- windows, Visual Studio
 - Solution Explorer window / [Other useful windows](#)
 - Team Explorer window / [Other useful windows](#)
 - Server Explorer window / [Other useful windows](#)
- Windows 10
 - Visual Studio 2015, using on / [Using Visual Studio 2015 on Windows 10](#)
- Windows Communication Foundation (WCF) / [Serializing with other formats](#)
 - about / [Understanding ASP.NET Core](#)
- Windows desktop application
 - creating, WPF used / [Creating a Windows desktop application using WPF](#)
- Windows Presentation Foundation (WPF) / [Understanding XAML](#)
- WPF
 - used, for creating Windows desktop application / [Creating a Windows desktop application using WPF](#)

X

- Xamarin
 - about / [Xamarin](#)
- Xamarin mobile platform
 - about / [Understanding the Mono project](#)
- Xamarin Studio
 - about / [Xamarin](#)
- XAML
 - about / [Understanding XAML](#)
 - benefits / [Understanding XAML](#)
 - used, for simplifying code / [Simplifying code using XAML](#)
 - common controls, selecting / [Choosing common controls](#)
- XML
 - generating, LINQ to XML used / [Generating XML using LINQ to XML](#)
 - reading, LINQ to XML used / [Reading XML by using LINQ to XML](#)
 - about / [Compressing streams](#)
 - object graphs, serializing with / [Serializing with XML](#)
 - object graphs, deserializing with / [Deserializing with XML](#)
 - customizing / [Customizing the XML](#)
- XML streams
 - writing to / [Writing to text and XML streams](#)
- xUnit.net
 - about / [Unit testing an application](#)

Y

- Yeoman
 - installing / [Installing Yeoman and related tools](#)
 - used, for scaffolding projects / [Scaffolding projects using Yeoman](#)